

# THE COMPLETE BIBLE OUTLINE SERIES

By

Stanley A. Ellisen, Th.D.

Beloved Professor of English Bible And Interpretation  
At The Western Baptist Theological Seminary.

This Monograph was prepared for Seminary,  
Bible College, Church and Home Bible studies.  
Also contained in each book is an Introduction and  
on opposing pages the associated Biblical text taken from  
the ASV Version of 1901; and a list of  
Class Questions.

## **The Cover**

**Cover - The Caves And Idol Niches At Caesarea Phillipi Mt 16 13-20 Mr 8 27-30. This is the approximate location where Peter made the famous confession: Thou art the Christ, the Son of God, The One Who LIVES! As opposed to the idols which at that time were contained in the niches in the cliff, above.**

## BIBLE WORKBOOK

### *An Interpretive Outline of the Whole Bible*

By

Stanley A. Ellisen, Th.D.

Adapted from the larger work (under contract - prior his home-going) of  
**Dr. Stanley Ellison, Beloved Professor of English Bible  
And Interpretation  
At The Western Baptist Theological Seminary.**

This Monograph was prepared for Seminary,  
Bible College, Church and Home Bible studies.  
Also contained in each book is an Introduction and  
on opposing pages the associated Biblical text taken from  
the ASV Version of 1901; and a list of  
Class Questions.

We wish to thank the individuals involved in the development, sales, and service of the ONLINE BIBLE, especially its author, Larry Pierce, by whose permission all Bible texts, many pictures and maps, and commentary quotes have been extracted.

## INTRODUCTION

### THE PURPOSE OF THESE OUTLINES

The purpose of these outlines is three-fold: to present an analysis, an interpretation, and a synthesis of the basic contents of each book of the Bible. The intent of analysis is to lay bare the content for examination; that of interpretation is to reveal and explain its meaning; and the intent of synthesis is to develop the materials in an organized structure for purposes of better understanding, exposition, and application.

In developing these materials in this form this three-fold purpose has been kept in mind. An effort has been made to analyze or open up the native message and to synthesize or develop this basic content in an inductively-conceived structural form, genuinely related to the various contexts. The outline designations, however, are given with an interpretive flavor rather than in a purely historical framework. For instance, the life of Abraham is divided into three periods related to faith: 1) the awakening of faith; 2) the rewarding of faith; and 3) the perfecting of faith. We have thus attempted to blend the three essential elements of analysis, interpretation, and synthesis into one.

### THE FOUNDATIONAL CHARACTER OF THESE OUTLINES

It is believed that each Biblical passage has an historical significance, a theological significance, and spiritual principle(s) for current applications. The student of the Bible should learn to discern these essential elements as he studies each passage. It is not enough to know the historical story; one should discover what truth the story teaches about God, and with this background, discern the abiding principle(s) involved. With these materials and principles firmly grasped from the individual contexts, one may build theological structures and homiletical treatises with confidence. Without a mastery of these basic Biblical materials it is foolhardy to attempt the structural work of theology and exposition.

### THE SOURCES AND SCOPE OF THESE OUTLINES

The materials herein presented have been garnered and organized from a wide range of scopic, introductory, expositional, exegetical and archaeological works, most of which are listed in the various bibliographies given. The watchword in gleaning and organization has been selectivity in keeping with inductively conceived principles of hermeneutics for Bible understanding. The emphasis throughout is on a strong adherence to the Bible text itself as understood in the grammatical historical contextual setting.

To live with the prophets and apostles as they spoke God's Word out of living historical situations and experiences with God is to catch a fresh insight into the mind of the Almighty and His program for the redeemed. It is hoped that these materials will spark a kindred interest and enthusiasm in the student for the Word of God which is living and active and bears its own guarantee that it will inevitably accomplish God's will.

# THE LOGICAL ORDER OF THE BIBLICAL SCIENCES

In pursuing the work of Bible study, the logical order of the Biblical disciplines should be kept in mind:

- 1- Study of the canon which determined the inspired books.
- 2- Study of the ancient texts which determines the true text.
- 3- Introductory studies which determine the historical framework and matters of authorship, addressees, etc.
- 4- Hermeneutics which determines inductively the interpretive principles to be applied.
- 5- Exegesis which is the application of the rules of hermeneutics to discover the meaning of the text.
- 6- Biblical theology which is built on the results of exegesis and itself forms the basis for
- 7- systematic theology. The collection and systemization of all Biblical facts, and which includes 'facts' from the other sciences, germane to a determination of the Person, Nature, Attributes, and Works of God and His hand in man's origination, preservation, and consummation.

The following study of Bible Interpretation is dependent on or related to each of these sciences. It will build on the disciplines of the canon, the ancient texts, and Bible introduction; it will seek to apply the principles of hermeneutics to discover the native meaning of each passage; and it will prepare one for detailed exegesis and further theological and homiletical amplifications. In a sense the work will constitute both an introduction to Biblical studies and a correlation of the materials of the other Bible sciences in the contexts from which they spring.

## OLD TESTAMENT INTERPRETATION HERMENEUTICAL PRINCIPLES FOR TYPOLOGY.

### A- Definition of a type:

A type is an Old Testament illustration which, while having a place and purpose in Biblical history, also is divinely appointed to foreshadow some New Testament truth.

### B- Principles for identification.

Biblical types are of two classes: innate and inferred. The innate (class) group are those types which are expressly declared to be such by the New Testament. The inferred group are those which are not said to be so in the New Testament but give evidence of being such by manifest analogy.

The greatest problem then in identification lies with the inferred group, for herein the subjective element is more operative. A thorough study of the innate types is necessary before identifying the inferred types.

- 1- Express Scriptural confirmation identifies most (Romans 5:14)<sup>a</sup>
- 2- Interchange of names signifies a type (1 Corinthians 5:7).(Christ our Passover)
- 3- Evident and manifest analogy identifies several (Isaac, Genesis 22, etc.). Must have New Testament backing, or Confirmation. e.g. Joseph Acts 7:8-16. The first meeting, Jacob didn't reveal who he was. The second coming of his brothers to get grain he revealed himself to them – The second ruler in Egypt.

### C- Principles for interpretation

- 1- Observe the rule of first interpretation, then application. A type presupposes a purpose in history which constitutes the interpretation. From this purpose the fulfillment of the type is seen in application, which also is divinely appointed.
- 2- Study the local setting of the type. This forms the basis of the typical meaning, suggesting the purpose and character of the historical type.
- 3- Look for the area of resemblance between type and antitype either in the character, activity, or purpose of the type. The New Testament context often suggests this area of resemblance.
- 4- Do not over press the analogy, seeking that which is va ue or far-fetched.  
This procedure dulls the convincing edge of the primary point and glorifies the imagination rather than the Word of God.  
Recognize that a type has but one or a few salient ooints of resemblance. Unfolding a vast complex of analogies verges on allegorism, creates a distaste because of superficiality, and thus has a questionable value in impressing truth.
- 5- Distinguish between type teaching and illustrations from legitimate object lessons. Types are divinely-appointed illustrations, whereas the others are not necessarily divinely-appointed. Recognize this distinction both when using types and when using illustrations which have legitimate analogies but are the product of an Holy Spirit Controlled (inspired) imagination. Both classes of illustrations then will be better received and the after-effects will be longer lasting.
- 6- Do not presume to teach doctrine by types. Types are illustrations, not foundational teachings. Their purpose is to enlighten rather than to establish a doctrine. Their value is in challenging the mind to accept or rethink a doctrine explicitly taught elsewhere, by showing how God foreordained and foreshadowed this truth in the times of the Old Testament shadows. Rely on explicit statements to establish doctrines and give them visual representation in the types. This procedure gives appreciation for both the Old Testament histories and the New Testament fulfillments.
- 7- Do not presume that the truth illustrated was necessarily understood in the age the type appeared or prior to its fulfillment. This was rarely the case. Thus, their values as types is primarily a New Testament advantage of hindsight in bringing into sharper focus the Person and work of Christ.

<sup>a</sup> Rom 5:14 – { the reverse analogy of Adam who condemned the human race with his sinful act generating the sinful (Adamic) nature; vs. the Last Adam, The LORD Jesus, who took the world's sin (acts) to Calvary where He died for the acts of sin of the whole world 1 Jo 2:2. This however didn't save anyone until they are born again, created anew in Christ Jesus, by trusting Jesus to save them 1 Cor 15; 1Pe 1:23 Being born again, not of corruptible seed, but of incorruptible, by the Word of God, Who liveth and abideth for ever. Joh 3:3, 7. NEC}



## **Volume I – The Law**



**ISBN-13: 978-1511792875**

**ISBN-10: 1511792876.**

## EDITOR'S PREFACE

Hello, my name is Norman E. "Swede" Carlson. While attending The Western Conservative Baptist Theological Seminary (WCBTS) in 1969-71, I took this course from Dr. Stanley Ellisen Th.D. He and Dr. Earl Radmacher Th. D., taught also Hermeneutics. Other Professors were Dr. Duane Dunham, Greek; Dr. Fred Howe, Hebrew and Apologetics; and Dr. Milton Jones, Homiletics.

Although going two years I obtained no graduate degree. After 45 years of Computer Science, AstroScience, and Radar Systems experience (while in-between studying all the Biblical studies mentioned above along with Creation Science, I was a part time missionary pastor in Colorado and Alaska and also was a full time pastor for 4 of these years.

Prior to his death, Dr. Ellisen gave me a contract to:

1. Digitize his Bible Outline Series for online distribution, and;
  2. Add the Bible text to this Series. Which were both accomplished.
- Finally, I was to put the entire manuscript in book form (many volumes) for easier distribution.

Hopefully, this will be completed before (1) my death or (2) the Rapture. I'm hopeful (2) comes first.

INTRODUCTION.....	iv
THE LOGICAL ORDER OF THE BIBLICAL SCIENCES .....	v
OLD TESTAMENT INTERPRETATION .....	vi
HERMENEUTICAL PRINCIPLES FOR TYPOLOGY .....	vi
Volume I – The Law .....	viii
EDITOR’S PREFACE.....	x
TABLE OF CONTENTS.....	xi
THE BOOK OF GENESIS .....	1
INTRODUCTION .....	2
Figure 01. Map Of Nations post Flood Pre-Peleg.....	3
Figure 02. Abraham’s Journeys. ....	4
Figure 03. A Proposed Route Of The Exodus.....	5
OUTLINE OF GENESIS.....	7
Figure 04. Footprints Of Human and Dinosaur .....	22
Figure 05. Contemporaneous Footprints Of Human and Dinosaur .....	22
Figure 06. Giant Footprints Of Human Compared with Modern Man.....	23
Figure 07. Mandarin Chinese Writing For 8 Mouths In A Boat.....	24
QUESTIONS ON GENESIS.....	104
APPENDIX A – Gen 1:2 – The Holy Spirit Fertilized The Waters.....	109
APPENDIX B – An Appositional Appearance Of The Messiah In Gen 4:1 .....	113
THE BOOK OF EXODUS.....	117
INTRODUCTION .....	118
OUTLINE OF EXODUS .....	119
Table 01. A Composite Look At Artifacts discovered by Dr. Bob Cornuke, The “Real Indiana Jones”.....	174
Figure 01. The High Priest In Holy of Holies Sprinkling Blood On The Mercy Seat.....	180
Figure 02. The High Priest And His Garments.....	180
Figure 03. The furnishings of the Tabernacle And The Brazen Altar.....	181
QUESTIONS ON EXODUS .....	206
Figure 04. Photos And Topographical Feature Of Jabel Al Lawz. ....	210
Figure 05. The Pictographs Drawn On The Side Of The Altar .....	211
THE BOOK OF LEVITICUS .....	213
INTRODUCTION .....	214
OUTLINE OF LEVITICUS .....	215
Figure 01. The Tabernacle In The Wilderness .....	215
Figure 02. The Tabernacle In The Wilderness - Plan view.....	216
Figure 03. The Tabernacle In The Wilderness - Parts Identified.....	216
QUESTIONS ON LEVITICUS .....	268
THE BOOK OF NUMBERS.....	271
INTRODUCTION .....	272
OUTLINE OF NUMBERS.....	273
Figure 01. The Camp Of Israel According To The Grouping In Numbers 2.....	277
Figure 02. How The Camp Was Required To Be Laid Out.....	278
Figure 03. A Sky-View Of The Camp Of Israel.....	279
Figure 04. A Map Showing The Extent Of Midian.....	336
Figure 05. A Map Showing The Levitical cities And The 6 Cities Of Refuge. ....	337
QUESTIONS ON NUMBERS .....	338
THE BOOK OF DEUTERONOMY .....	341
INTRODUCTION .....	342
OUTLINE OF DEUTERONOMY .....	344
Table 01. Chronology Of The Patriarchs And Egyptian Sojourn.....	344
QUESTIONS ON DEUTERONOMY .....	396
ENDNOTE(S).....	398



## **THE BOOK OF GENESIS**

**INTRODUCTION**

**PRINCIPLES**

**TEXT**

**OUTLINE**

**QUESTIONS**

Adapted from the larger work (under contract - prior his home-going) of  
**Dr. Stanley Ellisen, Beloved Professor of English Bible  
And Interpretation  
At The Western Baptist Theological Seminary.**

This Monograph was prepared for Seminary,  
Bible College, Church and Home Bible studies.  
Also contained in each book is an Introduction and  
on opposing pages the associated Biblical text taken from  
the ASV Version of 1901; and a list of  
Class Questions.

THE BOOK OF GENESIS  
**THE BOOK OF GENESIS**  
**INTRODUCTION**

**I. Authorship****A- Title:**

- 1- Hebrews called it “Bereshith” (in beginning)
- 2- Septuagint (LXX) translators called it Genesis (meaning “origins”) because it traces the foundational facts concerning human life and its relationship to God.

**B- Mosaic authorship confirmed:**

- 1- Internal testimony
  - a- Moses’ claim in Exodus 17:14; 34:27; Deut 31:9; 31:24, referring to the Pentateuch as a whole
  - b- Unity of content, antiquated style and character of words, as distinguished from all other Old Testament writings.
  - c- Acquaintance of author with ancient Egypt (Keil).
- 2- External Testimony:
  - a- Testimony of archeology, Jewish traditions, and other culture’s traditions. e.g., The Code of Hammurabi, Josephus, etc.
  - b- Testimony of Christ and the New Testament. e.g., “He wrote of Me” (John 1:17, 5:46; Luke 24:44).
- 3- The claim of Mosaic authorship is not inconsistent with the recognition that Moses used ancient document(s) (as does every historian). Divine inspiration guided his selection and comments.

**C- The life of Moses sketched.**

- 1- Born in Goshen, Egypt, c. 1525 B.C., The second son of Amram and Jochebed of the tribe of Levi.
- 2- Brought up in Pharaoh’s house as Pharaoh’s daughter’s adopted son, but nursed and trained by his own mother (Jochebed).
- 3- His first 40 years were spent in Egypt being educated in the Pharaoh’s house and the University of Egypt. He was also in line for the pharaoh’s position. Jealousy and greed may have caused some of the Egyptian officials to set him up for a fall. He was the Egyptian General responsible for quashing a revolt by the Cushites in the south (Josephus). He obtained his Cushite wife (Numbers 12) as a gift from the ruler of Cush for sparing the ruler’s capital city from the sword.
- 4- At age 40 he determined to turn to his own people, to aid them, possibly thinking of revolution against the Pharaoh. Being rejected by his own people, he fled to the land of Midian in the West Central part of Arabia (Williams & Carnuke The Mountain Of Moses). He spent the next 40 years in Midian, starting as a shepherd over the flocks of his soon-to-be father in law, Jethro. His bride’s name was Zipporah. In this locality he learned much of the country to which he would later lead Israel for 38 years.
- 5- At age 80, God called him to become the “savior” of his people in leading them out of Egypt. During this period of 40 years he was in command of Israel, intermediating between them and God. He gave them the law at Sinai and composed the five books of the Pentateuch.
- 6- At the close of the 40-year sojourn in the wilderness, Moses was disenfranchised of his command because of an (?) incidental sin, but was permitted to view the promised land from Mt. Nebo. God buried him in a valley.
- 7- Moses is known as the greatest law-giver in the history of the world and as one of Israel’s most famous personalities.

**II. Historical Setting****A- Setting Of The Writing**

Genesis was written in the wilderness of Sinai as Israel wandered for 38 years following their sin and judgment for unbelief. Here Moses had time to think and compose as he communed with God (especially after the 70 judges were appointed to help him in his judging duties).

**B- Setting Of The Content Of The Book**

The book setting covers the period from the original creation to the death of Joseph in Egypt. It is primarily an eastern setting, geographically ranging between the Mesopotamian Valley across the Fertile Crescent through Palestine to the fertile Nile Valley of Egypt.

C- Date Of The Writing (c. 1445-1425)

Moses may have written Genesis before the exodus (1445) while in Midian, but it is unlikely since he had as yet not been commissioned by the Lord.

He probably wrote Genesis during the early period of the wilderness sojourn, after the Exodus. (1445-1425)

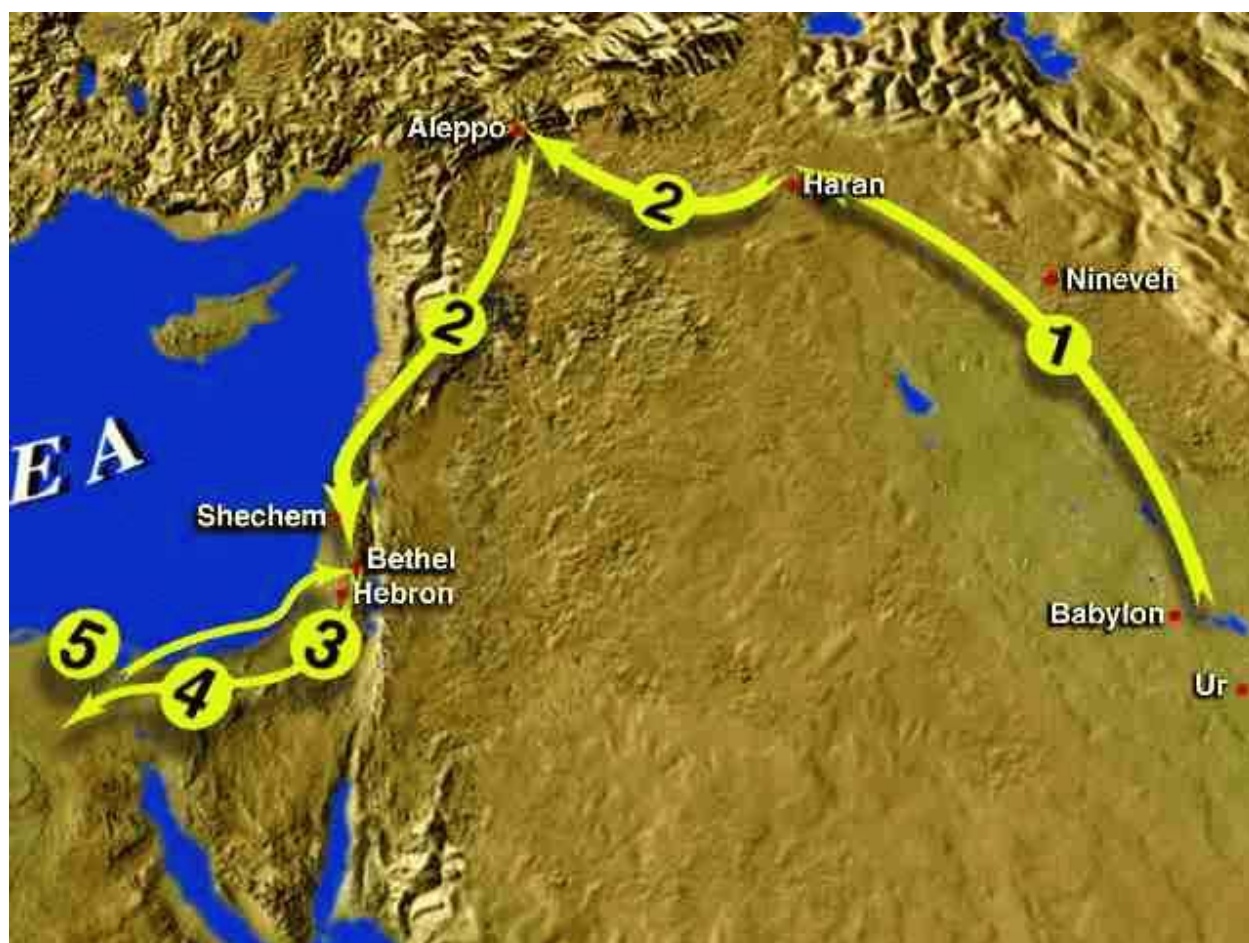
III. Purpose And Theme Of Genesis

A- The purpose of Genesis is to trace the history of man as it pertains to his relationship with God, as well as the beginning of God's kingdom and redemptive programs. Its function is to give foundation and direction to all of God's forthcoming revelation.

B- The theme of Genesis is the sovereignty of God and the responsibility of man. He is seen as sovereign over the material universe, man, nations, and all history. Concurrent with this theme is the theme of the responsibility of man. Man is repeatedly seen as the object of God's grace but also the object of God's judgment as he fails in his responsibility to live under God's sovereign grace.

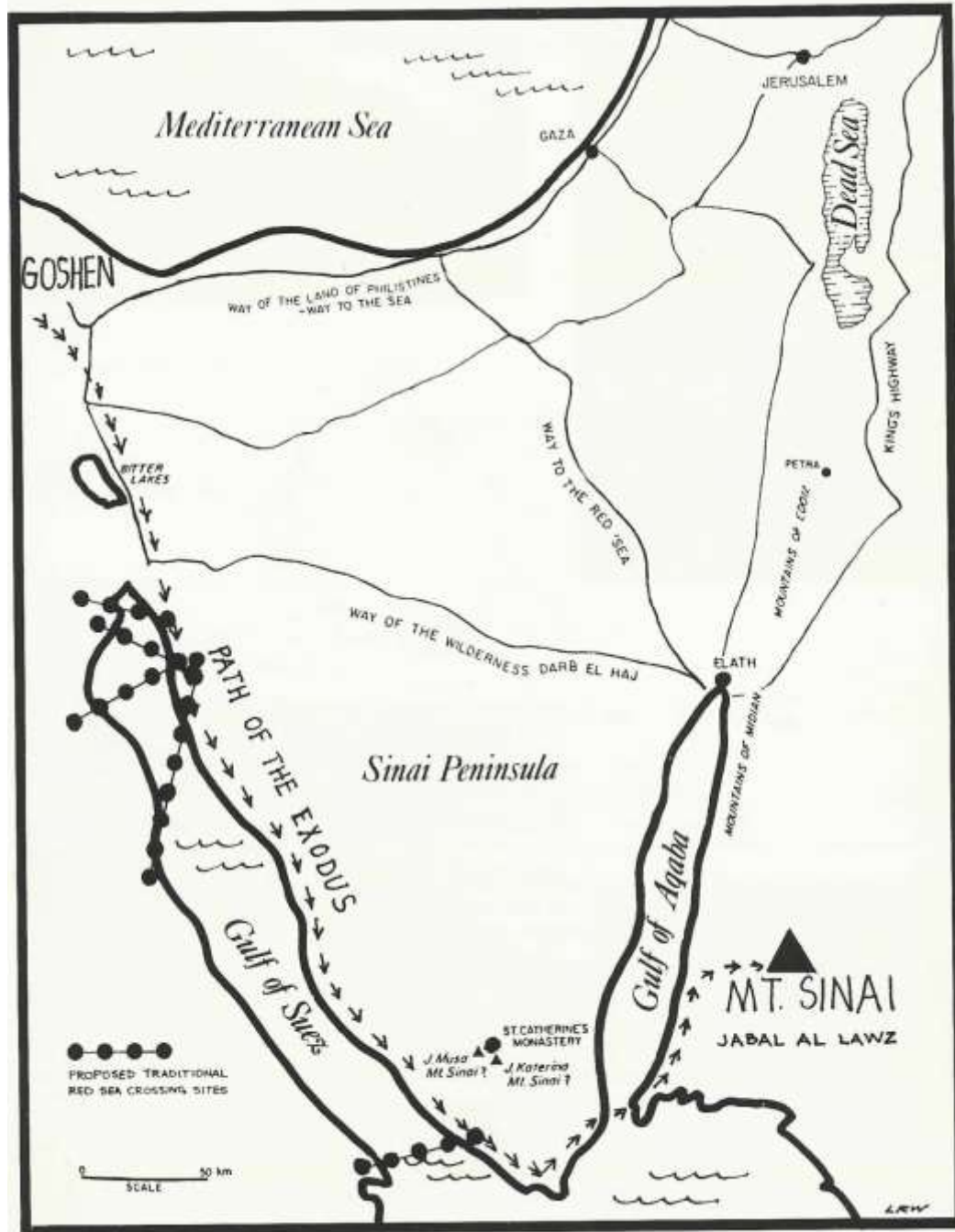


Figure 01. Map Of Nations post Flood Pre-Peleg.



**Figure 02. Abraham's Journeys.**





**Figure 03. A Proposed Route Of The Exodus**

Map Courtesy of Dr. Bob Cornuke. "The Mountain Of Moses" JABAL AL LAWZ.

1 ¶ In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth.

Note the Biblical outline suggested by genealogies (“Toledoth”)

1- The Creation Account	1:1
2- Generations of the heavens and earth	2:4
3- Generations of Adam	5:1
4- Generations of Noah	6:8
5- Generations of the sons of Noah	10:1
6- Generations of Shem	11:10
7- Generations of Terah	11:27
8- Generations of Ishmael	25:12
9- Generations of Isaac	25:19
10- Generations of Esau	36:1
11- Generations of the sons of Esau	36:9
12- Generations of Jacob	37:2

Note:

1- Generations here, signifies the descendants of the one named.

2- It is noted that the genealogy of those not in the Messianic line are given first, then that of the direct line (i.e., Cain before Seth; Japheth and Ham before Shem). The creation of each is first given and then the generation or story of his descendants follows.

---

**Broad Structural Outline** (which we’ll use, below.)

<b>I. Primeval History Of The Human Race</b>	<b>1 - 11</b>
<b>II. Patriarchal History Of The Hebrew Race</b>	<b>12 - 50</b>

---

**I. Primeval History Of The Human Race**

A- The Account Of Creation

- 1- General account of the universe and man 1 - 2:3
  - a- Initial creation vs. 1
    - 1) Verse one asserts:
      - a) **The priority of God over the universe** - ultimate unifying and metaphysical principle of the universe
      - b) **Matter is subsequent and subservient to personality**
      - c) **The universe is derived from God**, not something else
      - d) **“Elohim” (Hebrew Plural (not dual) Masculine) suggests God’s magnificence** and allows for the doctrine of the Trinity
    - 2) Verse one denies (human errors repudiated):
      - a) Atheism - No God, at least no personal God
      - b) Polytheism - Many gods
      - c) Fatalism - Chance?
      - d) Evolution - Progressive organization - is contrary to the second law of thermo-dynamics
      - e) Pantheism - God is all and in all
      - f) Materialism - Eternity of matter (Gnostics, Persians, Commies, etc.)
    - 3) **Verse one requires Faith** - God attempts to prove His existence - (Heb 11:1) Faith defined: Belief in the testimony of God from the Scriptures apart from all pragmatic evidence.
      - a) The scope - the entire universe - the heavens and the earth
      - b) The time - In beginning - God also created time.
      - c) He created Ek Nihilo – From nothing.<sup>1</sup>

**Genesis 1:2-27**

- 2 And the earth was without form, and void; and darkness *was* upon the face of the deep. And the Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters.
- 3 ¶ And God said, Let there be light: and there was light.
- 4 And God saw the light, that *it was* good: and God divided the light from the darkness.
- 5 And God called the light Day, and the darkness he called Night. And the evening and the morning were the first day.
- 6 ¶ And God said, Let there be a firmament in the midst of the waters, and let it divide the waters from the waters.
- 7 And God made the firmament, and divided the waters which *were* under the firmament from the waters which *were* above the firmament: and it was so.
- 8 And God called the firmament Heaven. And the evening and the morning were the second day.
- 9 ¶ And God said, Let the waters under the heaven be gathered together unto one place, and let the dry *land* appear: and it was so.
- 10 And God called the dry *land* Earth; and the gathering together of the waters called he Seas: and God saw that *it was* good.
- 11 And God said, Let the earth bring forth grass, the herb yielding seed, *and* the fruit tree yielding fruit after his kind, whose seed *is* in itself, upon the earth: and it was so.
- 12 And the earth brought forth grass, *and* herb yielding seed after his kind, and the tree yielding fruit, whose seed *was* in itself, after his kind: and God saw that *it was* good.
- 13 And the evening and the morning were the third day.
- 14 ¶ And God said, Let there be lights in the firmament of the heaven to divide the day from the night; and let them be for signs, and for seasons, and for days, and years:
- 15 And let them be for lights in the firmament of the heaven to give light upon the earth: and it was so.
- 16 And God made two great lights; the greater light to rule the day, and the lesser light to rule the night: *he made* the stars also.
- 17 And God set them in the firmament of the heaven to give light upon the earth,
- 18 And to rule over the day and over the night, and to divide the light from the darkness: and God saw that *it was* good.
- 19 And the evening and the morning were the fourth day.
- 20 ¶ And God said, Let the waters bring forth abundantly the moving creature that hath life, and fowl *that* may fly above the earth in the open firmament of heaven.
- 21 And God created great whales, and every living creature that moveth, which the waters brought forth abundantly, after their kind, and every winged fowl after his kind: and God saw that *it was* good.
- 22 And God blessed them, saying, Be fruitful, and multiply, and fill the waters in the seas, and let fowl multiply in the earth.
- 23 And the evening and the morning were the fifth day.
- 24 ¶ And God said, Let the earth bring forth the living creature after his kind, cattle, and creeping thing, and beast of the earth after his kind: and it was so.
- 25 And God made the beast of the earth after his kind, and cattle after their kind, and every thing that creepeth upon the earth after his kind: and God saw that *it was* good.
- 26 ¶ And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth.
- 27 So God created man in his *own* image, in the image of God created he him; male and female created he them.

## b- The Initial State Of Creation

vs. 1

## 1) Introductory considerations

vs. 2

The (Holy Spirit 'brooded' above the waters, See Appendix A for a big surprise!

## a) The scope - The earth

## b) The time - After initial creation

## c) The divine agency - The Spirit of God brooded above the waters

## d) The threefold condition of the earth

i) Without form - - Fluid

ii) Without life - - Void

iii) Without light - - Dark

All set for the next five days

## c- God's formation of the universe

1:3-25

## 1) God's work elucidated

Day 1--Light appears

vs. 3-5

Day 2--Air and water separated

vs. 6-8

Day 3--Land and sea separated

vs. 9-13

Day 4--Sun, Moon, and stars arranged

vs. 14-19

Day 5--Fish and birds created

vs. 20-23

Day 6--Animals and man created

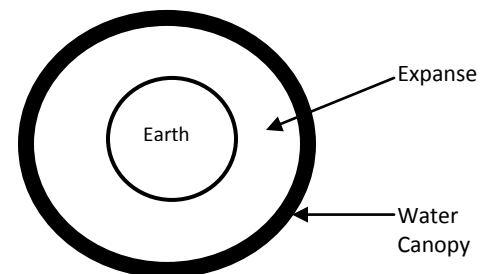
vs. 24-27

## 2) God's work summarized

## a) Light

## b) Order

## c) Life - Inhabitants Being Placed



## 3) The "days" of creation considered

a) The gap theory - The word 'was' Hebr "hayethah" is translated "became" with "without form and void" (Heb. Tohu and Bohu) by those trying to infuse a gap between Gen 1:1 and 1:2. In this gap is theorized hundreds of millions of years to accommodate the theory of evolution. Most grammarians do not translate this verb as an **imperfect** 'became' formless and void, but translate it as a **perfect** "was (Hebr "hayethah" Kal Perfect (preterite) Fem 3S) formless and void.

b) The day-age theory - The idea is IAW 2Pe 3:8 But, beloved, be not ignorant of this one thing, that **one day is with the Lord as a thousand years, and a thousand years as one day**. The day-age theory attempts to validate the findings of modern evolutionary theory (Scientism) with the Bible. C. I. Scofield promulgated this view in his original Scofield Reference Bible. The New Scofield Reference Bible has corrected this error.

c) The myth theory - Gen 1-11 is an allegory emphasizing spiritual principles - Liberals & Neo-orthodox

d) The literal day (Heb. "Yom") theory - God created and formed it in 6 24 hr. days - Morris, Whitcomb, Zimmerman, etc.

## Genesis 1:26-2:14-

- 26 ¶ And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth.
- 27 So God created man in his *own* image, in the image of God created he him; male and female created he them.
- 28 And God blessed them, and God said unto them, Be fruitful, and multiply, and replenish the earth, and subdue it: and have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over every living thing that moveth upon the earth.
- 29 ¶ And God said, Behold, I have given you every herb bearing seed, which *is* upon the face of all the earth, and every tree, in the which *is* the fruit of a tree yielding seed; to you it shall be for meat.
- 30 And to every beast of the earth, and to every fowl of the air, and to every thing that creepeth upon the earth, wherein *there is* life, *I have given* every green herb for meat: and it was so.
- 31 ¶ And God saw every thing that he had made, and, behold, *it was* very good. And the evening and the morning were the sixth day.
- 1 ¶ Thus the heavens and the earth were finished, and all the host of them.
- 2 And on the seventh day God ended his work which he had made; and he rested on the seventh day from all his work which he had made.
- 3 And God blessed the seventh day, and sanctified it: because that in it he had rested from all his work which God created and made.
- 4 ¶ These *are* the generations of the heavens and of the earth when they were created, in the day that the LORD God made the earth and the heavens,
- 5 And every plant of the field before it was in the earth, and every herb of the field before it grew: for the LORD God had not caused it to rain upon the earth, and *there was* not a man to till the ground.
- 6 But there went up a mist from the earth, and watered the whole face of the ground.
- 7 And the LORD God formed man *of* the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living soul.
- 8 ¶ And the LORD God planted a garden eastward in Eden; and there he put the man whom he had formed.
- 9 And out of the ground made the LORD God to grow every tree that is pleasant to the sight, and good for food; the tree of life also in the midst of the garden, and the tree of knowledge of good and evil.
- 10 And a river went out of Eden to water the garden; and from thence it was parted, and became into four heads.
- 11 The name of the first *is* Pison: that *is* it which compasseth the whole land of Havilah, where *there is* gold;
- 12 And the gold of that land *is* good: there *is* bdellium and the onyx stone.
- 13 And the name of the second river *is* Gihon: the same *is* it that compasseth the whole land of Ethiopia.
- 14 And the name of the third river *is* Hiddekel: that *is* it which goeth toward the east of Assyria. And the fourth river *is* Euphrates.

d- God's creation of man

1:26-31

1) His purpose for man

vs. 26

a) Made in God's image and likeness - for fellowship

i) Self consciousness - I am

ii) Intellect - I know

iii) Conscience - I ought

iv) Will - Self determination

Note: Gen 9:6 makes the argument that man is still in God's image - after the fall!

b) Made to dominate the earth - in order to rule for God. Psm 115:16, Neh 1:9.

2) His making of man

vs. 27

a) In the image of God - Related to heavens

b) As male and female - Related to the earth.

3) His blessing and commission

vs. 28-30

a) Fill the earth - Not replenish

b) Subdue and dominate the earth - Suggests that earth needed subdividing

c) Feed on herbs and fruits - After the fall

4) His pronouncement - - "Very Good"

vs. 31

e- God's rest

2:1-3

(means satisfaction - God wasn't tired) - 7<sup>th</sup> day was sanctified (set apart) to celebrate the rhythm of creation

2- Detailed Account Of Man's Creation

2:4-25

a- Introductory recognitions

1) Why this second account? - Man is here seen as related to God where in chapter 1 man was related to the earth.

2) The name Jehovah is introduced - Note men didn't know this name until He spoke to Moses in Exodus 6:3 And I appeared unto Abraham, unto Isaac, and unto Jacob, by *the name of God* Almighty, but by my name JEHOVAH was I not known to them.

b- Two deficiencies noted

vs. 4-5

1) No rain - solved in verse 6 - mist

2) No superintendent - solution - man

c- Creation of man

1) Formed of the dust of the ground - Physical source

2) Generated by the breath of God - Spiritual source

3) Became a living soul - Not (a living soul became man - seems to be held by Strong's Theology)

d- Preparation of the Garden Of Eden

vs. 8-14

1) Trees for sustenance - pleasure – food (Cont. below)

2) A tree of life - Reward for obedience

3) A tree of testing - tree of the knowledge of good and evil - God indicates "get your knowledge from Me."

4) A river - The garden is elevated - Note the course of the rivers. Where was the Garden Of Eden?

**Genesis 2:15-3:8**

- 15 And the LORD God took the man, and put him into the garden of Eden to dress it and to keep it.
- 16 ¶ And the LORD God commanded the man, saying, Of every tree of the garden thou mayest freely eat:
- 17 But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it: for in the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die.
- 18 ¶ And the LORD God said, *It is* not good that the man should be alone; I will make him an help meet for him.
- 19 And out of the ground the LORD God formed every beast of the field, and every fowl of the air; and brought *them* unto Adam to see what he would call them: and whatsoever Adam called every living creature, that *was* the name thereof.
- 20 And Adam gave names to all cattle, and to the fowl of the air, and to every beast of the field; but for Adam there was not found an help meet for him.
- 21 ¶ And the LORD God caused a deep sleep to fall upon Adam, and he slept: and he took one of his ribs, and closed up the flesh instead thereof;
- 22 And the rib, which the LORD God had taken from man, made he a woman, and brought her unto the man.
- 23 And Adam said, *This is* now bone of my bones, and flesh of my flesh: she shall be called Woman, because she was taken out of Man.
- 24 Therefore shall a man leave his father and his mother, and shall cleave unto his wife: and they shall be one flesh.
- 25 And they were both naked, the man and his wife, and were not ashamed.
- 1 ¶ Now the serpent was more subtil than any beast of the field which the LORD God had made. And he said unto the woman, Yea, hath God said, Ye shall not eat of every tree of the garden?
- 2 And the woman said unto the serpent, We may eat of the fruit of the trees of the garden:
- 3 But of the fruit of the tree which *is* in the midst of the garden, God hath said, Ye shall not eat of it, neither shall ye touch it, lest ye die.
- 4 And the serpent said unto the woman, Ye shall not surely die:
- 5 For God doth know that in the day ye eat thereof, then your eyes shall be opened, and ye shall be as gods, knowing good and evil.
- 6 ¶ And when the woman saw that the tree was good for food (Lust of the Flesh), and that it was pleasant to the eyes (Lust of the Eyes), and a tree to be desired to make one wise (Pride of Life), she took of the fruit thereof, and did eat, and gave also unto her husband with her; and he did eat.
- 7 And the eyes of them both were opened, and they knew that they *were* naked; and they sewed fig leaves together, and made themselves aprons.
- 8 And they heard the voice of the LORD God walking in the garden in the cool of the day: and Adam and his wife hid themselves from the presence of the LORD God amongst the trees of the garden.



- e- Commission to man vs. 15-17
  - 1) His satisfaction - freely eat.
  - 2) His work - Dress it and keep it
  - 3) His test - don't EAT of d- 3), above, else you'll die spiritually.
- f- Complement for man - - Woman vs. 18-25
  - 1) The need for woman stressed
  - 2) The creation of women described
  - 3) The typical significance of marriage - Christ and the Church Eph 5:30-32
  - 4) The innocence (not righteous) of Man and woman - Had no shame until there was sin
- B- The Account Of The Fall 3:1-6:7
  - 1- The Entrance Of Sin 3:1-22
    - a- The Temptation vs. 1-5
      - 1) The Setting - Perfect Environment - opposite of Christ's
      - 2) The Source - Outside Source - (Serpent not cause but instrument)
      - 3) The Approach - Distortion of one of God's truths-cast doubt on the Word of God ('Thou shall not touch it')
      - 4) The Method - Rationalized one simple uncomplicated law
      - 5) The Enticement - Ref: Matt 4:3-11, I John 2:15-17 - the same classes of temptations are the devil's tools.
        - i) **Lust of the flesh** - Physical satisfaction
        - ii) **Lust of the eyes** - Cultural satisfaction - make you wise - why nobody likes a wise guy!
        - iii) **Pride of life** - Spiritual progress - You shall be as God - The LIE of Mormonism!
    - b- The Fall - Note that the command was given to Adam - Not to Eve! vs. 6-8
      - 1) Sin of the woman - Deceived then tempted Adam
      - 2) Sin of the man - Willful choice - undeceived. Ref. I Tim 2:9-15
        - 9 ¶ In like manner also, that women adorn themselves in modest apparel, with shamefacedness and sobriety; not with broided hair, or gold, or pearls, or costly array;
        - 10 But (which becometh women professing godliness) with good works.
        - 11 Let the woman learn in silence with all subjection.
        - 12 But I suffer not a woman to teach, nor to usurp authority over the man, but to be in silence.
        - 13 For Adam was first formed, then Eve.
        - 14 And **Adam was not deceived**, but **the woman being deceived was in the transgression**.
        - 15 Notwithstanding she shall be saved in childbearing, if they continue in faith and charity and holiness with sobriety.
      - 3) Immediate results - Eyes open and knew sin - sin began to snowball.

- 9 ¶ And the LORD God called unto Adam, and said unto him, Where *art* thou?
- 10 And he said, I heard thy voice in the garden, and I was afraid, because I *was* naked; and I hid myself.
- 11 ¶ And he said, Who told thee that thou *wast* naked? Hast thou eaten of the tree, whereof I commanded thee that thou shouldest not eat?
- 12 And the man said, The woman whom thou gavest *to be* with me, she gave me of the tree, and I did eat.
- 13 And the LORD God said unto the woman, What *is* this *that* thou hast done? And the woman said, The serpent beguiled me, and I did eat.
- 14 ¶ And the LORD God said unto the serpent, Because thou hast done this, thou *art* cursed above all cattle, and above every beast of the field; upon thy belly shalt thou go, and dust shalt thou eat all the days of thy life:
- 15 And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and *her seed*; it (*her seed*) shall bruise thy head, and thou (Satan's seed) shalt bruise His heel.
- 16 ¶ Unto the woman he said, I will greatly multiply thy sorrow and thy conception; in sorrow thou shalt bring forth children; and thy desire *shall be* to thy husband, and he shall rule over thee.
- 17 ¶ And unto Adam he said, Because thou hast hearkened unto the voice of thy wife, and hast eaten of the tree, of which I commanded thee, saying, Thou shalt not eat of it: cursed *is* the ground for thy sake; in sorrow shalt thou eat *of* it all the days of thy life;
- 18 Thorns also and thistles shall it bring forth to thee; and thou shalt eat the herb of the field;
- 19 In the sweat of thy face shalt thou eat bread, till thou return unto the ground; for out of it wast thou taken: for dust thou *art*, and unto dust shalt thou return.
- 20 ¶ And Adam called his wife's name Eve; because she was the mother of all living.
- 21 ¶ Unto Adam also and to his wife did the LORD God make coats of skins, and clothed them.
- 22 ¶ And the LORD God said, Behold, the man is become as one of us, to know good and evil: and now, lest he put forth his hand, and take also of the tree of life, and eat, and live for ever:
- 23 Therefore the LORD God sent him forth from the garden of Eden, to till the ground from whence he was taken.
- 24 So he drove out the man; and he placed at the east of the garden of Eden Cherubims, and a flaming sword which turned every way, to keep the way of the tree of life.

- c- The Judgment Of God vs. 9-20
  - 1) God's approach - In cool of the day - began seeking sinners - God sought fellowship & was looking for confession
  - 2) The serpent judged - was cursed above all animals
  - 3) The woman judged - sorrow in childbirth, subjection to man -
  - 4) The man judged - Toil & Death - Man now will eat Herbs of the field - The woman's and man's primary duties were duty, privilege, and dignity
  - 5) The ground cursed - All nature affected - Ref. Rom 8:22
- d- The Protoevangelvs. 15
  - 1) Bruising Satan's Head - "It shall bruise thy head." It=The seed of the woman
  - 2) Bruising Christ's Heel - "Thou shall bruise His heel." Thou = Satan
- e- The Provision Of Grace vs. 20-24
  - 1) Eve is reassured - The mother of all mankind
  - 2) They are clothed - The Lord slayed the animals for their coats
  - 3) Access to the "tree of life" is restricted

**GENESIS 4 - The Progress Of Sin**

- 1 ¶ And Adam knew Eve his wife; and she conceived, and bare Cain, and said, I have gotten a man *from the* LORD.  
{See Appendix A}
- 2 And she again bare his brother Abel. And Abel was a keeper of sheep, but Cain was a tiller of the ground.  
{Because Biblical accounts rarely placed women in it's geneology, The problem of Cain's wife can easily fit here. Seth's wife, same answer. Cain and Seth NEC}
- 3 ¶ And in process of time it came to pass, that Cain brought of the fruit of the ground an offering unto the LORD.
- 4 And Abel, he also brought of the firstlings of his flock and of the fat thereof. And the LORD had respect unto Abel and to his offering:
- 5 But unto Cain and to his offering he had not respect. And Cain was very wroth, and his countenance fell.
- 6 ¶ And the LORD said unto Cain, Why art thou wroth? and why is thy countenance fallen?
- 7 If thou doest well, shalt thou not be accepted? and if thou doest not well, sin lieth at the door. And unto thee *shall be* his desire, and thou shalt rule over him.
- 8 ¶ And Cain talked with Abel his brother: and it came to pass, when they were in the field, that Cain rose up against Abel his brother, and slew him.
- 9 ¶ And the LORD said unto Cain, Where *is* Abel thy brother? And he said, I know not: *Am* I my brother's keeper?
- 10 And he said, What hast thou done? the voice of thy brother's blood crieth unto me from the ground.
- 11 And now *art* thou cursed from the earth, which hath opened her mouth to receive thy brother's blood from thy hand;
- 12 When thou tillest the ground, it shall not henceforth yield unto thee her strength; a fugitive and a vagabond shalt thou be in the earth.
- 13 ¶ And Cain said unto the LORD, My punishment *is* greater than I can bear.
- 14 Behold, thou hast driven me out this day from the face of the earth; and from thy face shall I be hid; and I shall be a fugitive and a vagabond in the earth; and it shall come to pass, *that* every one that findeth me shall slay me.
- 15 And the LORD said unto him, Therefore whosoever slayeth Cain, vengeance shall be taken on him sevenfold. And the LORD set a mark upon Cain, lest any finding him should kill him.
- 16 ¶ And Cain went out from the presence of the LORD, and dwelt in the land of Nod, on the east of Eden.

**The Ungodly Line Through Cain**

- 17 And Cain knew his wife; and she conceived, and bare Enoch: and he builded a city, and called the name of the city, after the name of his son, Enoch.
- 18 And unto Enoch was born Irad: and Irad begat Mehujael: and Mehujael begat Methusael: and Methusael begat Lamech.
- 19 ¶ And Lamech took unto him two wives: the name of the one *was* Adah, and the name of the other Zillah.
- 20 And Adah bare Jabal: he was the father of such as dwell in tents, and *of such as have* cattle.
- 21 And his brother's name *was* Jubal: he was the father of all such as handle the harp and organ.
- 22 And Zillah, she also bare Tubalcain, an instructor of every artificer in brass and iron: and the sister of Tubalcain *was* Naamah.
- 23 ¶ And Lamech said unto his wives, Adah and Zillah, Hear my voice; ye wives of Lamech, hearken unto my speech: for I have slain a man to my wounding, and a young man to my hurt.
- 24 If Cain shall be avenged sevenfold, truly Lamech seventy and sevenfold.

## B- The Account Of The Fall (Cont.)

- 2- The Progress Of Sin 4:1-6:7
- a- Introductory Considerations - Sin is now traced from Individual to home to children to society
    - 1) Seed Of The Serpent
    - 2) Seed Of The Woman {See Appendix B for another surprise}<sup>2</sup>
  - b- The Offerings Of Cain And Able vs. 1-5  
 Cain's Offering Reflected THE WORLD'S REJECTION OF A BLOOD OFFERING
    - 1) Their Occupations. - Farmer vs Shepherd
    - 2) Their Worship - Both religious - One the works of his hands, the other the Grace of God.
    - 3) God's Instruction To Cain.
      - a) Abel's Offering Reflected his faith - Heb 11:4
      - b) Cain's Offering Reflected his Pride - I John 3:12
  - c- The Sin Of Cain vs. 5-15
    - 1) His Unresponsiveness To God vs.5
    - 2) His Counsel And Warning From The Lord vs. 6-7
    - 3) The Murder of Abel - The first born becomes a murderer! vs. 8
    - 4) His Judgment - God again sought a confession; God cursed the ground for Cain's sake! vs. 9-15  
 "Whoever slays Cain, vengeance shall be taken on him seven times. The mark of Cain given.
    - 5) God's Further Mercy And Governmental Principle - God refused to take vengeance even on a murderer vs. 15
  - d- The Society And Descendants of Cain vs. 16-24
    - 1) Polygamy Introduced - Lamech ----> (Adah and Zillah) vs. 19
    - 2) Culture Develops - Commerce, Music, Metallurgy, Art, Crime(Lamech) vs. 17,20-22
    - 3) Crime Again Noted - (70+7) Lamech claims God's protection because he killed a man in "self defense". vs. 23-24
    - 4) Absence Of Religion - No one walks with God - The Curse Of Ungodly Parents

## A New Beginning Of The Godly Remnant

**Gen 4:25 ¶** And Adam knew his wife again; and she bare a son, and called his name Seth: For God, *said she*, hath appointed me another seed instead of Abel, whom Cain slew.

26 And to Seth, to him also there was born a son; and he called his name Enos: then began men to call upon the name of the LORD.

### GENESIS 5 - The Godly Line Through Seth <sup>a</sup>

**Gen 5:1 ¶** This is the book of the generations of Adam. In the day that God created man, in the likeness of God made he him;

2 Male and female created he them; and blessed them, and called their name Adam, in the day when they were created.

3 And Adam lived an hundred and thirty years, and begat *a son* in his own likeness, after his image; and called his name Seth:

4 And the days of Adam after he had begotten Seth were eight hundred years: and he begat sons and daughters:

5 And all the days that Adam lived were nine hundred and thirty years: and he died.

6 ¶ And Seth lived an hundred and five years, and begat Enos:

7 And Seth lived after he begat Enos eight hundred and seven years, and begat sons and daughters:

8 And all the days of Seth were nine hundred and twelve years: and he died.

9 And Enos lived ninety years, and begat Cainan:

10 And Enos lived after he begat Cainan eight hundred and fifteen years, and begat sons and daughters:

11 And all the days of Enos were nine hundred and five years: and he died.

12 And Cainan lived seventy years, and begat Mahalaleel:

13 And Cainan lived after he begat Mahalaleel eight hundred and forty years, and begat sons and daughters:

14 And all the days of Cainan were nine hundred and ten years: and he died.

15 And Mahalaleel lived sixty and five years, and begat Jared:

16 And Mahalaleel lived after he begat Jared eight hundred and thirty years, and begat sons and daughters:

17 And all the days of Mahalaleel were eight hundred ninety and five years: and he died.

18 And Jared lived an hundred sixty and two years, and he begat Enoch:

19 And Jared lived after he begat Enoch eight hundred years, and begat sons and daughters:

20 And all the days of Jared were nine hundred sixty and two years: and he died.

21 ¶ And Enoch lived sixty and five years, and begat Methuselah:

22 And Enoch walked with God after he begat Methuselah three hundred years, and begat sons and daughters:

23 And all the days of Enoch were three hundred sixty and five years:

24 And Enoch walked with God: and he *was* not; for God took him.

25 ¶ And Methuselah lived an hundred eighty and seven years, and begat Lamech:

26 And Methuselah lived after he begat Lamech seven hundred eighty and two years, and begat sons and daughters:

27 And all the days of Methuselah were nine hundred sixty and nine years: and he died.

28 ¶ And Lamech lived an hundred eighty and two years, and begat a son:

29 And he called his name Noah, saying, This *same* shall comfort us concerning our work and toil of our hands, because of the ground which the LORD hath cursed.

30 And Lamech lived after he begat Noah five hundred ninety and five years, and begat sons and daughters:

31 And all the days of Lamech were seven hundred seventy and seven years: and he died.

32 And Noah was five hundred years old: and Noah begat Shem, Ham, and Japheth.

---

<sup>a</sup> {Almost all of the Sethite line were also ungodly. Remember 8 Mouths in a boat. NEC}

- 1)- A New Beginning - With Seth, people began to identify themselves with The creation God. vs. 25-26
- 2)- Fellowship With God Noted. vs. 26
- 3)- Longevity Noted - The corruption of the fall had not taken its full affect (sun's rays not yet direct.
- 4) Simplicity Of Living Suggested. 5:1-32
  - a) The Reign Of Death - Ref. Rom 5:14 (Death reined as a king) vs. 1-5
  - b) Seth's Family Line - Note the life spans vs. 6-32
  - c) Noah And His Three Sons vs. 32

**Genesis 6 - The Failure Of The Godly Remnant – {Except Noah!}**

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass, when men began to multiply on the face of the earth, and daughters were born unto them,
- 2 That the sons of God saw the daughters of men that they *were* fair; and they took them wives of all which they chose.
- 3 ¶ And the LORD said, My spirit shall not always strive with man, for that he also *is* flesh: yet his days shall be an hundred and twenty years.
- 4 ¶ There were giants in the earth in those days; and also after that, when the sons of God came in unto the daughters of men, and they bare *children* to them, the same *became* mighty men which *were* of old, men of renown.
- 5 And GOD saw that the wickedness of man *was* great in the earth, and *that* every imagination of the thoughts of his heart *was* only evil continually.



## 2- The Progress Of Sin (4:1-6:7) Cont.

f- The Condition Of Society At The Time Of Noah 6:1-7

1) The Intermingling Of The Two Lines - Of Seth and Cain vs. 1-2

The Sons of God = \_\_\_\_\_<sup>3</sup>

The Daughters Of Men = \_\_\_\_\_

Sons Of God refers to those who rule for God! Chose wives on the basis of their sensual appetites. {Or better, Sons of God refers to Created beings, and here refers to "The evil angels who kept not their first estate".

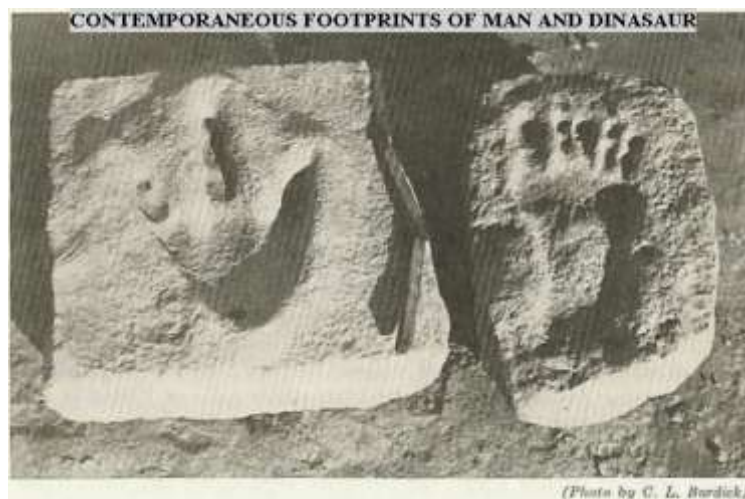
2) God's Warning And Period Of Probation - God's Patience Has A Limit! vs. 3

3) The Degenerating Results Of Intermingling - Nethelim = Giants. - oppressors in the earth vs. 4

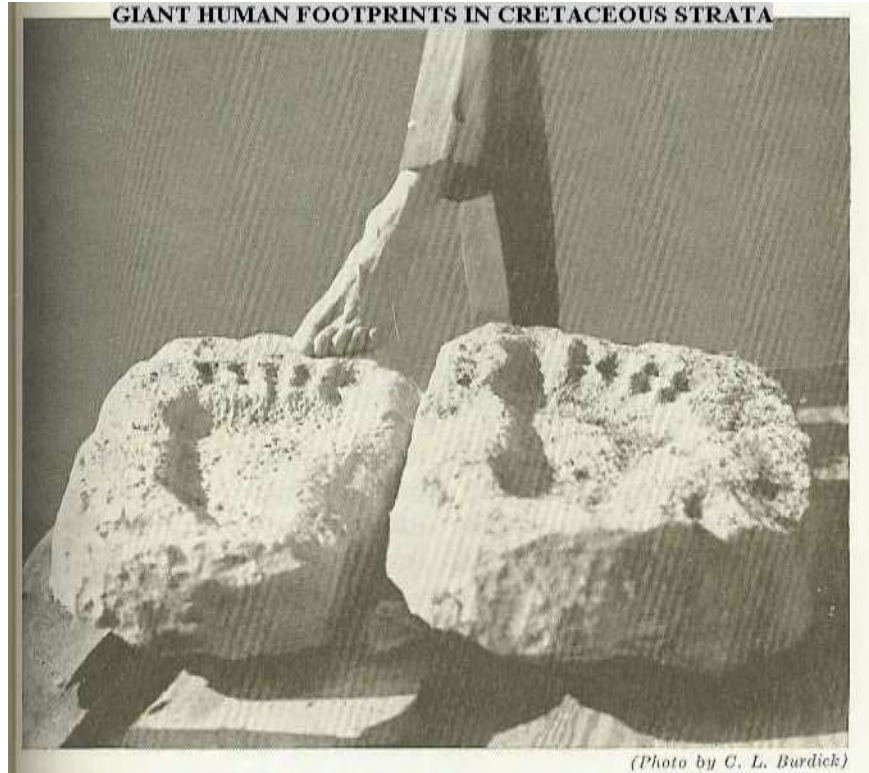
4) God's Evaluation - Continually Wicked - Filled With Violence! vs. 5



**Figure 04. Footprints Of Human and Dinosaur Tracks**



**Figure 05. Contemporaneous Footprints Of Human and Dinosaur**



**Figure 06. Giant Footprints Of Human Compared with Modern Man.**

**There Were Giants In The Earth In Those Days . . . Men Of Renown**

## SOME FLOOD CULTURAL RESIDUALS

THE FOLLOWING IS A DISPLAY OF 3 MANDERIN CHINESE WORDS WHICH REV. DAVID KING SHOWED TO ME IN MAY 1969. D. KING IS AN INDEPENDENT MISSIONARY TO FORMOSA & WHO MIRACULOUSLY LEARNED THIS DIALECT (BOTH WRITTEN & SPOKEN) IN 6 MO. TIME.

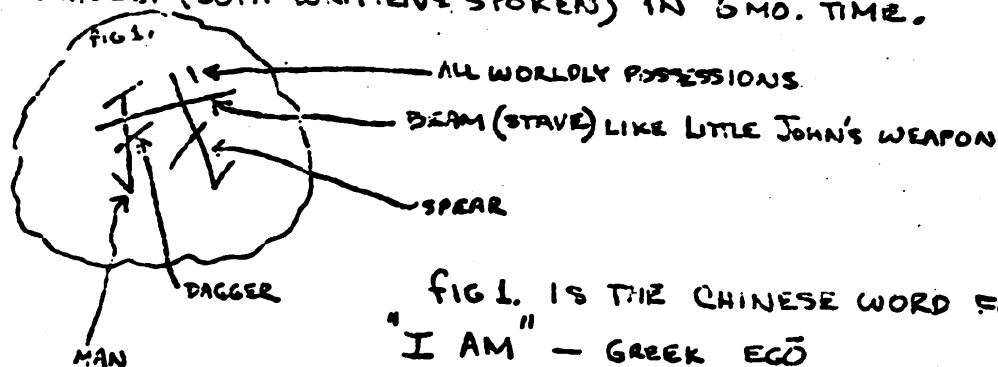


FIG. 1. IS THE CHINESE WORD FOR "I AM" — GREEK EGO

FIG. 2. PORTRAYS THE "I AM" WORD ONLY THIS TIME IT IS COVERED BY THE CHINESE CHARACTER FOR SHEEP — THIS WORD, (ALL OF FIG. 2.) IS THUS TRANSFORMED INTO THE CHINESE CHARACTER FOR RIGHTEOUSNESS.

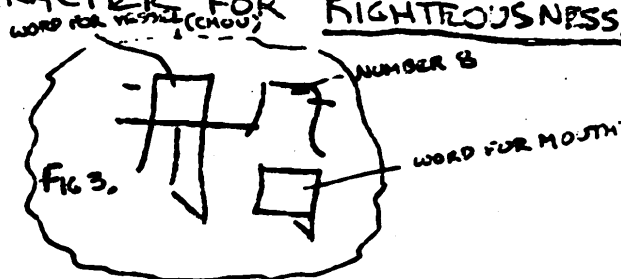
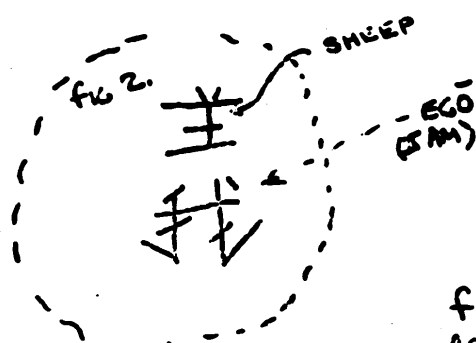


FIG. 3. IS THE CHARACTER FOR BOAT ACTUALLY 8 MOUTHS IN A BOAT.

FIG. 4 IS THE CHINESE CHARACTER FOR "COME"

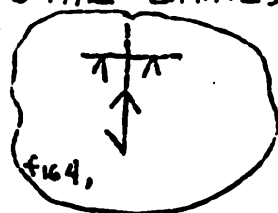


Figure 07. Mandarin Chinese Writing For 8 Mouths In A Boat



## GENESIS 6

## The Debilitating Effect Of Sin

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass, when men began to multiply on the face of the earth, and daughters were born unto them,
- 2 That the sons of God saw the daughters of men that they *were* fair; and they took them wives of all which they chose.
- 3 ¶ And the LORD said, My spirit shall not always strive with man, for that he also *is* flesh: yet his days shall be an hundred and twenty years.
- 4 ¶ There were giants in the earth in those days; and also after that, when the sons of God came in unto the daughters of men, and they bare *children* to them, the same *became* mighty men which *were* of old, men of renown.
- 5 And GOD saw that the wickedness of man *was* great in the earth, and *that* every imagination of the thoughts of his heart *was* only evil continually.
- 6 ¶ And it repented the LORD that he had made man on the earth, and it grieved him at his heart.
- 7 And the LORD said, I will destroy man whom I have created from the face of the earth; both man, and beast, and the creeping thing, and the fowls of the air; for it repenteth me that I have made them.

## The Enabling Effect Of Righteousnes

- 8 ¶ But Noah found grace in the eyes of the LORD.
- 9 These *are* the generations of Noah: Noah was a just man *and* perfect in his generations, *and* Noah walked with God.
- 10 And Noah begat three sons, Shem, Ham, and Japheth.
- 11 ¶ The earth also was corrupt before God, and the earth was filled with violence.
- 12 And God looked upon the earth, and, behold, it was corrupt; for all flesh had corrupted his way upon the earth.
- 13 ¶ And God said unto Noah, The end of all flesh is come before me; for the earth is filled with violence through them; and, behold, I will destroy them with the earth.
- 14 Make thee an ark of gopher wood; rooms shalt thou make in the ark, and shalt pitch it within and without with pitch.
- 15 And this *is the fashion* which thou shalt make it *of*: The length of the ark *shall be* three hundred cubits, the breadth of it fifty cubits, and the height of it thirty cubits.
- 16 A window shalt thou make to the ark, and in a cubit shalt thou finish it above; and the door of the ark shalt thou set in the side thereof; *with* lower, second, and third *stories* shalt thou make it.
- 17 And, behold, I, even I, do bring a flood of waters upon the earth, to destroy all flesh, wherein *is* the breath of life, from under heaven; *and* every thing that *is* in the earth shall die.
- 18 But with thee will I establish my covenant; and thou shalt come into the ark, thou, and thy sons, and thy wife, and thy sons' wives with thee.
- 19 And of every living thing of all flesh, two of every *sort* shalt thou bring into the ark, to keep *them* alive with thee; they shall be male and female.
- 20 Of fowls after their kind, and of cattle after their kind, of every creeping thing of the earth after his kind, two of every *sort* shall come unto thee, to keep *them* alive.
- 21 And take thou unto thee of all food that is eaten, and thou shalt gather *it* to thee; and it shall be for food for thee, and for them.
- 22 ¶ Thus did Noah; according to all that God commanded him, so did he.

- c- The Account Of The Flood (6:5.-8:14.)
  - 1- God's Response To Wickedness - JUDGMENT vs. 6:5-13
    - a- His Survey Of Man - WICKED - possibly demon possessed vs. 5
    - b- His Attitude Toward Sin - GRIEVED - Anthropopathism vs. 7
    - c- His Sentence - Universal Destruction Of The Race - vs. 7  
An act of mercy to unborn Generations
  - 2- God's Response To Righteousness - GRACE vs. 8-22
    - a- Noah's Character - He walked with God vs. 9-10
    - b- Noah's Environment - Filled With VIOLENCE vs. 11-13
    - c- Noah's Commission - 6:14-22
      - 1) The Command To Build - A Barge - 450 X 75 X 45. 3 stories, 1 door, 1 window! vs. 14-16
      - 2) The Coming Flood - Source was from the Lord "I, even I, vs. 17
      - 3) The Covenant Of Grace - Noah To Be Preserved IN The Ark vs. 18
      - 4) The Command To Preserve The Animals vs. 19-22  
"They Shall Come Unto Thee"

## GENESIS 7

- 1 ¶ And the LORD said unto Noah, Come thou and all thy house into the ark; for thee have I seen righteous before me in this generation.
- 2 Of every clean beast thou shalt take to thee by sevens, the male and his female: and of beasts that *are* not clean by two, the male and his female.
- 3 Of fowls also of the air by sevens, the male and the female; to keep seed alive upon the face of all the earth.
- 4 For yet seven days, and I will cause it to rain upon the earth forty days and forty nights; and every living substance that I have made will I destroy from off the face of the earth.
- 5 ¶ And Noah did according unto all that the LORD commanded him.
- 6 And Noah *was* six hundred years old when the flood of waters was upon the earth.
- 7 And Noah went in, and his sons, and his wife, and his sons' wives with him, into the ark, because of the waters of the flood.
- 8 Of clean beasts, and of beasts that *are* not clean, and of fowls, and of every thing that creepeth upon the earth,
- 9 There went in two and two unto Noah into the ark, the male and the female, as God had commanded Noah.
- 10 And it came to pass after seven days, that the waters of the flood were upon the earth.
- 11 ¶ In the six hundredth year of Noah's life, in the second month, the seventeenth day of the month, the same day were all the fountains of the great deep broken up, and the windows of heaven were opened.
- 12 And the rain was upon the earth forty days and forty nights.
- 13 ¶ In the selfsame day entered Noah, and Shem, and Ham, and Japheth, the sons of Noah, and Noah's wife, and the three wives of his sons with them, into the ark;
- 14 They, and every beast after his kind, and all the cattle after their kind, and every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth after his kind, and every fowl after his kind, every bird of every sort.
- 15 And they went in unto Noah into the ark, two and two of all flesh, wherein *is* the breath of life.
- 16 And they that went in, went in male and female of all flesh, as God had commanded him: and the LORD shut him in.
- 17 ¶ And the flood was forty days upon the earth; and the waters increased, and bare up the ark, and it was lift up above the earth.
- 18 And the waters prevailed, and were increased greatly upon the earth; and the ark went upon the face of the waters.
- 19 And the waters prevailed exceedingly upon the earth; and all the high hills, that *were* under the whole heaven, were covered.
- 20 Fifteen cubits upward did the waters prevail; and the mountains were covered.
- 21 ¶ And all flesh died that moved upon the earth, both of fowl, and of cattle, and of beast, and of every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth, and every man:
- 22 All in whose nostrils *was* the breath of life, of all that *was* in the dry *land*, died.
- 23 And every living substance was destroyed which was upon the face of the ground, both man, and cattle, and the creeping things, and the fowl of the heaven; and they were destroyed from the earth: and Noah only remained *alive*, and they that *were* with him in the ark.
- 24 And the waters prevailed upon the earth an hundred and fifty days.



## 3- The Flood - (7.)

- a- The Preparation - 1650 years- 18 generations from creation of Adam to the Flood  
Methuselah died the year of the flood vs. 1-9
  - 1) Noah's Entrance - 8 out of approx. 100,000,000 were saved! vs. 7
  - 2) The Animal's Entrance - 1 pair unclean, 7 pair clean animals vs. 9
  - 3) Seven Final Days Of Opportunity - The world WATCHED! vs. 4, 10
  - 4) God Shut The Door! - Them inside, the world outside. vs. 16
- b- The Deluge - The greatest geologic change since creation!! vs. 10-24
  - 1) The Date - 1650 years after creation
  - 2) The Duration - 40 Days Rain - 150 days until resting on Mt. (of) Ararat, then: 1 year and 10 days until water receded vs. 12,24
  - 3) The Extent - Universal According to literal interpretation. 15 cubits above the mountains.
  - 4) The Source of the waters
    - i) From Below - the fountains of the deep vs. 11
    - ii) From Above - Windows of heaven were opened - vs. 11

**Genesis 8**

- 1 ¶ And God remembered Noah, and every living thing, and all the cattle that *was* with him in the ark: and God made a wind to pass over the earth, and the waters asswaged;
- 2 The fountains also of the deep and the windows of heaven were stopped, and the rain from heaven was restrained;
- 3 And the waters returned from off the earth continually: and after the end of the hundred and fifty days the waters were abated.
- 4 ¶ And the ark rested in the seventh month, on the seventeenth day of the month, upon the mountains of Ararat.
- 5 And the waters decreased continually until the tenth month: in the tenth *month*, on the first *day* of the month, were the tops of the mountains seen.
- 6 ¶ And it came to pass at the end of forty days, that Noah opened the window of the ark which he had made:
- 7 And he sent forth a raven, which went forth to and fro, until the waters were dried up from off the earth.
- 8 Also he sent forth a dove from him, to see if the waters were abated from off the face of the ground;
- 9 But the dove found no rest for the sole of her foot, and she returned unto him into the ark, for the waters *were* on the face of the whole earth: then he put forth his hand, and took her, and pulled her in unto him into the ark.
- 10 And he stayed yet other seven days; and again he sent forth the dove out of the ark;
- 11 And the dove came in to him in the evening; and, lo, in her mouth *was* an olive leaf pluckt off: so Noah knew that the waters were abated from off the earth.
- 12 And he stayed yet other seven days; and sent forth the dove; which returned not again unto him any more.
- 13 ¶ And it came to pass in the six hundredth and first year, in the first *month*, the first *day* of the month, the waters were dried up from off the earth: and Noah removed the covering of the ark, and looked, and, behold, the face of the ground was dry.
- 14 And in the second month, on the seven and twentieth day of the month, was the earth dried.
- 15 ¶ And God spake unto Noah, saying,
- 16 Go forth of the ark, thou, and thy wife, and thy sons, and thy sons' wives with thee.
- 17 Bring forth with thee every living thing that *is* with thee, of all flesh, *both* of fowl, and of cattle, and of every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth; that they may breed abundantly in the earth, and be fruitful, and multiply upon the earth.
- 18 And Noah went forth, and his sons, and his wife, and his sons' wives with him:
- 19 Every beast, every creeping thing, and every fowl, *and* whatsoever creepeth upon the earth, after their kinds, went forth out of the ark.
- 20 ¶ And Noah builded an altar unto the LORD; and took of every clean beast, and of every clean fowl, and offered burnt offerings on the altar.

## I. A- Cont.

## 4- The Receding Of The Flood (8.)

## a- God's Hand Of Restoration vs. 1-5

1) The Wind Currents - Wind to pass over the earth because sun is shining directly on the earth.

Convection

2) The Drainage - Settling and rising

3) The Landing On The Mts. Of Ararat - After 5 months

## b- Noah's Experimentations 8:7-12

1) The raven sent out - A scavenger vs. 8

2) The dove also sent out three times vs.9-12

i) Came back with nothing. - Waited 7 days vs. 9

ii) Came back with an olive twig - Waited another 7 days vs. 10-11

iii) Didn't return - vs. 12

3) Noah leaves the ark only at God's command - He didn't leave on his own! vs. 15  
371 days in all.

## D- The Account Of The New Generation (8:15.-11:22.)

## 1- Noah's Departure From The Ark vs. 8:15-20

a- A God Directed Life - He departed At God's Command vs. 15

b- A God Centered Life - First built an altar to God & offered lavishly unto the Lord  
. vs. 20

**The Noaic Covenant - 8:21 - 9:17**

**Gen 8:21** And the LORD smelled a sweet savour; and the LORD said in his heart, **I will not again curse the ground any more for man's sake; for the imagination of man's heart is evil from his youth;** neither will I again smite any more every thing living, as I have done.

22 **While the earth remaineth, seedtime and harvest, and cold and heat, and summer and winter, and day and night shall not cease.**

**Gen 9:1 ¶** And God blessed Noah and his sons, and said unto them, Be fruitful, and multiply, and replenish the earth.

2 And **the fear of you and the dread of you shall be upon every beast of the earth,** and upon every fowl of the air, upon all that moveth *upon* the earth, and upon all the fishes of the sea; into your hand are they delivered.

3 **Every moving thing that liveth shall be meat for you;** even as the green herb have I given you all things.

4 But **flesh with the life thereof, which is the blood thereof, shall ye not eat.**

5 And **surely your blood of your lives will I require; at the hand of every beast will I require it, and at the hand of man; at the hand of every man's brother will I require the life of man.** (capital punishment)

6 Whoso sheddeth man's blood, by man shall his blood be shed: for in the image of God made he man.

7 And you, be ye fruitful, and multiply; bring forth abundantly in the earth, and multiply therein.

8 ¶ And God spake unto Noah, and to his sons with him, saying,

9 And I, behold, **I establish my covenant with you, and with your seed after you;**

10 And with every living creature that *is* with you, of the fowl, of the cattle, and of every beast of the earth with you; from all that go out of the ark, to every beast of the earth.

11 And I will establish my covenant with you; neither shall all flesh be cut off any more by the waters of a flood; neither shall there any more be a flood to destroy the earth.

12 ¶ And God said, This *is* **the token of the covenant which I make between me and you and every living creature that is with you, for perpetual generations:**

13 **I do set my bow in the cloud,** and it shall be for a token of a covenant between me and the earth.

14 And it shall come to pass, when I bring a cloud over the earth, that the bow shall be seen in the cloud:

15 And I will remember my covenant, which *is* between me and you and every living creature of all flesh; and the waters shall no more become a flood to destroy all flesh.

16 And the bow shall be in the cloud; and I will look upon it, that **I may remember the everlasting covenant between God and every living creature of all flesh that is upon the earth.**

17 And God said unto Noah, This *is* the token of the covenant, which I have established between me and all flesh that *is* upon the earth.

**The Prophecy By Noah**

18 ¶ And the sons of Noah, that went forth of the ark, were Shem, and Ham, and Japheth: and Ham *is* the father of Canaan.

19 These *are* the three sons of Noah: and of them was the whole earth overspread.

20 And Noah began *to be* an husbandman, and he planted a vineyard:

21 And he drank of the wine, and was drunken; and he was uncovered within his tent.

22 And Ham, the father of Canaan, saw the nakedness of his father, and told his two brethren without.

23 And Shem and Japheth took a garment, and laid *it* upon both their shoulders, and went backward, and covered the nakedness of their father; and their faces *were* backward, and they saw not their father's nakedness.

24 ¶ And Noah awoke from his wine, and knew what his younger son had done unto him.

25 And he said, Cursed *be* Canaan; a servant of servants shall he be unto his brethren.

26 And he said, Blessed *be* the LORD God of Shem; and Canaan shall be his servant.

27 God shall enlarge Japheth, and he shall dwell in the tents of Shem; and Canaan shall be his servant.

28 ¶ And Noah lived after the flood three hundred and fifty years.

29 And all the days of Noah were nine hundred and fifty years: and he died.

- 2- God's Covenant With Noah (8:21.-9:17.)
- a- God's Pleasure - The offering that Noah made was a sweet savor to יהוה - Jehovah vs. 21
  - b- God's Promise - No further universal floods - The seasonal variations - brand new! vs. 22
  - c- God's Provision - Man given meat to eat - No Blood vs. 9:3
  - d- God's Plan Of Human Government - Capital Punishment instituted vs. 6  
to stem the tide of wickedness in the earth. This is the basis of human government  
See Rom 13:1-4
  - e- God's Pledge In The Rainbow - "The waters shall no more become a flood to destroy ALL flesh. vs. 17
- 3- Noah's Prophecy Concerning His Three Sons 9:18-29
- a- Their Linage - The Progenitors Of All Races vs. 18-19
  - b- The Shame Of Noah vs. 20-21
    - 1) Planted a Vineyard - He began to be a vinedresser vs. 20
    - 2) Became Drunken, etc. vs. 21
  - c- The Sin Of Ham vs. 22
  - d- The Nobility of Shem And Japheth - sought to rescue Noah from the problem vs. 23
  - e- The Curse (Not on Ham) on Canaan
  - f- The Blessing On Shem And Japheth vs. 27  
Japheth will dwell in the tents of Shem. Japheth to be enlarged & share the blessings of Shem
  - g- Noah's Great Age - 350 years after the flood vs. 28-29  
Terah born 220 years after the flood. This would put Abram's birth 300+ years after the flood.

{ Mohammed was a False Prophet<sup>4</sup>. For example. Mohammed and the Bahai 'prophets' Erred in their 'prophecy about the length of time Noah preached before the flood – 950 years. The **Bab, Baha-ullah**, (of the Bahai faith) **and Mohammed** (Koran Su 11:38 and Su 29:14), made the same egregious error in their 'inspired' works. As is seen in Gen 6:11 **Noah was 600 years, one month, and 17 days, old, when the flood came! These three are false prophets**; Deu 13:1-5, 18:20-22; Isa 8:20; 2 Pet 1:19-2:19; Rev 22:12-21.

Note: the actual Koran reference to the time of Noah's preflood ministry, from Su 11:38, may have been eliminated from more modern versions, but it also exists in the following verse Su 29:14. **So that contradictions exist in their own more modern Scripture.**

Su 29:14 **We** once sent Noah to his people, and **he tarried among them a thousand years less fifty**; But the Deluge overwhelmed them while they persisted in sin.

*{Note here the 'mysterious We'*

From Gal 1:6-9, Section 1.1.8, we see that the 'gospel' from an angel or man that is different than that which Paul preached is a FALSE Gospel, coming from satanic forces and should be ignored.

This brings up a lesson for us. **Tell the truth. It's hard to remember our lies. They will trip us up.**

The Su 11:38 verse in context now reads:

Su 11:36 And it was revealed to Nuh: That none of your people will believe except those who have already believed, therefore do not grieve at what they do: NEC}

**Noah's Family****Gen 10**

- 1 ¶ Now these *are* the generations of the sons of Noah, Shem, Ham, and Japheth: and unto them were sons born after the flood.
- 2 The sons of Japheth; Gomer, and Magog, and Madai, and Javan, and Tubal, and Meshech, and Tiras.
- 3 And the sons of Gomer; Ashkenaz, and Riphath, and Togarmah.
- 4 And the sons of Javan; Elishah, and Tarshish, Kittim, and Dodanim.
- 5 By these were the isles of the Gentiles divided in their lands; every one after his tongue, after their families, in their nations.
- 6 ¶ And the sons of Ham; Cush, and Mizraim, and Phut, and Canaan.
- 7 And the sons of Cush; Seba, and Havilah, and Sabtah, and Raamah, and Sabtecha: and the sons of Raamah; Sheba, and Dedan.
- 8 And Cush begat Nimrod: he began to be a mighty one in the earth.
- 9 He was a mighty hunter before the LORD: wherefore it is said, Even as Nimrod the mighty hunter before the LORD.
- 10 And the beginning of his kingdom was Babel, and Erech, and Accad, and Calneh, in the land of Shinar.
- 11 Out of that land went forth Asshur, and builded Nineveh, and the city Rehoboth, and Calah,
- 12 And Resen between Nineveh and Calah: the same *is* a great city.
- 13 And Mizraim begat Ludim, and Anamim, and Lehabim, and Naphtuhim,
- 14 And Pathrusim, and Casluhim, (out of whom came Philistim,) and Caphtorim.
- 15 ¶ And Canaan begat Sidon his firstborn, and Heth,
- 16 And the Jebusite, and the Amorite, and the Girgashite,
- 17 And the Hivite, and the Arkite, and the Sinite,
- 18 And the Arvadite, and the Zemarite, and the Hamathite: and afterward were the families of the Canaanites spread abroad.
- 19 And the border of the Canaanites was from Sidon, as thou comest to Gerar, unto Gaza; as thou goest, unto Sodom, and Gomorrah, and Admah, and Zeboim, even unto Lasha.
- 20 These *are* the sons of Ham, after their families, after their tongues, in their countries, *and* in their nations.
- 21 ¶ Unto Shem also, the father of all the children of Eber, the brother of Japheth the elder, even to him were *children* born.
- 22 The children of Shem; Elam, and Asshur, and Arphaxad, and Lud, and Aram.
- 23 And the children of Aram; Uz, and Hul, and Gether, and Mash.
- 24 And Arphaxad begat Salah; and Salah begat Eber.
- 25 And unto **Eber** were born two sons: the name of one was **Peleg<sup>5</sup>**; for in his days was the earth divided; and his brother's name was Joktan.
- 26 And Joktan begat Almodad, and Sheleph, and Hazarmaveth, and Jerah,
- 27 And Hadoram, and Uzal, and Diklah,
- 28 And Obal, and Abimael, and Sheba,
- 29 And Ophir, and Havilah, and Jobab: all these *were* the sons of Joktan.
- 30 And their dwelling was from Mesha, as thou goest unto Sephar a mount of the east.
- 31 These *are* the sons of Shem, after their families, after their tongues, in their lands, after their nations.
- 32 These *are* the families of the sons of Noah, after their generations, in their nations: and by these were the nations divided in the earth after the flood.

4- Noah's Descendants - - A Catalogue Of Ethnology –  
Ref. Joseph Free, Arch. & Bible History 10:1-32

a- Jepheth (Caucasian or Occidental) vs. 10:2-5

1) 14 Nations - - Indo-European - Greek, Latin, French, Germanic (Sanskrit - India)

2) Skin - - Light

3) Hair - - Fair to Black (Straight or wavy)

4) Territory - - Caspian Sea to Atlantic

b- Ham (Negroid) vs. 6-20

1) 30 Nations - - Egypt, Coptic, African, Ethiopia, Lower Mesopotamia

2) Skin - - Dark

3) Hair - - Dark and curly (Stature - Tall)

4) Territory - - Africa, Arabia, Canaan

c- Shem (Mongolian or Oriental) vs. 21-32

1) 26 Nations - - Babylonian, Syrian, Hebrew

2) Skin - - Yellow

3) Hair - - Straight Black

4) Territory - - Over the fertile crescent and East

d- Significance Of This Catalogue vs. 13-18

1) Inhabitants of Canaan & Egypt are traced back to Ham.

2) Builders of Babel & Nineveh traced to Ham - "Nimrod" took Hebrews captive.

3) Eber - son of Shem is singled out - vs. 14-17

His son Peleg is then mentioned vs. 16-19 For in his days was the Earth Divided

Note for all believers: Ref Luke 3:35

vs. 16-19

1 Ch 1:19 And unto Eber were born two sons: the name of the one was Peleg; because in his days the earth was divided: and his brother's name was Joktan. {פֶּלֶג The earth - was divided פֶּלֶג (Nipheh Perfect). Ref Gen 1:1}

Did "The Pangia Split" really happen? This is possible for God. We may not find out till we get to Glory. Even so, Come LORD Jesus!

**Genesis 11.**

- 1 ¶ And the whole earth was of one language, and of one speech.
- 2 And it came to pass, as they journeyed from the east, that they found a plain in the land of Shinar; and they dwelt there.
- 3 And they said one to another, Go to, let us make brick, and burn them throughly. And they had brick for stone, and slime had they for mortar.
- 4 And they said, Go to, let us build us a city and a tower, whose top *may reach* unto heaven; and let us make us a name, lest we be scattered abroad upon the face of the whole earth.
- 5 ¶ And the LORD came down to see the city and the tower, which the children of men builded.
- 6 And the LORD said, Behold, the people *is* one, and they have all one language; and this they begin to do: and now nothing will be restrained from them, which they have imagined to do.
- 7 Go to, let us go down, and there confound their language, that they may not understand one another's speech.
- 8 So the LORD scattered them abroad from thence upon the face of all the earth: and they left off to build the city.
- 9 Therefore is the name of it called Babel; because the LORD did there confound the language of all the earth: and from thence did the LORD scatter them abroad upon the face of all the earth.
- 10 ¶ These *are* the generations of Shem: Shem *was* an hundred years old, and begat Arphaxad two years after the flood:
- 11 And Shem lived after he begat Arphaxad five hundred years, and begat sons and daughters.
- 12 And Arphaxad lived five and thirty years, and begat Salah:
- 13 And Arphaxad lived after he begat Salah four hundred and three years, and begat sons and daughters.
- 14 And Salah lived thirty years, and begat Eber:
- 15 And Salah lived after he begat Eber four hundred and three years, and begat sons and daughters.
- 16 And Eber lived four and thirty years, and begat Peleg:
- 17 And Eber lived after he begat Peleg four hundred and thirty years, and begat sons and daughters.
- 18 And Peleg lived thirty years, and begat Reu:
- 19 And Peleg lived after he begat Reu two hundred and nine years, and begat sons and daughters.
- 20 And Reu lived two and thirty years, and begat Serug:
- 21 And Reu lived after he begat Serug two hundred and seven years, and begat sons and daughters.
- 22 And Serug lived thirty years, and begat Nahor:
- 23 And Serug lived after he begat Nahor two hundred years, and begat sons and daughters.
- 24 And Nahor lived nine and twenty years, and begat Terah:
- 25 And Nahor lived after he begat Terah an hundred and nineteen years, and begat sons and daughters.
- 26 And Terah lived seventy years, and begat Abram, Nahor, and Haran.
- 27 ¶ Now these *are* the generations of Terah: Terah begat Abram, Nahor, and Haran; and Haran begat Lot.
- 28 And Haran died before his father Terah in the land of his nativity, in Ur of the Chaldees.
- 29 And Abram and Nahor took them wives: the name of Abram's wife *was* Sarai; and the name of Nahor's wife, Milcah, the daughter of Haran, the father of Milcah, and the father of Iscah.
- 30 But Sarai was barren; she *had* no child.
- 31 And Terah took Abram his son, and Lot the son of Haran his son's son, and Sarai his daughter in law, his son Abram's wife; and they went forth with them from Ur of the Chaldees, to go into the land of Canaan; and they came unto Haran, and dwelt there.
- 32 And the days of Terah were two hundred and five years: and Terah died in Haran.



- 5- The Tower Of Babel vs. 11:1-9
- a- The Tower Built By Men - vs. 1-4
    - 1) Its Location - From the Arcs location people journeyed west, they found a plain in the land of Shinar - the city Babel. vs. 1-2
    - 2) Its Purpose - To unite men & prevent scattering - This proposal breeds pride and arrogance! vs. 3-4
  - b- The Tower Evaluated By God - A United Effort To Preserve Evil! Notice the plurality of persons in the Godhead - Let US! vs. 5-7
  - c. The People Scattered By God vs. 8-9
    - 1) The Means - confuse their tongues? Any change in earth features? See I Chron 1:19
    - 2) The Effect - Scattering which men feared (they wanted to be like the most high)
    - 3) The Approximate Date: - In the days of **Peleg** - (101 years after the flood?).
- 5- The Genealogy Of Shem Traced through Abram vs. 10-32
- 1) Note the relationship to chapter 5 - 10 generations in each chapter, ending with 3 sons Noah and 3 sons vs Terah and 3 sons
  - 2) Notice the decrease in man's longevity - ½ after flood, ½ after Babele. Note Terah: 205 years. vs. 32
  - 3) Note the new beginning with Terah vs. 27-32

## The Fourth Dispensation - PROMISE

### Gen 12.

- 1 ¶ Now the LORD had said unto Abram, Get thee out of thy country, and from thy kindred, and from thy father's house, unto a land that I will shew thee:
- 2 And I will make of thee a great nation, and I will bless thee, and make thy name great; and thou shalt be a blessing:
- 3 And I will bless them that bless thee, and curse him that curseth thee: and in thee shall all families of the earth be blessed.

### ABRAM'S OBEDIENCE

- 4 ¶ So Abram departed, as the LORD had spoken unto him; and Lot went with him: and Abram *was* seventy and five years old when he departed out of Haran.
- 5 And Abram took Sarai his wife, and Lot his brother's son, and all their substance that they had gathered, and the souls that they had gotten in Haran; and they went forth to go into the land of Canaan; and into the land of Canaan they came.
- 6 ¶ And Abram passed through the land unto the place of Sichem, unto the plain of Moreh. And the Canaanite *was* then in the land.
- 7 And the LORD appeared unto Abram, and said, Unto thy seed will I give this land: and there builded he an altar unto the LORD, who appeared unto him.
- 8 And he removed from thence unto a mountain on the east of Bethel, and pitched his tent, *having* Bethel on the west, and Hai on the east: and there he builded an altar unto the LORD, and called upon the name of the LORD.
- 9 And Abram journeyed, going on still toward the south.

### ABRAM'S LAPSE

- 10 ¶ And there was a famine in the land: and Abram went down into Egypt to sojourn there; for the famine *was* grievous in the land.
- 11 And it came to pass, when he was come near to enter into Egypt, that he said unto Sarai his wife, Behold now, I know that thou *art* a fair woman to look upon:
- 12 Therefore it shall come to pass, when the Egyptians shall see thee, that they shall say, This *is* his wife: and they will kill me, but they will save thee alive.
- 13 Say, I pray thee, thou *art* my sister: that it may be well with me for thy sake; and my soul shall live because of thee.
- 14 ¶ And it came to pass, that, when Abram was come into Egypt, the Egyptians beheld the woman that she *was* very fair.
- 15 The princes also of Pharaoh saw her, and commended her before Pharaoh: and the woman was taken into Pharaoh's house.
- 16 And he entreated Abram well for her sake: and he had sheep, and oxen, and he asses, and menservants, and maidservants, and she asses, and camels.
- 17 And the LORD plagued Pharaoh and his house with great plagues because of Sarai Abram's wife.
- 18 And Pharaoh called Abram, and said, What *is* this *that* thou hast done unto me? why didst thou not tell me that she *was* thy wife?
- 19 Why saidst thou, She *is* my sister? so I might have taken her to me to wife: now therefore behold thy wife, take *her*, and go thy way.
- 20 And Pharaoh commanded *his* men concerning him: and they sent him away, and his wife, and all that he had.

## The Fourth Dispensation: PROMISE

- II. The Patriarchal History Of The Hebrew Race (12.-50.)**
- A- Abram - Will Become The Man Of Faith (12.-25.)
- 1- The Significance Of Abram - The father of Hebrews Faith (Gal 3, Heb 11)
    - a- The giving and confirming of the covenant
    - b- The growth of faith
  - 2- The Awakening Of Faith (12.-14.)
    - a- Abram's Call and response vs. 12:1-9
      - 1) God's call - Called to active obedience vs. 1-3
        - a) Conditions - Remove yourselves to a place I will show you vs. 1  
Separate from father's house. - separation from idolatry
        - b) Promise of blessing - To Abraham - UNCONDITIONAL vs. 2-3
          - i) Territorial - The land I will show you
          - ii) National - I will make of you a great nation  
(& you shall be a blessing OR Be you a blessing)
          - iii) Personal - I will bless you and make your name great
          - iv) Universal - In or through you will all nations of the earth be blessed
          - v) With Gentiles or Gentile Nations -  
I will bless them who bless you and CURSE them who CURSE you.
      - 2) Abram's Response vs. 4-9
        - a) He Moved To Shechem - North of Bethel and Jerusalem
        - b) He Met The Lord In Canaan - After his obedience  
the Lord added Blessing of Land. vs. 7
        - c) He Began His Life Of Faith vs. 7-9
          - i) Had an altar -
          - ii) Had A Tent - a pilgrim
          - iii) Had a prayer life
    - b- Abram's Failure In Egypt - His first test - poverty - physical problems vs. 10-20
      - 1) Famine drives him to Egypt
      - 2) His Nobility and faith slip in Egypt - Lost chivalry - Sarah was NOT his sister!  
Left his Altar, Tent and Communion.
      - 3) He is divinely rescued after failure - He became a curse by accommodation  
He was not rejected for his lack of faith!

**Genesis 13.**

- 1 ¶ And Abram went up out of Egypt, he, and his wife, and all that he had, and Lot with him, into the south.
- 2 And Abram *was* very rich in cattle, in silver, and in gold.
- 3 And he went on his journeys from the south even to Bethel, unto the place where his tent had been at the beginning, between Bethel and Hai;
- 4 Unto the place of the altar, which he had made there at the first: and there Abram called on the name of the LORD.
- 5 ¶ And Lot also, which went with Abram, had flocks, and herds, and tents.
- 6 And the land was not able to bear them, that they might dwell together: for their substance was great, so that they could not dwell together.
- 7 And there was a strife between the herdmen of Abram's cattle and the herdmen of Lot's cattle: and the Canaanite and the Perizzite dwelled then in the land.
- 8 And Abram said unto Lot, Let there be no strife, I pray thee, between me and thee, and between my herdmen and thy herdmen; for we *be* brethren.
- 9 *Is* not the whole land before thee? separate thyself, I pray thee, from me: if *thou wilt take* the left hand, then I will go to the right; or if *thou depart* to the right hand, then I will go to the left.
- 10 ¶ And Lot lifted up his eyes, and beheld all the plain of Jordan, that it *was* well watered every where, before the LORD destroyed Sodom and Gomorrah, *even* as the garden of the LORD, like the land of Egypt, as thou comest unto Zoar.
- 11 Then Lot chose him all the plain of Jordan; and Lot journeyed east: and they separated themselves the one from the other.
- 12 Abram dwelled in the land of Canaan, and Lot dwelled in the cities of the plain, and pitched *his* tent toward Sodom.
- 13 But the men of Sodom *were* wicked and sinners before the LORD exceedingly.
- 14 ¶ And the LORD said unto Abram, after that Lot was separated from him, Lift up now thine eyes, and look from the place where thou art northward, and southward, and eastward, and westward:
- 15 For all the land which thou seest, to thee will I give it, and to thy seed for ever.
- 16 And I will make thy seed as the dust of the earth: so that if a man can number the dust of the earth, *then* shall thy seed also be numbered.
- 17 Arise, walk through the land in the length of it and in the breadth of it; for I will give it unto thee.
- 18 Then Abram removed *his* tent, and came and dwelt in the plain of Mamre, which *is* in Hebron, and built there an altar unto the LORD.

- 1) Wealth Divides Brethren - (obtained in Egypt) - poor testimony to Canaanites.  
vs. 1-7
- 2) Abram's Gracious Solution - Relinquished his rights for peace  
vs. 8-13
  - a) Abram Chose Grace - note Hebrews 12 chose a city whose builder and maker is God
  - b) Lot Chose Grass And Wealth - Note The similarities with San-Francisco!
- 3) God's Response To Separation - Seed would be as the dust of the earth.  
vs. 14-18

## Gen 14.

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass in the days of Amraphel king of Shinar, Arioch king of Ellasar, Chedorlaomer king of Elam, and Tidal king of nations;
- 2 *That these* made war with Bera king of Sodom, and with Birsha king of Gomorrah, Shinab king of Admah, and Shemeber king of Zeboiim, and the king of Bela, which is Zoar.
- 3 All these were joined together in the vale of Siddim, which is the salt sea.
- 4 Twelve years they served Chedorlaomer, and in the thirteenth year they rebelled.
- 5 And in the fourteenth year came Chedorlaomer, and the kings that *were* with him, and smote the Rephaims in Ashteroth Karnaim, and the Zuzims in Ham, and the Emims in Shaveh Kiriathaim,
- 6 And the Horites in their mount Seir, unto Elparan, which *is* by the wilderness.
- 7 And they returned, and came to Enmishpat, which *is* Kadesh, and smote all the country of the Amalekites, and also the Amorites, that dwelt in Hazezontamar.
- 8 And there went out the king of Sodom, and the king of Gomorrah, and the king of Admah, and the king of Zeboiim, and the king of Bela (the same *is* Zoar;) and they joined battle with them in the vale of Siddim;
- 9 With Chedorlaomer the king of Elam, and with Tidal king of nations, and Amraphel king of Shinar, and Arioch king of Ellasar; four kings with five.
- 10 And the vale of Siddim *was full of* slimepits; and the kings of Sodom and Gomorrah fled, and fell there; and they that remained fled to the mountain.
- 11 And they took all the goods of Sodom and Gomorrah, and all their victuals, and went their way.
- 12 And they took Lot, Abram's brother's son, who dwelt in Sodom, and his goods, and departed.
- 13 ¶ And there came one that had escaped, and told Abram the Hebrew; for he dwelt in the plain of Mamre the Amorite, brother of Eshcol, and brother of Aner: and these *were* confederate with Abram.
- 14 And when Abram heard that his brother was taken captive, he armed his trained *servants*, born in his own house, three hundred and eighteen, and pursued *them* unto Dan.
- 15 And he divided himself against them, he and his servants, by night, and smote them, and pursued them unto Hobah, which *is* on the left hand of Damascus.
- 16 And he brought back all the goods, and also brought again his brother Lot, and his goods, and the women also, and the people.
- 17 ¶ And the king of Sodom went out to meet him after his return from the slaughter of Chedorlaomer, and of the kings that *were* with him, at the valley of Shaveh, which *is* the king's dale.
- 18 And Melchizedek king of Salem brought forth bread and wine: and he *was* the priest of the most high God.
- 19 And he blessed him, and said, Blessed *be* Abram of the most high God, possessor of heaven and earth:
- 20 And blessed be the most high God, which hath delivered thine enemies into thy hand. And he gave him tithes of all.
- 21 ¶ And the king of Sodom said unto Abram, Give me the persons, and take the goods to thyself.
- 22 And Abram said to the king of Sodom, I have lift up mine hand unto the LORD, the most high God, the possessor of heaven and earth,
- 23 That I will not *take* from a thread even to a shoelatchet, and that I will not take any thing that *is* thine, lest thou shouldest say, I have made Abram rich:
- 24 Save only that which the young men have eaten, and the portion of the men which went with me, Aner, Eshcol, and Mamre; let them take their portion.

- |  |           |
|--|-----------|
| 1) The Invasion Of Jordan By Mesopotamia   | 1-12      |
| a) King Elim Took Lot Captive  |           |
| 2) Abram's Rescue Of Lot – Preparation: 318 trained servants, took a shortcut,<br>divided his forces, won victory. | vs. 13-16 |
| 3) Abram's Priestly Blessing By Melchizedic  | 17-20     |
| a) Introduction Of The Name For God As El Elyon  | vs. 18    |
| b) Abram Blessed By Melchizedic  | vs. 19    |
| c) Abram Tithed - Gave Tithe Through Melchizedic   | vs. 20    |
| 4) Abram's Magnanimous Refusal Of Rewards - He's protecting God's credit   | vs. 21-24 |

**Genesis 15.**

- 1 ¶ After these things the word of the LORD came unto Abram in a vision, saying, Fear not, Abram: I *am* thy shield, *and* thy exceeding great reward.
- 2 ¶ And Abram said, Lord GOD, what wilt thou give me, seeing I go childless, **and the steward of my house is this Eliezer of Damascus?** **Ref. Gen 24**
- 3 And Abram said, Behold, to me thou hast given no seed: and, lo, one born in my house is mine heir.
- 4 And, behold, the word of the LORD *came* unto him, saying, This shall not be thine heir; but he that shall come forth out of thine own bowels shall be thine heir.
- 5 And he brought him forth abroad, and said, Look now toward heaven, and tell the stars, if thou be able to number them: and he said unto him, So shall thy seed be.
- 6 And he believed in the LORD; and he counted it to him for righteousness.
- 7 ¶ And he said unto him, I *am* the LORD that brought thee out of Ur of the Chaldees, to give thee this land to inherit it.
- 8 And he said, Lord GOD, whereby shall I know that I shall inherit it?
- 9 And he said unto him, Take me an heifer of three years old, and a she goat of three years old, and a ram of three years old, and a turtledove, and a young pigeon.
- 10 And he took unto him all these, and divided them in the midst, and laid each piece one against another: but the birds divided he not.
- 11 And when the fowls came down upon the carcases, Abram drove them away.
- 12 ¶ And when the sun was going down, a deep sleep fell upon Abram; and, lo, an horror of great darkness fell upon him.
- 13 And he said unto Abram, Know of a surety that thy seed shall be a stranger in a land *that is* not theirs, and shall serve them; and they shall afflict them four hundred years;
- 14 And also that nation, whom they shall serve, will I judge: and afterward shall they come out with great substance.
- 15 And thou shalt go to thy fathers in peace; thou shalt be buried in a good old age.
- 16 But in the fourth generation they shall come hither again: for the iniquity of the Amorites *is* not yet full.
- 17 ¶ And it came to pass, that, when the sun went down, and it was dark, behold a smoking furnace, and a burning lamp that passed between those pieces.
- 18 In the same day the LORD made a covenant with Abram, saying, Unto thy seed have I given this land, from the river of Egypt unto the great river, the river Euphrates:
- 19 The Kenites, and the Kenizzites, and the Kadmonites,
- 20 And the Hittites, and the Perizzites, and the Rephaims,
- 21 And the Amorites, and the Canaanites, and the Girgashites, and the Jebusites.

**Genesis 16.**

- 1 ¶ Now Sarai Abram's wife bare him no children: and she had an handmaid, an Egyptian, whose name *was* Hagar.
- 2 And Sarai said unto Abram, Behold now, the LORD hath restrained me from bearing: I pray thee, go in unto my maid; it may be that I may obtain children by her. And Abram hearkened to the voice of Sarai.
- 3 And Sarai Abram's wife took Hagar her maid the Egyptian, after Abram had dwelt ten years in the land of Canaan, and gave her to her husband Abram to be his wife.
- 4 ¶ And he went in unto Hagar, and she conceived: and when she saw that she had conceived, her mistress was despised in her eyes.
- 5 And Sarai said unto Abram, My wrong *be* upon thee: I have given my maid into thy bosom; and when she saw that she had conceived, I was despised in her eyes: the LORD judge between me and thee.
- 6 But Abram said unto Sarai, Behold, thy maid *is* in thy hand; do to her as it pleaseth thee. And when Sarai dealt hardly with her, she fled from her face.
- 7 ¶ And the angel of the LORD found her by a fountain of water in the wilderness, by the fountain in the way to Shur.
- 8 And he said, Hagar, Sarai's maid, whence camest thou? and whither wilt thou go? And she said, I flee from the face of my mistress Sarai.
- 9 And the angel of the LORD said unto her, Return to thy mistress, and submit thyself under her hands.
- 10 ¶ And the angel of the LORD said unto her, I will multiply thy seed exceedingly, that it shall not be numbered for multitude.
- 11 And the angel of the LORD said unto her, Behold, thou *art* with child, and shalt bear a son, and shalt call his name Ishmael; because the LORD hath heard thy affliction.
- 12 And he *will* be a wild man; his hand *will be* against every man, and every man's hand against him; and he shall dwell in the presence of all his brethren.



13 And she called the name of the LORD that spake unto her, Thou God seest me: for she said, Have I also here looked after him that seeth me?

14 Wherefore the well was called Beerlahairoi; behold, *it is* between Kadesh and Bered.

15 ¶ And Hagar bare Abram a son: and Abram called his son's name, which Hagar bare, Ishmael.

16 And Abram *was* fourscore and six years old, when Hagar bare Ishmael to Abram.

---

3- The Rewarding Of Faith - *Follows directly from Chapter 14* (15:1.-21:34.)

a- The Covenant Ratified vs. 15:1-21

1) The Seed Promised - vs. 1-6

a) Not Eliezer Of Damascus vs. 2-4

b) The Extent As To Numbers vs. 5

c) His Faith In God Is Counted (Imputed/Reckoned) For Righteousness vs. 6

2) The Land Promised - 15:7-21

a) The Covenant Symbol Prepared vs. 7-12

b) The Egyptian Bondage Predicted - 400 years vs. 13-14

c) The Covenant Ratified - UNCONDITIONAL –  
God passed between the offerings! vs. 17

d) The Land Boundaries Defined vs. 18-21

b- Abram's Impatience Produces Ishmael - 16:1-16

1) Abram Submits To Sarai's Suggestion vs. 1-3

2) The Lord's Care Of Hagar And The Prophecy Of Ishmael  
God allows "nature" to take its course - vs. 6-16

3) His Seed Troubled The Jews Until The 2cnd Coming Of Messiah In Power –  
Note: THE ARABS!

## Gen 17.

- 1 ¶ And when Abram was ninety years old and nine, the LORD appeared to Abram, and said unto him, *I am* the Almighty God; walk before me, and be thou perfect.
- 2 And I will make my covenant between me and thee, and will multiply thee exceedingly.
- 3 And Abram fell on his face: and God talked with him, saying,
- 4 ¶ As for me, behold, my covenant *is* with thee, and thou shalt be a father of many nations.
- 5 Neither shall thy name any more be called Abram, but thy name shall be Abraham; for a father of many nations have I made thee.
- 6 And I will make thee exceeding fruitful, and I will make nations of thee, and kings shall come out of thee.
- 7 ¶ And I will establish my covenant between me and thee and thy seed after thee in their generations for an everlasting covenant, to be a God unto thee, and to thy seed after thee.
- 8 And I will give unto thee, and to thy seed after thee, the land wherein thou art a stranger, all the land of Canaan, for an everlasting possession; and I will be their God.
- 9 And God said unto Abraham, Thou shalt keep my covenant therefore, thou, and thy seed after thee in their generations.
- 10 This *is* my covenant, which ye shall keep, between me and you and thy seed after thee; Every man child among you shall be circumcised.
- 11 And ye shall circumcise the flesh of your foreskin; and it shall be a token of the covenant betwixt me and you.
- 12 And he that is eight days old shall be circumcised among you, every man child in your generations, he that is born in the house, or bought with money of any stranger, which *is* not of thy seed.
- 13 He that is born in thy house, and he that is bought with thy money, must needs be circumcised: and my covenant shall be in your flesh for an everlasting covenant.
- 14 And the uncircumcised man child whose flesh of his foreskin is not circumcised, that soul shall be cut off from his people; he hath broken my covenant.
- 15 ¶ And God said unto Abraham, As for Sarai thy wife, thou shalt not call her name Sarai, but Sarah *shall* her name *be*.
- 16 And I will bless her, and give thee a son also of her: yea, I will bless her, and she shall be *a mother* of nations; kings of people shall be of her.
- 17 Then Abraham fell upon his face, and laughed, and said in his heart, Shall *a child* be born unto him that is an hundred years old? and shall Sarah, that is ninety years old, bear?
- 18 And Abraham said unto God, O that Ishmael might live before thee!
- 19 And God said, Sarah thy wife shall bear thee a son indeed; and thou shalt call his name Isaac: and I will establish my covenant with him for an everlasting covenant, *and* with his seed after him.
- 20 And as for Ishmael, I have heard thee: Behold, I have blessed him, and will make him fruitful, and will multiply him exceedingly; twelve princes shall he beget, and I will make him a great nation.
- 21 But my covenant will I establish with Isaac, which Sarah shall bear unto thee at this set time in the next year.
- 22 And he left off talking with him, and God went up from Abraham.
- 23 ¶ And Abraham took Ishmael his son, and all that were born in his house, and all that were bought with his money, every male among the men of Abraham's house; and circumcised the flesh of their foreskin in the selfsame day, as God had said unto him.
- 24 And Abraham *was* ninety years old and nine, when he was circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin.
- 25 And Ishmael his son *was* thirteen years old, when he was circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin.
- 26 In the selfsame day *was* Abraham circumcised, and Ishmael his son.
- 27 And all the men of his house, born in the house, and bought with money of the stranger, were circumcised with him.

- 1) A New Name For God (31 times in Job) *El-Shaddai* - God Almighty vs. 1
- 2) Re-Affirmation Of The Covenant vs. 2
- 3) Abram (*exhaulted father*) **Re-Named** Abraham (*father of a multitude*) vs.3-8  
The text, however reads "father of many Nations!"
- 4) The Abrahamic Covenant Sign - circumcision vs. 9-15  
Disobedience would mean exclusion of the covenant (Note bondage in Egypt)
- 5) Sarai (*princess*) **Re-Named** Sarah (*Princess/noble woman*) vs. 15-
  - a) The Text Reads "She shall be *mother* of Nations!" vs. 16  
Note Sarah's response vs. 16
  - b) God Blesses Sarah vs. 16
- 6) Renewed Assurance Of The Seed Through Sarah 17:15-27
  - a) God Insists On Isaac As The Promised One - Through Sarah vs. 19
  - b) God Predicts That Ishmael Will Also Be A Great Nation vs. 20
  - c) The Fulfillment Of The Prophecy Of The Birth Of Isaac vs. 21-27

**Gen 18.**

- 1 ¶ And the LORD appeared unto him in the plains of Mamre: and he sat in the tent door in the heat of the day;  
2 And he lift up his eyes and looked, and, lo, three men stood by him: and when he saw *them*, he ran to meet them from the tent door, and bowed himself toward the ground,  
3 And said, My Lord, if now I have found favour in thy sight, pass not away, I pray thee, from thy servant:  
4 Let a little water, I pray you, be fetched, and wash your feet, and rest yourselves under the tree:  
5 And I will fetch a morsel of bread, and comfort ye your hearts; after that ye shall pass on: for therefore are ye come to your servant. And they said, So do, as thou hast said.  
6 And Abraham hastened into the tent unto Sarah, and said, Make ready quickly three measures of fine meal, knead *it*, and make cakes upon the hearth.  
7 And Abraham ran unto the herd, and fetcht a calf tender and good, and gave *it* unto a young man; and he hasted to dress it.  
8 And he took butter, and milk, and the calf which he had dressed, and set *it* before them; and he stood by them under the tree, and they did eat.  
9 ¶ And they said unto him, Where *is* Sarah thy wife? And he said, Behold, in the tent.  
10 And he said, I will certainly return unto thee according to the time of life; and, lo, Sarah thy wife shall have a son. And Sarah heard *it* in the tent door, which *was* behind him.  
11 Now Abraham and Sarah *were* old *and* well stricken in age; *and* it ceased to be with Sarah after the manner of women.  
12 Therefore Sarah laughed within herself, saying, After I am waxed old shall I have pleasure, my lord being old also?  
13 And the LORD said unto Abraham, Wherefore did Sarah laugh, saying, Shall I of a surety bear a child, which am old?  
14 Is any thing too hard for the LORD? At the time appointed I will return unto thee, according to the time of life, and Sarah shall have a son.  
15 Then Sarah denied, saying, I laughed not; for she was afraid. And he said, Nay; but thou didst laugh.  
16 ¶ And the men rose up from thence, and looked toward Sodom: and Abraham went with them to bring them on the way.  
17 And the LORD said, Shall I hide from Abraham that thing which I do;  
18 Seeing that Abraham shall surely become a great and mighty nation, and all the nations of the earth shall be blessed in him?  
19 For I know him, that he will command his children and his household after him, and they shall keep the way of the LORD, to do justice and judgment; that the LORD may bring upon Abraham that which he hath spoken of him.  
20 And the LORD said, Because the cry of Sodom and Gomorrah is great, and because their sin is very grievous;  
21 I will go down now, and see whether they have done altogether according to the cry of it, which is come unto me; and if not, I will know.  
22 And the men turned their faces from thence, and went toward Sodom: but Abraham stood yet before the LORD.  
23 ¶ And Abraham drew near, and said, Wilt thou also destroy the righteous with the wicked?  
24 Peradventure there be fifty righteous within the city: wilt thou also destroy and not spare the place for the fifty righteous that *are* therein?  
25 That be far from thee to do after this manner, to slay the righteous with the wicked: and that the righteous should be as the wicked, that be far from thee: Shall not the Judge of all the earth do right?  
26 And the LORD said, If I find in Sodom fifty righteous within the city, then I will spare all the place for their sakes.  
27 And Abraham answered and said, Behold now, I have taken upon me to speak unto the Lord, which *am but* dust and ashes:  
28 Peradventure there shall lack five of the fifty righteous: wilt thou destroy all the city for *lack of* five? And he said, If I find there forty and five, I will not destroy *it*.  
29 And he spake unto him yet again, and said, Peradventure there shall be forty found there. And he said, I will not do *it* for forty's sake.  
30 And he said *unto him*, Oh let not the Lord be angry, and I will speak: Peradventure there shall thirty be found there. And he said, I will not do *it*, if I find thirty there.  
31 And he said, Behold now, I have taken upon me to speak unto the Lord: Peradventure there shall be twenty found there. And he said, I will not destroy *it* for twenty's sake.  
32 And he said, Oh let not the Lord be angry, and I will speak yet but this once: Peradventure ten shall be found there. And he said, I will not destroy *it* for ten's sake.

33 And the LORD went his way, as soon as he had left communing with Abraham: and Abraham returned unto his place.

---

d- Abraham's Three Visitors And His Intercession	vs. 18:1-33
1) The Identity Of The Three Visitors (2 Angels & the pre-incarnate Son Of God=LORD)	vs. 1
2) Abraham's Eastern Hospitality Shown	vs. 2-8
3) The Promise Of A Seed Restated By The LORD	vs. 9-15
4) Now Sarah Laughs within herself - Note the Omniscience Of The LORD See 17:17 for Abraham's laughter - he was convulsed with it.	vs. 12
5) The Destruction Of Sodom Foretold -	vs.16-22
6) Abraham's Intercession For Sodom (& Lot) - From 50 down to 10 Righteous.	vs. 23-33

**The Events At Sodom - The San-Francisco of Palestine or "You are the salt of the earth."**

- 1 ¶ And **there came two angels to Sodom at even**; and **Lot sat in the gate of Sodom**: and Lot seeing *them* rose up to meet them; and he bowed himself with his face toward the ground;
- 2 And he said, Behold now, my lords, turn in, I pray you, into your servant's house, and tarry all night, and wash your feet, and ye shall rise up early, and go on your ways. And they said, Nay; but we will abide in the street all night.
- 3 And he pressed upon them greatly; and they turned in unto him, and entered into his house; and he made them a feast, and did bake unleavened bread, and they did eat.
- 4 ¶ But before they lay down, the men of the city, *even* the men of Sodom, compassed the house round, both old and young, all the people from every quarter:
- 5 And they called unto Lot, and said unto him, Where *are* the men which came in to thee this night? bring them out unto us, that we may know them.
- 6 And Lot went out at the door unto them, and shut the door after him,
- 7 And said, I pray you, brethren, do not so wickedly.
- 8 Behold now, I have two daughters which have not known man; let me, I pray you, bring them out unto you, and do ye to them as *is* good in your eyes: only unto these men do nothing; for therefore came they under the shadow of my roof.
- 9 And they said, Stand back. And they said *again*, This one *fellow* came in to sojourn, and he will needs be a judge: now will we deal worse with thee, than with them. And they pressed sore upon the man, *even* Lot, and came near to break the door.
- 10 But the men put forth their hand, and pulled Lot into the house to them, and shut to the door.
- 11 And they smote the men that *were* at the door of the house with blindness, both small and great: so that they wearied themselves to find the door.
- 12 ¶ And the men said unto Lot, Hast thou here any besides? son in law, and thy sons, and thy daughters, and whatsoever thou hast in the city, bring *them* out of this place:
- 13 For we will destroy this place, because the cry of them is waxen great before the face of the LORD; and the LORD hath sent us to destroy it.
- 14 And Lot went out, and spake unto his sons in law, which married his daughters, and said, Up, get you out of this place; for the LORD will destroy this city. But he seemed as one that mocked unto his sons in law.
- 15 ¶ And when the morning arose, then the angels hastened Lot, saying, Arise, take thy wife, and thy two daughters, which are here; lest thou be consumed in the iniquity of the city.
- 16 And while he lingered, the men laid hold upon his hand, and upon the hand of his wife, and upon the hand of his two daughters; the LORD being merciful unto him: and they brought him forth, and set him without the city.
- 17 And it came to pass, when they had brought them forth abroad, that he said, Escape for thy life; look not behind thee, neither stay thou in all the plain; escape to the mountain, lest thou be consumed.
- 18 And Lot said unto them, Oh, not so, my Lord:
- 19 Behold now, thy servant hath found grace in thy sight, and thou hast magnified thy mercy, which thou hast shewed unto me in saving my life; and I cannot escape to the mountain, lest some evil take me, and I die:
- 20 Behold now, this city *is* near to flee unto, and it *is* a little one: Oh, let me escape thither, (*is* it not a little one?) and my soul shall live.
- 21 And he said unto him, See, I have accepted thee concerning this thing also, that I will not overthrow this city, for the which thou hast spoken.
- 22 Haste thee, escape thither; for I cannot do any thing till thou be come thither. Therefore the name of the city was called Zoar.
- 23 The sun was risen upon the earth when Lot entered into Zoar.
- 24 ¶ Then the LORD rained upon Sodom and upon Gomorrah brimstone and fire from the LORD out of heaven;
- 25 And he overthrew those cities, and all the plain, and all the inhabitants of the cities, and that which grew upon the ground.
- 26 ¶ **But his wife looked back from behind him, and she became a pillar of salt.**
- 27 ¶ And Abraham gat up early in the morning to the place where he stood before the LORD:
- 28 And he looked toward Sodom and Gomorrah, and toward all the land of the plain, and beheld, and, lo, the smoke of the country went up as the smoke of a furnace.
- 29 And it came to pass, when God destroyed the cities of the plain, that God remembered Abraham, and sent Lot out of the midst of the overthrow, when he overthrew the cities in the which Lot dwelt.
- 30 ¶ And Lot went up out of Zoar, and dwelt in the mountain, and his two daughters with him; for he feared to dwell in Zoar: and he dwelt in a cave, he and his two daughters.
- 31 And the firstborn said unto the younger, Our father *is* old, and *there is* not a man in the earth to come in unto us after the manner of all the earth:
- 32 Come, **let us make our father drink wine**, and we will lie with him, **that we may preserve seed of our father.**
- 33 And they made their father drink wine that night: and the firstborn went in, and lay with her father; and he perceived not when she lay down, nor when she arose.

- 34 And it came to pass on the morrow, that **the firstborn said unto the younger**, Behold, I lay yesternight with my father: let us make him drink wine this night also; and go thou in, *and* lie with him, **that we may preserve seed of our father**.
- 35 And they made their father drink wine that night also: and the younger arose, and lay with him; and he perceived not when she lay down, nor when she arose.
- 36 Thus were both the daughters of Lot with child by their father.
- 37 And the firstborn bare a son, and called his name Moab: the same *is* the father of the Moabites unto this day.
- 38 And the younger, she also bare a son, and called his name Benammi: the same *is* the father of the children of Ammon unto this day.
- 

e- The Destruction Of Sodom	vs. 19:1-38
1) The Angels Visit Lot	vs. 1-3
2) Sodom's Depravity Demonstrated	vs. 4-14
3) Lot's Escape From Sodom	vs. 15-22
4) The Destruction Of Sodom And Gomorrah	vs. 23-29
5) Lot's Shameful End And His Posterity	vs. 30-38
6) Some Principles From Chapters 18-19	
a) A Believer's Need For Separation	
b) The Danger Of Integration With The Ungodly	
c) Note The Covenant Fellowship Of God And Spiritual Believers	

**Gen 20.**

- 1 ¶ And Abraham journeyed from thence toward the south country, and dwelled between Kadesh and Shur, and sojourned in Gerar.  
2 And Abraham said of Sarah his wife, She *is* my sister: and Abimelech king of Gerar sent, and took Sarah.  
3 ¶ But God came to Abimelech in a dream by night, and said to him, Behold, thou *art but* a dead man, for the woman which thou hast taken; for she *is* a man's wife.  
4 But Abimelech had not come near her: and he said, Lord, wilt thou slay also a righteous nation?  
5 Said he not unto me, She *is* my sister? and she, even she herself said, He *is* my brother: in the integrity of my heart and innocency of my hands have I done this.  
6 And God said unto him in a dream, Yea, I know that thou didst this in the integrity of thy heart; for I also withheld thee from sinning against me: therefore suffered I thee not to touch her.  
7 Now therefore restore the man *his* wife; for he *is* a prophet, and he shall pray for thee, and thou shalt live: and if thou restore *her* not, know thou that thou shalt surely die, thou, and all that *are* thine.  
8 ¶ Therefore Abimelech rose early in the morning, and called all his servants, and told all these things in their ears: and the men were sore afraid.  
9 Then Abimelech called Abraham, and said unto him, What hast thou done unto us? and what have I offended thee, that thou hast brought on me and on my kingdom a great sin? thou hast done deeds unto me that ought not to be done.  
10 And Abimelech said unto Abraham, What sawest thou, that thou hast done this thing?  
11 And Abraham said, Because I thought, Surely the fear of God *is* not in this place; and they will slay me for my wife's sake.  
12 And yet indeed *she is* my sister; she *is* the daughter of my father, but not the daughter of my mother; and she became my wife.  
13 And it came to pass, when God caused me to wander from my father's house, that I said unto her, This *is* thy kindness which thou shalt shew unto me; at every place whither we shall come, say of me, He *is* my brother.  
14 ¶ And Abimelech took sheep, and oxen, and menservants, and womenservants, and gave *them* unto Abraham, and restored him Sarah his wife.  
15 And Abimelech said, Behold, my land *is* before thee: dwell where it pleaseth thee.  
16 And unto Sarah he said, Behold, I have given thy brother a thousand *pieces* of silver: behold, he *is* to thee a covering of the eyes, unto all that *are* with thee, and with all *other*: thus she was reproved.  
17 So Abraham prayed unto God: and God healed Abimelech, and his wife, and his maidservants; and they bare *children*.  
18 For the LORD had fast closed up all the wombs of the house of Abimelech, because of Sarah Abraham's wife.

**Gen 21.**

- 1 ¶ And the LORD visited Sarah as he had said, and the LORD did unto Sarah as he had spoken.  
2 For Sarah conceived, and bare Abraham a son in his old age, at the set time of which God had spoken to him.  
3 And Abraham called the name of his son that was born unto him, whom Sarah bare to him, Isaac.  
4 And Abraham circumcised his son Isaac being eight days old, as God had commanded him.  
5 And Abraham was an hundred years old, when his son Isaac was born unto him.  
6 And Sarah said, God hath made me to laugh, *so that* all that hear will laugh with me.  
7 And she said, Who would have said unto Abraham, that Sarah should have given children suck? for I have born *him* a son in his old age.  
8 And the child grew, and was weaned: and Abraham made a great feast the *same* day that Isaac was weaned.  
9 ¶ And Sarah saw the son of Hagar the Egyptian, which she had born unto Abraham, mocking.  
10 Wherefore she said unto Abraham, Cast out this bondwoman and her son: for the son of this bondwoman shall not be heir with my son, *even* with Isaac.  
11 And the thing was very grievous in Abraham's sight because of his son.  
12 And God said unto Abraham, Let it not be grievous in thy sight because of the lad, and because of thy bondwoman; in all that Sarah hath said unto thee, hearken unto her voice; for in Isaac shall thy seed be called.  
13 And also of the son of the bondwoman will I make a nation, because he *is* thy seed.  
14 ¶ And Abraham rose up early in the morning, and took bread, and a bottle of water, and gave *it* unto Hagar, putting *it* on her shoulder, and the child, and sent her away: and she departed, and wandered in the wilderness of Beersheba.  
15 And the water was spent in the bottle, and she cast the child under one of the shrubs.  
16 And she went, and sat her down over against *him* a good way off, as it were a bowshot: for she said, Let me not see the death of the child. And she sat over against *him*, and lift up her voice, and wept.  
17 And God heard the voice of the lad; and the angel of God called to Hagar out of heaven, and said unto her, What aileth thee, Hagar? fear not; for God hath heard the voice of the lad where he *is*.  
18 Arise, lift up the lad, and hold him in thine hand; for I will make him a great nation.  
19 And God opened her eyes, and she saw a well of water; and she went, and filled the bottle with water, and gave the lad drink.  
20 And God was with the lad; and he grew, and dwelt in the wilderness, and became an archer.  
21 And he dwelt in the wilderness of Paran: and his mother took him a wife out of the land of Egypt.  
22 ¶ And it came to pass at that time, that Abimelech and Phichol the chief captain of his host spake unto Abraham, saying, God *is* with thee in all that thou doest:  
23 Now therefore swear unto me here by God that thou wilt not deal falsely with me, nor with my son, nor with my son's son: *but* according to the kindness that I have done unto thee, thou shalt do unto me, and to the land wherein thou hast sojourned.  
24 And Abraham said, I will swear.  
25 And Abraham reproved Abimelech because of a well of water, which Abimelech's servants had violently taken away.  
26 And Abimelech said, I wot not who hath done this thing: neither didst thou tell me, neither yet heard I *of it*, but to day.  
27 And Abraham took sheep and oxen, and gave them unto Abimelech; and both of them made a covenant.  
28 And Abraham set seven ewe lambs of the flock by themselves.  
29 And Abimelech said unto Abraham, What *mean* these seven ewe lambs which thou hast set by themselves?



- 30 And he said, For *these* seven ewe lambs shalt thou take of my hand, that they may be a witness unto me, that I have digged this well.
- 31 Wherefore he called that place Beersheba; because there they swear both of them.
- 32 Thus they made a covenant at Beersheba: then Abimelech rose up, and Phichol the chief captain of his host, and they returned into the land of the Philistines.
- 33 ¶ And *Abraham* planted a grove in Beersheba, and called there on the name of the LORD, the everlasting God.
- 34 And Abraham sojourned in the Philistines' land many days.

---

f- Abraham's Recurring Lapse At Gerar	vs. 20:1-18
How The lapse (unfaithfulness) relates to the covenant	depends on God and not the believer
1) Abraham again Lies Concerning Sarah - Ref. Gen 12:13	vs. 1-2
2) God's Protects Sarah From Danger - Through Abimelech, an unbelieving king.	vs. 3-7
3) God Considers Abraham A Prophet And A Priest - Prophet vs. 7, Priest vs, 17	vs. 7, 17
g- The Arrival Of Isaac vs. 21:1-34	
1) The Birth Of Isaac - The Coming Of The Covenant Seed! 3 times given by God.	vs. 1-8
The wait was given by God to mature their faith & show the certainty of fulfillment, in spite of unfaithfulness!	
2) The Resulting Contention And Exclusion Of Ishmael	vs. 9-16
3) God's Promise Concerning Ishmael - To be a great nation. Ishmael married an Egyptian.	vs. 17-21
4) Abraham's Blessing Recognized By The World - "God was with Abraham!"	vs. 22-34

## Gen 22.

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass after these things, that God did tempt Abraham, and said unto him, Abraham: and he said, Behold, *here I am*.
- 2 And he said, Take now thy son, thine only *son* Isaac, whom thou lovest, and get thee into the land of Moriah; and offer him there for a burnt offering upon one of the mountains which I will tell thee of.
- 3 ¶ And Abraham rose up early in the morning, and saddled his ass, and took two of his young men with him, and Isaac his son, and clave the wood for the burnt offering, and rose up, and went unto the place of which God had told him.
- 4 Then on the third day Abraham lifted up his eyes, and saw the place afar off.
- 5 And Abraham said unto his young men, Abide ye here with the ass; and I and the lad will go yonder and worship, and come again to you.
- 6 And Abraham took the wood of the burnt offering, and laid *it* upon Isaac his son; and he took the fire in his hand, and a knife; and they went both of them together.
- 7 And Isaac spake unto Abraham his father, and said, My father: and he said, Here *am* I, my son. And he said, Behold the fire and the wood: but where *is* the lamb for a burnt offering?
- 8 And Abraham said, My son, God will provide himself a lamb for a burnt offering: so they went both of them together.
- 9 And they came to the place which God had told him of; and Abraham built an altar there, and laid the wood in order, and bound Isaac his son, and laid him on the altar upon the wood.
- 10 And Abraham stretched forth his hand, and took the knife to slay his son.
- 11 ¶ And the angel of the LORD called unto him out of heaven, and said, Abraham, Abraham: and he said, Here *am* I.
- 12 And he said, Lay not thine hand upon the lad, neither do thou any thing unto him: for now I know that thou fearest God, seeing thou hast not withheld thy son, thine only *son* from me.
- 13 And Abraham lifted up his eyes, and looked, and behold behind *him* a ram caught in a thicket by his horns: and Abraham went and took the ram, and offered him up for a burnt offering in the stead of his son.
- 14 And Abraham called the name of that place Jehovahjireh: as it is said *to* this day, In the mount of the LORD it shall be seen.
- 15 ¶ And the angel of the LORD called unto Abraham out of heaven the second time,
- 16 And said, By myself have I sworn, saith the LORD, for because thou hast done this thing, and hast not withheld thy son, thine only *son*:
- 17 That in blessing I will bless thee, and in multiplying I will multiply thy seed as the stars of the heaven, and as the sand which *is* upon the sea shore; and thy seed shall possess the gate of his enemies;
- 18 And in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed; because thou hast obeyed my voice.
- 19 So Abraham returned unto his young men, and they rose up and went together to Beersheba; and Abraham dwelt at Beersheba.
- 20 ¶ And it came to pass after these things, that it was told Abraham, saying, Behold, Milcah, she hath also born children unto thy brother Nahor;
- 21 Huz his firstborn, and Buz his brother, and Kemuel the father of Aram,
- 22 And Chesed, and Hazo, and Pildash, and Jidlaph, and Bethuel.
- 23 And Bethuel begat Rebekah: these eight Milcah did bear to Nahor, Abraham's brother.
- 24 And his concubine, whose name *was* Reumah, she bare also Tebah, and Gaham, and Thahash, and Maachah.

4- The Perfecting Of Faith (22:1.-25:18.)

a- The Supreme Test For Abraham

vs. 22:1-24

1) Divine Command Tests Abraham's Affections

vs. 1-2

Question, Does Abraham love Isaac more than God?

2) Abraham's Immediate Response

vs. 3-11

He was evidently convinced that God would provide (Himself) a sacrifice.

vs. 8

Notice the similarities between this event and Isaiah's announcement in Is 7:14

3) The Divine Intervention

vs. 12-14

4) The Divine Oath Added To The Covenant - Especially Vs. 16

vs. 15-19

*Heb 6:18 For when God made promise to Abraham, because he could swear by no greater, he swore by himself,*

*14 Saying, Surely blessing I will bless thee, and multiplying I will multiply thee.*

*15 And so, after he had patiently endured, he obtained the promise.*

*16 For men verily swear by the greater: and an oath for confirmation is to them an end of all strife.*

*17 Wherein God, willing more abundantly to shew unto the heirs of promise the immutability of his counsel, confirmed it by an oath:*

*18 That by two immutable things, in which it was impossible for God to lie, we might have a strong consolation, who have fled for refuge to lay hold upon the hope set before us:*

*19 Which hope we have as an anchor of the soul, both sure and steadfast, and which entereth into that within the veil;*

*20 Whither the forerunner is for us entered, even Jesus, made an high priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec.*

5) A Biographical Note On Abraham's Kin-20 years after the Covenant line is established.

vs. 20-24

## Gen 23.

- 1 ¶ And Sarah was an hundred and seven and twenty years old: *these were* the years of the life of Sarah.
- 2 And Sarah died in Kirjatharba; the same *is* Hebron in the land of Canaan: and Abraham came to mourn for Sarah, and **to weep** for her.
- 3 ¶ And Abraham stood up from before his dead, and spake unto the sons of Heth, saying,
- 4 *I am* a stranger and a sojourner with you: give me a possession of a buryingplace with you, that I may bury my dead out of my sight.
- 5 And the children of Heth answered Abraham, saying unto him,
- 6 Hear us, my lord: thou *art* a mighty prince among us: in the choice of our sepulchres bury thy dead; none of us shall withhold from thee his sepulchre, but that thou mayest bury thy dead.
- 7 And Abraham stood up, and bowed himself to the people of the land, *even* to the children of Heth.
- 8 And he communed with them, saying, If it be your mind that I should bury my dead out of my sight; hear me, and intreat for me to Ephron the son of Zohar,
- 9 That he may give me the cave of Machpelah, which he hath, which *is* in the end of his field; for as much money as it is worth he shall give it me for a possession of a buryingplace amongst you.
- 10 And Ephron dwelt among the children of Heth: and Ephron the Hittite answered Abraham in the audience of the children of Heth, *even* of all that went in at the gate of his city, saying,
- 11 Nay, my lord, hear me: the field give I thee, and the cave that *is* therein, I give it thee; in the presence of the sons of my people give I it thee: bury thy dead.
- 12 And Abraham bowed down himself before the people of the land.
- 13 And he spake unto Ephron in the audience of the people of the land, saying, But if thou *wilt give it*, I pray thee, hear me: I will give thee money for the field; take *it* of me, and I will bury my dead there.
- 14 And Ephron answered Abraham, saying unto him,
- 15 My lord, hearken unto me: the land *is worth* four hundred shekels of silver; what *is* that betwixt me and thee? bury therefore thy dead.
- 16 ¶ And Abraham hearkened unto Ephron; and Abraham weighed to Ephron the silver, which he had named in the audience of the sons of Heth, four hundred shekels of silver, current *money* with the merchant.
- 17 And the field of Ephron, which *was* in Machpelah, which *was* before Mamre, the field, and the cave which *was* therein, and all the trees that *were* in the field, that *were* in all the borders round about, were made sure
- 18 Unto Abraham for a possession in the presence of the children of Heth, before all that went in at the gate of his city.
- 19 And after this, Abraham buried Sarah his wife in the cave of the field of Machpelah before Mamre: the same *is* Hebron in the land of Canaan.
- 20 And the field, and the cave that *is* therein, were made sure unto Abraham for a possession of a buryingplace by the sons of Heth.

- |  |           |
|--|-----------|
| 1) Her Death At Hebron   | vs. 1-2   |
| 2) Purchase Of A Grave Site  | vs. 3-18  |
| 3) Her Burial - First recorded Biblical Funeral! - Note the weeping. | vs. 19-20 |

Because of length of text, Ch. 24 is backed up.

#### Gen 24.

- 1 ¶ And Abraham was old, *and* well stricken in age: and the LORD had blessed Abraham in all things.
- 2 And Abraham said unto his eldest servant of his house (*Eliezer of Damascus Gen 15:2*), that ruled over all that he had, Put, I pray thee, thy hand under my thigh:
- 3 And I will make thee swear by the LORD, the God of heaven, and the God of the earth, that thou shalt not take a wife unto my son of the daughters of the Canaanites, among whom I dwell:
- 4 But thou shalt go unto my country, and to my kindred, and take a wife unto my son Isaac.
- 5 And the servant said unto him, Peradventure the woman will not be willing to follow me unto this land: must I needs bring thy son again unto the land from whence thou camest?
- 6 And Abraham said unto him, Beware thou that thou bring not my son thither again.
- 7 The LORD God of heaven, which took me from my father's house, and from the land of my kindred, and which spake unto me, and that sware unto me, saying, Unto thy seed will I give this land; he shall send his angel before thee, and thou shalt take a wife unto my son from thence.
- 8 And if the woman will not be willing to follow thee, then thou shalt be clear from this my oath: only bring not my son thither again.
- 9 And the servant put his hand under the thigh of Abraham his master, and sware to him concerning that matter.
- 10 ¶ And the servant took ten camels of the camels of his master, and departed; for all the goods of his master *were* in his hand: and he arose, and went to Mesopotamia, unto the city of Nahor.
- 11 And he made his camels to kneel down without the city by a well of water at the time of the evening, *even* the time that women go out to draw *water*.
- 12 And he said, O LORD God of my master Abraham, I pray thee, send me good speed this day, and shew kindness unto my master Abraham.
- 13 Behold, I stand *here* by the well of water; and the daughters of the men of the city come out to draw water:
- 14 And let it come to pass, that the damsel to whom I shall say, Let down thy pitcher, I pray thee, that I may drink; and she shall say, Drink, and I will give thy camels drink also: *let the same be* she *that* thou hast appointed for thy servant Isaac; and thereby shall I know that thou hast shewed kindness unto my master.
- 15 And it came to pass, before he had done speaking, that, behold, Rebekah came out, who was born to Bethuel, son of Milcah, the wife of Nahor, Abraham's brother, with her pitcher upon her shoulder.
- 16 And the damsel *was* very fair to look upon, *a virgin*, neither had any man known her: and she went down to the well, and filled her pitcher, and came up.
- 17 And the servant ran to meet her, and said, Let me, I pray thee, drink a little water of thy pitcher.
- 18 And she said, Drink, my lord: and she hasted, and let down her pitcher upon her hand, and gave him drink.
- 19 And when she had done giving him drink, she said, I will draw *water* for thy camels also, until they have done drinking.
- 20 And she hasted, and emptied her pitcher into the trough, and ran again unto the well to draw *water*, and drew for all his camels.
- 21 And the man wondering at her held his peace, to wit whether the LORD had made his journey prosperous or not.
- 22 And it came to pass, as the camels had done drinking, that the man took a golden earring of half a shekel weight, and two bracelets for her hands of ten *shekels* weight of gold;
- 23 And said, Whose daughter *art* thou? tell me, I pray thee: is there room *in* thy father's house for us to lodge in?
- 24 And she said unto him, I *am* the daughter of Bethuel the son of Milcah, which she bare unto Nahor.
- 25 She said moreover unto him, We have both straw and provender enough, and room to lodge in.
- 26 And the man bowed down his head, and worshipped the LORD.
- 27 And he said, Blessed *be* the LORD God of my master Abraham, who hath not left destitute my master of his mercy and his truth: I *being* in the way, the LORD led me to the house of my master's brethren.
- 28 And the damsel ran, and told *them* of her mother's house these things.
- 29 ¶ And Rebekah had a brother, and his name *was* Laban: and Laban ran out unto the man, unto the well.
- 30 And it came to pass, when he saw the earring and bracelets upon his sister's hands, and when he heard the words of Rebekah his sister, saying, Thus spake the man unto me; that he came unto the man; and, behold, he stood by the camels at the well.
- 31 And he said, Come in, thou blessed of the LORD; wherefore standest thou without? for I have prepared the house, and room for the camels.
- 32 And the man came into the house: and he ungirded his camels, and gave straw and provender for the camels, and water to wash his feet, and the men's feet that *were* with him.
- 33 And there was set *meat* before him to eat: but he said, I will not eat, until I have told mine errand. And he said, Speak on.

- 34 And he said, I *am* Abraham's servant.
- 35 And the LORD hath blessed my master greatly; and he is become great: and he hath given him flocks, and herds, and silver, and gold, and menservants, and maidservants, and camels, and asses.
- 36 And Sarah my master's wife bare a son to my master when she was old: and unto him hath he given all that he hath.
- 37 And my master made me swear, saying, Thou shalt not take a wife to my son of the daughters of the Canaanites, in whose land I dwell:
- 38 But thou shalt go unto my father's house, and to my kindred, and take a wife unto my son.
- 39 And I said unto my master, Peradventure the woman will not follow me.
- 40 And he said unto me, The LORD, before whom I walk, will send his angel with thee, and prosper thy way; and thou shalt take a wife for my son of my kindred, and of my father's house:
- 41 Then shalt thou be clear from *this* my oath, when thou comest to my kindred; and if they give not thee *one*, thou shalt be clear from my oath.
- 42 And I came this day unto the well, and said, O LORD God of my master Abraham, if now thou do prosper my way which I go:
- 43 Behold, I stand by the well of water; and it shall come to pass, that when the virgin cometh forth to draw *water*, and I say to her, Give me, I pray thee, a little water of thy pitcher to drink;
- 44 And she say to me, Both drink thou, and I will also draw for thy camels: *let* the same *be* the woman whom the LORD hath appointed out for my master's son.
- 45 And before I had done speaking in mine heart, behold, Rebekah came forth with her pitcher on her shoulder; and she went down unto the well, and drew *water*: and I said unto her, Let me drink, I pray thee.
- 46 And she made haste, and let down her pitcher from her *shoulder*, and said, Drink, and I will give thy camels drink also: so I drank, and she made the camels drink also.
- 47 And I asked her, and said, Whose daughter *art* thou? And she said, The daughter of Bethuel, Nahor's son, whom Milcah bare unto him: and I put the earring upon her face, and the bracelets upon her hands.
- 48 And I bowed down my head, and worshipped the LORD, and blessed the LORD God of my master Abraham, which had led me in the right way to take my master's brother's daughter unto his son.
- 49 And now if ye will deal kindly and truly with my master, tell me: and if not, tell me; that I may turn to the right hand, or to the left.
- 50 Then Laban and Bethuel answered and said, The thing proceedeth from the LORD: we cannot speak unto thee bad or good.
- 51 Behold, Rebekah *is* before thee, take *her*, and go, and let her be thy master's son's wife, as the LORD hath spoken.
- 52 And it came to pass, that, when Abraham's servant heard their words, he worshipped the LORD, *bowing himself* to the earth.
- 53 And the servant brought forth jewels of silver, and jewels of gold, and raiment, and gave *them* to Rebekah: he gave also to her brother and to her mother precious things.
- 54 ¶ And they did eat and drink, he and the men that *were* with him, and tarried all night; and they rose up in the morning, and he said, Send me away unto my master.
- 55 And her brother and her mother said, Let the damsel abide with us *a few* days, at the least ten; after that she shall go.
- 56 And he said unto them, Hinder me not, seeing the LORD hath prospered my way; send me away that I may go to my master.
- 57 And they said, We will call the damsel, and enquire at her mouth.
- 58 And they called Rebekah, and said unto her, Wilt thou go with this man? And she said, I will go.
- 59 And they sent away Rebekah their sister, and her nurse, and Abraham's servant, and his men.
- 60 And they blessed Rebekah, and said unto her, Thou *art* our sister, be thou *the mother* of thousands of millions, and let thy seed possess the gate of those which hate them.
- 61 And Rebekah arose, and her damsels, and they rode upon the camels, and followed the man: and the servant took Rebekah, and went his way.
- 62 ¶ And Isaac came from the way of the well Lahairoi; for he dwelt in the south country.
- 63 And Isaac went out to meditate in the field at the eventide: and he lifted up his eyes, and saw, and, behold, the camels *were* coming.
- 64 And Rebekah lifted up her eyes, and when she saw Isaac, she lighted off the camel.
- 65 For she *had* said unto the servant, What man *is* this that walketh in the field to meet us? And the servant *had* said, It is my master: therefore she took a vail, and covered herself.
- 66 And the servant told Isaac all things that he had done.
- 67 And Isaac brought her into his mother Sarah's tent, and took Rebekah, and she became his wife; and he loved her: and Isaac was comforted after his mother's *death*.

c- Abraham Seeks A Bride For Isaac - Longest Chapter In Genesis

24:1-67

Is typical of the Holy Spirit seeking a bride for Christ.

The 'damsel' is a virgin (young woman) Heb. **בְּתוּלָה**,

neither had any man known her:

This last phrase would not have been necessary if Betulah meant a 'real' virgin.

ref. Joel 1:8 with Is 7:14 **הַעַלְמָה**. The virgin.

#### 1) He Commissions His Servant To Obtain A Bride

vs. 1-14

(J. GILL) put, I pray thee, thy hand under my thigh: as a token of his subjection to him as a servant, and of his readiness, willingness, and fidelity to execute any commands he should lay upon him, and in order to take an oath, as appears by what follows; for it seems this rite was used in swearing, and is still used in India, as Aben Ezra affirms; and some say among the Ethiopians. The Jewish writers are pretty much of opinion that respect is had to the covenant of circumcision, by which Abraham made his servant to swear, which is not likely: rather respect is had to his seed, the promised Messiah, that should spring from his thigh, by whom the adjuration was made, as follows: though Dr. Clayton {k} thinks this is no other than an equivalent term for approaching in an humble servile manner, and means no more than "come near me", and I will make thee swear; and that, as a respectable method of approach with the Egyptian, as Herodotus {l} relates, was by bowing the body reciprocally when they met, and saluted one another, and by carrying their hands to each other's knee; so some such like ceremony as embracing the knee, and putting the hand under or round the thigh, might be used by servants when they approached their masters; but it should be observed, that this same rite or ceremony was required of Joseph, governor of Egypt, by his father Jacob; see #Ge 47:29.

a) Not A Canaanite

vs. 3

b) Not To Take Isaac From Canaan

vs. 3

c) Bride Must Be Willing - not forced!

vs. 5-6

#### 2) The Response Of Rebekah

vs. 15-61

a) Servant NEVER Speaks Of Himself (Note John 16:13)

b) Rebekah Makes Her Own Decision

vs. 58

#### 3) The Meeting Of Rebekah And Isaac

vs. 61-67

#### 4) The Significance

a) The Father's Concern For Separation From The Canaanites

b) A Picture Of The Holy Spirit Seeking A Bride For Christ

The Holy Spirit doesn't speak of/from Himself; John 16:13.

The servant's name is withheld.

**Gen 25.**

- 1 ¶ Then again Abraham took a wife, and her name *was* Keturah.
- 2 And she bare him Zimran, and Jokshan, and Medan, and Midian, and Ishbak, and Shuah.
- 3 And Jokshan begat Sheba, and Dedan. And the sons of Dedan were Asshurim, and Letushim, and Leummim.
- 4 And the sons of Midian; Ephah, and Ephher, and Hanoah, and Abida, and Eldaah. All these *were* the children of Keturah.
- 5 And Abraham gave all that he had unto Isaac.
- 6 But unto the sons of the concubines, which Abraham had, Abraham gave gifts, and sent them away from Isaac his son, while he yet lived, eastward, unto the east country.
- 7 And these *are* the days of the years of Abraham's life which he lived, an hundred threescore and fifteen years.
- 8 Then Abraham gave up the ghost, and died in a good old age, an old man, and full *of years*; and was gathered to his people.
- 9 And his sons Isaac and Ishmael buried him in the cave of Machpelah, in the field of Ephron the son of Zohar the Hittite, which *is* before Mamre;
- 10 The field which Abraham purchased of the sons of Heth: there was Abraham buried, and Sarah his wife.
- 11 ¶ And it came to pass after the death of Abraham, that God blessed his son Isaac; and Isaac dwelt by the well Lahairoi.
- 12 Now these *are* the generations of Ishmael, Abraham's son, whom Hagar the Egyptian, Sarah's handmaid, bare unto Abraham:
- 13 And these *are* the names of the sons of Ishmael, by their names, according to their generations: the firstborn of Ishmael, Nebajoth; and Kedar, and Adbeel, and Mibsam,
- 14 And Mishma, and Dumah, and Massa,
- 15 Hadar, and Tema, Jetur, Naphish, and Kedemah:
- 16 These *are* the sons of Ishmael, and these *are* their names, by their towns, and by their castles; twelve princes according to their nations.
- 17 And these *are* the years of the life of Ishmael, an hundred and thirty and seven years: and he gave up the ghost and died; and was gathered unto his people.
- 18 And they dwelt from Havilah unto Shur, that *is* before Egypt, as thou goest toward Assyria: *and* he died in the presence of all his brethren.
- 19 ¶ And these *are* the generations of Isaac, Abraham's son: Abraham begat Isaac:
- 20 And Isaac was forty years old when he took Rebekah to wife, the daughter of Bethuel the Syrian of Padanaram, the sister to Laban the Syrian.
- 21 And Isaac intreated the LORD for his wife, because she *was* barren: and the LORD was intreated of him, and Rebekah his wife conceived.
- 22 And the children struggled together within her; and she said, If *it be* so, why *am* I thus? And she went to enquire of the LORD.
- 23 And the LORD said unto her, Two nations *are* in thy womb, and two manner of people shall be separated from thy bowels; and *the one* people shall be stronger than *the other* people; and the elder shall serve the younger.
- 24 And when her days to be delivered were fulfilled, behold, *there were* twins in her womb.
- 25 And the first came out red, all over like an hairy garment; and they called his name Esau.
- 26 And after that came his brother out, and his hand took hold on Esau's heel; and his name was called Jacob: and Isaac *was* threescore years old when she bare them.
- 27 And the boys grew: and Esau was a cunning hunter, a man of the field; and Jacob *was* a plain man, dwelling in tents.
- 28 And Isaac loved Esau, because he did eat of *his* venison: but Rebekah loved Jacob.
- 29 ¶ And Jacob sod pottage: and Esau came from the field, and he *was* faint:
- 30 And Esau said to Jacob, Feed me, I pray thee, with that same red *pottage*; for I *am* faint: therefore was his name called Edom.
- 31 And Jacob said, Sell me this day thy birthright.
- 32 And Esau said, Behold, I *am* at the point to die: and what profit shall this birthright do to me?
- 33 And Jacob said, Swear to me this day; and he sware unto him: and he sold his birthright unto Jacob.
- 34 Then Jacob gave Esau bread and pottage of lentiles; and he did eat and drink, and rose up, and went his way: thus Esau despised *his* birthright.



- 1) Keturah And Her Children - 6 children - Midianites vs. 1-4
- 2) Isaac Becomes The Sole Inheritor - the other children sent to the East. vs. 5-6
- 3) Abraham's Death At Age 175 (39 years after Sarah's death) - And his burial vs. 7-10
- 4) The Line Of Ishmael Traced vs. 12-18

#### B- Isaac (Man of Peace) (25:19.-26:35.)

- 1) The Significance Of Isaac
  - a) The Transitional Figure Between Abraham And Jacob
  - b) A Significant Type Of Christ
- 2) The Generations Of Isaac vs. 25:19-34
  - a- The Promise Concerning Esau And Jacob vs. 19-23
    - i) The Prenatal Struggle Suggested Their Animosity personally & historically
    - ii) The Lord Declared That "The elder shall serve the younger." vs. 23
  - b) The Birth Of Esau And Jacob vs. 24-26
  - c) Esau Sells His Birthright vs. 27-34
    - i) The Significance Of Esau - **Father of the Edomites**
    - ii) Note that the birthright provided a double inheritance.  
The very words used indicate that Esau was an immoral man.  
Further, the extra-Biblical writings declare that:

#### (From John Gill's Bible Commentary)

thus Esau despised [his] birthright; by setting it at so mean a price, and by not repenting of it when he had so done; having no regard especially to spiritual blessings, to the Messiah, and to the heavenly inheritance, eternal glory and happiness by Christ: the Jerusalem Targum adds,

"and he despised his part in the world to come, and denied the resurrection of the dead;"

and the Targum of Jonathan on #Ge 25:29 says, that

"on that day he committed five transgressions; he performed strange worship (or committed idolatry), he shed innocent blood, he lay with a virgin betrothed, he denied the life of the world to come (or a future state), and despised the birthright;"

which confirms the character the apostle gives of him, that he was a fornicator and a profane person, #Heb 12:16.

- iii) We Might Also Look At The Partiality Of The Parents - vs.28  
It seems obvious that the parents were interested in what each boy could do for them!  
Note also, a difference in attitudes towards God's promises

## Gen 26.

- 1 ¶ And there was a famine in the land, beside the first famine that was in the days of Abraham. And Isaac went unto Abimelech king of the Philistines unto Gerar.
- 2 And the LORD appeared unto him, and said, Go not down into Egypt; dwell in the land which I shall tell thee of:
- 3 Sojourn in this land, and I will be with thee, and will bless thee; for unto thee, and unto thy seed, I will give all these countries, and I will perform the oath which I sware unto Abraham thy father;
- 4 And I will make thy seed to multiply as the stars of heaven, and will give unto thy seed all these countries; and in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed;
- 5 Because that Abraham obeyed my voice, and kept my charge, my commandments, my statutes, and my laws.
- 6 ¶ And Isaac dwelt in Gerar:
- 7 And the men of the place asked *him* of his wife; and he said, She *is* my sister: for he feared to say, *She is* my wife; lest, *said he*, the men of the place should kill me for Rebekah; because she *was* fair to look upon.
- 8 And it came to pass, when he had been there a long time, that Abimelech king of the Philistines looked out at a window, and saw, and, behold, Isaac *was* sporting with Rebekah his wife.
- 9 And Abimelech called Isaac, and said, Behold, of a surety she *is* thy wife: and how saidst thou, She *is* my sister? And Isaac said unto him, Because I said, Lest I die for her.
- 10 And Abimelech said, What *is* this thou hast done unto us? one of the people might lightly have lien with thy wife, and thou shouldest have brought guiltiness upon us.
- 11 And Abimelech charged all *his* people, saying, He that toucheth this man or his wife shall surely be put to death.
- 12 ¶ Then Isaac sowed in that land, and received in the same year an hundredfold: and the LORD blessed him.
- 13 And the man waxed great, and went forward, and grew until he became very great:
- 14 For he had possession of flocks, and possession of herds, and great store of servants: and the Philistines envied him.
- 15 For all the wells which his father's servants had digged in the days of Abraham his father, the Philistines had stopped them, and filled them with earth.
- 16 And Abimelech said unto Isaac, Go from us; for thou art much mightier than we.
- 17 And Isaac departed thence, and pitched his tent in the valley of Gerar, and dwelt there.
- 18 And Isaac digged again the wells of water, which they had digged in the days of Abraham his father; for the Philistines had stopped them after the death of Abraham: and he called their names after the names by which his father had called them.
- 19 And Isaac's servants digged in the valley, and found there a well of springing water.
- 20 And the herdmen of Gerar did strive with Isaac's herdmen, saying, The water *is* ours: and he called the name of the well Esek; because they strove with him.
- 21 And they digged another well, and strove for that also: and he called the name of it Sitnah.
- 22 And he removed from thence, and digged another well; and for that they strove not: and he called the name of it Rehoboth; and he said, For now the LORD hath made room for us, and we shall be fruitful in the land.
- 23 And he went up from thence to Beersheba.
- 24 And the LORD appeared unto him the same night, and said, I *am* the God of Abraham thy father: fear not, for I *am* with thee, and will bless thee, and multiply thy seed for my servant Abraham's sake.
- 25 And he builded an altar there, and called upon the name of the LORD, and pitched his tent there: and there Isaac's servants digged a well.
- 26 ¶ Then Abimelech went to him from Gerar, and Ahuzzath one of his friends, and Phichol the chief captain of his army.
- 27 And Isaac said unto them, Wherefore come ye to me, seeing ye hate me, and have sent me away from you?
- 28 And they said, We saw certainly that the LORD was with thee: and we said, Let there be now an oath betwixt us, *even* betwixt us and thee, and let us make a covenant with thee;
- 29 That thou wilt do us no hurt, as we have not touched thee, and as we have done unto thee nothing but good, and have sent thee away in peace: thou *art* now the blessed of the LORD.
- 30 And he made them a feast, and they did eat and drink.
- 31 And they rose up betimes in the morning, and sware one to another: and Isaac sent them away, and they departed from him in peace.
- 32 And it came to pass the same day, that Isaac's servants came, and told him concerning the well which they had digged, and said unto him, We have found water.
- 33 And he called it Shebah: therefore the name of the city *is* Beersheba unto this day.
- 34 ¶ And Esau was forty years old when he took to wife Judith the daughter of Beeri the Hittite, and Bashemath the daughter of Elon the Hittite:
- 35 Which were a grief of mind unto Isaac and to Rebekah.

## 3) The Covenant Confirmed To Isaac vs. 26:1-35

## a) The Provisions Of The Covenant Restated vs.1-4

b) The Basis Of The Covenant Restated – vs. 5  
“because Abraham OBEYED my voice”

## c) The Lapse Of Isaac - Note same place, Gerar, same kings name vs. 6-11

(GILL) Gen 26:8 . . . that Abimelech king of the Philistines looked out at a window; in his own palace, near to which, in all likelihood, were the apartments that Isaac and Rebekah dwelt in; and this he did accidentally, and not out of curiosity, or with any intention to observe or pry into the behaviour and conduct of these two persons one towards the other:

and saw, and, behold, Isaac [was] sporting with Rebekah his wife; laughing and joking with her, which by his motions and gestures, and the airs and freedoms he took, Abimelech could perceive were such as were not usual between brothers and sisters, though honest and lawful between man and wife; such as embracing her in his arms, and frequently kissing her, and the like.

## d) Isaac's Personal Blessing vs. 12-35

## e) Isaac's Religious Life vs. 25

## i) He Built An Altar vs. 25

## ii) He Lived As A Pilgrim In A Tent vs. 17

## iii) He Had A Prayer Life

## iv) He Dug A Well For His Neighbors vs.

## Gen 27.

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass, that when Isaac was old, and his eyes were dim, so that he could not see, he called Esau his eldest son, and said unto him, My son: and he said unto him, Behold, *here am I*.
- 2 And he said, Behold now, I am old, I know not the day of my death:
- 3 Now therefore take, I pray thee, thy weapons, thy quiver and thy bow, and go out to the field, and take me *some* venison;
- 4 And make me savoury meat, such as I love, and bring *it* to me, that I may eat; that my soul may bless thee before I die.
- 5 And Rebekah heard when Isaac spake to Esau his son. And Esau went to the field to hunt *for* venison, *and* to bring *it*.
- 6 ¶ And Rebekah spake unto Jacob her son, saying, Behold, I heard thy father speak unto Esau thy brother, saying,
- 7 Bring me venison, and make me savoury meat, that I may eat, and bless thee before the LORD before my death.
- 8 Now therefore, my son, obey my voice according to that which I command thee.
- 9 Go now to the flock, and fetch me from thence two good kids of the goats; and I will make them savoury meat for thy father, such as he loveth:
- 10 And thou shalt bring *it* to thy father, that he may eat, and that he may bless thee before his death.
- 11 And Jacob said to Rebekah his mother, Behold, Esau my brother *is* a hairy man, and I *am* a smooth man:
- 12 My father peradventure will feel me, and I shall seem to him as a deceiver; and I shall bring a curse upon me, and not a blessing.
- 13 And his mother said unto him, Upon me *be* thy curse, my son: only obey my voice, and go fetch me *them*.
- 14 And he went, and fetched, and brought *them* to his mother: and his mother made savoury meat, such as his father loved.
- 15 And Rebekah took goodly raiment of her eldest son Esau, which *were* with her in the house, and put them upon Jacob her younger son:
- 16 And she put the skins of the kids of the goats upon his hands, and upon the smooth of his neck:
- 17 And she gave the savoury meat and the bread, which she had prepared, into the hand of her son Jacob.
- 18 ¶ And he came unto his father, and said, My father: and he said, Here *am I*; who *art* thou, my son?
- 19 And Jacob said unto his father, I *am* Esau thy firstborn; I have done according as thou badest me: arise, I pray thee, sit and eat of my venison, that thy soul may bless me.
- 20 And Isaac said unto his son, How *is it* that thou hast found *it* so quickly, my son? And he said, Because the LORD thy God brought *it* to me.
- 21 And Isaac said unto Jacob, Come near, I pray thee, that I may feel thee, my son, whether thou *be* my very son Esau or not.
- 22 And Jacob went near unto Isaac his father; and he felt him, and said, The voice *is* Jacob's voice, but the hands *are* the hands of Esau.
- 23 And he discerned him not, because his hands were hairy, as his brother Esau's hands: so he blessed him.
- 24 And he said, *Art* thou my very son Esau? And he said, I *am*.
- 25 And he said, Bring *it* near to me, and I will eat of my son's venison, that my soul may bless thee. And he brought *it* near to him, and he did eat: and he brought him wine, and he drank.
- 26 And his father Isaac said unto him, Come near now, and kiss me, my son.
- 27 And he came near, and kissed him: and he smelled the smell of his raiment, and blessed him, and said, See, the smell of my son *is* as the smell of a field which the LORD hath blessed:
- 28 Therefore God give thee of the dew of heaven, and the fatness of the earth, and plenty of corn and wine:
- 29 Let people serve thee, and nations bow down to thee: be lord over thy brethren, and let thy mother's sons bow down to thee: cursed *be* every one that curseth thee, and blessed *be* he that blesseth thee.
- 30 ¶ And it came to pass, as soon as Isaac had made an end of blessing Jacob, and Jacob was yet scarce gone out from the presence of Isaac his father, that Esau his brother came in from his hunting.
- 31 And he also had made savoury meat, and brought it unto his father, and said unto his father, Let my father arise, and eat of his son's venison, that thy soul may bless me.
- 32 And Isaac his father said unto him, Who *art* thou? And he said, I *am* thy son, thy firstborn Esau.
- 33 And Isaac trembled very exceedingly, and said, Who? where *is* he that hath taken venison, and brought *it* me, and I have eaten of all before thou camest, and have blessed him? yea, *and* he shall be blessed.
- 34 And when Esau heard the words of his father, he cried with a great and exceeding bitter cry, and said unto his father, Bless me, *even* me also, O my father.
- 35 And he said, Thy brother came with subtilty, and hath taken away thy blessing.
- 36 And he said, Is not he rightly named Jacob? for he hath supplanted me these two times: he took away my birthright; and, behold, now he hath taken away my blessing. And he said, Hast thou not reserved a blessing for me?
- 37 And Isaac answered and said unto Esau, Behold, I have made him thy lord, and all his brethren have I given to him for servants; and with corn and wine have I sustained him: and what shall I do now unto thee, my son?
- 38 And Esau said unto his father, Hast thou but one blessing, my father? bless me, *even* me also, O my father. And Esau lifted up his voice, and wept.
- 39 And Isaac his father answered and said unto him, Behold, thy dwelling shall be the fatness of the earth, and of the dew of heaven from above;
- 40 And by thy sword shalt thou live, and shalt serve thy brother; and it shall come to pass when thou shalt have the dominion, that thou shalt break his yoke from off thy neck.
- 41 ¶ And Esau hated Jacob because of the blessing wherewith his father blessed him: and Esau said in his heart, The days of mourning for my father are at hand; then will I slay my brother Jacob.
- 42 And these words of Esau her elder son were told to Rebekah: and she sent and called Jacob her younger son, and said unto him, Behold, thy brother Esau, as touching thee, doth comfort himself, *purposing* to kill thee.

43 Now therefore, my son, obey my voice; and arise, flee thou to Laban my brother to Haran;

44 And tarry with him a few days, until thy brother's fury turn away;

45 Until thy brother's anger turn away from thee, and he forget *that* which thou hast done to him: then I will send, and fetch thee from thence: why should I be deprived also of you both in one day?

46 And Rebekah said to Isaac, I am weary of my life because of the daughters of Heth: if Jacob take a wife of the daughters of Heth, such as these *which are* of the daughters of the land, what good shall my life do me?

---

C- Jacob - A Man Of Action (lived 147 years)

(27. – 36.)

1- The Significance Of Jacob

a- Father Of The 12 Tribes

b- Displayed That The Covenant Was Not Dependent On Man

2- Jacob Acquires The Blessing By Deceit - He's now 71 years old

(27:1-46)

Note The deceit practiced by all 4 members of the "family"

a- Isaac's Purpose Is To Bless Esau - He thought the blessing to be man confirmed!

vs. 1-4

He did this in spite of the Lord's statement of 25:23 . .

"The elder shall serve the younger."

b- Rebekah's Plot To Bless Jacob

vs. 5-25

She decided she would help God out.

c- The Blessing Of Jacob

vs. 26-29

1) Promise Of Prosperity

2) Promise Of Rulership

3) Isaac Blesses Jacob In Spite Of Himself

d- The Blessing Of Esau

vs. 30-40

1) To Enjoy Prosperity

2) Shall Live By The Sword

3) Shall Serve His Brother

e- The Resulting Animosity

vs. 41-46

1) Esau Vows To Slay Jacob When Isaac Died

2) Rebekah Sent Her Son Away For A Short Time & Never Saw Him Again

**Gen 28**

- 1 ¶ And Isaac called Jacob, and blessed him, and charged him, and said unto him, Thou shalt not take a wife of the daughters of Canaan.
- 2 Arise, go to Padanaram, to the house of Bethuel thy mother's father; and take thee a wife from thence of the daughters of Laban thy mother's brother.
- 3 And God Almighty bless thee, and make thee fruitful, and multiply thee, that thou mayest be a multitude of people;
- 4 And give thee the blessing of Abraham, to thee, and to thy seed with thee; that thou mayest inherit the land wherein thou art a stranger, which God gave unto Abraham.
- 5 And Isaac sent away Jacob: and he went to Padanaram unto Laban, son of Bethuel the Syrian, the brother of Rebekah, Jacob's and Esau's mother.
- 6 ¶ When Esau saw that Isaac had blessed Jacob, and sent him away to Padanaram, to take him a wife from thence; and that as he blessed him he gave him a charge, saying, Thou shalt not take a wife of the daughters of Canaan;
- 7 And that Jacob obeyed his father and his mother, and was gone to Padanaram;
- 8 And Esau seeing that the daughters of Canaan pleased not Isaac his father;
- 9 Then went Esau unto Ishmael, and took unto the wives which he had Mahalath the daughter of Ishmael Abraham's son, the sister of Nebajoth, to be his wife.
- 10 ¶ And Jacob went out from Beersheba, and went toward Haran.
- 11 And he lighted upon a certain place, and tarried there all night, because the sun was set; and he took of the stones of that place, and put *them* for his pillows, and lay down in that place to sleep.
- 12 And he dreamed, and behold a ladder set up on the earth, and the top of it reached to heaven: and behold the angels of God ascending and descending on it.
- 13 And, behold, the LORD stood above it, and said, I *am* the LORD God of Abraham thy father, and the God of Isaac: the land whereon thou liest, to thee will I give it, and to thy seed;
- 14 And thy seed shall be as the dust of the earth, and thou shalt spread abroad to the west, and to the east, and to the north, and to the south: and in thee and in thy seed shall all the families of the earth be blessed.
- 15 And, behold, I *am* with thee, and will keep thee in all *places* whither thou goest, and will bring thee again into this land; for I will not leave thee, until I have done *that* which I have spoken to thee of.
- 16 ¶ And Jacob awaked out of his sleep, and he said, Surely the LORD is in this place; and I knew *it* not.
- 17 And he was afraid, and said, How dreadful *is* this place! this *is* none other but the house of God, and this *is* the gate of heaven.
- 18 And Jacob rose up early in the morning, and took the stone that he had put *for* his pillows, and set it up *for* a pillar, and poured oil upon the top of it.
- 19 And he called the name of that place Bethel: but the name of that city *was called* Luz at the first.
- 20 And Jacob vowed a vow, saying, If God will be with me, and will keep me in this way that I go, and will give me bread to eat, and raiment to put on,
- 21 So that I come again to my father's house in peace; then shall the LORD be my God:
- 22 And this stone, which I have set *for* a pillar, shall be God's house: and of all that thou shalt give me I will surely give the tenth unto thee.

**Gen 29: 1** ¶ Then Jacob went on his journey, and came into the land of the people of the east.

- 2 And he looked, and behold a well in the field, and, lo, there *were* three flocks of sheep lying by it; for out of that well they watered the flocks: and a great stone *was* upon the well's mouth.
- 3 And thither were all the flocks gathered: and they rolled the stone from the well's mouth, and watered the sheep, and put the stone again upon the well's mouth in his place.
- 4 And Jacob said unto them, My brethren, whence *be* ye? And they said, Of Haran *are* we.
- 5 And he said unto them, Know ye Laban the son of Nahor? And they said, We know *him*.
- 6 And he said unto them, *Is* he well? And they said, *He is* well: and, behold, Rachel his daughter cometh with the sheep.
- 7 And he said, Lo, *it is* yet high day, neither *is it* time that the cattle should be gathered together: water ye the sheep, and go *and feed them*.
- 8 And they said, We cannot, until all the flocks be gathered together, and *till* they roll the stone from the well's mouth; then we water the sheep.
- 9 ¶ And while he yet spake with them, Rachel came with her father's sheep: for she kept them.
- 10 And it came to pass, when Jacob saw Rachel the daughter of Laban his mother's brother, and the sheep of Laban his mother's brother, that Jacob went near, and rolled the stone from the well's mouth, and watered the flock of Laban his mother's brother.
- 11 And Jacob kissed Rachel, and lifted up his voice, and wept.
- 12 And Jacob told Rachel that he *was* her father's brother, and that he *was* Rebekah's son: and she ran and told her father.
- 13 And it came to pass, when Laban heard the tidings of Jacob his sister's son, that he ran to meet him, and embraced him, and kissed him, and brought him to his house. And he told Laban all these things.
- 14 And Laban said to him, Surely thou *art* my bone and my flesh. And he abode with him the space of a month.
- 15 ¶ And Laban said unto Jacob, Because thou *art* my brother, shouldst thou therefore serve me for nought? tell me, what *shall* thy wages *be*?
- 16 And Laban had two daughters: the name of the elder *was* Leah, and the name of the younger *was* Rachel.
- 17 Leah *was* tender eyed; but Rachel *was* beautiful and well favoured.
- 18 And Jacob loved Rachel; and said, I will serve thee seven years for Rachel thy younger daughter.
- 19 And Laban said, *It is* better that I give her to thee, than that I should give her to another man: abide with me.
- 20 And Jacob served seven years for Rachel; and they seemed unto him *but* a few days, for the love he had to her.
- 21 And Jacob said unto Laban, Give *me* my wife, for my days are fulfilled, that I may go in unto her.
- 22 And Laban gathered together all the men of the place, and made a feast.
- 23 And it came to pass in the evening, that he took Leah his daughter, and brought her to him; and he went in unto her.
- 24 And Laban gave unto his daughter Leah Zilpah his maid *for* an handmaid.
- 25 And it came to pass, that in the morning, behold, it *was* Leah: and he said to Laban, What *is* this thou hast done unto me? did not I serve with thee for Rachel? wherefore then hast thou beguiled me?
- 26 And Laban said, It must not be so done in our country, to give the younger before the firstborn.
- 27 Fulfil her week, and we will give thee this also for the service which thou shalt serve with me yet seven other years.
- 28 And Jacob did so, and fulfilled her week: and he gave him Rachel his daughter to wife also.

29 And Laban gave to Rachel his daughter Bilhah his handmaid to be her maid.

30 And he went in also unto Rachel, and he loved also Rachel more than Leah, and served with him yet seven other years.

31 ¶ And when the LORD saw that Leah *was* hated, he opened her womb: but Rachel *was* barren.

32 And Leah conceived, and bare a son, and she called his name Reuben: for she said, Surely the LORD hath looked upon my affliction; now therefore my husband will love me.

33 And she conceived again, and bare a son; and said, Because the LORD hath heard that I *was* hated, he hath therefore given me this *son* also: and she called his name Simeon.

34 And she conceived again, and bare a son; and said, Now this time will my husband be joined unto me, because I have born him three sons: therefore was his name called Levi.

35 And she conceived again, and bare a son: and she said, Now will I praise the LORD: therefore she called his name Judah; and left bearing.

---

### 3- Jacob's Journey And His Dream At Bethel (28.)

a- The Blessing Of Abraham Conferred - Isaac gives the blessing vs. 1-9

b- The Covenant Confirmed By God To Jacob At Bethel vs. 10-19

1) The Lord Gives Jacob The Blessing

2) The Lord Promises Jacob A Safe Return To The Land

3) Jacob Sets Up A Pillar To Bethel As "God's House" And Promises A Tithe vs. 22

c- Jacob's Vow To The Lord

### 4- Jacob Acquires A Family - "The Bargainer" (29:1.-30:26.)

a- Jacob Providentially Meets Rachael vs. 1-12

b- Jacob Serves 14 Years For The Firstborn Leah And Then Rachael, Her Sister. vs. 13-29

(Note: Not according to his bargain but it was in accordance with the ancient customs)

(Ref. Commentary By Adam Clarke) {Verse 26} It must not be so done in our country

It was an early custom to give daughters in marriage according to their *seniority*; and it is worthy of remark that the oldest people now existing, next to the Jews, I mean *the Hindoos*, have this not merely as a *custom*, but as a *positive law*; and they deem it criminal to give a *younger* daughter in marriage while an elder daughter remains *unmarried*. Among them it is a high offence, equal to adultery, "for a man to marry while his *elder brother* remains *unmarried*, or for a man to give his daughter to such a person, or to give his *youngest daughter* in marriage while the *eldest sister* remains *unmarried*."—Code of Gentoo Laws, Ge. xv., sec. 1, p. 204. This was a custom at Mesopotamia; but Laban took care to conceal it from Jacob till after he had given him Leah. The words of Laban are literally what a Hindoo would say on such a subject.

1) 7 Years First For Leah (He met his deceitful match in Laban)

2) 7 Years For Rachael

3) He 'begats' 11 sons and one daughter by 2 wives and Bilhah and Zilpah  
The wives are now bargaining like the "menfolk."

- Gen 30: 1 ¶** And when Rachel saw that she bare Jacob no children, Rachel envied her sister; and said unto Jacob, Give me children, or else I die.
- 2 And Jacob's anger was kindled against Rachel: and he said, *Am* I in God's stead, who hath withheld from thee the fruit of the womb?
- 3 And she said, Behold my maid Bilhah, go in unto her; and she shall bear upon my knees, that I may also have children by her.
- 4 And she gave him Bilhah her handmaid to wife: and Jacob went in unto her.
- 5 And Bilhah conceived, and bare Jacob a son.
- 6 And Rachel said, God hath judged me, and hath also heard my voice, and hath given me a son: therefore called she his name Dan.
- 7 And Bilhah Rachel's maid conceived again, and bare Jacob a second son.
- 8 And Rachel said, With great wrestlings have I wrestled with my sister, and I have prevailed: and she called his name Naphtali.
- 9 When Leah saw that she had left bearing, she took Zilpah her maid, and gave her Jacob to wife.
- 10 And Zilpah Leah's maid bare Jacob a son.
- 11 And Leah said, A troop cometh: and she called his name Gad.
- 12 And Zilpah Leah's maid bare Jacob a second son.
- 13 And Leah said, Happy am I, for the daughters will call me blessed: and she called his name Asher.
- 14 ¶ And Reuben went in the days of wheat harvest, and found mandrakes in the field, and brought them unto his mother Leah. Then Rachel said to Leah, Give me, I pray thee, of thy son's mandrakes.
- 15 And she said unto her, *Is it* a small matter that thou hast taken my husband? and wouldest thou take away my son's mandrakes also? And Rachel said, Therefore he shall lie with thee to night for thy son's mandrakes.
- 16 And Jacob came out of the field in the evening, and Leah went out to meet him, and said, Thou must come in unto me; for surely I have hired thee with my son's mandrakes. And he lay with her that night.
- 17 And God hearkened unto Leah, and she conceived, and bare Jacob the fifth son.
- 18 And Leah said, God hath given me my hire, because I have given my maiden to my husband: and she called his name Issachar.
- 19 And Leah conceived again, and bare Jacob the sixth son.
- 20 And Leah said, God hath endued me *with* a good dowry; now will my husband dwell with me, because I have born him six sons: and she called his name Zebulun.
- 21 And afterwards she bare a daughter, and called her name Dinah.
- 22 And God remembered Rachel, and God hearkened to her, and opened her womb.
- 23 And she conceived, and bare a son; and said, God hath taken away my reproach:
- 24 And she called his name Joseph; and said, The LORD shall add to me another son.
- 25 ¶ And it came to pass, when Rachel had born Joseph, that Jacob said unto Laban, Send me away, that I may go unto mine own place, and to my country.
- 26 Give *me* my wives and my children, for whom I have served thee, and let me go: for thou knowest my service which I have done thee.
- 27 And Laban said unto him, I pray thee, if I have found favour in thine eyes, *tarry: for* I have learned by experience that the LORD hath blessed me for thy sake.
- 28 And he said, Appoint me thy wages, and I will give *it*.
- 29 And he said unto him, Thou knowest how I have served thee, and how thy cattle was with me.
- 30 For *it was* little which thou hadst before I *came*, and it is *now* increased unto a multitude; and the LORD hath blessed thee since my coming: and now when shall I provide for mine own house also?
- 31 And he said, What shall I give thee? And Jacob said, Thou shalt not give me any thing: if thou wilt do this thing for me, I will again feed *and* keep thy flock:
- 32 I will pass through all thy flock to day, removing from thence all the speckled and spotted cattle, and all the brown cattle among the sheep, and the spotted and speckled among the goats: and *of such* shall be my hire.
- 33 So shall my righteousness answer for me in time to come, when it shall come for my hire before thy face: every one that is not speckled and spotted among the goats, and brown among the sheep, that shall be counted stolen with me.
- 34 And Laban said, Behold, I would it might be according to thy word.
- 35 And he removed that day the he goats that were ringstraked and spotted, and all the she goats that were speckled and spotted, *and* every one that had *some* white in it, and all the brown among the sheep, and gave *them* into the hand of his sons.
- 36 And he set three days' journey betwixt himself and Jacob: and Jacob fed the rest of Laban's flocks.
- 37 ¶ And Jacob took him rods of green poplar, and of the hazel and chesnut tree; and pilled white strakes in them, and made the white appear which *was* in the rods.
- 38 And he set the rods which he had pilled before the flocks in the gutters in the watering troughs when the flocks came to drink, that they should conceive when they came to drink.
- 39 And the flocks conceived before the rods, and brought forth cattle ringstraked, speckled, and spotted.
- 40 And Jacob did separate the lambs, and set the faces of the flocks toward the ringstraked, and all the brown in the flock of Laban; and he put his own flocks by themselves, and put them not unto Laban's cattle.
- 41 And it came to pass, whensoever the stronger cattle did conceive, that Jacob laid the rods before the eyes of the cattle in the gutters, that they might conceive among the rods.
- 42 But when the cattle were feeble, he put *them* not in: so the feebler were Laban's, and the stronger Jacob's.
- 43 And the man increased exceedingly, and had much cattle, and maidservants, and menservants, and camels, and asses.



- 
- 5) The Increase Of Jacob's Family (30.)
- a) The Birth's Through Bilhah vs. 1-8
  - b) The Birth's Through Zilpah vs. 9-13
  - c) The Birth's Through Leah vs. 14-21
 

Note on "Mandrakes" (not the comic strip magician). The mandrake is a member of the potato family. It is large rooted and has the shape of a man. The Jews thought it was a charm against evil spirits. Its strange odor was thought to be repugnant to elves. As indicated here, it was also thought to induce fertility. (Hebrew דודאים *duwday doo-dah ēm'*). The 20<sup>th</sup> century B.C. female version of viagra. i.e.. was thought to excite sexual desire, and favor procreation.
  - d) The Conception And Birth Of Joseph By Rachel (Her firstborn - of promise) vs. 22-26
- 6- Jacob Acquires Wealth vs. 27-43
- a- Jacob's Proposal To Laban vs. 27-36
  - b- Jacob's Connivings vs. 37-43
    - 1) Used Prenatal Influence
    - 2) Used Selective Cattle Breeding
    - 3) As Though He Was Going To Do It By His Ingenuity
  - c- Jacob's Resulting Prosperity vs. 43
  - d- The Lesson Learned - Jacob strove to get what God had promised (in the flesh) - God Blessed Him.

## Gen 31.

- 1 ¶ And he heard the words of Laban's sons, saying, Jacob hath taken away all that *was* our father's; and of *that* which *was* our father's hath he gotten all this glory.
- 2 And Jacob beheld the countenance of Laban, and, behold, it *was* not toward him as before.
- 3 And the LORD said unto Jacob, Return unto the land of thy fathers, and to thy kindred; and I will be with thee.
- 4 And Jacob sent and called Rachel and Leah to the field unto his flock,
- 5 And said unto them, I see your father's countenance, that it *is* not toward me as before; but the God of my father hath been with me.
- 6 And ye know that with all my power I have served your father.
- 7 And your father hath deceived me, and changed my wages ten times; but God suffered him not to hurt me.
- 8 If he said thus, The speckled shall be thy wages; then all the cattle bare speckled: and if he said thus, The ringstraked shall be thy hire; then bare all the cattle ringstraked.
- 9 Thus God hath taken away the cattle of your father, and given *them* to me.
- 10 And it came to pass at the time that the cattle conceived, that I lifted up mine eyes, and saw in a dream, and, behold, the rams which leaped upon the cattle *were* ringstraked, speckled, and grisled.
- 11 And the angel of God spake unto me in a dream, *saying*, Jacob: And I said, Here *am* I.
- 12 And he said, Lift up now thine eyes, and see, all the rams which leap upon the cattle *are* ringstraked, speckled, and grisled: for I have seen all that Laban doeth unto thee.
- 13 I *am* the God of Bethel, where thou anointedst the pillar, *and* where thou vowedst a vow unto me: now arise, get thee out from this land, and return unto the land of thy kindred.
- 14 And Rachel and Leah answered and said unto him, *Is there* yet any portion or inheritance for us in our father's house?
- 15 Are we not counted of him strangers? for he hath sold us, and hath quite devoured also our money.
- 16 For all the riches which God hath taken from our father, that *is* ours, and our children's: now then, whatsoever God hath said unto thee, do.
- 17 ¶ Then Jacob rose up, and set his sons and his wives upon camels;
- 18 And he carried away all his cattle, and all his goods which he had gotten, the cattle of his getting, which he had gotten in Padanaram, for to go to Isaac his father in the land of Canaan.
- 19 And Laban went to shear his sheep: and Rachel had stolen the images that *were* her father's.
- 20 And Jacob stole away unawares to Laban the Syrian, in that he told him not that he fled.
- 21 So he fled with all that he had; and he rose up, and passed over the river, and set his face *toward* the mount Gilead.
- 22 And it was told Laban on the third day that Jacob was fled.
- 23 And he took his brethren with him, and pursued after him seven days' journey; and they overtook him in the mount Gilead.
- 24 And God came to Laban the Syrian in a dream by night, and said unto him, Take heed that thou speak not to Jacob either good or bad.
- 25 ¶ Then Laban overtook Jacob. Now Jacob had pitched his tent in the mount: and Laban with his brethren pitched in the mount of Gilead.
- 26 And Laban said to Jacob, What hast thou done, that thou hast stolen away unawares to me, and carried away my daughters, as captives *taken* with the sword?
- 27 Wherefore didst thou flee away secretly, and steal away from me; and didst not tell me, that I might have sent thee away with mirth, and with songs, with tabret, and with harp?
- 28 And hast not suffered me to kiss my sons and my daughters? thou hast now done foolishly in *so* doing.
- 29 It is in the power of my hand to do you hurt: but the God of your father spake unto me yesternight, saying, Take thou heed that thou speak not to Jacob either good or bad.
- 30 And now, *though* thou wouldest needs be gone, because thou sore longedst after thy father's house, *yet* wherefore hast thou stolen my gods?
- 31 And Jacob answered and said to Laban, Because I was afraid: for I said, Peradventure thou wouldest take by force thy daughters from me.
- 32 With whomsoever thou findest thy gods, let him not live: before our brethren discern thou what *is* thine with me, and take *it* to thee. For Jacob knew not that Rachel had stolen them.
- 33 And Laban went into Jacob's tent, and into Leah's tent, and into the two maidservants' tents; but he found *them* not. Then went he out of Leah's tent, and entered into Rachel's tent.
- 34 Now Rachel had taken the images, and put them in the camel's furniture, and sat upon them. And Laban searched all the tent, but found *them* not.
- 35 And she said to her father, Let it not displease my lord that I cannot rise up before thee; for the custom of women *is* upon me. And he searched, but found not the images.
- 36 ¶ And Jacob was wroth, and chode with Laban: and Jacob answered and said to Laban, What *is* my trespass? what *is* my sin, that thou hast so hotly pursued after me?
- 37 Whereas thou hast searched all my stuff, what hast thou found of all thy household stuff? set *it* here before my brethren and thy brethren, that they may judge betwixt us both.
- 38 This twenty years *have I been* with thee; thy ewes and thy she goats have not cast their young, and the rams of thy flock have I not eaten.
- 39 That which was torn *of beasts* I brought not unto thee; I bare the loss of it; of my hand didst thou require it, *whether* stolen by day, or stolen by night.
- 40 *Thus* I was; in the day the drought consumed me, and the frost by night; and my sleep departed from mine eyes.
- 41 Thus have I been twenty years in thy house; I served thee fourteen years for thy two daughters, and six years for thy cattle: and thou hast changed my wages ten times.
- 42 Except the God of my father, the God of Abraham, and the fear of Isaac, had been with me, surely thou hadst sent me away now empty. God hath seen mine affliction and the labour of my hands, and rebuked *thee* yesternight.
- 43 ¶ And Laban answered and said unto Jacob, *These* daughters *are* my daughters, and *these* children *are* my children, and *these* cattle *are* my cattle, and all that thou seest *is* mine: and what can I do this day unto these my daughters, or unto their children which they have born?
- 44 Now therefore come thou, let us make a covenant, I and thou; and let it be for a witness between me and thee.
- 45 And Jacob took a stone, and set it up *for* a pillar.
- 46 And Jacob said unto his brethren, Gather stones; and they took stones, and made an heap: and they did eat there upon the heap.
- 47 And Laban called it Jegarsahadutha: but Jacob called it Galeed.
- 48 And Laban said, This heap *is* a witness between me and thee this day. Therefore was the name of it called Galeed;
- 49 And Mizpah; for he said, The LORD watch between me and thee, when we are absent one from another.

- 50 If thou shalt afflict my daughters, or if thou shalt take *other* wives beside my daughters, no man *is* with us; see, God *is* witness betwixt me and thee.
- 51 And Laban said to Jacob, Behold this heap, and behold *this* pillar, which I have cast betwixt me and thee;
- 52 This heap *be* witness, and *this* pillar *be* witness, that I will not pass over this heap to thee, and that thou shalt not pass over this heap and this pillar unto me, for harm.
- 53 The God of Abraham, and the God of Nahor, the God of their father, judge betwixt us. And Jacob sware by the fear of his father Isaac.
- 54 Then Jacob offered sacrifice upon the mount, and called his brethren to eat bread: and they did eat bread, and tarried all night in the mount.
- 55 And early in the morning Laban rose up, and kissed his sons and his daughters, and blessed them: and Laban departed, and returned unto his place.

---

#### 6- Jacob's Flight And Encounter With Laban

(31.)

- a) The Divine Counsel - Return to Canaan - Your welcome is wearing out vs. 1-3
  - b) The Family Counsel - Jacob gives God the credit for his successes vs. 4-16
  - c) The Secret Departure - Left while Laban was away on a 3 day journey vs. 17-21
  - d) Laban's Pursuit And The Hot Exchange vs. 22-43
  - e) The Covenant Of "NO TRESPASSING" vs. 44-55
- Notice the distrust of Laban for Jacob & the Doxology often expressed from the pulpit!
- vs. 49 . . . The LORD watch between me and thee, when we are absent one from another. Ref. Question number 39

## Gen 32.

- 1 ¶ And Jacob went on his way, and the angels of God met him.
- 2 And when Jacob saw them, he said, This *is* God's host: and he called the name of that place Mahanaim.
- 3 ¶ And Jacob sent messengers before him to Esau his brother unto the land of Seir, the country of Edom.
- 4 And he commanded them, saying, Thus shall ye speak unto my lord Esau; Thy servant Jacob saith thus, I have sojourned with Laban, and stayed there until now:
- 5 And I have oxen, and asses, flocks, and menservants, and womenservants: and I have sent to tell my lord, that I may find grace in thy sight.
- 6 And the messengers returned to Jacob, saying, We came to thy brother Esau, and also he cometh to meet thee, and four hundred men with him.
- 7 Then Jacob was greatly afraid and distressed: and he divided the people that *was* with him, and the flocks, and herds, and the camels, into two bands;
- 8 And said, If Esau come to the one company, and smite it, then the other company which is left shall escape.
- 9 ¶ And Jacob said, O God of my father Abraham, and God of my father Isaac, the LORD which saidst unto me, Return unto thy country, and to thy kindred, and I will deal well with thee:
- 10 I am not worthy of the least of all the mercies, and of all the truth, which thou hast shewed unto thy servant; for with my staff I passed over this Jordan; and now I am become two bands.
- 11 Deliver me, I pray thee, from the hand of my brother, from the hand of Esau: for I fear him, lest he will come and smite me, *and* the mother with the children.
- 12 And thou saidst, I will surely do thee good, and make thy seed as the sand of the sea, which cannot be numbered for multitude.
- 13 ¶ And he lodged there that same night; and took of that which came to his hand a present for Esau his brother;
- 14 Two hundred she goats, and twenty he goats, two hundred ewes, and twenty rams,
- 15 Thirty milch camels with their colts, forty kine, and ten bulls, twenty she asses, and ten foals.
- 16 And he delivered *them* into the hand of his servants, every drove by themselves; and said unto his servants, Pass over before me, and put a space betwixt drove and drove.
- 17 And he commanded the foremost, saying, When Esau my brother meeteth thee, and asketh thee, saying, Whose *art* thou? and whither goest thou? and whose *are* these before thee?
- 18 Then thou shalt say, *They be* thy servant Jacob's; it *is* a present sent unto my lord Esau: and, behold, also he *is* behind us.
- 19 And so commanded he the second, and the third, and all that followed the droves, saying, On this manner shall ye speak unto Esau, when ye find him.
- 20 And say ye moreover, Behold, thy servant Jacob *is* behind us. For he said, I will appease him with the present that goeth before me, and afterward I will see his face; peradventure he will accept of me.
- 21 So went the present over before him: and himself lodged that night in the company.
- 22 And he rose up that night, and took his two wives, and his two womenservants, and his eleven sons, and passed over the ford Jabbok.
- 23 And he took them, and sent them over the brook, and sent over that he had.
- 24 ¶ And Jacob was left alone; and there wrestled a man with him until the breaking of the day.
- 25 And when he saw that he prevailed not against him, he touched the hollow of his thigh; and the hollow of Jacob's thigh was out of joint, as he wrestled with him.
- 26 And he said, Let me go, for the day breaketh. And he said, I will not let thee go, except thou bless me.
- 27 And he said unto him, What *is* thy name? And he said, Jacob.
- 28 And he said, Thy name shall be called no more Jacob, but Israel: for as a prince hast thou power with God and with men, and hast prevailed.
- 29 And Jacob asked *him*, and said, Tell *me*, I pray thee, thy name. And he said, Wherefore *is* it *that* thou dost ask after my name? And he blessed him there.
- 30 And Jacob called the name of the place Peniel: for I have seen God face to face, and my life is preserved.
- 31 And as he passed over Peniel the sun rose upon him, and he halted upon his thigh.
- 32 Therefore the children of Israel eat not *of* the sinew which shrank, which *is* upon the hollow of the thigh, unto this day: because he touched the hollow of Jacob's thigh in the sinew that shrank.

- a- The Preparation - He is met by the angels of God and then sent 32:1-32
    - 1) Jacob Sends Messengers To Esau vs. 1-8
    - 2) Jacob Beseeches God For Deliverance vs. 9-12
      - a) The First Recorded Prayer
      - b) Confessed His Unworthiness And Claims The Covenant vs. 10
    - 3) Jacob Sends Appeasements To Esau - To Mt. Seir vs. 13-23  
Esau meets him with 400 men.
    - 4) Jacob Wrestles With God For A Blessing vs. 24-32  
(World Wrestling Federation Initial Match)
- He persistently holds on to God for a blessing and is crippled - He prevails and is now  
**RE-NAMED "ISRAEL"**

**Gen 33.**

- 1 ¶ And Jacob lifted up his eyes, and looked, and, behold, Esau came, and with him four hundred men. And he divided the children unto Leah, and unto Rachel, and unto the two handmaids.
- 2 And he put the handmaids and their children foremost, and Leah and her children after, and Rachel and Joseph hindermost.
- 3 And he passed over before them, and bowed himself to the ground seven times, until he came near to his brother.
- 4 And Esau ran to meet him, and embraced him, and fell on his neck, and kissed him: and they wept.
- 5 ¶ And he lifted up his eyes, and saw the women and the children; and said, Who *are* those with thee? And he said, The children which God hath graciously given thy servant.
- 6 Then the handmaidens came near, they and their children, and they bowed themselves.
- 7 And Leah also with her children came near, and bowed themselves: and after came Joseph near and Rachel, and they bowed themselves.
- 8 And he said, What *meanest* thou by all this drove which I met? And he said, *These are* to find grace in the sight of my lord.
- 9 And Esau said, I have enough, my brother; keep that thou hast unto thyself.
- 10 And Jacob said, Nay, I pray thee, if now I have found grace in thy sight, then receive my present at my hand: for therefore I have seen thy face, as though I had seen the face of God, and thou wast pleased with me.
- 11 Take, I pray thee, my blessing that is brought to thee; because God hath dealt graciously with me, and because I have enough. And he urged him, and he took *it*.
- 12 And he said, Let us take our journey, and let us go, and I will go before thee.
- 13 And he said unto him, My lord knoweth that the children *are* tender, and the flocks and herds with young *are* with me: and if men should overdrive them one day, all the flock will die.
- 14 Let my lord, I pray thee, pass over before his servant: and I will lead on softly, according as the cattle that goeth before me and the children be able to endure, until I come unto my lord unto Seir.
- 15 And Esau said, Let me now leave with thee *some* of the folk that *are* with me. And he said, What needeth it? let me find grace in the sight of my lord.
- 16 ¶ So Esau returned that day on his way unto Seir.
- 17 And Jacob journeyed to Succoth, and built him an house, and made booths for his cattle: therefore the name of the place is called Succoth.
- 18 And Jacob came to Shalem, a city of Shechem, which *is* in the land of Canaan, when he came from Padanaram; and pitched his tent before the city.
- 19 And he bought a parcel of a field, where he had spread his tent, at the hand of the children of Hamor, Shechem's father, for an hundred pieces of money.
- 20 And he erected there an altar, and called it Elelohe-Israel.

**Gen 34.**

- 1 ¶ And Dinah the daughter of Leah, which she bare unto Jacob, went out to see the daughters of the land.
- 2 And when Shechem the son of Hamor the Hivite, prince of the country, saw her, he took her, and lay with her, and defiled her.
- 3 And his soul clave unto Dinah the daughter of Jacob, and he loved the damsel, and spake kindly unto the damsel.
- 4 And Shechem spake unto his father Hamor, saying, Get me this damsel to wife.
- 5 And Jacob heard that he had defiled Dinah his daughter: now his sons were with his cattle in the field: and Jacob held his peace until they were come.
- 6 ¶ And Hamor the father of Shechem went out unto Jacob to commune with him.
- 7 And the sons of Jacob came out of the field when they heard *it*: and the men were grieved, and they were very wroth, because he had wrought folly in Israel in lying with Jacob's daughter; which thing ought not to be done.
- 8 And Hamor communed with them, saying, The soul of my son Shechem longeth for your daughter: I pray you give her him to wife.
- 9 And make ye marriages with us, *and* give your daughters unto us, and take our daughters unto you.
- 10 And ye shall dwell with us: and the land shall be before you; dwell and trade ye therein, and get you possessions therein.
- 11 And Shechem said unto her father and unto her brethren, Let me find grace in your eyes, and what ye shall say unto me I will give.
- 12 Ask me never so much dowry and gift, and I will give according as ye shall say unto me: but give me the damsel to wife.
- 13 And the sons of Jacob answered Shechem and Hamor his father deceitfully, and said, because he had defiled Dinah their sister:
- 14 And they said unto them, We cannot do this thing, to give our sister to one that is uncircumcised; for that *were* a reproach unto us:
- 15 But in this will we consent unto you: If ye will be as we *be*, that every male of you be circumcised;
- 16 Then will we give our daughters unto you, and we will take your daughters to us, and we will dwell with you, and we will become one people.
- 17 But if ye will not hearken unto us, to be circumcised; then will we take our daughter, and we will be gone.
- 18 ¶ And their words pleased Hamor, and Shechem Hamor's son.
- 19 And the young man deferred not to do the thing, because he had delight in Jacob's daughter: and he *was* more honourable than all the house of his father.
- 20 And Hamor and Shechem his son came unto the gate of their city, and communed with the men of their city, saying,
- 21 These men *are* peaceable with us; therefore let them dwell in the land, and trade therein; for the land, behold, *it is* large enough for them; let us take their daughters to us for wives, and let us give them our daughters.
- 22 Only herein will the men consent unto us for to dwell with us, to be one people, if every male among us be circumcised, as they *are* circumcised.
- 23 *Shall* not their cattle and their substance and every beast of theirs *be* ours? only let us consent unto them, and they will dwell with us.

- 24 And unto Hamor and unto Shechem his son hearkened all that went out of the gate of his city; and every male was circumcised, all that went out of the gate of his city.
- 25 ¶ And it came to pass on the third day, when they were sore, that two of the sons of Jacob, Simeon and Levi, Dinah's brethren, took each man his sword, and came upon the city boldly, and slew all the males.
- 26 And they slew Hamor and Shechem his son with the edge of the sword, and took Dinah out of Shechem's house, and went out.
- 27 The sons of Jacob came upon the slain, and spoiled the city, because they had defiled their sister.
- 28 They took their sheep, and their oxen, and their asses, and that which *was* in the city, and that which *was* in the field,
- 29 And all their wealth, and all their little ones, and their wives took they captive, and spoiled even all that *was* in the house.
- 30 And Jacob said to Simeon and Levi, Ye have troubled me to make me to stink among the inhabitants of the land, among the Canaanites and the Perizzites: and I *being* few in number, they shall gather themselves together against me, and slay me; and I shall be destroyed, I and my house.
- 31 And they said, Should he deal with our sister as with an harlot?

---

b- The Meeting With Esau

(33.)

## 1) Jacob Bows Before Esau - 7 times

vs. 1-3

## 2) The Reconciliation Of Two Brothers

vs. 4-16

Jacob takes the position of a servant!

## 3) Jacob Settles At Shechem And Worships

vs. 17-20

He builds an altar and pitches his tent

## 8- The Sojourn In Canaan Until The Death Of Isaac

(34:1.-35:29.)

## a- The Shame At Shechem Over Dinah - Note: no parental control

vs. 34:1-31

## 1) The Attempted Integration - Deceit over circumcision

vs. 1-24

## 2) The Murderous Revenge By Simeon And Levi -

vs. 25-31

When Hittite men were in recovery, our boys killed them all.

## Gen 35.

- 1 ¶ And God said unto Jacob, Arise, go up to Bethel, and dwell there: and make there an altar unto God, that appeared unto thee when thou fleddest from the face of Esau thy brother.
- 2 Then Jacob said unto his household, and to all that *were* with him, Put away the strange gods that *are* among you, and be clean, and change your garments:
- 3 And let us arise, and go up to Bethel; and I will make there an altar unto God, who answered me in the day of my distress, and was with me in the way which I went.
- 4 And they gave unto Jacob all the strange gods which *were* in their hand, and *all their* earrings which *were* in their ears; and Jacob hid them under the oak which *was* by Shechem.
- 5 And they journeyed: and the terror of God was upon the cities that *were* round about them, and they did not pursue after the sons of Jacob.
- 6 ¶ So Jacob came to Luz, which *is* in the land of Canaan, that *is*, Bethel, he and all the people that *were* with him.
- 7 And he built there an altar, and called the place Elbethel: because there God appeared unto him, when he fled from the face of his brother.
- 8 But Deborah Rebekah's nurse died, and she was buried beneath Bethel under an oak: and the name of it was called Allonbachuth.
- 9 And God appeared unto Jacob again, when he came out of Padanaram, and blessed him.
- 10 And God said unto him, Thy name *is* Jacob: thy name shall not be called any more Jacob, but Israel shall be thy name: and he called his name Israel.
- 11 And God said unto him, I *am* God Almighty: be fruitful and multiply; a nation and a company of nations shall be of thee, and kings shall come out of thy loins;
- 12 And the land which I gave Abraham and Isaac, to thee I will give it, and to thy seed after thee will I give the land.
- 13 And God went up from him in the place where he talked with him.
- 14 And Jacob set up a pillar in the place where he talked with him, *even* a pillar of stone: and he poured a drink offering thereon, and he poured oil thereon.
- 15 And Jacob called the name of the place where God spake with him, Bethel.
- 16 ¶ And they journeyed from Bethel; and there was but a little way to come to Ephrath: and Rachel travailed, and she had hard labour.
- 17 And it came to pass, when she was in hard labour, that the midwife said unto her, Fear not; thou shalt have this son also.
- 18 And it came to pass, as her soul was in departing, (for she died) that she called his name Benoni: but his father called him Benjamin.
- 19 And Rachel died, and was buried in the way to Ephrath, which *is* Bethlehem.
- 20 And Jacob set a pillar upon her grave: that *is* the pillar of Rachel's grave unto this day.
- 21 ¶ And Israel journeyed, and spread his tent beyond the tower of Edar.
- 22 And it came to pass, when Israel dwelt in that land, that Reuben went and lay with Bilhah his father's concubine: and Israel heard *it*. Now the sons of Jacob were twelve:
- 23 The sons of Leah; Reuben, Jacob's firstborn, and Simeon, and Levi, and Judah, and Issachar, and Zebulun:
- 24 The sons of Rachel; Joseph, and Benjamin:
- 25 And the sons of Bilhah, Rachel's handmaid; Dan, and Naphtali:
- 26 And the sons of Zilpah, Leah's handmaid; Gad, and Asher: these *are* the sons of Jacob, which were born to him in Padanaram.
- 27 And Jacob came unto Isaac his father unto Mamre, unto the city of Arbah, which *is* Hebron, where Abraham and Isaac sojourned.
- 28 And the days of Isaac were an hundred and fourscore years.
- 29 And Isaac gave up the ghost, and died, and was gathered unto his people, *being* old and full of days: and his sons Esau and Jacob buried him.



- b- The Sojourn At Bethel (1<sup>st</sup> place Jacob resided), Bethlehem, and Hebron (35.)
  - 1) The Covenant Reasserted At Bethel (Luz) vs. 1-15
    - a) The Command Of God To Jacob - vs. 1
      - . . . “Arise, go up to Bethel, and dwell there: and make there an altar unto God” . . .
    - b) The Strange gods Are Put Away - vs. 2
    - c Abrahamic Covenant Reaffirmed - vs. 9-13
    - d) A Commemorative Pillar Is Set Up - vs. 14
    - e) The Drink Offering Poured Out - First Mention - vs. 14
  - 2) The Death Of Rachel At Bethlehem vs. 16-26
  - 3) The Restoration Of Relations Between Isaac And Jacob (Israel) vs. 27
  - 4) The Death Of Isaac At Hebron vs. 27-29

**Gen 36.**

- 1 ¶ Now these *are* the generations of Esau, who *is* Edom.
- 2 Esau took his wives of the daughters of Canaan; Adah the daughter of Elon the Hittite, and Aholibamah the daughter of Anah the daughter of Zibeon the Hivite;
- 3 And Bashemath Ishmael's daughter, sister of Nebajoth.
- 4 And Adah bare to Esau Eliphaz; and Bashemath bare Reuel;
- 5 And Aholibamah bare Jeush, and Jaalam, and Korah: these *are* the sons of Esau, which were born unto him in the land of Canaan.
- 6 And Esau took his wives, and his sons, and his daughters, and all the persons of his house, and his cattle, and all his beasts, and all his substance, which he had got in the land of Canaan; and went into the country from the face of his brother Jacob.
- 7 For their riches were more than that they might dwell together; and the land wherein they were strangers could not bear them because of their cattle.
- 8 Thus dwelt Esau in mount Seir: Esau *is* Edom.
- 9 ¶ And these *are* the generations of Esau the father of the Edomites in mount Seir:
- 10 These *are* the names of Esau's sons; Eliphaz the son of Adah the wife of Esau, Reuel the son of Bashemath the wife of Esau.
- 11 And the sons of Eliphaz were Teman, Omar, Zepho, and Gatam, and Kenaz.
- 12 And Timna was concubine to Eliphaz Esau's son; and she bare to Eliphaz Amalek: these *were* the sons of Adah Esau's wife.
- 13 And these *are* the sons of Reuel; Nahath, and Zerah, Shammah, and Mizzah: these were the sons of Bashemath Esau's wife.
- 14 And these were the sons of Aholibamah, the daughter of Anah the daughter of Zibeon, Esau's wife: and she bare to Esau Jeush, and Jaalam, and Korah.
- 15 These *were* dukes of the sons of Esau: the sons of Eliphaz the firstborn *son* of Esau; duke Teman, duke Omar, duke Zepho, duke Kenaz,
- 16 Duke Korah, duke Gatam, *and* duke Amalek: these *are* the dukes *that came* of Eliphaz in the land of Edom; these *were* the sons of Adah.
- 17 And these *are* the sons of Reuel Esau's son; duke Nahath, duke Zerah, duke Shammah, duke Mizzah: these *are* the dukes *that came* of Reuel in the land of Edom; these *are* the sons of Bashemath Esau's wife.
- 18 And these *are* the sons of Aholibamah Esau's wife; duke Jeush, duke Jaalam, duke Korah: these *were* the dukes *that came* of Aholibamah the daughter of Anah, Esau's wife.
- 19 These *are* the sons of Esau, who *is* Edom, and these *are* their dukes.
- 20 ¶ These *are* the sons of Seir the Horite, who inhabited the land; Lotan, and Shobal, and Zibeon, and Anah,
- 21 And Dishon, and Ezer, and Dishan: these *are* the dukes of the Horites, the children of Seir in the land of Edom.
- 22 And the children of Lotan were Hori and Hemam; and Lotan's sister *was* Timna.
- 23 And the children of Shobal *were* these; Alvan, and Manahath, and Ebal, Shepho, and Onam.
- 24 And these *are* the children of Zibeon; both Ajah, and Anah: this *was that* Anah that found the mules in the wilderness, as he fed the asses of Zibeon his father.
- 25 And the children of Anah *were* these; Dishon, and Aholibamah the daughter of Anah.
- 26 And these *are* the children of Dishon; Hemdan, and Eshban, and Ithran, and Cheran.
- 27 The children of Ezer *are* these; Bilhan, and Zaavan, and Akan.
- 28 The children of Dishan *are* these; Uz, and Aran.
- 29 These *are* the dukes *that came* of the Horites; duke Lotan, duke Shobal, duke Zibeon, duke Anah,
- 30 Duke Dishon, duke Ezer, duke Dishan: these *are* the dukes *that came* of Hori, among their dukes in the land of Seir.
- 31 ¶ And these *are* the kings that reigned in the land of Edom, before there reigned any king over the children of Israel.
- 32 And Bela the son of Beor reigned in Edom: and the name of his city *was* Dinhabah.
- 33 And Bela died, and Jobab the son of Zerah of Bozrah reigned in his stead.
- 34 And Jobab died, and Husham of the land of Temani reigned in his stead.
- 35 And Husham died, and Hadad the son of Bedad, who smote Midian in the field of Moab, reigned in his stead: and the name of his city *was* Avith.
- 36 And Hadad died, and Samlah of Masrekah reigned in his stead.
- 37 And Samlah died, and Saul of Rehoboth *by* the river reigned in his stead.
- 38 And Saul died, and Baalhanan the son of Achbor reigned in his stead.
- 39 And Baalhanan the son of Achbor died, and Hadar reigned in his stead: and the name of his city *was* Pau; and his wife's name *was* Mehetabel, the daughter of Matred, the daughter of Mezahab.

- 40 And these *are* the names of the dukes *that came* of Esau, according to their families, after their places, by their names; duke Timnah, duke Alvah, duke Jetheth,  
41 Duke Aholibamah, duke Elah, duke Pinon,  
42 Duke Kenaz, duke Teman, duke Mibzar,  
43 Duke Magdiel, duke Iram: these *be* the dukes of Edom, according to their habitations in the land of their possession: he *is* Esau the father of the Edomites.

---

9- The Generations Of Esau - The Collateral Line	(36.)
a- The Family Of Esau - 3 Wives, 5 Sons. He left in deference to Jacob	vs. 1-19
b- The Relocation Of Esau - Into the region of Mt. Seir - which is EDOM	vs. 8
c- The Kings Of Edom (& the Dukes. bow-wow)	vs. 31-43

## Gen 37.

- 1 ¶ And Jacob dwelt in the land wherein his father was a stranger, in the land of Canaan.
- 2 These *are* the generations of Jacob. Joseph, *being* seventeen years old, was feeding the flock with his brethren; and the lad *was* with the sons of Bilhah, and with the sons of Zilpah, his father's wives: and Joseph brought unto his father their evil report.
- 3 Now Israel loved Joseph more than all his children, because he *was* the son of his old age: and he made him a coat of *many* colours.
- 4 And when his brethren saw that their father loved him more than all his brethren, they hated him, and could not speak peaceably unto him.
- 5 ¶ And Joseph dreamed a dream, and he told *it* his brethren: and they hated him yet the more.
- 6 And he said unto them, Hear, I pray you, this dream which I have dreamed:
- 7 For, behold, we *were* binding sheaves in the field, and, lo, my sheaf arose, and also stood upright; and, behold, your sheaves stood round about, and made obeisance to my sheaf.
- 8 And his brethren said to him, Shalt thou indeed reign over us? or shalt thou indeed have dominion over us? And they hated him yet the more for his dreams, and for his words.
- 9 And he dreamed yet another dream, and told it his brethren, and said, Behold, I have dreamed a dream more; and, behold, the sun and the moon and the eleven stars made obeisance to me.
- 10 And he told *it* to his father, and to his brethren: and his father rebuked him, and said unto him, What *is* this dream that thou hast dreamed? Shall I and thy mother and thy brethren indeed come to bow down ourselves to thee to the earth?
- 11 And his brethren envied him; but his father observed the saying.
- 12 ¶ And his brethren went to feed their father's flock in Shechem.
- 13 And Israel said unto Joseph, Do not thy brethren feed *the* flock in Shechem? come, and I will send thee unto them. And he said to him, Here *am* I.
- 14 And he said to him, Go, I pray thee, see whether it be well with thy brethren, and well with the flocks; and bring me word again. So he sent him out of the vale of Hebron, and he came to Shechem.
- 15 And a certain man found him, and, behold, *he was* wandering in the field: and the man asked him, saying, What seekest thou?
- 16 And he said, I seek my brethren: tell me, I pray thee, where they feed *their* flocks.
- 17 And the man said, They are departed hence; for I heard them say, Let us go to Dothan. And Joseph went after his brethren, and found them in Dothan.
- 18 And when they saw him afar off, even before he came near unto them, they conspired against him to slay him.
- 19 And they said one to another, Behold, this dreamer cometh.
- 20 Come now therefore, and let us slay him, and cast him into some pit, and we will say, Some evil beast hath devoured him: and we shall see what will become of his dreams.
- 21 And Reuben heard *it*, and he delivered him out of their hands; and said, Let us not kill him.
- 22 And Reuben said unto them, Shed no blood, *but* cast him into this pit that *is* in the wilderness, and lay no hand upon him; that he might rid him out of their hands, to deliver him to his father again.
- 23 ¶ And it came to pass, when Joseph was come unto his brethren, that they stript Joseph out of his coat, *his* coat of *many* colours that *was* on him;
- 24 And they took him, and cast him into a pit: and the pit *was* empty, *there was* no water in it.
- 25 And they sat down to eat bread: and they lifted up their eyes and looked, and, behold, a company of Ishmeelites came from Gilead with their camels bearing spicery and balm and myrrh, going to carry *it* down to Egypt.
- 26 And Judah said unto his brethren, What profit *is it* if we slay our brother, and conceal his blood?
- 27 Come, and let us sell him to the Ishmeelites, and let not our hand be upon him; for he *is* our brother *and* our flesh. And his brethren were content.
- 28 Then there passed by Midianites merchantmen; and they drew and lifted up Joseph out of the pit, and sold Joseph to the Ishmeelites for twenty *pieces* of silver: and they brought Joseph into Egypt.
- 29 And Reuben returned unto the pit; and, behold, Joseph *was* not in the pit; and he rent his clothes.
- 30 And he returned unto his brethren, and said, The child *is* not; and I, whither shall I go?
- 31 ¶ And they took Joseph's coat, and killed a kid of the goats, and dipped the coat in the blood;
- 32 And they sent the coat of *many* colours, and they brought *it* to their father; and said, This have we found: know now whether it *be* thy son's coat or no.
- 33 And he knew it, and said, *It is* my son's coat; an evil beast hath devoured him; Joseph is without doubt rent in pieces.
- 34 And Jacob rent his clothes, and put sackcloth upon his loins, and mourned for his son many days.
- 35 And all his sons and all his daughters rose up to comfort him; but he refused to be comforted; and he said, For I will go down into the grave unto my son mourning. Thus his father wept for him.
- 36 And the Midianites sold him into Egypt unto Potiphar, an officer of Pharaoh's, *and* captain of the guard.

- |  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 1- Joseph At Home In Canaan  | vs. 37:1-36 |
| a- His Character Noted   | vs. 1-2     |
| b- He Is Loved By His Father Israel, but Hated By His Brothers     | vs. 3-17    |
| c- He Is Sold Into Slavery In Egypt By His Brothers                | vs. 18-34   |
| d- The Incessant Grief Of Jacob                                    | vs. 35-36   |
| e.- The Birthright Passed To Joseph Because Of Reuben's Defilement |             |

## Gen 38.

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass at that time, that Judah went down from his brethren, and turned in to a certain Adullamite, whose name *was* Hirah.
- 2 And Judah saw there a daughter of a certain Canaanite, whose name *was* Shuah; and he took her, and went in unto her.
- 3 And she conceived, and bare a son; and he called his name Er.
- 4 And she conceived again, and bare a son; and she called his name Onan.
- 5 And she yet again conceived, and bare a son; and called his name Shelah: and he was at Chezib, when she bare him.
- 6 And Judah took a wife for Er his firstborn, whose name *was* Tamar.
- 7 And Er, Judah's firstborn, was wicked in the sight of the LORD; and the LORD slew him.
- 8 And Judah said unto Onan, Go in unto thy brother's wife, and marry her, and raise up seed to thy brother.
- 9 And Onan knew that the seed should not be his; and it came to pass, when he went in unto his brother's wife, that he spilled *it* on the ground, lest that he should give seed to his brother.
- 10 And the thing which he did displeased the LORD: wherefore he slew him also.
- 11 Then said Judah to Tamar his daughter in law, Remain a widow at thy father's house, till Shelah my son be grown: for he said, Lest peradventure he die also, as his brethren *did*. And Tamar went and dwelt in her father's house.
- 12 ¶ And in process of time the daughter of Shuah Judah's wife died; and Judah was comforted, and went up unto his sheepshearers to Timnath, he and his friend Hirah the Adullamite.
- 13 And it was told Tamar, saying, Behold thy father in law goeth up to Timnath to shear his sheep.
- 14 And she put her widow's garments off from her, and covered her with a vail, and wrapped herself, and sat in an open place, which *is* by the way to Timnath; for she saw that Shelah was grown, and she was not given unto him to wife.
- 15 When Judah saw her, he thought her *to be* an harlot; because she had covered her face.
- 16 And he turned unto her by the way, and said, Go to, I pray thee, let me come in unto thee; (for he knew not that she *was* his daughter in law.) And she said, What wilt thou give me, that thou mayest come in unto me?
- 17 And he said, I will send *thee* a kid from the flock. And she said, Wilt thou give *me* a pledge, till thou send *it*?
- 18 And he said, What pledge shall I give thee? And she said, Thy signet, and thy bracelets, and thy staff that *is* in thine hand. And he gave *it* her, and came in unto her, and she conceived by him.
- 19 And she arose, and went away, and laid by her vail from her, and put on the garments of her widowhood.
- 20 And Judah sent the kid by the hand of his friend the Adullamite, to receive *his* pledge from the woman's hand: but he found her not.
- 21 Then he asked the men of that place, saying, Where *is* the harlot, that *was* openly by the way side? And they said, There was no harlot in this *place*.
- 22 And he returned to Judah, and said, I cannot find her; and also the men of the place said, *that* there was no harlot in this *place*.
- 23 And Judah said, Let her take *it* to her, lest we be shamed: behold, I sent this kid, and thou hast not found her.
- 24 ¶ And it came to pass about three months after, that it was told Judah, saying, Tamar thy daughter in law hath played the harlot; and also, behold, she *is* with child by whoredom. And Judah said, Bring her forth, and let her be burnt.
- 25 When she *was* brought forth, she sent to her father in law, saying, By the man, whose these *are*, *am* I with child: and she said, Discern, I pray thee, whose *are* these, the signet, and bracelets, and staff.
- 26 And Judah acknowledged *them*, and said, She hath been more righteous than I; because that I gave her not to Shelah my son. And he knew her again no more.
- 27 And it came to pass in the time of her travail, that, behold, twins *were* in her womb.
- 28 And it came to pass, when she travailed, that *the one* put out *his* hand: and the midwife took and bound upon his hand a scarlet thread, saying, This came out first.
- 29 And it came to pass, as he drew back his hand, that, behold, his brother came out: and she said, How hast thou broken forth? *this* breach *be* upon thee: therefore his name was called Pharez.
- 30 And afterward came out his brother, that had the scarlet thread upon his hand: and his name was called Zarah.

a- The Purpose Of This Tale Of Immorality –  
There were gentiles in lineage of Messiah.

1) Judah's First Act Of Immorality - Had relations with a Canaanite Woman

vs. 1-5

2) The Result Of This Union - Er, Onan - with Er's Wife TAMAR Ref. Ruth 4:12,  
Matt 1:3

vs. 3-6

3) Note The Use Of The Word "Pledge" - What was the purpose of the Pledge

vs. 16-20, 25

הָעֵרְבוֹן ha 'arabown *ar-aw-bone* LXX αρραβων; pledge, security. (The Pledge)  
Ref. Eph 1:13-14, 2 Cor 1:22, 5:5 (Earnest of the Spirit)

4) Judah Doesn't Confess Adultery,  
but confesses he withheld his son shēlah from tamar

vs. 26

5) Note The Two Sons Of This Immorality. Pērez, and Zerah .  
(The start of Planet Of The Apes?)

vs. 27-30

b- The Contrast Of This Tale With That Of Joseph (The Man Of Character) In The Next 3 Chapters.

**Gen 39.**

- 1 ¶ And Joseph was brought down to Egypt; and Potiphar, an officer of Pharaoh, captain of the guard, an Egyptian, bought him of the hands of the Ishmeelites, which had brought him down thither.
- 2 And the LORD was with Joseph, and he was a prosperous man; and he was in the house of his master the Egyptian.
- 3 And his master saw that the LORD *was* with him, and that the LORD made all that he did to prosper in his hand.
- 4 And Joseph found grace in his sight, and he served him: and he made him overseer over his house, and all *that* he had he put into his hand.
- 5 And it came to pass from the time *that* he had made him overseer in his house, and over all that he had, that the LORD blessed the Egyptian's house for Joseph's sake; and the blessing of the LORD was upon all that he had in the house, and in the field.
- 6 And he left all that he had in Joseph's hand; and he knew not ought he had, save the bread which he did eat. And Joseph was *a goodly person*, and well favoured.
- 7 ¶ And it came to pass after these things, that his master's wife cast her eyes upon Joseph; and she said, Lie with me.
- 8 But he refused, and said unto his master's wife, Behold, my master wotteth not what *is* with me in the house, and he hath committed all that he hath to my hand;
- 9 *There is* none greater in this house than I; neither hath he kept back any thing from me but thee, because thou *art* his wife: how then can I do this great wickedness, and sin against God?
- 10 And it came to pass, as she spake to Joseph day by day, that he hearkened not unto her, to lie by her, *or* to be with her.
- 11 And it came to pass about this time, that *Joseph* went into the house to do his business; and *there was* none of the men of the house there within.
- 12 And she caught him by his garment, saying, Lie with me: and he left his garment in her hand, and fled, and got him out.
- 13 ¶ And it came to pass, when she saw that he had left his garment in her hand, and was fled forth,
- 14 That she called unto the men of her house, and spake unto them, saying, See, he hath brought in an Hebrew unto us to mock us; he came in unto me to lie with me, and I cried with a loud voice:
- 15 And it came to pass, when he heard that I lifted up my voice and cried, that he left his garment with me, and fled, and got him out.
- 16 And she laid up his garment by her, until his lord came home.
- 17 And she spake unto him according to these words, saying, The Hebrew servant, which thou hast brought unto us, came in unto me to mock me:
- 18 And it came to pass, as I lifted up my voice and cried, that he left his garment with me, and fled out.
- 19 ¶ And it came to pass, when his master heard the words of his wife, which she spake unto him, saying, After this manner did thy servant to me; that his wrath was kindled.
- 20 And Joseph's master took him, and put him into the prison, a place where the king's prisoners *were* bound: and he was there in the prison.
- 21 But the LORD was with Joseph, and shewed him mercy, and gave him favour in the sight of the keeper of the prison.
- 22 And the keeper of the prison committed to Joseph's hand all the prisoners that *were* in the prison; and whatsoever they did there, he was the doer *of it*.
- 23 The keeper of the prison looked not to any thing *that was* under his hand; because the LORD was with him, and *that* which he did, the LORD made *it* to prosper.

**Gen 40.**

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass after these things, *that* the butler of the king of Egypt and *his* baker had offended their lord the king of Egypt.
- 2 And Pharaoh was wroth against two *of* his officers, against the chief of the butlers, and against the chief of the bakers.
- 3 And he put them in ward in the house of the captain of the guard, into the prison, the place where Joseph *was* bound.
- 4 And the captain of the guard charged Joseph with them, and he served them: and they continued a season in ward.
- 5 ¶ And they dreamed a dream both of them, each man his dream in one night, each man according to the interpretation of his dream, the butler and the baker of the king of Egypt, which *were* bound in the prison.
- 6 And Joseph came in unto them in the morning, and looked upon them, and, behold, they *were* sad.
- 7 And he asked Pharaoh's officers that *were* with him in the ward of his lord's house, saying, Wherefore look ye *so* sadly to day?
- 8 And they said unto him, We have dreamed a dream, and *there is* no interpreter of it. And Joseph said unto them, *Do not* interpretations *belong* to God? tell me *them*, I pray you.
- 9 And the chief butler told his dream to Joseph, and said to him, In my dream, behold, a vine *was* before me;
- 10 And in the vine *were* three branches: and it *was* as though it budded, *and* her blossoms shot forth; and the clusters thereof brought forth ripe grapes:
- 11 And Pharaoh's cup *was* in my hand: and I took the grapes, and pressed them into Pharaoh's cup, and I gave the cup into Pharaoh's hand.
- 12 And Joseph said unto him, This *is* the interpretation of it: The three branches *are* three days:
- 13 Yet within three days shall Pharaoh lift up thine head, and restore thee unto thy place: and thou shalt deliver Pharaoh's cup into his hand, after the former manner when thou wast his butler.
- 14 But think on me when it shall be well with thee, and shew kindness, I pray thee, unto me, and make mention of me unto Pharaoh, and bring me out of this house:



- 15 For indeed I was stolen away out of the land of the Hebrews: and here also have I done nothing that they should put me into the dungeon.
- 16 When the chief baker saw that the interpretation was good, he said unto Joseph, I also *was* in my dream, and, behold, *I had* three white baskets on my head:
- 17 And in the uppermost basket *there was* of all manner of bakemeats for Pharaoh; and the birds did eat them out of the basket upon my head.
- 18 And Joseph answered and said, This *is* the interpretation thereof: The three baskets *are* three days:
- 19 Yet within three days shall Pharaoh lift up thy head from off thee, and shall hang thee on a tree; and the birds shall eat thy flesh from off thee.
- 20 ¶ And it came to pass the third day, *which was* Pharaoh's birthday, that he made a feast unto all his servants: and he lifted up the head of the chief butler and of the chief baker among his servants.
- 21 And he restored the chief butler unto his butlership again; and he gave the cup into Pharaoh's hand:
- 22 But he hanged the chief baker: as Joseph had interpreted to them.
- 23 Yet did not the chief butler remember Joseph, but forgot him.

---

### 3- Joseph's Rise To Be Ruler Of Egypt (39. – 41.)

#### a- In Prison For Righteousness (39.)

1) He Prospers Serving Potiphar vs. 1-6

2) He Preserves His Honor In Temptation vs. 7-12

a) He Got Out - "Flee Youthful Lusts"

b) He Preserves His Honor (The Lord's Honor) In Temptation

3) He Prospers In Prison vs. 13-23

#### b- In Prison He Serves God 40:1-23

1) Dreams Are Interpreted For The Butler And Baker (approx. 28 years old) vs. 1-19

2) The Dreams Are Fulfilled And Joseph Is Forgotten vs. 20-23

**Gen 40.**

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass at the end of two full years, that Pharaoh dreamed: and, behold, he stood by the river.  
2 And, behold, there came up out of the river seven well favoured kine and fatfleshed; and they fed in a meadow.  
3 And, behold, seven other kine came up after them out of the river, ill favoured and leanfleshed; and stood by the *other* kine upon the brink of the river.  
4 And the ill favoured and leanfleshed kine did eat up the seven well favoured and fat kine. So Pharaoh awoke.  
5 And he slept and dreamed the second time: and, behold, seven ears of corn came up upon one stalk, rank and good.  
6 And, behold, seven thin ears and blasted with the east wind sprung up after them.  
7 And the seven thin ears devoured the seven rank and full ears. And Pharaoh awoke, and, behold, *it was* a dream.  
8 And it came to pass in the morning that his spirit was troubled; and he sent and called for all the magicians of Egypt, and all the wise men thereof: and Pharaoh told them his dream; but *there was* none that could interpret them unto Pharaoh.  
9 ¶ Then spake the chief butler unto Pharaoh, saying, I do remember my faults this day:  
10 Pharaoh was wroth with his servants, and put me in ward in the captain of the guard's house, *both* me and the chief baker:  
11 And we dreamed a dream in one night, I and he; we dreamed each man according to the interpretation of his dream.  
12 And *there was* there with us a young man, an Hebrew, servant to the captain of the guard; and we told him, and he interpreted to us our dreams; to each man according to his dream he did interpret.  
13 And it came to pass, as he interpreted to us, so it was; me he restored unto mine office, and him he hanged.  
14 Then Pharaoh sent and called Joseph, and they brought him hastily out of the dungeon: and he shaved *himself*, and changed his raiment, and came in unto Pharaoh.  
15 And Pharaoh said unto Joseph, I have dreamed a dream, and *there is* none that can interpret it: and I have heard say of thee, *that* thou canst understand a dream to interpret it.  
16 And Joseph answered Pharaoh, saying, *It is* not in me: God shall give Pharaoh an answer of peace.  
17 ¶ And Pharaoh said unto Joseph, In my dream, behold, I stood upon the bank of the river:  
18 And, behold, there came up out of the river seven kine, fatfleshed and well favoured; and they fed in a meadow:  
19 And, behold, seven other kine came up after them, poor and very ill favoured and leanfleshed, such as I never saw in all the land of Egypt for badness:  
20 And the lean and the ill favoured kine did eat up the first seven fat kine:  
21 And when they had eaten them up, it could not be known that they had eaten them; but they *were* still ill favoured, as at the beginning. So I awoke.  
22 And I saw in my dream, and, behold, seven ears came up in one stalk, full and good:  
23 And, behold, seven ears, withered, thin, *and* blasted with the east wind, sprung up after them:  
24 And the thin ears devoured the seven good ears: and I told *this* unto the magicians; but *there was* none that could declare *it* to me.  
25 And Joseph said unto Pharaoh, The dream of Pharaoh *is* one: God hath shewed Pharaoh what he *is* about to do.  
26 The seven good kine *are* seven years; and the seven good ears *are* seven years: the dream *is* one.  
27 And the seven thin and ill favoured kine that came up after them *are* seven years; and the seven empty ears blasted with the east wind shall be seven years of famine.  
28 This *is* the thing which I have spoken unto Pharaoh: What God *is* about to do he sheweth unto Pharaoh.  
29 Behold, there come seven years of great plenty throughout all the land of Egypt:  
30 And there shall arise after them seven years of famine; and all the plenty shall be forgotten in the land of Egypt; and the famine shall consume the land;  
31 And the plenty shall not be known in the land by reason of that famine following; for it *shall be* very grievous.  
32 And for that the dream was doubled unto Pharaoh twice; *it is* because the thing *is* established by God, and God will shortly bring it to pass.  
33 ¶ Now therefore let Pharaoh look out a man discreet and wise, and set him over the land of Egypt.  
34 Let Pharaoh do *this*, and let him appoint officers over the land, and take up the fifth part of the land of Egypt in the seven plenteous years.  
35 And let them gather all the food of those good years that come, and lay up corn under the hand of Pharaoh, and let them keep food in the cities.  
36 And that food shall be for store to the land against the seven years of famine, which shall be in the land of Egypt; that the land perish not through the famine.

- 37 And the thing was good in the eyes of Pharaoh, and in the eyes of all his servants.
- 38 And Pharaoh said unto his servants, Can we find *such a one* as this *is*, a man in whom the Spirit of God *is*?
- 39 And Pharaoh said unto Joseph, Forasmuch as God hath shewed thee all this, *there is* none so discreet and wise as thou *art*:
- 40 Thou shalt be over my house, and according unto thy word shall all my people be ruled: only in the throne will I be greater than thou.
- 41 And Pharaoh said unto Joseph, See, I have set thee over all the land of Egypt.
- 42 And Pharaoh took off his ring from his hand, and put it upon Joseph's hand, and arrayed him in vestures of fine linen, and put a gold chain about his neck;
- 43 And he made him to ride in the second chariot which he had; and they cried before him, Bow the knee: and he made him *ruler* over all the land of Egypt.
- 44 And Pharaoh said unto Joseph, I *am* Pharaoh, and without thee shall no man lift up his hand or foot in all the land of Egypt.
- 45 And Pharaoh called Joseph's name Zaphnathpaaneah; and he gave him to wife Asenath the daughter of Potipherah priest of On. And Joseph went out over *all* the land of Egypt.
- 46 ¶ And Joseph *was* thirty years old when he stood before Pharaoh king of Egypt. And Joseph went out from the presence of Pharaoh, and went throughout all the land of Egypt.
- 47 And in the seven plenteous years the earth brought forth by handfuls.
- 48 And he gathered up all the food of the seven years, which were in the land of Egypt, and laid up the food in the cities: the food of the field, which *was* round about every city, laid he up in the same.
- 49 And Joseph gathered corn as the sand of the sea, very much, until he left numbering; for *it was* without number.
- 50 And unto Joseph were born two sons before the years of famine came, which Asenath the daughter of Potipherah priest of On bare unto him.
- 51 And Joseph called the name of the firstborn Manasseh: For God, *said he*, hath made me forget all my toil, and all my father's house.
- 52 And the name of the second called he Ephraim: For God hath caused me to be fruitful in the land of my affliction.
- 53 And the seven years of plenteousness, that was in the land of Egypt, were ended.
- 54 And the seven years of dearth began to come, according as Joseph had said: and the dearth was in all lands; but in all the land of Egypt there was bread.
- 55 And when all the land of Egypt was famished, the people cried to Pharaoh for bread: and Pharaoh said unto all the Egyptians, Go unto Joseph; what he saith to you, do.
- 56 And the famine was over all the face of the earth: And Joseph opened all the storehouses, and sold unto the Egyptians; and the famine waxed sore in the land of Egypt.
- 57 And all countries came into Egypt to Joseph for to buy *corn*; because that the famine was *so* sore in all lands.

---

c- From Prison He Rises To Rulership In Egypt - or, there are innocent prisoners!

(41.)

1) Pharaoh's Dream And The Search For An Interpreter

vs. 1-13

a) 7 Fat &amp; 7 Lean Cows

b) 7 Good &amp; 7 Thin Ears of Corn

2) Joseph's Interpretation -

vs. 14-32

3) Joseph's Recommendations - Store ½ of plenteous years for 7 years of famine

vs. 33-37

4) Joseph's Exultation - At age 30

vs. 38-46

a) Made 2<sup>nd</sup> Ruler of Egypt

b) He Marries A Gentile Bride-Asenath

5) Joseph's Administration - Gathered The Stores

vs. 47-57

**Gen 42.**

- 1 ¶ Now when Jacob saw that there was corn in Egypt, Jacob said unto his sons, Why do ye look one upon another?
- 2 And he said, Behold, I have heard that there is corn in Egypt: get you down thither, and buy for us from thence; that we may live, and not die.
- 3 And Joseph's ten brethren went down to buy corn in Egypt.
- 4 But Benjamin, Joseph's brother, Jacob sent not with his brethren; for he said, Lest peradventure mischief befall him.
- 5 And the sons of Israel came to buy *corn* among those that came: for the famine was in the land of Canaan.
- 6 And Joseph *was* the governor over the land, *and* he *it was* that sold to all the people of the land: and Joseph's brethren came, and bowed down themselves before him *with* their faces to the earth.
- 7 ¶ And Joseph saw his brethren, and he knew them, but made himself strange unto them, and spake roughly unto them; and he said unto them, Whence come ye? And they said, From the land of Canaan to buy food.
- 8 And Joseph knew his brethren, but they knew not him.
- 9 And Joseph remembered the dreams which he dreamed of them, and said unto them, Ye *are* spies; to see the nakedness of the land ye are come.
- 10 And they said unto him, Nay, my lord, but to buy food are thy servants come.
- 11 We *are* all one man's sons; we *are* true *men*, thy servants are no spies.
- 12 And he said unto them, Nay, but to see the nakedness of the land ye are come.
- 13 And they said, Thy servants *are* twelve brethren, the sons of one man in the land of Canaan; and, behold, the youngest *is* this day with our father, and one *is* not.
- 14 And Joseph said unto them, That *is it* that I spake unto you, saying, Ye *are* spies:
- 15 Hereby ye shall be proved: By the life of Pharaoh ye shall not go forth hence, except your youngest brother come hither.
- 16 Send one of you, and let him fetch your brother, and ye shall be kept in prison, that your words may be proved, whether *there be any* truth in you: or else by the life of Pharaoh surely ye *are* spies.
- 17 And he put them all together into ward three days.
- 18 And Joseph said unto them the third day, This do, and live; *for* I fear God:
- 19 If ye *be* true *men*, let one of your brethren be bound in the house of your prison: go ye, carry corn for the famine of your houses:
- 20 But bring your youngest brother unto me; so shall your words be verified, and ye shall not die. And they did so.
- 21 ¶ And they said one to another, We *are* verily guilty concerning our brother, in that we saw the anguish of his soul, when he besought us, and we would not hear; therefore is this distress come upon us.
- 22 And Reuben answered them, saying, Spake I not unto you, saying, Do not sin against the child; and ye would not hear? therefore, behold, also his blood is required.
- 23 And they knew not that Joseph understood *them*; for he spake unto them by an interpreter.
- 24 And he turned himself about from them, and wept; and returned to them again, and communed with them, and took from them Simeon, and bound him before their eyes.
- 25 Then Joseph commanded to fill their sacks with corn, and to restore every man's money into his sack, and to give them provision for the way: and thus did he unto them.
- 26 And they laded their asses with the corn, and departed thence.
- 27 And as one of them opened his sack to give his ass provender in the inn, he espied his money; for, behold, it *was* in his sack's mouth.
- 28 And he said unto his brethren, My money is restored; and, lo, *it is* even in my sack: and their heart failed *them*, and they were afraid, saying one to another, What *is this that* God hath done unto us?
- 29 ¶ And they came unto Jacob their father unto the land of Canaan, and told him all that befell unto them; saying,
- 30 The man, *who is* the lord of the land, spake roughly to us, and took us for spies of the country.
- 31 And we said unto him, We *are* true *men*; we are no spies:
- 32 We *be* twelve brethren, sons of our father; one *is* not, and the youngest *is* this day with our father in the land of Canaan.
- 33 And the man, the lord of the country, said unto us, Hereby shall I know that ye *are* true *men*; leave one of your brethren *here* with me, and take *food for* the famine of your households, and be gone:
- 34 And bring your youngest brother unto me: then shall I know that ye *are* no spies, but *that ye are true men: so* will I deliver you your brother, and ye shall traffick in the land.
- 35 And it came to pass as they emptied their sacks, that, behold, every man's bundle of money *was* in his sack: and when *both* they and their father saw the bundles of money, they were afraid.

- 36 And Jacob their father said unto them, Me have ye bereaved *of my children*: Joseph *is* not, and Simeon *is* not, and ye will take Benjamin *away*: all these things are against me.
- 37 And Reuben spake unto his father, saying, Slay my two sons, if I bring him not to thee: deliver him into my hand, and I will bring him to thee again.
- 38 And he said, My son shall not go down with you; for his brother is dead, and he is left alone: if mischief befall him by the way in the which ye go, then shall ye bring down my gray hairs with sorrow to the grave

---

4- Joseph Becomes The Savior Of His People - From famine in Canaan (42. – 45.)  
(Note the strong type of Christ)

a- The First Visit Of Joseph's Brethren To Egypt (42.)

1) In Famine The Bow Before Joseph vs. 1-8

2) Joseph Puts Them To A Disciplinary Test vs. 9-38

**Gen 43.**

- 1 ¶ And the famine *was* sore in the land.
- 2 And it came to pass, when they had eaten up the corn which they had brought out of Egypt, their father said unto them, Go again, buy us a little food.
- 3 And Judah spake unto him, saying, The man did solemnly protest unto us, saying, Ye shall not see my face, except your brother *be* with you.
- 4 If thou wilt send our brother with us, we will go down and buy thee food:
- 5 But if thou wilt not send *him*, we will not go down: for the man said unto us, Ye shall not see my face, except your brother *be* with you.
- 6 And Israel said, Wherefore dealt ye so ill with me, *as* to tell the man whether ye had yet a brother?
- 7 And they said, The man asked us straitly of our state, and of our kindred, saying, *Is* your father yet alive? have ye *another* brother? and we told him according to the tenor of these words: could we certainly know that he would say, Bring your brother down?
- 8 And Judah said unto Israel his father, Send the lad with me, and we will arise and go; that we may live, and not die, both we, and thou, *and* also our little ones.
- 9 I will be surety for him; of my hand shalt thou require him: if I bring him not unto thee, and set him before thee, then let me bear the blame for ever:
- 10 For except we had lingered, surely now we had returned this second time.
- 11 ¶ And their father Israel said unto them, If *it must be* so now, do this; take of the best fruits in the land in your vessels, and carry down the man a present, a little balm, and a little honey, spices, and myrrh, nuts, and almonds:
- 12 And take double money in your hand; and the money that was brought again in the mouth of your sacks, carry *it* again in your hand; peradventure it *was* an oversight:
- 13 Take also your brother, and arise, go again unto the man:
- 14 And God Almighty give you mercy before the man, that he may send away your other brother, and Benjamin. If I be bereaved *of my children*, I am bereaved.
- 15 ¶ And the men took that present, and they took double money in their hand, and Benjamin; and rose up, and went down to Egypt, and stood before Joseph.
- 16 And when Joseph saw Benjamin with them, he said to the ruler of his house, Bring *these* men home, and slay, and make ready; for *these* men shall dine with me at noon.
- 17 And the man did as Joseph bade; and the man brought the men into Joseph's house.
- 18 And the men were afraid, because they were brought into Joseph's house; and they said, Because of the money that was returned in our sacks at the first time are we brought in; that he may seek occasion against us, and fall upon us, and take us for bondmen, and our asses.
- 19 And they came near to the steward of Joseph's house, and they communed with him at the door of the house,
- 20 And said, O sir, we came indeed down at the first time to buy food:
- 21 And it came to pass, when we came to the inn, that we opened our sacks, and, behold, *every* man's money *was* in the mouth of his sack, our money in full weight: and we have brought it again in our hand.
- 22 And other money have we brought down in our hands to buy food: we cannot tell who put our money in our sacks.
- 23 And he said, Peace *be* to you, fear not: your God, and the God of your father, hath given you treasure in your sacks: I had your money. And he brought Simeon out unto them.
- 24 And the man brought the men into Joseph's house, and gave *them* water, and they washed their feet; and he gave their asses provender.
- 25 And they made ready the present against Joseph came at noon: for they heard that they should eat bread there.
- 26 ¶ And when Joseph came home, they brought him the present which *was* in their hand into the house, and bowed themselves to him to the earth.
- 27 And he asked them of *their* welfare, and said, *Is* your father well, the old man of whom ye spake? *Is* he yet alive?
- 28 And they answered, Thy servant our father *is* in good health, he *is* yet alive. And they bowed down their heads, and made obeisance.
- 29 And he lifted up his eyes, and saw his brother Benjamin, his mother's son, and said, *Is* this your younger brother, of whom ye spake unto me? And he said, God be gracious unto thee, my son.
- 30 And Joseph made haste; for his bowels did yearn upon his brother: and he sought *where* to weep; and he entered into *his* chamber, and wept there.
- 31 And he washed his face, and went out, and refrained himself, and said, Set on bread.

- 32 And they set on for him by himself, and for them by themselves, and for the Egyptians, which did eat with him, by themselves: because the Egyptians might not eat bread with the Hebrews; for that *is* an abomination unto the Egyptians.
- 33 And they sat before him, the firstborn according to his birthright, and the youngest according to his youth: and the men marvelled one at another.
- 34 And he took *and sent* messes unto them from before him: but Benjamin's mess was five times so much as any of theirs. And they drank, and were merry with him.
- 

b- The Second Visit Bringing Benjamin (43.)

1) Judah Offers Himself As Surety For Benjamin vs. 1-14

2) They Again Bow To Joseph At A Special Feast vs. 15-34

**Gen 44.**

- 1 ¶ And he commanded the steward of his house, saying, Fill the men's sacks *with* food, as much as they can carry, and put every man's money in his sack's mouth.
- 2 And put my cup, the silver cup, in the sack's mouth of the youngest, and his corn money. And he did according to the word that Joseph had spoken.
- 3 As soon as the morning was light, the men were sent away, they and their asses.
- 4 *And* when they were gone out of the city, *and* not yet far off, Joseph said unto his steward, Up, follow after the men; and when thou dost overtake them, say unto them, Wherefore have ye rewarded evil for good?
- 5 *Is* not this *it* in which my lord drinketh, and whereby indeed he divineth? ye have done evil in so doing.
- 6 And he overtook them, and he spake unto them these same words.
- 7 And they said unto him, Wherefore saith my lord these words? God forbid that thy servants should do according to this thing:
- 8 Behold, the money, which we found in our sacks' mouths, we brought again unto thee out of the land of Canaan: how then should we steal out of thy lord's house silver or gold?
- 9 With whomsoever of thy servants it be found, both let him die, and we also will be my lord's bondmen.
- 10 And he said, Now also *let* it *be* according unto your words: he with whom it is found shall be my servant; and ye shall be blameless.
- 11 Then they speedily took down every man his sack to the ground, and opened every man his sack.
- 12 And he searched, *and* began at the eldest, and left at the youngest: and the cup was found in Benjamin's sack.
- 13 Then they rent their clothes, and laded every man his ass, and returned to the city.
- 14 And Judah and his brethren came to Joseph's house; for he *was* yet there: and they fell before him on the ground.
- 15 And Joseph said unto them, What deed *is* this that ye have done? wot ye not that such a man as I can certainly divine?
- 16 And Judah said, What shall we say unto my lord? what shall we speak? or how shall we clear ourselves? God hath found out the iniquity of thy servants: behold, we *are* my lord's servants, both we, and *he* also with whom the cup is found.
- 17 And he said, God forbid that I should do so: *but* the man in whose hand the cup is found, he shall be my servant; and as for you, get you up in peace unto your father.
- 18 ¶ Then Judah came near unto him, and said, Oh my lord, let thy servant, I pray thee, speak a word in my lord's ears, and let not thine anger burn against thy servant: for thou *art* even as Pharaoh.
- 19 My lord asked his servants, saying, Have ye a father, or a brother?
- 20 And we said unto my lord, We have a father, an old man, and a child of his old age, a little one; and his brother is dead, and he alone is left of his mother, and his father loveth him.
- 21 And thou saidst unto thy servants, Bring him down unto me, that I may set mine eyes upon him.
- 22 And we said unto my lord, The lad cannot leave his father: for *if* he should leave his father, *his father* would die.
- 23 And thou saidst unto thy servants, Except your youngest brother come down with you, ye shall see my face no more.
- 24 And it came to pass when we came up unto thy servant my father, we told him the words of my lord.
- 25 And our father said, Go again, *and* buy us a little food.
- 26 And we said, We cannot go down: if our youngest brother be with us, then will we go down: for we may not see the man's face, except our youngest brother *be* with us.
- 27 And thy servant my father said unto us, Ye know that my wife bare me two *sons*:
- 28 And the one went out from me, and I said, Surely he is torn in pieces; and I saw him not since:
- 29 And if ye take this also from me, and mischief befall him, ye shall bring down my gray hairs with sorrow to the grave.
- 30 Now therefore when I come to thy servant my father, and the lad *be* not with us; seeing that his life is bound up in the lad's life;
- 31 It shall come to pass, when he seeth that the lad *is* not *with us*, that he will die: and thy servants shall bring down the gray hairs of thy servant our father with sorrow to the grave.
- 32 For thy servant became surety for the lad unto my father, saying, If I bring him not unto thee, then I shall bear the blame to my father for ever.
- 33 Now therefore, I pray thee, let thy servant abide instead of the lad a bondman to my lord; and let the lad go up with his brethren.
- 34 For how shall I go up to my father, and the lad *be* not with me? lest peradventure I see the evil that shall come on my father.



- c- The Stern Discipline And Joseph's Revelation (44.-45.)
  - 1) Joseph's Final Disciplinary Test (Their sacks rigged) (44.)
    - a) Their Character Is Tested Under Fire vs. 1-31
    - b) Judah Offers Himself In Place Of Benjamin vs. 32-34

**Gen 45.**

- 1 ¶ Then Joseph could not refrain himself before all them that stood by him; and he cried, Cause every man to go out from me. And there stood no man with him, while Joseph made himself known unto his brethren.
- 2 And he wept aloud: and the Egyptians and the house of Pharaoh heard.
- 3 And Joseph said unto his brethren, I *am* Joseph; doth my father yet live? And his brethren could not answer him; for they were troubled at his presence.
- 4 And Joseph said unto his brethren, Come near to me, I pray you. And they came near. And he said, I *am* Joseph your brother, whom ye sold into Egypt.
- 5 Now therefore be not grieved, nor angry with yourselves, that ye sold me hither: for God did send me before you to preserve life.
- 6 For these two years *hath* the famine *been* in the land: and yet *there are* five years, in the which *there shall* neither *be* earing nor harvest.
- 7 And God sent me before you to preserve you a posterity in the earth, and to save your lives by a great deliverance.
- 8 So now *it was* not you *that* sent me hither, but God: and he hath made me a father to Pharaoh, and lord of all his house, and a ruler throughout all the land of Egypt.
- 9 Haste ye, and go up to my father, and say unto him, Thus saith thy son Joseph, God hath made me lord of all Egypt: come down unto me, tarry not:
- 10 And thou shalt dwell in the land of Goshen, and thou shalt be near unto me, thou, and thy children, and thy children's children, and thy flocks, and thy herds, and all that thou hast:
- 11 And there will I nourish thee; for yet *there are* five years of famine; lest thou, and thy household, and all that thou hast, come to poverty.
- 12 And, behold, your eyes see, and the eyes of my brother Benjamin, that *it is* my mouth that speaketh unto you.
- 13 And ye shall tell my father of all my glory in Egypt, and of all that ye have seen; and ye shall haste and bring down my father hither.
- 14 And he fell upon his brother Benjamin's neck, and wept; and Benjamin wept upon his neck.
- 15 Moreover he kissed all his brethren, and wept upon them: and after that his brethren talked with him.
- 16 ¶ And the fame thereof was heard in Pharaoh's house, saying, Joseph's brethren are come: and it pleased Pharaoh well, and his servants.
- 17 And Pharaoh said unto Joseph, Say unto thy brethren, This do ye; lade your beasts, and go, get you unto the land of Canaan;
- 18 And take your father and your households, and come unto me: and I will give you the good of the land of Egypt, and ye shall eat the fat of the land.
- 19 Now thou art commanded, this do ye; take you wagons out of the land of Egypt for your little ones, and for your wives, and bring your father, and come.
- 20 Also regard not your stuff; for the good of all the land of Egypt *is* yours.
- 21 And the children of Israel did so: and Joseph gave them wagons, according to the commandment of Pharaoh, and gave them provision for the way.
- 22 To all of them he gave each man changes of raiment; but to Benjamin he gave three hundred *pieces* of silver, and five changes of raiment.
- 23 And to his father he sent after this *manner*; ten asses laden with the good things of Egypt, and ten she asses laden with corn and bread and meat for his father by the way.
- 24 So he sent his brethren away, and they departed: and he said unto them, See that ye fall not out by the way.
- 25 ¶ And they went up out of Egypt, and came into the land of Canaan unto Jacob their father,
- 26 And told him, saying, Joseph *is* yet alive, and he *is* governor over all the land of Egypt. And Jacob's heart fainted, for he believed them not.
- 27 And they told him all the words of Joseph, which he had said unto them: and when he saw the wagons which Joseph had sent to carry him, the spirit of Jacob their father revived:
- 28 And Israel said, *It is* enough; Joseph my son *is* yet alive: I will go and see him before I die.

- |   |           |
|---|-----------|
| 2) Joseph Reveals Himself To His Brethren | (45.)     |
| a) He Declares The Overruling Hand Of God | vs. 1-8   |
| b) He Sends For His Father Jacob (Israel) | vs. 9-25  |
| c) Jacob (Israel) Descends Into Egypt     | vs. 26-28 |

**Gen 46.**

- 1 ¶ And Israel took his journey with all that he had, and came to Beersheba, and offered sacrifices unto the God of his father Isaac.
- 2 And God spake unto Israel in the visions of the night, and said, Jacob, Jacob. And he said, Here *am* I.
- 3 And he said, I *am* God, the God of thy father: fear not to go down into Egypt; for I will there make of thee a great nation:
- 4 I will go down with thee into Egypt; and I will also surely bring thee up *again*: and Joseph shall put his hand upon thine eyes.
- 5 ¶ And Jacob rose up from Beersheba: and the sons of Israel carried Jacob their father, and their little ones, and their wives, in the wagons which Pharaoh had sent to carry him.
- 6 And they took their cattle, and their goods, which they had gotten in the land of Canaan, and came into Egypt, Jacob, and all his seed with him:
- 7 His sons, and his sons' sons with him, his daughters, and his sons' daughters, and all his seed brought he with him into Egypt.
- 8 And these *are* the names of the children of Israel, which came into Egypt, Jacob and his sons: Reuben, Jacob's firstborn.
- 9 And the sons of Reuben; Hanoch, and Phallu, and Hezron, and Carmi.
- 10 And the sons of Simeon; Jemuel, and Jamin, and Ohad, and Jachin, and Zohar, and Shaul the son of a Canaanitish woman.
- 11 And the sons of Levi; Gershon, Kohath, and Merari.
- 12 And the sons of Judah; Er, and Onan, and Shelah, and Pharez, and Zerah: but Er and Onan died in the land of Canaan. And the sons of Pharez were Hezron and Hamul.
- 13 And the sons of Issachar; Tola, and Phuvah, and Job, and Shimron.
- 14 And the sons of Zebulun; Sered, and Elon, and Jahleel.
- 15 These *be* the sons of Leah, which she bare unto Jacob in Padanaram, with his daughter Dinah: all the souls of his sons and his daughters *were* thirty and three.
- 16 And the sons of Gad; Ziphion, and Haggi, Shuni, and Ezbon, Eri, and Arodi, and Areli.
- 17 And the sons of Asher; Jimnah, and Ishuah, and Isui, and Beriah, and Serah their sister: and the sons of Beriah; Heber, and Malchiel.
- 18 These *are* the sons of Zilpah, whom Laban gave to Leah his daughter, and these she bare unto Jacob, *even* sixteen souls.
- 19 The sons of Rachel Jacob's wife; Joseph, and Benjamin.
- 20 And unto Joseph in the land of Egypt were born Manasseh and Ephraim, which Asenath the daughter of Potipherah priest of On bare unto him.
- 21 And the sons of Benjamin *were* Belah, and Becher, and Ashbel, Gera, and Naaman, Ehi, and Rosh, Muppim, and Huppim, and Ard.
- 22 These *are* the sons of Rachel, which were born to Jacob: all the souls *were* fourteen.
- 23 And the sons of Dan; Hushim.
- 24 And the sons of Naphtali; Jahzeel, and Guni, and Jezer, and Shillel.
- 25 These *are* the sons of Bilhah, which Laban gave unto Rachel his daughter, and she bare these unto Jacob: all the souls *were* seven.
- 26 All the souls that came with Jacob into Egypt, which came out of his loins, besides Jacob's sons' wives, all the souls *were* threescore and six;
- 27 And the sons of Joseph, which were born him in Egypt, *were* two souls: all the souls of the house of Jacob, which came into Egypt, *were* threescore and ten.
- 28 ¶ And he sent Judah before him unto Joseph, to direct his face unto Goshen; and they came into the land of Goshen.
- 29 And Joseph made ready his chariot, and went up to meet Israel his father, to Goshen, and presented himself unto him; and he fell on his neck, and wept on his neck a good while.
- 30 And Israel said unto Joseph, Now let me die, since I have seen thy face, because thou *art* yet alive.
- 31 And Joseph said unto his brethren, and unto his father's house, I will go up, and shew Pharaoh, and say unto him, My brethren, and my father's house, which *were* in the land of Canaan, are come unto me;
- 32 And the men *are* shepherds, for their trade hath been to feed cattle; and they have brought their flocks, and their herds, and all that they have.
- 33 And it shall come to pass, when Pharaoh shall call you, and shall say, What *is* your occupation?
- 34 That ye shall say, Thy servants' trade hath been about cattle from our youth even until now, both we, *and* also our fathers: that ye may dwell in the land of Goshen; for every shepherd *is* an abomination unto the Egyptians.

**Gen 47.**

- 1 ¶ Then Joseph came and told Pharaoh, and said, My father and my brethren, and their flocks, and their herds, and all that they have, are come out of the land of Canaan; and, behold, they *are* in the land of Goshen.
- 2 And he took some of his brethren, *even* five men, and presented them unto Pharaoh.
- 3 And Pharaoh said unto his brethren, What *is* your occupation? And they said unto Pharaoh, Thy servants *are* shepherds, both we, *and* also our fathers.
- 4 They said moreover unto Pharaoh, For to sojourn in the land are we come; for thy servants have no pasture for their flocks; for the famine *is* sore in the land of Canaan: now therefore, we pray thee, let thy servants dwell in the land of Goshen.
- 5 And Pharaoh spake unto Joseph, saying, Thy father and thy brethren are come unto thee:
- 6 The land of Egypt *is* before thee; in the best of the land make thy father and brethren to dwell; in the land of Goshen let them dwell: and if thou knowest *any* men of activity among them, then make them rulers over my cattle.
- 7 And Joseph brought in Jacob his father, and set him before Pharaoh: and Jacob blessed Pharaoh.
- 8 And Pharaoh said unto Jacob, How old *art* thou?
- 9 And Jacob said unto Pharaoh, The days of the years of my pilgrimage *are* an hundred and thirty years: few and evil have the days of the years of my life been, and have not attained unto the days of the years of the life of my fathers in the days of their pilgrimage.
- 10 And Jacob blessed Pharaoh, and went out from before Pharaoh.
- 11 And Joseph placed his father and his brethren, and gave them a possession in the land of Egypt, in the best of the land, in the land of Rameses, as Pharaoh had commanded.
- 12 And Joseph nourished his father, and his brethren, and all his father's household, with bread, according to *their* families.

5- Israel's (The whole family) Descent Into Egypt	(46:1.-47:12.)
a- God Assures Jacob Of His Presence And Their Return	vs. 1-4
b- A Register Of Jacob's Family In Goshen	vs. 5-27
c- Their Settlement In The Choice Land Of Goshen	vs. 46:28-47:12

**Gen 47. (Cont.)**

- 13 ¶ And *there was* no bread in all the land; for the famine *was* very sore, so that the land of Egypt and *all* the land of Canaan fainted by reason of the famine.
- 14 And Joseph gathered up all the money that was found in the land of Egypt, and in the land of Canaan, for the corn which they bought: and Joseph brought the money into Pharaoh's house.
- 15 And when money failed in the land of Egypt, and in the land of Canaan, all the Egyptians came unto Joseph, and said, Give us bread: for why should we die in thy presence? for the money faileth.
- 16 And Joseph said, Give your cattle; and I will give you for your cattle, if money fail.
- 17 And they brought their cattle unto Joseph: and Joseph gave them bread *in exchange* for horses, and for the flocks, and for the cattle of the herds, and for the asses: and he fed them with bread for all their cattle for that year.
- 18 When that year was ended, they came unto him the second year, and said unto him, We will not hide *it* from my lord, how that our money is spent; my lord also hath our herds of cattle; there is not ought left in the sight of my lord, but our bodies, and our lands:
- 19 Wherefore shall we die before thine eyes, both we and our land? buy us and our land for bread, and we and our land will be servants unto Pharaoh: and give *us* seed, that we may live, and not die, that the land be not desolate.
- 20 And Joseph bought all the land of Egypt for Pharaoh; for the Egyptians sold every man his field, because the famine prevailed over them: so the land became Pharaoh's.
- 21 And as for the people, he removed them to cities from *one* end of the borders of Egypt even to the *other* end thereof.
- 22 Only the land of the priests bought he not; for the priests had a portion *assigned them* of Pharaoh, and did eat their portion which Pharaoh gave them: wherefore they sold not their lands.
- 23 Then Joseph said unto the people, Behold, I have bought you this day and your land for Pharaoh: lo, *here is* seed for you, and ye shall sow the land.
- 24 And it shall come to pass in the increase, that ye shall give the fifth *part* unto Pharaoh, and four parts shall be your own, for seed of the field, and for your food, and for them of your households, and for food for your little ones.
- 25 And they said, Thou hast saved our lives: let us find grace in the sight of my lord, and we will be Pharaoh's servants.
- 26 And Joseph made it a law over the land of Egypt unto this day, *that* Pharaoh should have the fifth *part*; except the land of the priests only, *which* became not Pharaoh's.
- 27 ¶ And Israel dwelt in the land of Egypt, in the country of Goshen; and they had possessions therein, and grew, and multiplied exceedingly.
- 28 And Jacob lived in the land of Egypt seventeen years: so the whole age of Jacob was an hundred forty and seven years.
- 29 And the time drew nigh that Israel must die: and he called his son Joseph, and said unto him, If now I have found grace in thy sight, put, I pray thee, thy hand under my thigh, and deal kindly and truly with me; bury me not, I pray thee, in Egypt:
- 30 But I will lie with my fathers, and thou shalt carry me out of Egypt, and bury me in their buryingplace. And he said, I will do as thou hast said.
- 31 And he said, Swear unto me. And he sware unto him. And Israel bowed himself upon the bed's head.

**Gen 48.**

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass after these things, that *one* told Joseph, Behold, thy father *is* sick: and he took with him his two sons, Manasseh and Ephraim.
- 2 And *one* told Jacob, and said, Behold, thy son Joseph cometh unto thee: and Israel strengthened himself, and sat upon the bed.
- 3 And Jacob said unto Joseph, God Almighty appeared unto me at Luz in the land of Canaan, and blessed me,
- 4 And said unto me, Behold, I will make thee fruitful, and multiply thee, and I will make of thee a multitude of people; and will give this land to thy seed after thee *for* an everlasting possession.
- 5 And now thy two sons, Ephraim and Manasseh, which were born unto thee in the land of Egypt before I came unto thee into Egypt, *are* mine; as Reuben and Simeon, they shall be mine.
- 6 And thy issue, which thou begetteth after them, shall be thine, *and* shall be called after the name of their brethren in their inheritance.
- 7 And as for me, when I came from Padan, Rachel died by me in the land of Canaan in the way, when yet *there was* but a little way to come unto Ephrath: and I buried her there in the way of Ephrath; the same *is* Bethlehem.

- 8 ¶ And Israel beheld Joseph's sons, and said, Who *are* these?
- 9 And Joseph said unto his father, They *are* my sons, whom God hath given me in this *place*. And he said, Bring them, I pray thee, unto me, and I will bless them.
- 10 Now the eyes of Israel were dim for age, *so that* he could not see. And he brought them near unto him; and he kissed them, and embraced them.
- 11 And Israel said unto Joseph, I had not thought to see thy face: and, lo, God hath shewed me also thy seed.
- 12 And Joseph brought them out from between his knees, and he bowed himself with his face to the earth.
- 13 And Joseph took them both, Ephraim in his right hand toward Israel's left hand, and Manasseh in his left hand toward Israel's right hand, and brought *them* near unto him.
- 14 And Israel stretched out his right hand, and laid *it* upon Ephraim's head, who *was* the younger, and his left hand upon Manasseh's head, guiding his hands wittingly; for Manasseh *was* the firstborn.
- 15 And he blessed Joseph, and said, God, before whom my fathers Abraham and Isaac did walk, the God which fed me all my life long unto this day,
- 16 The Angel which redeemed me from all evil, bless the lads; and let my name be named on them, and the name of my fathers Abraham and Isaac; and let them grow into a multitude in the midst of the earth.
- 17 And when Joseph saw that his father laid his right hand upon the head of Ephraim, it displeased him: and he held up his father's hand, to remove it from Ephraim's head unto Manasseh's head.
- 18 And Joseph said unto his father, Not so, my father: for this *is* the firstborn; put thy right hand upon his head.
- 19 And his father refused, and said, I know *it*, my son, I know *it*: he also shall become a people, and he also shall be great: but truly his younger brother shall be greater than he, and his seed shall become a multitude of nations.
- 20 And he blessed them that day, saying, In thee shall Israel bless, saying, God make thee as Ephraim and as Manasseh: and he set Ephraim before Manasseh.
- 21 And Israel said unto Joseph, Behold, I die: but God shall be with you, and bring you again unto the land of your fathers.
- 22 Moreover I have given to thee one portion above thy brethren, which I took out of the hand of the Amorite with my sword and with my bow.

## 6- Joseph's Shrewd Administration Of Egypt

vs. 47:13-26

- a- His first acquisition for Pharaoh (13-15) - gets all the money vs. 14
- b- His second acquisition (16-18) - bring cattle (all livestock) vs. 17
- c- His third acquisition (19-22) - all real estate vs. 18
- d- His fourth acquisition (23-26) - He hired the people for 20% revenue.  
This was probably an improvement over the landlord feudal system which was put down.

## 7- Jacob's Last Days And The Blessings Of Joseph's Sons

(47:27.-48:22.)

- a- Jacob lived 17 years in Egypt.
- b- He adopted the two sons of Joseph as his own. 48:22
  - 1) Blessing of birthright conferred.
  - 2) Ephraim is given preeminence. - Although Joseph is very rich he had respect unto the Abramic covenant.

**Gen 49.**

- 1 ¶ And Jacob called unto his sons, and said, Gather yourselves together, that I may tell you *that* which shall befall you in the last days.
- 2 Gather yourselves together, and hear, ye sons of Jacob; and hearken unto Israel your father.
- 3 Reuben, thou *art* my firstborn, my might, and the beginning of my strength, the excellency of dignity, and the excellency of power:
- 4 Unstable as water, thou shalt not excel; because thou wentest up to thy father's bed; then defiledst thou *it*: he went up to my couch.
- 5 ¶ Simeon and Levi *are* brethren; instruments of cruelty *are in* their habitations.
- 6 O my soul, come not thou into their secret; unto their assembly, mine honour, be not thou united: for in their anger they slew a man, and in their selfwill they digged down a wall.
- 7 Cursed *be* their anger, for *it was* fierce; and their wrath, for it was cruel: I will divide them in Jacob, and scatter them in Israel.
- 8 ¶ Judah, thou *art he* whom thy brethren shall praise: thy hand *shall be* in the neck of thine enemies; thy father's children shall bow down before thee.
- 9 Judah *is* a lion's whelp: from the prey, my son, thou art gone up: he stooped down, he couched as a lion, and as an old lion; who shall rouse him up?
- 10 The sceptre shall not depart from Judah, nor a lawgiver from between his feet, until Shiloh come; and unto him *shall* the gathering of the people *be*.
- 11 Binding his foal unto the vine, and his ass's colt unto the choice vine; he washed his garments in wine, and his clothes in the blood of grapes:
- 12 His eyes *shall be* red with wine, and his teeth white with milk.
- 13 ¶ Zebulun shall dwell at the haven of the sea; and he *shall be* for an haven of ships; and his border *shall be* unto Zidon.
- 14 Issachar *is* a strong ass couching down between two burdens:
- 15 And he saw that rest *was* good, and the land that *it was* pleasant; and bowed his shoulder to bear, and became a servant unto tribute.
- 16 Dan shall judge his people, as one of the tribes of Israel.
- 17 Dan shall be a serpent by the way, an adder in the path, that biteth the horse heels, so that his rider shall fall backward.
- 18 I have waited for thy salvation, O LORD.
- 19 Gad, a troop shall overcome him: but he shall overcome at the last.
- 20 Out of Asher his bread *shall be* fat, and he shall yield royal dainties.
- 21 Naphtali *is* a hind let loose: he giveth goodly words.
- 22 ¶ Joseph *is* a fruitful bough, *even* a fruitful bough by a well; *whose* branches run over the wall:
- 23 The archers have sorely grieved him, and shot *at him*, and hated him:
- 24 But his bow abode in strength, and the arms of his hands were made strong by the hands of the mighty *God* of Jacob; (from thence *is* the shepherd, the stone of Israel:)
- 25 *Even* by the God of thy father, who shall help thee; and by the Almighty, who shall bless thee with blessings of heaven above, blessings of the deep that lieth under, blessings of the breasts, and of the womb:
- 26 The blessings of thy father have prevailed above the blessings of my progenitors unto the utmost bound of the everlasting hills: they shall be on the head of Joseph, and on the crown of the head of him that was separate from his brethren.
- 27 Benjamin shall ravin *as* a wolf: in the morning he shall devour the prey, and at night he shall divide the spoil.
- 28 ¶ All these *are* the twelve tribes of Israel: and this *is it* that their father spake unto them, and blessed them; every one according to his blessing he blessed them.
- 29 And he charged them, and said unto them, I am to be gathered unto my people: bury me with my fathers in the cave that *is* in the field of Ephron the Hittite,
- 30 In the cave that *is* in the field of Machpelah, which *is* before Mamre, in the land of Canaan, which Abraham bought with the field of Ephron the Hittite for a possession of a buryingplace.



- 31 There they buried Abraham and Sarah his wife; there they buried Isaac and Rebekah his wife; and there they buried Leah.
- 32 The purchase of the field and of the cave that *is* therein *was* from the children of Heth.
- 33 And when Jacob had made an end of commanding his sons, he gathered up his feet into the bed, and yielded up the ghost, and was gathered unto his people.
- 

## 8- Jacob's Blessings On His Twelve Sons

(49.)

- a- Reuben--Strong, but unstable (not to excel). - lost the birthright
- b- Simeon and Levi--Cruel and revengeful. –  
Destroyed male population of Shechem. To be divided and scattered.
- c- Judah--To rule as a lion; to enjoy prosperity. –  
Shiloh - Giver of rest, refers to Messiah
- d- Zebulun--To dwell near the sea--to border in Zidon.
- e- Issachar--To be a servant; and bow to oppressors.
- f- Dan--To judge his people, sniping warfare. vs. 16-18
- g- Gad--To be overcome and at last to overcome. vs. 19
- h- Asher--To be prosperous and produce dainties.
- i- Naphtali--To be as a liberated deer--without restraint.
- j- Joseph--To be fruitful.  
Blessings of the fathers to be on Joseph. vs. 26
- k- Benjamin--To be as ravenous wolf--warlike character. - Civil war later -  
Nearly consumes the tribe judges

## 9- Jacob's Final Charge And Death (Hebron - where Sarah was buried)

vs. 29-33

- a- He designated his burying place.
- b- He dies in Egypt at age 147.

**Gen 50.**

- 1 ¶ And Joseph fell upon his father's face, and wept upon him, and kissed him.
- 2 And Joseph commanded his servants the physicians to embalm his father: and the physicians embalmed Israel.
- 3 And forty days were fulfilled for him; for so are fulfilled the days of those which are embalmed: and the Egyptians mourned for him threescore and ten days.
- 4 And when the days of his mourning were past, Joseph spake unto the house of Pharaoh, saying, If now I have found grace in your eyes, speak, I pray you, in the ears of Pharaoh, saying,
- 5 My father made me swear, saying, Lo, I die: in my grave which I have digged for me in the land of Canaan, there shalt thou bury me. Now therefore let me go up, I pray thee, and bury my father, and I will come again.
- 6 And Pharaoh said, Go up, and bury thy father, according as he made thee swear.
- 7 ¶ And Joseph went up to bury his father: and with him went up all the servants of Pharaoh, the elders of his house, and all the elders of the land of Egypt,
- 8 And all the house of Joseph, and his brethren, and his father's house: only their little ones, and their flocks, and their herds, they left in the land of Goshen.
- 9 And there went up with him both chariots and horsemen: and it was a very great company.
- 10 And they came to the threshingfloor of Atad, which *is* beyond Jordan, and there they mourned with a great and very sore lamentation: and he made a mourning for his father seven days.
- 11 And when the inhabitants of the land, the Canaanites, saw the mourning in the floor of Atad, they said, This *is* a grievous mourning to the Egyptians: wherefore the name of it was called Abelmizraim, which *is* beyond Jordan.
- 12 And his sons did unto him according as he commanded them:
- 13 For his sons carried him into the land of Canaan, and buried him in the cave of the field of Machpelah, which Abraham bought with the field for a possession of a buryingplace of Ephron the Hittite, before Mamre.
- 14 And Joseph returned into Egypt, he, and his brethren, and all that went up with him to bury his father, after he had buried his father.
- 15 ¶ And when Joseph's brethren saw that their father was dead, they said, Joseph will peradventure hate us, and will certainly requite us all the evil which we did unto him.
- 16 And they sent a messenger unto Joseph, saying, Thy father did command before he died, saying,
- 17 So shall ye say unto Joseph, Forgive, I pray thee now, the trespass of thy brethren, and their sin; for they did unto thee evil: and now, we pray thee, forgive the trespass of the servants of the God of thy father. And Joseph wept when they spake unto him.
- 18 And his brethren also went and fell down before his face; and they said, Behold, we *be* thy servants.
- 19 And Joseph said unto them, Fear not: for *am* I in the place of God?
- 20 But as for you, ye thought evil against me; *but* God meant it unto good, to bring to pass, as *it is* this day, to save much people alive.
- 21 Now therefore fear ye not: I will nourish you, and your little ones. And he comforted them, and spake kindly unto them.
- 22 ¶ And Joseph dwelt in Egypt, he, and his father's house: and Joseph lived an hundred and ten years.
- 23 And Joseph saw Ephraim's children of the third *generation*: the children also of Machir the son of Manasseh were brought up upon Joseph's knees.
- 24 And Joseph said unto his brethren, I die: and God will surely visit you, and bring you out of this land unto the land which he sware to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob.
- 25 And Joseph took an oath of the children of Israel, saying, God will surely visit you, and ye shall carry up my bones from hence.
- 26 So Joseph died, *being* an hundred and ten years old: and they embalmed him, and he was put in a coffin in Egypt

## 10- Jacob's Burial In Canaan

(50.)

- a- The 70 days' mourning in Egypt (1-3)
- b- The burial procession to Canaan- All elders of Egypt included. vs.4-14  
Beyond Jordan refers to the position of Moses when he wrote being himself east of Jordan.
- c- Joseph reassures his fearful brethren vs. 15-21
- d- Joseph's death - Requests burial in Egypt. (Both abound and suffer need) vs. 22-26
- e- Joseph's coffin becomes a memorial.( of a future restoration)
  - 1) The coffin was not buried.
  - 2) A reminder that God was going to remember them.
  - 3) Story of a young man of courage who has determined to serve God and maintain his purity even in the worst kind of circumstances.
    - a) Result: 1. God used him to preserve the world.
    - b) Result: 2. He was used to bring his wicked brothers to repentance.

1. Name 4 or 5 basic truths taught in Genesis chapter 1.
2. Name and designate two broad divisions of Genesis (The ones we used for our outline)
3. What is the Theme of Genesis? \_\_\_\_\_.  
How is this demonstrated in 4 or 5 events? (1)  
(2) (3)  
(4) (5)
4. In what 2 ways do the creation accounts in Genesis 1 and 2, differ?  
(1) \_\_\_\_\_.  
(2) \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Give an opinion as to what you believe the “Days” of Genesis 1, signify?
6. What are the significances of the divine names used in chapter 2 in contrast to that used in chapter 1?
7. How would you distinguish innocence from righteousness?
8. Name several results issuing from the fall in Genesis 3?
9. Characterize the descendents of Cain.
10. Characterize the descendents of Seth.
11. What specifically brought about the necessity for the flood?
12. Whom do you believe the “sons of God” were? (found in Genesis 6) and why?
13. What was the geographical extent of the flood?  
Defend your answer.
14. Name several features of the Noaic covenant.

15. In what ways are the genealogies of chapters 5 and 11 related?
16. Name Three Things Promised In The Abrahamic Covenant
  - 1)
  - 2)
  - 3)
17. What were the conditions associated with this covenant?
18. What truth is demonstrated by Abraham's failures?
19. How is Chapter 15 related to the Abrahamic covenant?
20. What lesson is taught in chapters 18 and 19 in the story of Lot and the destruction of Sodom
21. Aside from the typical lesson in chapter 22 (What is the type?), What did Abraham's offering of Isaac prove?
22. In what ways are Isaac and Abraham's steward **Eliezer**, Significant to the story related in Chapter 24?
23. Cite a number of ways Isaac may be seen as a type of Christ?
24. What significances do you see in Jacob's experiences at:
  - a. Bethel (Chapter 28)?
  - b. Peniel (Chapter 32)?
25. How do you account for the blessing acquired by Jacob?
26. What do you see to be the spiritual turning point in Jacob's life?
27. At what point was the Abrahamic Covenant confirmed to Jacob?
28. How was Jacob responsible for Joseph being sold into slavery?

29. What is God's purpose for including the shameful story of chapter 38?

30. About how long was Joseph a slave in Egypt?

31. What was Joseph's greatest commendation or characteristic? My answer \_\_\_\_\_

32. Name several ways Joseph is a Type of Christ.

33. What Divine purpose was served in the settlement of Israel in Egypt?

34. What Significance attaches to the blessing of Jacob on Joseph's sons?

35. What significance (redemptive) attached to the blessing of Jacob on his own sons?

36. Does the book end on an optimistic or pessimistic note? \_\_\_\_\_. Explain.

**For Extra Credit – See Next Page**

37. In the account of the flood did they need to bring along oxygen to breath (Note that the flood was 15 cubits above the Mt. tops)?
38. How would you explain our modern topology? e.g.. Mt. Everest 29010 ft.
39. In Chapter 31:44-55; What Specific Principle(s) of interpretation may have been ignored by a preacher, when at the end of a service uses "31:49 . . The LORD watch between me and thee, when we are absent one from another."?
40. Give 2 suggestions you might be left with if your pastor used this as an end of service Doxology?
- 1)
  - 2)
42. What Significant feature did you find in Gen 1:2b?
- 1)
  - 2)
- 42 What significant factor do you find about Gen 4:1?
- 1)
  - 2)
43. How do you explain the Nephalim Gen 6:1-8?

Copy these 4 pages, type your answers, and hand in or send by email to [swede@thecfbc.com](mailto:swede@thecfbc.com)





## APPENDIX A – Gen 1:2 – The Holy Spirit Fertilized The Waters

The following text is taken from my Hebrew Grammar with additions by John Gill and K&D.

To indicate a **temporal sequence**; for example in Gen 1:1-1:5

א בְּרֵאשִׁית, בָּרָא אֱלֹהִים, אֶת הַשָּׁמַיִם, וְאֶת הָאָרֶץ.

1 In the beginning God created ( בָּרָא Qal Prf 3MS created- from nothing-ex-nihlo) the heavens and the earth.

Note in the verses, below, the waw-conversives ו in these verses. Note also the waw-conversives ׀. The shewa has been changed (in pause) to pathach as described in section 01.07, and 01.18. The waw in verse 3 attached to the Imperfects, is a waw-consecutive ׀.

ב וְהָאָרֶץ, הָיְתָה תוֹהוּ וָבֹהוּ, וְחָשֶׁךְ, עַל-פְּנֵי תְהוֹם; וְרוּחַ אֱלֹהִים; מְרַקְּפָת עַל-פְּנֵי הַמָּיִם.

2 and the earth was ( הָיְתָה Qal Prf 3MS ) formless and void; and darkness (was) ( הָיְתָה Qal Prf 3MS it was [added to Engl. Transl.]) upon the face of the deep. And the Spirit of God

hovered/brooded ( מְרַקְּפָת Piel Ptcpl continued hovering/ brooding, 'fertilizing')<sup>1</sup> upon the face of the waters.

John Gill in his commentary states: The Targums of Jonathan and Jerusalem call it the spirit of mercies; and by it is meant the Spirit of the Messiah, as many Jewish writers {t} call him; that is, the third Person in the blessed Trinity, who was concerned in the creation of all things, as in the garnishing of the heavens, so in bringing the confused matter of the earth and water into form and order; see #Job 26:13 Ps 104:30 Ps 33:6. **This same Spirit "moved" or brooded {u} upon the face of the waters, to impregnate them, as an hen upon eggs to hatch them, so he to separate the parts which were mixed together, and give them a quickening virtue to produce living creatures in them.** This sense and idea of the word are finely expressed by the poet

. ... and, with mighty wings outspread,  
Dovelike satst brooding on the vast abyss,  
And mad'st it pregnant ... Milton's Paradise

From Kiel & Delitsch (K&D)

**Gen 1:2 And the earth was without form, and void; and darkness was upon the face of the deep. And the Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters.**

*The First Day.* — Though treating of the creation of the heaven and the earth, the writer, both here and in what follows, describes with minuteness the original condition and progressive formation of the earth alone, and says nothing more respecting the heaven than is actually requisite in order to show its connection with the earth. He is writing for inhabitants of the earth, and for religious ends; not to gratify curiosity, but to strengthen faith in God, the Creator of the universe. What is said in v. 2 of the chaotic condition of the earth, is equally applicable to the heaven, 'for the heaven proceeds from the same chaos as the earth.'

'And the earth was (not became) waste and void.' The alliterative nouns *tohu* *vabohu*, the etymology of which is lost, signify waste and empty (barren), but not laying waste and desolating. Whenever they are used together in other places, {#Isa 34:11 Jer 4:23} they are taken from this passage; but *tohu* alone is frequently employed as synonymous with 'ayin, {see definition 0369} non-existence, and *hebel*, {see definition 01893} nothingness. {#Isa 40:17,23 49:4} **The coming earth was at first waste and desolate, a formless, lifeless mass**, *rudis indigestaque moles*, *hu'lee a'morfos* {#/RAPC Wis 11:17} or *cha'os*.

'And darkness was upon the face of the deep.' *t<sup>h</sup>owm* {see definition 08415, from *huwm*, {see definition 01949} to roar, to rage, denotes the raging waters, the roaring waves {#Ps 42:7} or flood; {#Ex 15:5 De 8:7} and hence the depths of the sea, {#Job 28:14 38:16} and even the abyss of the earth. {#Ps 71:20} As an old traditional word, it is construed like a proper name without an article (Ewald, Gramm.). The chaotic mass in which the earth and the firmament were still undistinguished, unformed, and as it were unborn, was a heaving deep, an abyss of waters (*a'bussos*, {see definition 12} LXX), and this deep was wrapped in darkness. But it was in process of formation, for the Spirit of God moved upon the waters, *ruwach* {see definition 07307} (breath) denotes wind and spirit, like *pneuma* {see definition 4151} from *pne'oo*. {see definition 4154} *Ruach Elohim* is not a breath of wind caused by God (Theodoret, etc.), for the verb does not suit this meaning, **but the creative Spirit of God, the principle of all life, {#Ps 33:6 104:30} which worked upon the formless, lifeless mass, separating, quickening, and preparing the living forms, which were called into being by the creative words that followed.** *rchp* in the Piel is applied to the hovering and brooding of a bird over its young, to warm them, and develop their vital powers. {#De 32:11} In such a way as this the Spirit of God moved upon the deep, which had received at its creation the germs of all life, to fill them with vital energy by His breath of life. The three statements in our

*verse are parallel; the substantive and participial construction of the second and third clauses rests upon the whyth of the first. All three describe the condition of the earth immediately after the creation of the universe. This suffices to prove that the theosophic speculation of those who 'make a gap between the first two verses, and fill it with a wild horde of evil spirits and their demoniacal works, is an arbitrary interpolation' (Ziegler).*

From NEC:

As The Holy Spirit impregnated the virgin Mary, Luke 1:35, so He then impregnated (fertilized) the Waters of Gen 1:2.

ג וַיֹּאמֶר אֱלֹהִים, יְהִי אוֹר; וַיְהִי-אוֹר.

3 ¶ And God (proceeded to say) said (וַיֹּאמֶר Qal Impf 3MS He was saying ), Let there be ( יְהִי Qal Imprf., here used as an imperative<sup>a</sup>) light: and there was ( יְהִי ) light. Note K&D's comment on light<sup>b</sup>. God created photons!

ד וַיֵּרָא אֱלֹהִים אֶת-הָאוֹר, כִּי-טוֹב; וַיַּבְדֵּל אֱלֹהִים, בֵּין הָאוֹר וּבֵין הַחֹשֶׁךְ.

4 And God (proceeded to see) saw the light, that it (was) good: and God (proceeded to divide) divided the light from the darkness.

ה וַיִּקְרָא אֱלֹהִים לְאוֹר יוֹם, וּלְחֹשֶׁךְ קֵרָא לַיְלָה; וַיְהִי-עֶרֶב וַיְהִי-בֹקֶר, יוֹם אֶחָד. {פ}

5 And God (proceeded to call) called ( וַיִּקְרָא Qal Imprf. 3MS ) the light Day, and the darkness He called

( וַיִּקְרָא Qal Perf. 3MS) Night. And the evening ( יְהִי Qal Imprf. 3MS) was, and the morning was ( יְהִי Qal Imprf. 3MS) the first day.

<sup>a</sup> See section 02.01.02.11 for the Imperitive imperfect.

<sup>b</sup> The first thing created by the divine Word was 'light,' the elementary light, or light-material, in distinction from the 'lights,' or light-bearers, bodies of light, as the sun, moon, and stars, created on the fourth day, are called. It is now a generally accepted truth of natural science, that the light does not spring from the sun and stars, but that the sun itself is a dark body, and the light proceeds from an atmosphere which surrounds it. Light was the first thing called forth, and separated from the dark chaos by the creative mandate, 'Let there be,' — the first radiation of the life breathed into it by the Spirit of God, inasmuch as it is the fundamental condition of all organic life in the world, and without light and the warmth which flows from it no plant or animal could thrive.



## **APPENDIX B – An Appositional Appearance Of The Messiah In Gen 4:1**

The following has been copied from NEC, AN EXEGETICAL GRAMMAR OF THE HEBREW SCRIPTURES

### 03.04.01 Nominal Appositives.

Nouns are, in Hebrew as in Greek, frequently used very much like adjectives, to "modify" other nouns, and when so used are called appositives or are said to be in apposition. An appositive usually has the article and usually follows the noun (or pronoun) to which it stands in apposition, and always agrees with it in case: Ge 4:1 And Adam knew Eve his wife; and she conceived, and bare Cain, and said, I have gotten a man *from the LORD*.

א וְהָאָדָם, יָדַע אֶת-חַוָּה  
אִשְׁתּוֹ; וַתַּהַר, וַתֵּלֶד אֶת-  
קַיִן, וַתֹּאמֶר, קָנִיתִי אִישׁ  
אֶת-יְהוָה.

1 And the Adam knew Eve  
his wife; and she conceived  
and bore Cain, and said: 'I  
have gotten a man *with the*  
*help of the LORD.*'

07069 קָנָה qanah kaw-naw' a primitive root; v; {See TWOT on 2039}

AV-Buy 46, get 15, purchased 5, buyer 3, possessor 3, possessed 2, owner 1, recover 1, redeemed 1, misc 7; 84

1) to get, acquire, create, buy, possess

1a) (Qal)

1a1) to get, acquire, obtain

1a1a) of God originating, creating, redeeming His people

1a1a1) possessor

**1a1b) of Eve acquiring**

1a1c) of acquiring knowledge, wisdom

1a2) to buy

1b) (Niphal) to be bought

1c) (Hiphil) to cause to possess

0854 אֵת 'eth ayth probably from 0579; prep; {See TWOT on 187}

AV-against, with, in, him, me, upon; 24

1) with, near, together with

1a) with, together with

1b) with (of relationship)

1c) near (of place)

1d) with (poss.)

1e) from ... with, from (with other prep)

1f) the sign of the direct object with Makkeph ׀.

The reader will find a discussion of this remarkable passage worthy of his attention in Dr. J. P. Smith's Scripture Testimony to the Messiah, vol. 1, p. 228. Third edition. 1837. This learned, indefatigable, and candid writer, argues with considerable force in favor of the translation, 'I have obtained a man, Jehovah,' and supposes that Eve really believed her first-born to be the incarnate Jehovah. There is little difficulty in allowing that she could know so much as is here presupposed because of the grammatical construction (Nominal Apposition) and the promise made to her in Gen 3:15. The remark of Dathe might seem to be fatal to this interpretation: — 'Si scivit, Messiam esse debere Jovam, quomodo existimare potuit, Cainam esse Messiam, quem sciebat esse ab Adamo genitum.' If Eve knew that Messiah must be Jehovah, how could she think that Cain was the Messiah, when she knew him to be the offspring of Adam? At this point of time she evidently (only?) knew that the promise had to do with her seed. Note the logical inconsistency of Dathe's statement. Consider now the Grammatical Proof.

Ge 4:1 And Adam knew Eve his wife; and she conceived, and bare Cain, and said, I have gotten a man *from the LORD*. {KJV}

א וְהָאָדָם, יָדַע אֶת-חַוָּה אִשְׁתּוֹ; וַתַּהַר, וַתֵּלֶד אֶת-

## קִין, וַתֵּאמֶר, קִנִּיתִי אִישׁ אֶת-יְהוָה.

Note here, אֶת, I take as the sign of the direct object along with the Mappiq with the name יְהוָה as an appositive to אִישׁ: Man. Thus the phrase better reads as to the intent of Eve: . . . She conceived, and bare

Cain, and said, I have obtained { קִנִּיתִי {Qal Perf 1CS > 07069 קָנָה qanah kaw-naw': obtain} the man

{אִישׁ}, YeHoVaH {יְהוָה} Note also that the English articulation was added because the name for God is always articular (implied).<sup>6</sup> Also, Eve was correct in that the seed of Eve<sup>a</sup> would bring forth Messiah, the LORD Jesus, except she was 4000 years or so too quick with her synopsis. She learned better when her son Cain Murdered her son Able.

I've known mothers, who, ignorant of Biblical concepts thought their babies and terrible twosies were perfect. Little did they realize the little monsters inherited that nature from ADAM!

This was an example of Nominal Apposition. Another may be found in Judges 19:1

<sup>a</sup> Gen 3:15; Is 7:14; Mat 1:18-25; Lk 1:26-38, 2:1-7; Jn 1:1-2, 14. But notice the ploy of Satan to corrupt her seed: Ge 6:1-8, Dan 2:48, Mt 24:37-39; Lk 17:26-27; 1 Pe 3:19-20; 2 Pe 2:4-6; Jude 6-7. Ref. "As It Was In The Days Of Noah", 2014, Create Space Publishers/AMAZON.





## **THE BOOK OF EXODUS**

**INTRODUCTION**

**PRINCIPLES**

**TEXT**

**OUTLINE**

**QUESTIONS**

Adapted from the larger work (under contract - prior his home-going) of  
**Dr. Stanley Ellisen, Beloved Professor of English Bible  
And Interpretation  
At The Western Baptist Theological Seminary.**

This Monograph was prepared for Seminary,  
Bible College, Church and Home Bible studies.  
Also contained in each book is an Introduction and  
on opposing pages the associated Biblical text taken from  
the ASV Version of 1901; and a list of  
Class Questions.

## INTRODUCTION

### I. Title:

- A The Hebrews called it "We'elleh Shemoth," (And these are the names), - from the opening phrase.
- B The Septuagint translation called it "Exodus" (departure) - from the central theme of the book. Jerome followed the Septuagint and the Protestants followed Jerome through the Latin Vulgate.

### II. Authorship.

Mosaic confirmation of the book is seen in its close connection with Genesis and in the fact the author names himself in the book several times

(17:14; 24:4; 25:9; 36:1).

### III. Historical Setting.

#### A- Setting of the writing.

It was doubtless written shortly after Genesis during the wilderness wanderings (c. 1445-1405).

#### B- Setting of the contents of the book.

The Hyksos (Asiatic shepherd kings – probably Ammorites) invaded and ruled Egypt from 1720 B.C. (or earlier) to 1550 B.C., during which time the Israelites probably entered Egypt (Pfeiffer). Under the Hyksos the Israelites had favorable treatment. The Hyksos were expelled in 1550, and the 18th dynasty (1546-1319) began the New Kingdom. This New Kingdom expanded the empire to its greatest extent in all directions (Albright). After Pharaoh Thutmose III captured Megiddo in 1468, he ruled from the Euphrates to Egypt.

The Pharaohs of the oppression were:

- 1- Amenhotep I – 1546 - 1525 B.C.
- 2- Thutmose II – 1525 – 1490
- 3- Thutmose III— 1490 – 1436 ← The Exodus Pharaoh.
- 4- Amenhotep II-- 1436 - 1413

Thus the oppression lasted from c. 1550 to 1445, or a little over 100 years. Moses was born c. 1525; at which time a mass persecution was being perpetuated against Israel to halt the increase of the Hebrew population.

#### C- Dating the exodus:

- 1- **The Biblical pinpoint:** 1 Kings 6:1 declares that the temple was begun 480 years after the exodus. Since the division of the kingdom took place c. 930, Solomon began to reign 970 and began building the temple c. 966. 480 years before this is c. 1445 B.C.
- 2- **The Archaeological pinpoint:** The Tel-el-Amarna letters date the fall of Jericho c. 1400 B.C. which was about 40 years after the exodus (Garstang).

Thus the archaeological and Biblical dates harmonize.

- 3- A late date of 1290 B.C. is often posited on the basis that Raamses II built Pithom and Maamuses during his reign (1292 - 1275). This liberal view discounts 1 Kings 6:1 as being unreliable and also posits a fragment exodus of parts of Ephraim and Manasseh at an early date. The period covered by the book of Exodus runs from the death of Joseph to one year after the exodus. The book ends with the rearing of the tabernacle which occurred on the first anniversary of the exodus.

### IV. Purpose and Theme of the Book of Exodus.

- A. The purpose of this book is to describe the birth and genealogy of the nation Israel from its origin in Egypt to its place of prominence as God's peculiar people under God's theocratic leadership. Moses desires to preserve, for the people, a record of their ignominious background of suffering in Egypt and a record of God's selection and redemption of them through the blood of a lamb. The purpose centers around three notable events: i.) the exodus, ii.) the giving of the Law, and iii.) the building of the tabernacle.
- B. The primary theme is redemption (as promised in Genesis 15:13-14) from Egypt to a place of God's fellowship in God's will. The exodus pictures redemption; the Law reveals God's will; and the tabernacle establishes a way of fellowship.

### OUTLINE OF EXODUS

	Event	Chptrs.	Lesson
I.	The Exodus.	(1. - 18.)	God's Power & Grace – Redemption through blood sacrifice.
II.	The Law.	(19. - 24.)	God's Holiness – Obedience brings blessing.
III.	The Tabernacle.	(25. - 40.)	God's way of fellowship - Separation from the world to God.

**Exodus 1.**

- 1 ¶ Now these are the names of the sons of Israel, who came into Egypt (every man and his household came with Jacob):
- 2 Reuben, Simeon, Levi, and Judah,
- 3 Issachar, Zebulun, and Benjamin,
- 4 Dan and Naphtali, Gad and Asher.
- 5 And all the souls that came out of the loins of Jacob were seventy souls: and Joseph was in Egypt already.
- 6 And Joseph died, and all his brethren, and all that generation.
- 7 And the children of Israel were fruitful, and increased abundantly, and multiplied, and waxed exceeding mighty; and the land was filled with them.
- 8 ¶ Now there arose a new king over Egypt, who knew not Joseph.
- 9 And he said unto his people, Behold, the people of the children of Israel are more and mightier than we:
- 10 come, let us deal wisely with them, lest they multiply, and it come to pass, that, when there falleth out any war, they also join themselves unto our enemies, and fight against us, and get them up out of the land.
- 11 Therefore they did set over them taskmasters to afflict them with their burdens. And they built for Pharaoh store-cities, Pithom and Raamses.
- 12 But the more they afflicted them, the more they multiplied and the more they spread abroad. And they were grieved because of the children of Israel.
- 13 And the Egyptians made the children of Israel to serve with rigor:
- 14 and they made their lives bitter with hard service, in mortar and in brick, and in all manner of service in the field, all their service, wherein they made them serve with rigor.
- 15 ¶ And the king of Egypt spake to the Hebrew midwives, of whom the name of the one was Shiphrah, and the name of the other Puah:
- 16 and he said, When ye do the office of a midwife to the Hebrew women, and see them upon the birth-stool; if it be a son, then ye shall kill him; but if it be a daughter, then she shall live.
- 17 But the midwives feared God, and did not as the king of Egypt commanded them, but saved the men-children alive.
- 18 And the king of Egypt called for the midwives, and said unto them, Why have ye done this thing, and have saved the men-children alive?
- 19 And the midwives said unto Pharaoh, Because the Hebrew women are not as the Egyptian women; for they are lively, and are delivered ere the midwife come unto them.
- 20 And God dealt well with the midwives: and the people multiplied, and waxed very mighty.
- 21 And it came to pass, because the midwives feared God, that he made them households.
- 22 And Pharaoh charged all his people, saying, Every son that is born ye shall cast into the river, and every daughter ye shall save alive.

**I. The Exodus (God's power revealed).****(1. - 18.)****A- Israelis affliction.**

God's Mercy

**(1.-11.)****1- The development of bondage****(1.)****a- The growth of Israel****vs. 1-7)**

1) Israel's original nucleus in Egypt. i.e., numbered 70

**vs. 1-6**

2) Israel's fruitfulness in Egypt. Increased Abundantly,

**vs. 7**

Waxed Mighty 2 million men of a 6 million population.

**b- The growth of affliction****vs. 8-22**1) Egypt's new dynasty. In 1550 BC Egyptians expelled the  
foreign Hyksos kings.**vs. 8-9**

2) Egypt's fear of Israel. Fearful that Israel would help any foreign invaders.

3) Pharaoh's first plan. Increased burdens.

**vs. 10-14**

4) Pharaoh's second plan. Slay the male children!

**vs. 16**

But the mid-wives disobeyed promoting more growth.

**Exodus 2.**

- 1 ¶ And there went a man of the house of Levi, and took to wife a daughter of Levi.
- 2 And the woman conceived, and bare a son: and when she saw him that he was a goodly child, she hid him three months.
- 3 And when she could not longer hide him, she took for him an ark of bulrushes, and daubed it with slime and with pitch; and she put the child therein, and laid it in the flags by the river's brink.
- 4 And his sister stood afar off, to know what would be done to him.
- 5 ¶ And the daughter of Pharaoh came down to bathe at the river; and her maidens walked along by the river-side; and she saw the ark among the flags, and sent her handmaid to fetch it.
- 6 And she opened it, and saw the child: and, behold, the babe wept. And she had compassion on him, and said, This is one of the Hebrews' children.
- 7 Then said his sister to Pharaoh's daughter, Shall I go and call thee a nurse of the Hebrew women, that she may nurse the child for thee?
- 8 And Pharaoh's daughter said to her, Go. And the maiden went and called the child's mother.
- 9 And Pharaoh's daughter said unto her, Take this child away, and nurse it for me, and I will give thee thy wages. And the woman took the child, and nursed it.
- 10 And the child grew, and she brought him unto Pharaoh's daughter, and he became her son. And she called his name Moses, and said, Because I drew him out of the water.
- 11 ¶ And it came to pass in those days, when Moses was grown up, that he went out unto his brethren, and looked on their burdens: and he saw an Egyptian smiting a Hebrew, one of his brethren.
- 12 And he looked this way and that way, and when he saw that there was no man, he smote the Egyptian, and hid him in the sand.
- 13 And he went out the second day, and, behold, two men of the Hebrews were striving together: and he said to him that did the wrong, Wherefore smitest thou thy fellow?
- 14 And he said, Who made thee a prince and a judge over us? Thinkest thou to kill me, as thou killedst the Egyptian? And Moses feared, and said, Surely the thing is known.
- 15 Now when Pharaoh heard this thing, he sought to slay Moses. But Moses fled from the face of Pharaoh, and dwelt in the land of Midian: and he sat down by a well.
- 16 ¶ Now the priest of Midian had seven daughters: and they came and drew water, and filled the troughs to water their father's flock.
- 17 And the shepherds came and drove them away; but Moses stood up and helped them, and watered their flock.
- 18 And when they came to Reuel their father, he said, How is it that ye are come so soon to-day?
- 19 And they said, An Egyptian delivered us out of the hand of the shepherds, and moreover he drew water for us, and watered the flock.
- 20 And he said unto his daughters, And where is he? Why is it that ye have left the man? Call him, that he may eat bread.
- 21 And Moses was content to dwell with the man: and he gave Moses Zipporah his daughter.
- 22 And she bare a son, and he called his name Gershom; for he said, I have been a sojourner in a foreign land.
- 23 ¶ And it came to pass in the course of those many days, that the king of Egypt died: and the children of Israel sighed by reason of the bondage, and they cried, and their cry came up unto God by reason of the bondage.
- 24 And God heard their groaning, and God remembered his covenant with Abraham, with Isaac, and with Jacob.
- 25 And God saw the children of Israel, and God took knowledge of them.

## 2- The preparation of Moses (2..-4.)

## A Deliverer prepared.

- a- His background and training: (2.)
  - 1) His birth and miraculous preservation. Approx. 1525 BC, Father – a Levite, Amram and mother, a daughter of Levi ,Jochebed. vs. 1-6
  - 2) His training in Egypt. Reared by his mother & educated in Egypt's best schools. But raised as the son of Pharaoh's daughter. vs. 7-10
  - 3) His decision and his retreat to Midian. vs. 11-15  
Help God out by delivering a Hebrew from his Egyptian taskmaster through fleshly means. (He killed him). "He had wanted posters up for him in every postoffice in Egypt!" Moses rejected Egypt (and Israel) when he fled to Midian on the West coast of Saudi Arabia.
  - 4) His 40 years in Midian. Learned patience – herding sheep, married a Gentile Bride, Zipporah, daughter of Jethro, a priest of Midian. vs. 16-22
  - 5) God prepares deliver. God 'remembers His Covenant with Abraham, with Isaac, and with Jacob. vs. 23-25
    - a) The meeting of Moses and Aaron. The LORD had told Aaron, "Go find Moses". vs. 27-28
    - b) Moses' reception by Israel. Performed all three signs. **First recorded miracles in the Bible.** vs. 29-31

**Exodus 3.**

- 1 ¶ Now Moses was keeping the flock of Jethro his father-in-law, the priest of Midian: and he led the flock to the back of the wilderness, and came to the mountain of God, unto Horeb.
- 2 And the angel of Jehovah appeared unto him in a flame of fire out of the midst of a bush: and he looked, and, behold, the bush burned with fire, and the bush was not consumed.
- 3 And Moses said, I will turn aside now, and see this great sight, why the bush is not burnt.
- 4 And when Jehovah saw that he turned aside to see, God called unto him out of the midst of the bush, and said, Moses, Moses. And he said, Here am I.
- 5 And he said, Draw not nigh hither: put off thy shoes from off thy feet, for the place whereon thou standest is holy ground.
- 6 Moreover he said, I am the God of thy father, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob. And Moses hid his face; for he was afraid to look upon God.
- 7 ¶ And Jehovah said, I have surely seen the affliction of my people that are in Egypt, and have heard their cry by reason of their taskmasters; for I know their sorrows;
- 8 and I am come down to deliver them out of the hand of the Egyptians, and to bring them up out of that land unto a good land and a large, unto a land flowing with milk and honey; unto the place of the Canaanite, and the Hittite, and the Amorite, and the Perizzite, and the Hivite, and the Jebusite.
- 9 And now, behold, the cry of the children of Israel is come unto me: moreover I have seen the oppression wherewith the Egyptians oppress them.
- 10 Come now therefore, and I will send thee unto Pharaoh, that thou mayest bring forth my people the children of Israel out of Egypt.
- 11 ¶ And Moses said unto God, Who am I, that I should go unto Pharaoh, and that I should bring forth the children of Israel out of Egypt?
- 12 And he said, Certainly I will be with thee; and this shall be the token unto thee, that I have sent thee: when thou hast brought forth the people out of Egypt, ye shall serve God upon this mountain.
- 13 And Moses said unto God, Behold, when I come unto the children of Israel, and shall say unto them, The God of your fathers hath sent me unto you; and they shall say to me, What is his name? What shall I say unto them?
- 14 And God said unto Moses, I AM THAT I AM: and he said, Thus shalt thou say unto the children of Israel, I AM hath sent me unto you.
- 15 And God said moreover unto Moses, Thus shalt thou say unto the children of Israel, Jehovah, the God of your fathers, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, hath sent me unto you: this is my name for ever, and this is my memorial unto all generations.
- 16 ¶ Go, and gather the elders of Israel together, and say unto them, Jehovah, the God of your fathers, the God of Abraham, of Isaac, and of Jacob, hath appeared unto me, saying, I have surely visited you, and seen that which is done to you in Egypt:
- 17 and I have said, I will bring you up out of the affliction of Egypt unto the land of the Canaanite, and the Hittite, and the Amorite, and the Perizzite, and the Hivite, and the Jebusite, unto a land flowing with milk and honey.
- 18 And they shall hearken to thy voice: and thou shalt come, thou and the elders of Israel, unto the king of Egypt, and ye shall say unto him, Jehovah, the God of the Hebrews, hath met with us: and now let us go, we pray thee, three days' journey into the wilderness, that we may sacrifice to Jehovah our God.
- 19 And I know that the king of Egypt will not give you leave to go, no, not by a mighty hand.
- 20 And I will put forth my hand, and smite Egypt with all my wonders which I will do in the midst thereof: and after that he will let you go.
- 21 And I will give this people favor in the sight of the Egyptians: and it shall come to pass, that, when ye go, ye shall not go empty:
- 22 but every woman shall ask of her neighbor, and of her that sojourneth in her house, jewels of silver, and jewels of gold, and raiment: and ye shall put them upon your sons, and upon your daughters; and ye shall despoil the Egyptians.



- b- Moses' call and commission (3.-4.)
  - 1) The call at Mt. Horeb. The Angel in the burning bush! vs. 1 - 10
    - a) God reveals Himself vs. 6
    - b) God reveals His Plan vs. 8
  - 2) Moses' objections vs. 11-14
    - a) Who am I? "Pharaoh won't receive me!"
    - b) Who art thou? "Israel will want I.D."
  - 3) Moses' commission given vs. 15-22
    - a) To go in the name of the God of Abraham. To the elders vs. 16
    - b) To bargain with Pharaoh for deliverance. Ask for a 3 day retreat. vs. 18
    - c) To experience deliverance by the hand of God. Egypt to be smitten! vs. 20

**Exodus 4.**

- 1 ¶ And Moses answered and said, But, behold, they will not believe me, nor hearken unto my voice; for they will say, Jehovah hath not appeared unto thee.
- 2 And Jehovah said unto him, What is that in thy hand? And he said, A rod.
- 3 And he said, Cast it on the ground. And he cast it on the ground, and it became a serpent; and Moses fled from before it.
- 4 And Jehovah said unto Moses, Put forth thy hand, and take it by the tail (and he put forth his hand, and laid hold of it, and it became a rod in his hand);
- 5 that they may believe that Jehovah, the God of their fathers, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, hath appeared unto thee.
- 6 And Jehovah said furthermore unto him, Put now thy hand into thy bosom. And he put his hand into his bosom: and when he took it out, behold, his hand was leprous, as white as snow.
- 7 And he said, Put thy hand into thy bosom again. (And he put his hand into his bosom again; and when he took it out of his bosom, behold, it was turned again as his other flesh.)
- 8 And it shall come to pass, if they will not believe thee, neither hearken to the voice of the first sign, that they will believe the voice of the latter sign.
- 9 And it shall come to pass, if they will not believe even these two signs, neither hearken unto thy voice, that thou shalt take of the water of the river, and pour it upon the dry land: and the water which thou takest out of the river shall become blood upon the dry land.
- 10 ¶ And Moses said unto Jehovah, Oh, Lord, I am not eloquent, neither heretofore, nor since thou hast spoken unto thy servant; for I am slow of speech, and of a slow tongue.
- 11 And Jehovah said unto him, Who hath made man's mouth? Or who maketh a man dumb, or deaf, or seeing, or blind? is it not I, Jehovah?
- 12 Now therefore go, and I will be with thy mouth, and teach thee what thou shalt speak.
- 13 And he said, Oh, Lord, send, I pray thee, by the hand of him whom thou wilt send.
- 14 And the anger of Jehovah was kindled against Moses, and he said, Is there not Aaron thy brother the Levite? I know that he can speak well. And also, behold, he cometh forth to meet thee: and when he seeth thee, he will be glad in his heart.
- 15 And thou shalt speak unto him, and put the words in his mouth: and I will be with thy mouth, and with his mouth, and will teach you what ye shall do.
- 16 And he shall be thy spokesman unto the people; and it shall come to pass, that he shall be to thee a mouth, and thou shalt be to him as God.
- 17 And thou shalt take in thy hand this rod, wherewith thou shalt do the signs.
- 18 ¶ And Moses went and returned to Jethro his father-in-law, and said unto him, Let me go, I pray thee, and return unto my brethren that are in Egypt, and see whether they be yet alive. And Jethro said to Moses, Go in peace.
- 19 And Jehovah said unto Moses in Midian, Go, return into Egypt; for all the men are dead that sought thy life.
- 20 And Moses took his wife and his sons, and set them upon an ass, and he returned to the land of Egypt: and Moses took the rod of God in his hand.
- 21 And Jehovah said unto Moses, When thou goest back into Egypt, see that thou do before Pharaoh all the wonders which I have put in thy hand: but I will harden his heart, and he will not let the people go.
- 22 And thou shalt say unto Pharaoh, Thus saith Jehovah, Israel is my son, my first-born:
- 23 and I have said unto thee, Let my son go, that he may serve me; and thou hast refused to let him go: behold, I will slay thy son, thy first-born.
- 24 ¶ And it came to pass on the way at the lodging-place, that Jehovah met him, and sought to kill him.
- 25 Then Zipporah took a flint, and cut off the foreskin of her son, and cast it at his feet; and she said, Surely a bridegroom of blood art thou to me.
- 26 So he let him alone. Then she said, A bridegroom of blood art thou, because of the circumcision.
- 27 And Jehovah said to Aaron, Go into the wilderness to meet Moses. And he went, and met him in the mountain of God, and kissed him.
- 28 And Moses told Aaron all the words of Jehovah wherewith he had sent him, and all the signs wherewith he had charged him.
- 29 And Moses and Aaron went and gathered together all the elders of the children of Israel:
- 30 and Aaron spake all the words which Jehovah had spoken unto Moses, and did the signs in the sight of the people.
- 31 And the people believed: and when they heard that Jehovah had visited the children of Israel, and that he had seen their affliction, then they bowed their heads and worshipped.

- 4) Moses' further objections. He knows he can't do anything. - The place we all ought to take. (4.)
- a) Israel will not believe vs. 1-9
    - i. Moses' rod turns into a serpent & back to rod!
    - ii. Moses' hand turns leprous & made well!
    - iii. Water turns to blood!
  - b) Moses' lack of eloquence vs. 10-12
  - c) Moses' reluctance to go alone. 1<sup>st</sup> choice - go alone. 2<sup>nd</sup> choice - Take Aaron with you. vs. 13-18
- Application: "Those who decline the labor and hazard connected with the call of God to 'special service may lose a blessing of which they little dream!" S.E.<sup>7</sup>*
- 5) Moses returns to Egypt vs. 19-21
- a) Final instructions concerning Pharaoh. "Let My People Go" or your (Pl) firstborn will die!" vs. 19-23
  - b) Circumcision attended to. The Covenant sign. Zipporeh probably stayed in Mideon. vs. 24-26
  - c) The meeting of Moses and Aaron. The LORD had told Aaron, "Go find Moses". vs. 27-28
  - d) Moses' reception by Israel. Performed all three signs. **First recorded miracles in the Bible.** vs. 29-31

**Exodus 5.**

- 1 ¶ And afterward Moses and Aaron came, and said unto Pharaoh, Thus saith Jehovah, the God of Israel, Let my people go, that they may hold a feast unto me in the wilderness.
- 2 And Pharaoh said, Who is Jehovah, that I should hearken unto his voice to let Israel go? I know not Jehovah, and moreover I will not let Israel go.
- 3 ¶ And they said, The God of the Hebrews hath met with us: let us go, we pray thee, three days' journey into the wilderness, and sacrifice unto Jehovah our God, lest he fall upon us with pestilence, or with the sword.
- 4 And the king of Egypt said unto them, Wherefore do ye, Moses and Aaron, loose the people from their works? get you unto your burdens.
- 5 And Pharaoh said, Behold, the people of the land are now many, and ye make them rest from their burdens.
- 6 And the same day Pharaoh commanded the taskmasters of the people, and their officers, saying,
- 7 Ye shall no more give the people straw to make brick, as heretofore: let them go and gather straw for themselves.
- 8 And the number of the bricks, which they did make heretofore, ye shall lay upon them; ye shall not diminish aught thereof: for they are idle; therefore they cry, saying, Let us go and sacrifice to our God.
- 9 Let heavier work be laid upon the men, that they may labor therein; and let them not regard lying words.
- 10 ¶ And the taskmasters of the people went out, and their officers, and they spake to the people, saying, Thus saith Pharaoh, I will not give you straw.
- 11 Go yourselves, get you straw where ye can find it; for nought of your work shall be diminished.
- 12 So the people were scattered abroad throughout all the land of Egypt to gather stubble for straw.
- 13 And the taskmasters were urgent, saying, Fulfil your works, your daily tasks, as when there was straw.
- 14 And the officers of the children of Israel, whom Pharaoh's taskmasters had set over them, were beaten, and demanded, Wherefore have ye not fulfilled your task both yesterday and to-day, in making brick as heretofore?
- 15 ¶ Then the officers of the children of Israel came and cried unto Pharaoh, saying, Wherefore dealest thou thus with thy servants?
- 16 There is no straw given unto thy servants, and they say to us, Make brick: and, behold, thy servants are beaten; but the fault is in thine own people.
- 17 But he said, Ye are idle, ye are idle: therefore ye say, Let us go and sacrifice to Jehovah.
- 18 Go therefore now, and work; for there shall no straw be given you, yet shall ye deliver the number of bricks.
- 19 And the officers of the children of Israel did see that they were in evil case, when it was said, Ye shall not diminish aught from your bricks, your daily tasks.
- 20 And they met Moses and Aaron, who stood in the way, as they came forth from Pharaoh:
- 21 and they said unto them, Jehovah look upon you, and judge; because ye have made our savor to be abhorred in the eyes of Pharaoh, and in the eyes of his servants, to put a sword in their hand to slay us.
- 22 And Moses returned unto Jehovah, and said, Lord, wherefore hast thou dealt ill with this people? why is it that thou hast sent me?
- 23 For since I came to Pharaoh to speak in thy name, he hath dealt ill with this people; neither hast thou delivered thy people at all.

- 3- The opposition of Pharaoh (5.-11.)
  - a- The first interview with Pharaoh and the result (5.)
    - 1) The plea to sacrifice in the wilderness. 'The three day retreat requested.' vs. 1-3
    - 2) Pharaoh's response. Pharaohs increased affliction of Israel. "Gather your own straw for bricks!"  
vs. 4-19
    - 3) Israel's complaint and Moses' prayer vs. 20-23

**Exodus 6.**

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah said unto Moses, Now shalt thou see what I will do to Pharaoh: for by a strong hand shall he let them go, and by a strong hand shall he drive them out of his land.
- 2 And God spake unto Moses, and said unto him, I am Jehovah:
- 3 and I appeared unto Abraham, unto Isaac, and unto Jacob, as God Almighty; but by my name Jehovah I was not known to them.
- 4 And I have also established my covenant with them, to give them the land of Canaan, the land of their sojournings, wherein they sojourned.
- 5 And moreover I have heard the groaning of the children of Israel, whom the Egyptians keep in bondage; and I have remembered my covenant.
- 6 Wherefore say unto the children of Israel, I am Jehovah, and I will bring you out from under the burdens of the Egyptians, and I will rid you out of their bondage, and I will redeem you with an outstretched arm, and with great judgments:
- 7 and I will take you to me for a people, and I will be to you a God; and ye shall know that I am Jehovah your God, who bringeth you out from under the burdens of the Egyptians.
- 8 And I will bring you in unto the land which I swore to give to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob; and I will give it you for a heritage: I am Jehovah.
- 9 And Moses spake so unto the children of Israel: but they hearkened not unto Moses for anguish of spirit, and for cruel bondage.
- 10 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 11 Go in, speak unto Pharaoh king of Egypt, that he let the children of Israel go out of his land.
- 12 And Moses spake before Jehovah, saying, Behold, the children of Israel have not hearkened unto me; how then shall Pharaoh hear me, who am of uncircumcised lips?
- 13 And Jehovah spake unto Moses and unto Aaron, and gave them a charge unto the children of Israel, and unto Pharaoh king of Egypt, to bring the children of Israel out of the land of Egypt.
- 14 ¶ These are the heads of their fathers' houses. The sons of Reuben the first-born of Israel: Hanoch, and Pallu, Hezron, and Carmi; these are the families of Reuben.
- 15 And the sons of Simeon: Jemuel, and Jamin, and Ohad, and Jachin, and Zohar, and Shaul the son of a Canaanitish woman; these are the families of Simeon.
- 16 And these are the names of the sons of Levi according to their generations: Gershon, and Kohath, and Merari; and the years of the life of Levi were a hundred thirty and seven years.
- 17 The sons of Gershon: Libni and Shimei, according to their families.
- 18 And the sons of Kohath: Amram, and Izhar, and Hebron, and Uzziel; and the years of the life of Kohath were a hundred thirty and three years.
- 19 And the sons of Merari: Mahli and Mushi. These are the families of the Levites according to their generations.
- 20 And Amram took him Jochebed his father's sister to wife; and she bare him Aaron and Moses: and the years of the life of Amram were a hundred and thirty and seven years.
- 21 And the sons of Izhar: Korah, and Nepheg, and Zichri.
- 22 And the sons of Uzziel: Mishael, and Elzaphan, and Sithri.
- 23 And Aaron took him Elisheba, the daughter of Amminadab, the sister of Nahshon, to wife; and she bare him Nadab and Abihu, Eleazar and Ithamar.
- 24 And the sons of Korah: Assir, and Elkanah, and Abiasaph; these are the families of the Korahites.
- 25 And Eleazar Aaron's son took him one of the daughters of Putiel to wife; and she bare him Phinehas. These are the heads of the fathers' houses of the Levites according to their families.
- 26 These are that Aaron and Moses, to whom Jehovah said, Bring out the children of Israel from the land of Egypt according to their hosts.
- 27 These are they that spake to Pharaoh king of Egypt, to bring out the children of Israel from Egypt: these are that Moses and Aaron.
- 28 And it came to pass on the day when Jehovah spake unto Moses in the land of Egypt,
- 29 that Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying, I am Jehovah: speak thou unto Pharaoh king of Egypt all that I speak unto thee.
- 30 And Moses said before Jehovah, Behold, I am of uncircumcised lips, and how shall Pharaoh hearken unto me?

- b- The Lord's response to Moses vs. 6:1-8
- 1) "I am Jehovah. The covenant GOD of Israel. אֲנִי יְהוָה vs. 2-8
  - 2) "I have.". Three of them! vs. 4-5
    - I. I have also established My covenant with them.
    - II. I have heard the groaning of the children of Israel.
    - III. I have remembered My covenant.
  - 3) "I will ". Seven of them! vs. 6-8
- c- A parenthetic review (6:14.-7:9).)
- 1) A genealogical note vs. 14-22

**Exodus 7.**

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah said unto Moses, See, I have made thee as God to Pharaoh; and Aaron thy brother shall be thy prophet.
- 2 Thou shalt speak all that I command thee; and Aaron thy brother shall speak unto Pharaoh, that he let the children of Israel go out of his land.
- 3 And I will harden Pharaoh's heart, and multiply my signs and my wonders in the land of Egypt.
- 4 But Pharaoh will not hearken unto you, and I will lay my hand upon Egypt, and bring forth my hosts, my people the children of Israel, out of the land of Egypt by great judgments.
- 5 And the Egyptians shall know that I am Jehovah, when I stretch forth my hand upon Egypt, and bring out the children of Israel from among them.
- 6 And Moses and Aaron did so; as Jehovah commanded them, so did they.
- 7 And Moses was fourscore years old, and Aaron fourscore and three years old, when they spake unto Pharaoh.
- 8 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses and unto Aaron, saying,
- 9 When Pharaoh shall speak unto you, saying, Show a wonder for you; then thou shalt say unto Aaron, Take thy rod, and cast it down before Pharaoh, that it become a serpent.
- 10 And Moses and Aaron went in unto Pharaoh, and they did so, as Jehovah had commanded: and Aaron cast down his rod before Pharaoh and before his servants, and it became a serpent.
- 11 Then Pharaoh also called for the wise men and the sorcerers: and they also, the magicians of Egypt, did in like manner with their enchantments.
- 12 For they cast down every man his rod, and they became serpents: but Aaron's rod swallowed up their rods.
- 13 And Pharaoh's heart was hardened, and he hearkened not unto them; as Jehovah had spoken.
- 14 ¶ And Jehovah said unto Moses, Pharaoh's heart is stubborn, he refuseth to let the people go.
- 15 Get thee unto Pharaoh in the morning; lo, he goeth out unto the water; and thou shalt stand by the river's brink to meet him; and the rod which was turned to a serpent shalt thou take in thy hand.
- 16 And thou shalt say unto him, Jehovah, the God of the Hebrews, hath sent me unto thee, saying, Let my people go, that they may serve me in the wilderness: and, behold, hitherto thou hast not hearkened.
- 17 Thus saith Jehovah, In this thou shalt know that I am Jehovah: behold, I will smite with the rod that is in my hand upon the waters which are in the river, and they shall be turned to blood.
- 18 And the fish that are in the river shall die, and the river shall become foul; and the Egyptians shall loathe to drink water from the river.
- 19 And Jehovah said unto Moses, Say unto Aaron, Take thy rod, and stretch out thy hand over the waters of Egypt, over their rivers, over their streams, and over their pools, and over all their ponds of water, that they may become blood; and there shall be blood throughout all the land of Egypt, both in vessels of wood and in vessels of stone.
- 20 And Moses and Aaron did so, as Jehovah commanded; and he lifted up the rod, and smote the waters that were in the river, in the sight of Pharaoh, and in the sight of his servants; and all the waters that were in the river were turned to blood.
- 21 And the fish that were in the river died; and the river became foul, and the Egyptians could not drink water from the river; and the blood was throughout all the land of Egypt.
- 22 And the magicians of Egypt did in like manner with their enchantments: and Pharaoh's heart was hardened, and he hearkened not unto them; as Jehovah had spoken.
- 23 And Pharaoh turned and went into his house, neither did he lay even this to heart.
- 24 And all the Egyptians digged round about the river for water to drink; for they could not drink of the water of the river.
- 25 And seven days were fulfilled, after that Jehovah had smitten the river.



- 2) The commission of Moses restated (6:28.-7:9.)
- d- The second interview with Pharaoh vs. 7:10-13
  - 1) Sign (of the rod becoming a serpent).
  - 2) Pharaoh is hardened.
- e- The third interview vs. 14-19
- f- The ten plagues (7:20.-12:30.)
  - 1st plague--The river turns to blood vs. 20-25
  - Judgment against Nile River god, Osiris. Counterfeited by Magicians.

**Exodus 8.**

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, Go in unto Pharaoh, and say unto him, Thus saith Jehovah, Let my people go, that they may serve me.
- 2 And if thou refuse to let them go, behold, I will smite all thy borders with frogs:
- 3 and the river shall swarm with frogs, which shall go up and come into thy house, and into thy bedchamber, and upon thy bed, and into the house of thy servants, and upon thy people, and into thine ovens, and into thy kneading-troughs:
- 4 and the frogs shall come up both upon thee, and upon thy people, and upon all thy servants.
- 5 And Jehovah said unto Moses, Say unto Aaron, Stretch forth thy hand with thy rod over the rivers, over the streams, and over the pools, and cause frogs to come up upon the land of Egypt.
- 6 And Aaron stretched out his hand over the waters of Egypt; and the frogs came up, and covered the land of Egypt.
- 7 And the magicians did in like manner with their enchantments, and brought up frogs upon the land of Egypt.
- 8 Then Pharaoh called for Moses and Aaron, and said, Entreat Jehovah, that he take away the frogs from me, and from my people; and I will let the people go, that they may sacrifice unto Jehovah.
- 9 And Moses said unto Pharaoh, Have thou this glory over me: against what time shall I entreat for thee, and for thy servants, and for thy people, that the frogs be destroyed from thee and thy houses, and remain in the river only?
- 10 And he said, Against to-morrow. And he said, Be it according to thy word; that thou mayest know that there is none like unto Jehovah our God.
- 11 And the frogs shall depart from thee, and from thy houses, and from thy servants, and from thy people; they shall remain in the river only.
- 12 And Moses and Aaron went out from Pharaoh: and Moses cried unto Jehovah concerning the frogs which he had brought upon Pharaoh.
- 13 And Jehovah did according to the word of Moses; and the frogs died out of the houses, out of the courts, and out of the fields.
- 14 And they gathered them together in heaps; and the land stank.
- 15 But when Pharaoh saw that there was respite, he hardened his heart, and hearkened not unto them; as Jehovah had spoken.
- 16 ¶ And Jehovah said unto Moses, Say unto Aaron, Stretch out thy rod, and smite the dust of the earth, that it may become lice throughout all the land of Egypt.
- 17 And they did so; and Aaron stretched out his hand with his rod, and smote the dust of the earth, and there were lice upon man, and upon beast; all the dust of the earth became lice throughout all the land of Egypt.
- 18 And the magicians did so with their enchantments to bring forth lice, but they could not: and there were lice upon man, and upon beast.
- 19 Then the magicians said unto Pharaoh, This is the finger of God: and Pharaoh's heart was hardened, and he hearkened not unto them; as Jehovah had spoken.
- 20 ¶ And Jehovah said unto Moses, Rise up early in the morning, and stand before Pharaoh; lo, he cometh forth to the water; and say unto him, Thus saith Jehovah, Let my people go, that they may serve me.
- 21 Else, if thou wilt not let my people go, behold, I will send swarms of flies upon thee, and upon thy servants, and upon thy people, and into thy houses: and the houses of the Egyptians shall be full of swarms of flies, and also the ground whereon they are.
- 22 And I will set apart in that day the land of Goshen, in which my people dwell, that no swarms of flies shall be there; to the end thou mayest know that I am Jehovah in the midst of the earth.
- 23 And I will put a division between my people and thy people: by to-morrow shall this sign be.
- 24 And Jehovah did so; and there came grievous swarms of flies into the house of Pharaoh, and into his servants' houses: and in all the land of Egypt the land was corrupted by reason of the swarms of flies.
- 25 And Pharaoh called for Moses and for Aaron, and said, Go ye, sacrifice to your God in the land.
- 26 And Moses said, It is not meet so to do; for we shall sacrifice the abomination of the Egyptians to Jehovah our God: lo, shall we sacrifice the abomination of the Egyptians before their eyes, and will they not stone us?
- 27 We will go three days' journey into the wilderness, and sacrifice to Jehovah our God, as he shall command us.

- 28 And Pharaoh said, I will let you go, that ye may sacrifice to Jehovah your God in the wilderness; only ye shall not go very far away: entreat for me.
- 29 And Moses said, Behold, I go out from thee, and I will entreat Jehovah that the swarms of flies may depart from Pharaoh, from his servants, and from his people, to-morrow: only let not Pharaoh deal deceitfully any more in not letting the people go to sacrifice to Jehovah.
- 30 And Moses went out from Pharaoh, and entreated Jehovah.
- 31 And Jehovah did according to the word of Moses; and he removed the swarms of flies from Pharaoh, from his servants, and from his people; there remained not one.
- 32 And Pharaoh hardened his heart this time also, and he did not let the people go.
- 

2nd--Frogs in the water. Against sacred frog, Hathor. Again counterfeited	vs. 8:1-15
3rd--Dust becomes lice. Against earth god, Seb. <u>Magicians fail</u> --are convinced.	vs. 16-19
4th—Flies—against <u>sacred</u> scarab beetles., Goshen exempted. First compromise <u>offered</u> ).	vs. 20-32

**Exodus 9.**

- 1 ¶ Then Jehovah said unto Moses, Go in unto Pharaoh, and tell him, Thus saith Jehovah, the God of the Hebrews, Let my people go, that they may serve me.
- 2 For if thou refuse to let them go, and wilt hold them still,
- 3 behold, the hand of Jehovah is upon thy cattle which are in the field, upon the horses, upon the asses, upon the camels, upon the herds, and upon the flocks: there shall be a very grievous murrain.
- 4 And Jehovah shall make a distinction between the cattle of Israel and the cattle of Egypt; and there shall nothing die of all that belongeth to the children of Israel.
- 5 And Jehovah appointed a set time, saying, To-morrow Jehovah shall do this thing in the land.
- 6 And Jehovah did that thing on the morrow; and all the cattle of Egypt died; but of the cattle of the children of Israel died not one.
- 7 And Pharaoh sent, and, behold, there was not so much as one of the cattle of the Israelites dead. But the heart of Pharaoh was stubborn, and he did not let the people go.
- 8 ¶ And Jehovah said unto Moses and unto Aaron, Take to you handfuls of ashes of the furnace, and let Moses sprinkle it toward heaven in the sight of Pharaoh.
- 9 And it shall become small dust over all the land of Egypt, and shall be a boil breaking forth with blains upon man and upon beast, throughout all the land of Egypt.
- 10 And they took ashes of the furnace, and stood before Pharaoh; and Moses sprinkled it up toward heaven; and it became a boil breaking forth with blains upon man and upon beast.
- 11 And the magicians could not stand before Moses because of the boils; for the boils were upon the magicians, and upon all the Egyptians.
- 12 And Jehovah hardened the heart of Pharaoh, and he hearkened not unto them; as Jehovah had spoken unto Moses.
- 13 ¶ And Jehovah said unto Moses, Rise up early in the morning, and stand before Pharaoh, and say unto him, Thus saith Jehovah, the God of the Hebrews, Let my people go, that they may serve me.
- 14 For I will this time send all my plagues upon thy heart, and upon thy servants, and upon thy people; that thou mayest know that there is none like me in all the earth.
- 15 For now I had put forth my hand, and smitten thee and thy people with pestilence, and thou hadst been cut off from the earth:
- 16 but in very deed for this cause have I made thee to stand, to show thee my power, and that my name may be declared throughout all the earth.
- 17 As yet exaltest thou thyself against my people, that thou wilt not let them go?
- 18 Behold, to-morrow about this time I will cause it to rain a very grievous hail, such as hath not been in Egypt since the day it was founded even until now.
- 19 Now therefore send, hasten in thy cattle and all that thou hast in the field; for every man and beast that shall be found in the field, and shall not be brought home, the hail shall come down upon them, and they shall die.
- 20 He that feared the word of Jehovah among the servants of Pharaoh made his servants and his cattle flee into the houses:
- 21 and he that regarded not the word of Jehovah left his servants and his cattle in the field.
- 22 ¶ And Jehovah said unto Moses, Stretch forth thy hand toward heaven, that there may be hail in all the land of Egypt, upon man, and upon beast, and upon every herb of the field, throughout the land of Egypt.
- 23 And Moses stretched forth his rod toward heaven: and Jehovah sent thunder and hail, and fire ran down unto the earth; and Jehovah rained hail upon the land of Egypt.
- 24 So there was hail, and fire mingled with the hail, very grievous, such as had not been in all the land of Egypt since it became a nation.
- 25 And the hail smote throughout all the land of Egypt all that was in the field, both man and beast; and the hail smote every herb of the field, and brake every tree of the field.
- 26 Only in the land of Goshen, where the children of Israel were, was there no hail.
- 27 And Pharaoh sent, and called for Moses and Aaron, and said unto them, I have sinned this time: Jehovah is righteous, and I and my people are wicked.
- 28 Entreat Jehovah; for there hath been enough of these mighty thunderings and hail; and I will let you go, and ye shall stay no longer.
- 29 And Moses said unto him, As soon as I am gone out of the city, I will spread abroad my hands unto Jehovah; the thunders shall cease, neither shall there be any more hail; that thou mayest know that the earth is Jehovah's.
- 30 But as for thee and thy servants, I know that ye will not yet fear Jehovah God.
- 31 And the flax and the barley were smitten: for the barley was in the ear, and the flax was in bloom.

32 But the wheat and the spelt were not smitten: for they were not grown up.

33 And Moses went out of the city from Pharaoh, and spread abroad his hands unto Jehovah: and the thunders and hail ceased, and the rain was not poured upon the earth.

34 And when Pharaoh saw that the rain and the hail and the thunders were ceased, he sinned yet more, and hardened his heart, he and his servants.

35 And the heart of Pharaoh was hardened, and he did not let the children of Israel go; as Jehovah had spoken by Moses.

---

5th--Murrain on cattle—against sacred bull, Apis (9.)

Israel Exempted.

6th--Boils--against Typhon, (ashes of victims)

vs. 8-12

Intensity noted.

7th--Hail and fire--against Shu, god of atmosphere

vs. 13-35

All believers exempted.

God's purpose in using Pharaoh noted.

**Exodus 10.**

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah said unto Moses, Go in unto Pharaoh: for I have hardened his heart, and the heart of his servants, that I may show these my signs in the midst of them,
- 2 and that thou mayest tell in the ears of thy son, and of thy son's son, what things I have wrought upon Egypt, and my signs which I have done among them; that ye may know that I am Jehovah.
- 3 And Moses and Aaron went in unto Pharaoh, and said unto him, Thus saith Jehovah, the God of the Hebrews, How long wilt thou refuse to humble thyself before me? let my people go, that they may serve me.
- 4 Else, if thou refuse to let my people go, behold, to-morrow will I bring locusts into thy border:
- 5 and they shall cover the face of the earth, so that one shall not be able to see the earth: and they shall eat the residue of that which is escaped, which remaineth unto you from the hail, and shall eat every tree which groweth for you out of the field:
- 6 and thy houses shall be filled, and the houses of all thy servants, and the houses of all the Egyptians; as neither thy fathers nor thy fathers' fathers have seen, since the day that they were upon the earth unto this day. And he turned, and went out from Pharaoh.
- 7 And Pharaoh's servants said unto him, How long shall this man be a snare unto us? let the men go, that they may serve Jehovah their God: knowest thou not yet that Egypt is destroyed?
- 8 And Moses and Aaron were brought again unto Pharaoh: and he said unto them, Go, serve Jehovah your God; but who are they that shall go?
- 9 And Moses said, We will go with our young and with our old; with our sons and with our daughters, with our flocks and with our herds will we go; for we must hold a feast unto Jehovah.
- 10 And he said unto them, So be Jehovah with you, as I will let you go, and your little ones: look to it; for evil is before you.
- 11 Not so: go now ye that are men, and serve Jehovah; for that is what ye desire. And they were driven out from Pharaoh's presence.
- 12 ¶ And Jehovah said unto Moses, Stretch out thy hand over the land of Egypt for the locusts, that they may come up upon the land of Egypt, and eat every herb of the land, even all that the hail hath left.
- 13 And Moses stretched forth his rod over the land of Egypt, and Jehovah brought an east wind upon the land all that day, and all the night; and when it was morning, the east wind brought the locusts.
- 14 And the locusts went up over all the land of Egypt, and rested in all the borders of Egypt; very grievous were they; before them there were no such locusts as they, neither after them shall be such.
- 15 For they covered the face of the whole earth, so that the land was darkened; and they did eat every herb of the land, and all the fruit of the trees which the hail had left: and there remained not any green thing, either tree or herb of the field, through all the land of Egypt.
- 16 Then Pharaoh called for Moses and Aaron in haste; and he said, I have sinned against Jehovah your God, and against you.
- 17 Now therefore forgive, I pray thee, my sin only this once, and entreat Jehovah your God, that he may take away from me this death only.
- 18 And he went out from Pharaoh, and entreated Jehovah.
- 19 And Jehovah turned an exceeding strong west wind, which took up the locusts, and drove them into the Red Sea; there remained not one locust in all the border of Egypt.
- 20 But Jehovah hardened Pharaoh's heart, and he did not let the children of Israel go.
- 21 ¶ And Jehovah said unto Moses, Stretch out thy hand toward heaven, that there may be darkness over the land of Egypt, even darkness which may be felt.
- 22 And Moses stretched forth his hand toward heaven; and there was a thick darkness in all the land of Egypt three days;
- 23 they saw not one another, neither rose any one from his place for three days: but all the children of Israel had light in their dwellings.
- 24 And Pharaoh called unto Moses, and said, Go ye, serve Jehovah; only let your flocks and your herds be stayed: let your little ones also go with you.
- 25 And Moses said, Thou must also give into our hand sacrifices and burnt-offerings, that we may sacrifice unto Jehovah our God.
- 26 Our cattle also shall go with us; there shall not a hoof be left behind; for thereof must we take to serve Jehovah our God; and we know not with what we must serve Jehovah, until we come thither.
- 27 But Jehovah hardened Pharaoh's heart, and he would not let them go.

28 And Pharaoh said unto him, Get thee from me, take heed to thyself, see my face no more; for in the day thou seest my face thou shalt die.

29 And Moses said, Thou hast spoken well; I will see thy face again no more.

---

8th--Locust--against Serapia, protector from locusts

vs. 10:1-20

God's purpose is told to Israel.

Second compromise offer. "Men only, may go and serve."

9th--Darkness--against Ra, sun god

vs. 21-29

Israel exempted.

Third compromise offer. "Go serve the Lord, but don't take flocks."

**Exodus 11.**

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah said unto Moses, Yet one plague more will I bring upon Pharaoh, and upon Egypt; afterwards he will let you go hence: when he shall let you go, he shall surely thrust you out hence altogether.
- 2 Speak now in the ears of the people, and let them ask every man of his neighbor, and every woman of her neighbor, jewels of silver, and jewels of gold.
- 3 And Jehovah gave the people favor in the sight of the Egyptians. Moreover the man Moses was very great in the land of Egypt, in the sight of Pharaoh's servants, and in the sight of the people.
- 4 ¶ And Moses said, Thus saith Jehovah, About midnight will I go out into the midst of Egypt:
- 5 and all the first-born in the land of Egypt shall die, from the first-born of Pharaoh that sitteth upon his throne, even unto the first-born of the maid-servant that is behind the mill; and all the first-born of cattle.
- 6 And there shall be a great cry throughout all the land of Egypt, such as there hath not been, nor shall be any more.
- 7 But against any of the children of Israel shall not a dog move his tongue, against man or beast: that ye may know how that Jehovah doth make a distinction between the Egyptians and Israel.
- 8 And all these thy servants shall come down unto me, and bow down themselves unto me, saying, Get thee out, and all the people that follow thee: and after that I will go out. And he went out from Pharaoh in hot anger.
- 9 And Jehovah said unto Moses, Pharaoh will not hearken unto you; that my wonders may be multiplied in the land of Egypt.
- 10 And Moses and Aaron did all these wonders before Pharaoh: and Jehovah hardened Pharaoh's heart, and he did not let the children of Israel go out of his land.



10th--Death of firstborn --against Isis, giver of life.

(11.-12.)

The Three Purposes of the 10 plagues.

- 1) Demonstrates the impotence of the Egyptian gods.
- 2) Demonstrates that Jehovah is GOD.
- 3) Demonstrates to Israel the greatness of Jehovah.

B- The Lord's emancipation.

(11.-14.)

1- The final plague and the Passover.

(11:1. - 12:30)

a- The final plague announced

(11.)

- 1) All firstborn are to die
- 2) Israelites to ask Egyptians for gifts from Egyptians.

vs. 4-5

vs. 2-3

**Exodus 12.**

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses and Aaron in the land of Egypt, saying,
- 2 This month shall be unto you the beginning of months: it shall be the first month of the year to you.
- 3 Speak ye unto all the congregation of Israel, saying, In the tenth day of this month they shall take to them every man a lamb, according to their fathers' houses, a lamb for a household:
- 4 and if the household be too little for a lamb, then shall he and his neighbor next unto his house take one according to the number of the souls; according to every man's eating ye shall make your count for the lamb.
- 5 Your lamb shall be without blemish, a male a year old: ye shall take it from the sheep, or from the goats:
- 6 and ye shall keep it until the fourteenth day of the same month; and the whole assembly of the congregation of Israel shall kill it at even.
- 7 And they shall take of the blood, and put it on the two side-posts and on the lintel, upon the houses wherein they shall eat it.
- 8 And they shall eat the flesh in that night, roast with fire, and unleavened bread; with bitter herbs they shall eat it.
- 9 Eat not of it raw, nor boiled at all with water, but roast with fire; its head with its legs and with the inwards thereof.
- 10 And ye shall let nothing of it remain until the morning; but that which remaineth of it until the morning ye shall burn with fire.
- 11 And thus shall ye eat it: with your loins girded, your shoes on your feet, and your staff in your hand; and ye shall eat it in haste: it is Jehovah's passover.
- 12 For I will go through the land of Egypt in that night, and will smite all the first-born in the land of Egypt, both man and beast; and against all the gods of Egypt I will execute judgments: I am Jehovah.
- 13 And the blood shall be to you for a token upon the houses where ye are: and when I see the blood, I will pass over you, and there shall no plague be upon you to destroy you, when I smite the land of Egypt.
- 14 And this day shall be unto you for a memorial, and ye shall keep it a feast to Jehovah: throughout your generations ye shall keep it a feast by an ordinance for ever.
- 15 Seven days shall ye eat unleavened bread; even the first day ye shall put away leaven out of your houses: for whosoever eateth leavened bread from the first day until the seventh day, that soul shall be cut off from Israel.
- 16 And in the first day there shall be to you a holy convocation, and in the seventh day a holy convocation; no manner of work shall be done in them, save that which every man must eat, that only may be done by you.
- 17 And ye shall observe the feast of unleavened bread; for in this selfsame day have I brought your hosts out of the land of Egypt: therefore shall ye observe this day throughout your generations by an ordinance for ever.
- 18 In the first month, on the fourteenth day of the month at even, ye shall eat unleavened bread, until the one and twentieth day of the month at even.
- 19 Seven days shall there be no leaven found in your houses: for whosoever eateth that which is leavened, that soul shall be cut off from the congregation of Israel, whether he be a sojourner, or one that is born in the land.
- 20 Ye shall eat nothing leavened; in all your habitations shall ye eat unleavened bread.
- 21 ¶ Then Moses called for all the elders of Israel, and said unto them, Draw out, and take you lambs according to your families, and kill the passover.
- 22 And ye shall take a bunch of hyssop, and dip it in the blood that is in the basin, and strike the lintel and the two side-posts with the blood that is in the basin; and none of you shall go out of the door of his house until the morning.
- 23 For Jehovah will pass through to smite the Egyptians; and when he seeth the blood upon the lintel, and on the two side-posts, Jehovah will pass over the door, and will not suffer the destroyer to come in unto your houses to smite you.
- 24 And ye shall observe this thing for an ordinance to thee and to thy sons for ever.
- 25 And it shall come to pass, when ye are come to the land which Jehovah will give you, according as he hath promised, that ye shall keep this service.
- 26 And it shall come to pass, when your children shall say unto you, What mean ye by this service?
- 27 that ye shall say, It is the sacrifice of Jehovah's passover, who passed over the houses of the children of Israel in Egypt, when he smote the Egyptians, and delivered our houses. And the people bowed the head and worshipped.
- 28 And the children of Israel went and did so; as Jehovah had commanded Moses and Aaron, so did they.

- 29 ¶ And it came to pass at midnight, that Jehovah smote all the first-born in the land of Egypt, from the first-born of Pharaoh that sat on his throne unto the first-born of the captive that was in the dungeon; and all the first-born of cattle.
- 30 And Pharaoh rose up in the night, he, and all his servants, and all the Egyptians; and there was a great cry in Egypt; for there was not a house where there was not one dead.
- 

b- The Passover instituted (12.)

- 1) Purpose of the Passover.
  - a) Commemorates physical redemption from Egypt.
  - b) Typifies spiritual redemption at Calvary,
- 2) Instruction for keeping Passover vs. 1-23
  - a) The lamb separated..Date April 10-14.Without blemish and without spot. vs. 3
  - b) The lamb slain April 14. Blood sprinkled on doorposts and lintel. Roasted and eaten that night.
  - c) The Feast of Unleavened Bread instituted vs.14-20
  - d) The Passover kept. vs. 21-28
    - i. Signifies a substitutionary substitute.
    - ii. It's made a continual ordinance.

c- The final plague on Egypt vs. 29-30

All firstborn men & animals die!

**Exodus 12. (Cont.)**

- 31 And he called for Moses and Aaron by night, and said, Rise up, get you forth from among my people, both ye and the children of Israel; and go, serve Jehovah, as ye have said.
- 32 Take both your flocks and your herds, as ye have said, and be gone; and bless me also.
- 33 And the Egyptians were urgent upon the people, to send them out of the land in haste; for they said, We are all dead men.
- 34 And the people took their dough before it was leavened, their kneading-troughs being bound up in their clothes upon their shoulders.
- 35 And the children of Israel did according to the word of Moses; and they asked of the Egyptians jewels of silver, and jewels of gold, and raiment:
- 36 and Jehovah gave the people favor in the sight of the Egyptians, so that they let them have what they asked. And they despoiled the Egyptians.
- 37 ¶ And the children of Israel journeyed from Rameses to Succoth, about six hundred thousand on foot that were men, besides children.
- 38 And a mixed multitude went up also with them; and flocks, and herds, even very much cattle.
- 39 And they baked unleavened cakes of the dough which they brought forth out of Egypt; for it was not leavened, because they were thrust out of Egypt, and could not tarry, neither had they prepared for themselves any victuals.
- 40 Now the time that the children of Israel dwelt in Egypt was four hundred and thirty years.
- 41 And it came to pass at the end of four hundred and thirty years, even the selfsame day it came to pass, that all the hosts of Jehovah went out from the land of Egypt.
- 42 It is a night to be much observed unto Jehovah for bringing them out from the land of Egypt: this is that night of Jehovah, to be much observed of all the children of Israel throughout their generations.
- 43 ¶ And Jehovah said unto Moses and Aaron, This is the ordinance of the passover: there shall no foreigner eat thereof;
- 44 but every man's servant that is bought for money, when thou hast circumcised him, then shall he eat thereof.
- 45 A sojourner and a hired servant shall not eat thereof.
- 46 In one house shall it be eaten; thou shalt not carry forth aught of the flesh abroad out of the house; neither shall ye break a bone thereof.
- 47 All the congregation of Israel shall keep it.
- 48 And when a stranger shall sojourn with thee, and will keep the passover to Jehovah, let all his males be circumcised, and then let him come near and keep it; and he shall be as one that is born in the land: but no uncircumcised person shall eat thereof.
- 49 One law shall be to him that is home-born, and unto the stranger that sojourneth among you.
- 50 Thus did all the children of Israel; as Jehovah commanded Moses and Aaron, so did they.
- 51 And it came to pass the selfsame day, that Jehovah did bring the children of Israel out of the land of Egypt by their hosts.

**Exodus 13.**

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 2 Sanctify unto me all the first-born, whatsoever openeth the womb among the children of Israel, both of man and of beast: it is mine.
- 3 And Moses said unto the people, Remember this day, in which ye came out from Egypt, out of the house of bondage; for by strength of hand Jehovah brought you out from this place: there shall no leavened bread be eaten.
- 4 This day ye go forth in the month Abib.
- 5 And it shall be, when Jehovah shall bring thee into the land of the Canaanite, and the Hittite, and the Amorite, and the Hivite, and the Jebusite, which he sware unto thy fathers to give thee, a land flowing with milk and honey, that thou shalt keep this service in this month.
- 6 Seven days thou shalt eat unleavened bread, and in the seventh day shall be a feast to Jehovah.
- 7 Unleavened bread shall be eaten throughout the seven days; and there shall no leavened bread be seen with thee, neither shall there be leaven seen with thee, in all thy borders.
- 8 And thou shalt tell thy son in that day, saying, It is because of that which Jehovah did for me when I came forth out of Egypt.
- 9 And it shall be for a sign unto thee upon thy hand, and for a memorial between thine eyes, that the law of Jehovah may be in thy mouth: for with a strong hand hath Jehovah brought thee out of Egypt.
- 10 Thou shalt therefore keep this ordinance in its season from year to year.

- 11 ¶ And it shall be, when Jehovah shall bring thee into the land of the Canaanite, as he sware unto thee and to thy fathers, and shall give it thee,
- 12 that thou shalt set apart unto Jehovah all that openeth the womb, and every firstling which thou hast that cometh of a beast; the males shall be Jehovah's.
- 13 And every firstling of an ass thou shalt redeem with a lamb; and if thou wilt not redeem it, then thou shalt break its neck: and all the first-born of man among thy sons shalt thou redeem.
- 14 And it shall be, when thy son asketh thee in time to come, saying, What is this? that thou shalt say unto him, By strength of hand Jehovah brought us out from Egypt, from the house of bondage:
- 15 and it came to pass, when Pharaoh would hardly let us go, that Jehovah slew all the first-born in the land of Egypt, both the first-born of man, and the first-born of beast: therefore I sacrifice to Jehovah all that openeth the womb, being males; but all the first-born of my sons I redeem.
- 16 And it shall be for a sign upon thy hand, and for frontlets between thine eyes: for by strength of hand Jehovah brought us forth out of Egypt.
- 

## 2- The exodus accomplished

(12:31.-14:31.)

### a- The departure

vs. 12:31-51

- 1) The urgency.
- 2) The date. Their sojourn was 430 years!
- 3) The persons of the Passover (18). No uncircumcised strangers!

vs. 40

### b- Consecration of the firstborn

vs.13:1-16

Firstborn given to the LORD. (Each must be redeemed. Num 18:16)

**Exodus 13. (Cont.)**

- 17 ¶ And it came to pass, when Pharaoh had let the people go, that God led them not by the way of the land of the Philistines, although that was near; for God said, Lest peradventure the people repent when they see war, and they return to Egypt:
- 18 but God led the people about, by the way of the wilderness by the Red Sea: and the children of Israel went up armed out of the land of Egypt.
- 19 And Moses took the bones of Joseph with him: for he had straitly sworn the children of Israel, saying, God will surely visit you; and ye shall carry up my bones away hence with you.
- 20 And they took their journey from Succoth, and encamped in Etham, in the edge of the wilderness.
- 21 And Jehovah went before them by day in a pillar of cloud, to lead them the way, and by night in a pillar of fire, to give them light; that they might go by day and by night:
- 22 the pillar of cloud by day, and the pillar of fire by night, departed not from before the people.

**Exodus 14.**

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 2 Speak unto the children of Israel, that they turn back and encamp before Pi-hahiroth, between Migdol and the sea, before Baal-zephon: over against it shall ye encamp by the sea.
- 3 And Pharaoh will say of the children of Israel, They are entangled in the land, the wilderness hath shut them in.
- 4 And I will harden Pharaoh's heart, and he shall follow after them; and I will get me honor upon Pharaoh, and upon all his host; and the Egyptians shall know that I am Jehovah. And they did so.
- 5 And it was told the king of Egypt that the people were fled: and the heart of Pharaoh and of his servants was changed towards the people, and they said, What is this we have done, that we have let Israel go from serving us?
- 6 And he made ready his chariot, and took his people with him:
- 7 and he took six hundred chosen chariots, and all the chariots of Egypt, and captains over all of them.
- 8 And Jehovah hardened the heart of Pharaoh king of Egypt, and he pursued after the children of Israel: for the children of Israel went out with a high hand.
- 9 And the Egyptians pursued after them, all the horses and chariots of Pharaoh, and his horsemen, and his army, and overtook them encamping by the sea, beside Pi-hahiroth, before Baal-zephon.
- 10 ¶ And when Pharaoh drew nigh, the children of Israel lifted up their eyes, and, behold, the Egyptians were marching after them; and they were sore afraid: and the children of Israel cried out unto Jehovah.
- 11 And they said unto Moses, Because there were no graves in Egypt, hast thou taken us away to die in the wilderness? wherefore hast thou dealt thus with us, to bring us forth out of Egypt?
- 12 Is not this the word that we spake unto thee in Egypt, saying, Let us alone, that we may serve the Egyptians? For it were better for us to serve the Egyptians, than that we should die in the wilderness.

c- The Journey

vs. 13:17-22

- 1) Don't take a direct route through the land of the Philistines.
- 2) Follow the Pillar Of Fire

vs. 17

vs. 18

d- The pursuit of Pharaoh; Note The attitudes:

vs. 14:1 12

- 1) Pharaoh's heart was hardened!
- 2) The Israeli's murmured! (& kept on for 40 years)

**Exodus 14. cont.**

- 13 And Moses said unto the people, Fear ye not, stand still, and see the salvation of Jehovah, which he will work for you to-day: for the Egyptians whom ye have seen to-day, ye shall see them again no more for ever.
- 14 Jehovah will fight for you, and ye shall hold your peace.
- 15 ¶ And Jehovah said unto Moses, Wherefore criest thou unto me? speak unto the children of Israel, that they go forward.
- 16 And lift thou up thy rod, and stretch out thy hand over the sea, and divide it: and the children of Israel shall go into the midst of the sea on dry ground.
- 17 And I, behold, I will harden the hearts of the Egyptians, and they shall go in after them: and I will get me honor upon Pharaoh, and upon all his host, upon his chariots, and upon his horsemen.
- 18 And the Egyptians shall know that I am Jehovah, when I have gotten me honor upon Pharaoh, upon his chariots, and upon his horsemen.
- 19 And the angel of God, who went before the camp of Israel, removed and went behind them; and the pillar of cloud removed from before them, and stood behind them:
- 20 and it came between the camp of Egypt and the camp of Israel; and there was the cloud and the darkness, yet gave it light by night: and the one came not near the other all the night.
- 21 ¶ And Moses stretched out his hand over the sea; and Jehovah caused the sea to go back by a strong east wind all the night, and made the sea dry land, and the waters were divided.
- 22 And the children of Israel went into the midst of the sea upon the dry ground: and the waters were a wall unto them on their right hand, and on their left.
- 23 And the Egyptians pursued, and went in after them into the midst of the sea, all Pharaoh's horses, his chariots, and his horsemen.
- 24 And it came to pass in the morning watch, that Jehovah looked forth upon the host of the Egyptians through the pillar of fire and of cloud, and discomfited the host of the Egyptians.
- 25 And he took off their chariot wheels, and they drove them heavily; so that the Egyptians said, Let us flee from the face of Israel; for Jehovah fighteth for them against the Egyptians.
- 26 And Jehovah said unto Moses, Stretch out thy hand over the sea, that the waters may come again upon the Egyptians, upon their chariots, and upon their horsemen.
- 27 And Moses stretched forth his hand over the sea, and the sea returned to its strength when the morning appeared; and the Egyptians fled against it; and Jehovah overthrew the Egyptians in the midst of the sea.
- 28 And the waters returned, and covered the chariots, and the horsemen, even all the host of Pharaoh that went in after them into the sea; there remained not so much as one of them.
- 29 But the children of Israel walked upon dry land in the midst of the sea; and the waters were a wall unto them on their right hand, and on their left.
- 30 Thus Jehovah saved Israel that day out of the hand of the Egyptians; and Israel saw the Egyptians dead upon the sea-shore.
- 31 And Israel saw the great work which Jehovah did upon the Egyptians, and the people feared Jehovah: and they believed in Jehovah, and in his servant Moses.



e- Crossing the Red Sea

vs. 14:13-31

1) God's command. "Go forward".

2) God's protection during the night.

vs. 19-20

3) God's provision. The Red Sea Parted!

vs. 21-22

4) God's judgment of the Egyptian soldiers.

"Pharaoh's chil-lens got drownd-ded".

vs. 21-31

**Exodus 15.**

- 1 ¶ Then sang Moses and the children of Israel this song unto Jehovah, and spake, saying, I will sing unto Jehovah, for he hath triumphed gloriously: The horse and his rider hath he thrown into the sea.
- 2 Jehovah is my strength and song, And he is become my salvation: This is my God, and I will praise him; My father's God, and I will exalt him.
- 3 Jehovah is a man of war: Jehovah is his name.
- 4 Pharaoh's chariots and his host hath he cast into the sea; And his chosen captains are sunk in the Red Sea.
- 5 The deeps cover them: They went down into the depths like a stone.
- 6 Thy right hand, O Jehovah, is glorious in power, Thy right hand, O Jehovah, dasheth in pieces the enemy.
- 7 And in the greatness of thine excellency thou overthrowest them that rise up against thee: Thou sendest forth thy wrath, it consumeth them as stubble.
- 8 And with the blast of thy nostrils the waters were piled up, The floods stood upright as a heap; The deeps were congealed in the heart of the sea.
- 9 The enemy said, I will pursue, I will overtake, I will divide the spoil; My desire shall be satisfied upon them; I will draw my sword, my hand shall destroy them.
- 10 Thou didst blow with thy wind, the sea covered them: They sank as lead in the mighty waters.
- 11 Who is like unto thee, O Jehovah, among the gods? Who is like thee, glorious in holiness, Fearful in praises, doing wonders?
- 12 Thou stretchedst out thy right hand, The earth swallowed them.
- 13 Thou in thy lovingkindness hast led the people that thou hast redeemed: Thou hast guided them in thy strength to thy holy habitation.
- 14 The peoples have heard, they tremble: Pangs have taken hold on the inhabitants of Philistia.
- 15 Then were the chiefs of Edom dismayed; The mighty men of Moab, trembling taketh hold upon them: All the inhabitants of Canaan are melted away.
- 16 Terror and dread falleth upon them; By the greatness of thine arm they are as still as a stone; Till thy people pass over, O Jehovah, Till the people pass over that thou hast purchased.
- 17 Thou wilt bring them in, and plant them in the mountain of thine inheritance, The place, O Jehovah, which thou hast made for thee to dwell in, The sanctuary, O Lord, which thy hands have established.
- 18 Jehovah shall reign for ever and ever.
- 19 For the horses of Pharaoh went in with his chariots and with his horsemen into the sea, and Jehovah brought back the waters of the sea upon them; but the children of Israel walked on dry land in the midst of the sea.
- 20 And Miriam the prophetess, the sister of Aaron, took a timbrel in her hand; and all the women went out after her with timbrels and with dances.
- 21 And Miriam answered them, Sing ye to Jehovah, for he hath triumphed gloriously; The horse and his rider hath he thrown into the sea.

f- The Song of Moses and Israel	vs. 15:1-21
1) A New Revelation of GOD.	vs. 2
2) The LORD is a Man of War.	vs. 3
3) Praise in retrospect. The LORD will avenge His enemies.	vs. 1-13
4) Praise in prospect	vs. 14-19
The Lord will cause the inhabitants of Canaan to fear.	
The Lord will plant Israel in Canaan.	

---

Because of length of text, Ch. 15 (Cont.) & 16 are backed up.

### Exodus 15. (Cont.)

- 22 ¶ And Moses led Israel onward from the Red Sea, and they went out into the wilderness of Shur; and they went three days in the wilderness, and found no water.
- 23 And when they came to Marah, they could not drink of the waters of Marah, for they were bitter: therefore the name of it was called Marah.
- 24 And the people murmured against Moses, saying, What shall we drink?
- 25 And he cried unto Jehovah; And Jehovah showed him a tree, and he cast it into the waters, and the waters were made sweet. There he made for them a statute and an ordinance, and there he proved them;
- 26 and he said, If thou wilt diligently hearken to the voice of Jehovah thy God, and wilt do that which is right in his eyes, and wilt give ear to his commandments, and keep all his statutes, I will put none of the diseases upon thee, which I have put upon the Egyptians: for I am Jehovah that healeth thee.
- 27 And they came to Elim, where were twelve springs of water, and threescore and ten palm-trees: and they encamped there by the waters.

### Exodus 16.

- 1 ¶ And they took their journey from Elim, and all the congregation of the children of Israel came unto the wilderness of Sin, which is between Elim and Sinai, on the fifteenth day of the second month after their departing out of the land of Egypt.
- 2 And the whole congregation of the children of Israel murmured against Moses and against Aaron in the wilderness:
- 3 and the children of Israel said unto them, Would that we had died by the hand of Jehovah in the land of Egypt, when we sat by the flesh-pots, when we did eat bread to the full; for ye have brought us forth into this wilderness, to kill this whole assembly with hunger.
- 4 Then said Jehovah unto Moses, Behold, I will rain bread from heaven for you; and the people shall go out and gather a day's portion every day, that I may prove them, whether they will walk in my law, or not.
- 5 And it shall come to pass on the sixth day, that they shall prepare that which they bring in, and it shall be twice as much as they gather daily.
- 6 And Moses and Aaron said unto all the children of Israel, At even, then ye shall know that Jehovah hath brought you out from the land of Egypt;

- 7 and in the morning, then ye shall see the glory of Jehovah; for that he heareth your murmurings against Jehovah: and what are we, that ye murmur against us?
- 8 And Moses said, This shall be, when Jehovah shall give you in the evening flesh to eat, and in the morning bread to the full; for that Jehovah heareth your murmurings which ye murmur against him: and what are we? your murmurings are not against us, but against Jehovah.
- 9 And Moses said unto Aaron, Say unto all the congregation of the children of Israel, Come near before Jehovah; for he hath heard your murmurings.
- 10 And it came to pass, as Aaron spake unto the whole congregation of the children of Israel, that they looked toward the wilderness, and, behold, the glory of Jehovah appeared in the cloud.
- 11 And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 12 I have heard the murmurings of the children of Israel: speak unto them, saying, At even ye shall eat flesh, and in the morning ye shall be filled with bread; and ye shall know that I am Jehovah your God.
- 13 ¶ And it came to pass at even, that the quails came up, and covered the camp: and in the morning the dew lay round about the camp.
- 14 And when the dew that lay was gone up, behold, upon the face of the wilderness a small round thing, small as the hoar-frost on the ground.
- 15 And when the children of Israel saw it, they said one to another, What is it? for they knew not what it was. And Moses said unto them, It is the bread which Jehovah hath given you to eat.
- 16 This is the thing which Jehovah hath commanded. Gather ye of it every man according to his eating; an omer a head, according to the number of your persons, shall ye take it, every man for them that are in his tent.
- 17 And the children of Israel did so, and gathered some more, some less.
- 18 And when they measured it with an omer, he that gathered much had nothing over, and he that gathered little had no lack; they gathered every man according to his eating.
- 19 And Moses said unto them, Let no man leave of it till the morning.
- 20 Notwithstanding they hearkened not unto Moses; but some of them left of it until the morning, and it bred worms, and became foul: and Moses was wroth with them.
- 21 And they gathered it morning by morning, every man according to his eating: and when the sun waxed hot, it melted.
- 22 ¶ And it came to pass, that on the sixth day they gathered twice as much bread, two omers for each one: and all the rulers of the congregation came and told Moses.
- 23 And he said unto them, This is that which Jehovah hath spoken, To-morrow is a solemn rest, a holy sabbath unto Jehovah: bake that which ye will bake, and boil that which ye will boil; and all that remaineth over lay up for you to be kept until the morning.
- 24 And they laid it up till the morning, as Moses bade: and it did not become foul, neither was there any worm therein.
- 25 And Moses said, Eat that to-day; for to-day is a sabbath unto Jehovah: to-day ye shall not find it in the field.
- 26 Six days ye shall gather it; but on the seventh day is the sabbath, in it there shall be none.
- 27 And it came to pass on the seventh day, that there went out some of the people to gather, and they found none.
- 28 And Jehovah said unto Moses, How long refuse ye to keep my commandments and my laws?
- 29 See, for that Jehovah hath given you the sabbath, therefore he giveth you on the sixth day the bread of two days; abide ye every man in his place, let no man go out of his place on the seventh day.
- 30 So the people rested on the seventh day.
- 31 And the house of Israel called the name thereof Manna: and it was like coriander seed, white; and the taste of it was like wafers made with honey.
- 32 ¶ And Moses said, This is the thing which Jehovah hath commanded, Let an omerful of it be kept throughout your generations, that they may see the bread wherewith I fed you in the wilderness, when I brought you forth from the land of Egypt.
- 33 And Moses said unto Aaron, Take a pot, and put an omerful of manna therein, and lay it up before Jehovah, to be kept throughout your generations.
- 34 As Jehovah commanded Moses, so Aaron laid it up before the Testimony, to be kept.
- 35 And the children of Israel did eat the manna forty years, until they came to a land inhabited; they did eat the manna, until they came unto the borders of the land of Canaan.
- 36 Now an omer is the tenth part of an ephah.

C- Israel's journey from Red Sea to Sinai.

(15.-18.)

1- The purpose of the Sinai route.

2- At Marah--tested by thirst. Ref. 1 Pe 2:4. Bitter water made sweet.

vs. 15:22-27

a- Murmuring brings a symbolic lesson. "If the LORD is near - Blessing!"

b- The blessing of obedience. "Free from disease" Ref. "None Of These Diseases", S. I. M.D. McMillen.

3- In the Wilderness of Sin--tested by hunger,

(16.)

a - The murmuring. "They remembered the 'fleshpots' of Egypt." They blamed Moses!

b - The provision of manna. Continued for 40 years. Manna and the Sabbath were a test of obedience. vs. 4

c - The institution of the Sabbath

vs. 23-36

d - Note the size of an Omer.

vs. 36

**Exodus 17.**

- 1 ¶ And all the congregation of the children of Israel journeyed from the wilderness of Sin, by their journeys, according to the commandment of Jehovah, and encamped in Rephidim: and there was no water for the people to drink.
- 2 Wherefore the people strove with Moses, and said, Give us water that we may drink. And Moses said unto them, Why strive ye with me? Wherefore do ye tempt Jehovah?
- 3 And the people thirsted there for water; and the people murmured against Moses, and said, Wherefore hast thou brought us up out of Egypt, to kill us and our children and our cattle with thirst?
- 4 And Moses cried unto Jehovah, saying, What shall I do unto this people? They are almost ready to stone me.
- 5 And Jehovah said unto Moses, Pass on before the people, and take with thee of the elders of Israel; and thy rod, wherewith thou smotest the river, take in thy hand, and go.
- 6 Behold, I will stand before thee there upon the rock in Horeb; and thou shalt smite the rock, and there shall come water out of it, that the people may drink. And Moses did so in the sight of the elders of Israel.
- 7 And he called the name of the place Massah, and Meribah, because of the striving of the children of Israel, and because they tempted Jehovah, saying, Is Jehovah among us, or not?
- 8 ¶ Then came Amalek, and fought with Israel in Rephidim.
- 9 And Moses said unto Joshua, Choose us out men, and go out, fight with Amalek: to-morrow I will stand on the top of the hill with the rod of God in my hand.
- 10 So Joshua did as Moses had said to him, and fought with Amalek: and Moses, Aaron, and Hur went up to the top of the hill.
- 11 And it came to pass, when Moses held up his hand, that Israel prevailed; and when he let down his hand, Amalek prevailed.
- 12 But Moses' hands were heavy; and they took a stone, and put it under him, and he sat thereon; and Aaron and Hur stayed up his hands, the one on the one side, and the other on the other side; And his hands were steady until the going down of the sun.
- 13 And Joshua discomfited Amalek and his people with the edge of the sword.
- 14 And Jehovah said unto Moses, Write this for a memorial in a book, and rehearse it in the ears of Joshua: that I will utterly blot out the remembrance of Amalek from under heaven.
- 15 And Moses built an altar, and called the name of it Jehovah-nissi;
- 16 and he said, Jehovah hath sworn: Jehovah will have war with Amalek from generation to generation.

## 4- At Rephidim--Israel tested by thirst and the Amalekites. (17.)

a- The rock smitten vs. 1-7

1) The Belligerence of the people.

2) The impossible provision of water.

b- The Amalekites smitten. Esau's descendents - first battle-first mention of Joshua. vs. 8-16

1) God's pattern of victory. Note His title - Jehovah-nissi: Jehovah our banner. vs. 15

2) Note Jethro's conversion and worship vs. 9-12

3) Note Jehovah's command to write. vs. 14

**Exodus 18.**

- 1 ¶ Now Jethro, the priest of Midian, Moses' father-in-law, heard of all that God had done for Moses, and for Israel his people, how that Jehovah had brought Israel out of Egypt.
- 2 And Jethro, Moses' father-in-law, took Zipporah, Moses' wife, after he had sent her away,
- 3 and her two sons; of whom the name of the one was Gershom; for he said, I have been a sojourner in a foreign land:
- 4 and the name of the other was Eliezer; for he said, The God of my father was my help, and delivered me from the sword of Pharaoh.
- 5 And Jethro, Moses' father-in-law, came with his sons and his wife unto Moses into the wilderness where he was encamped, at the mount of God:
- 6 and he said unto Moses, I, thy father-in-law Jethro, am come unto thee, and thy wife, and her two sons with her.
- 7 ¶ And Moses went out to meet his father-in-law, and did obeisance, and kissed him; and they asked each other of their welfare; and they came into the tent.
- 8 And Moses told his father-in-law all that Jehovah had done unto Pharaoh and to the Egyptians for Israel's sake, all the travail that had come upon them by the way, and how Jehovah delivered them.
- 9 And Jethro rejoiced for all the goodness which Jehovah had done to Israel, in that he had delivered them out of the hand of the Egyptians.
- 10 And Jethro said, Blessed be Jehovah, who hath delivered you out of the hand of the Egyptians, and out of the hand of Pharaoh; who hath delivered the people from under the hand of the Egyptians.
- 11 Now I know that Jehovah is greater than all gods; yea, in the thing wherein they dealt proudly against them.
- 12 And Jethro, Moses' father-in-law, took a burnt-offering and sacrifices for God: and Aaron came, and all the elders of Israel, to eat bread with Moses' father-in-law before God.
- 13 ¶ And it came to pass on the morrow, that Moses sat to judge the people: and the people stood about Moses from the morning unto the evening.
- 14 And when Moses' father-in-law saw all that he did to the people, he said, What is this thing that thou doest to the people? why sittest thou thyself alone, and all the people stand about thee from morning unto even?
- 15 And Moses said unto his father-in-law, Because the people come unto me to inquire of God:
- 16 when they have a matter, they come unto me; and I judge between a man and his neighbor, and I make them know the statutes of God, and his laws.
- 17 And Moses' father-in-law said unto him, The thing that thou doest is not good.
- 18 Thou wilt surely wear away, both thou, and this people that is with thee: for the thing is too heavy for thee; thou art not able to perform it thyself alone.
- 19 Hearken now unto my voice, I will give thee counsel, and God be with thee: be thou for the people to Godward, and bring thou the causes unto God:
- 20 and thou shalt teach them the statutes and the laws, and shalt show them the way wherein they must walk, and the work that they must do.
- 21 Moreover thou shalt provide out of all the people able men, such as fear God, men of truth, hating unjust gain; and place such over them, to be rulers of thousands, rulers of hundreds, rulers of fifties, and rulers of tens:
- 22 and let them judge the people at all seasons: and it shall be, that every great matter they shall bring unto thee, but every small matter they shall judge themselves: so shall it be easier for thyself, and they shall bear the burden with thee.
- 23 If thou shalt do this thing, and God command thee so, then thou shalt be able to endure, and all this people also shall go to their place in peace.
- 24 So Moses hearkened to the voice of his father-in-law, and did all that he had said.
- 25 And Moses chose able men out of all Israel, and made them heads over the people, rulers of thousands, rulers of hundreds, rulers of fifties, and rulers of tens.
- 26 And they judged the people at all seasons: the hard causes they brought unto Moses, but every small matter they judged themselves.
- 27 And Moses let his father-in-law depart; and he went his way into his own land.



## 5- At Sinai--the counsel of Jethro

(18.)

a- Moses rejoins his family. {Note: He had married one of Jethro's daughters and also had a wife from Ethiopia (Cush)<sup>a</sup>, who you'll see again in Num 12. NEC}

b- Jethro gives wise counsel

vs. 13-27

1) Organize. Into companies - 70 judges as overseers.

2) Teach. About God.

vs. 15

3) Delegate duties

vs. 21-26

4) Organize the 70 judges if the LORD agrees

vs. 23

c- Note Zipporah and 2 sons Gershom, and Eliezer. (18:2-5)

---

<sup>a</sup> {From JOSEPHUS Book II Chapter X

"The place (Saba – which Cambyses afterwards named Meroe after the name of his own sister) was to be besieged with very great difficulty, since it was both encompassed by the Nile quite round, and the other rivers, Astapus and Astaboras, made it a very difficult thing for such as attempted to pass over them; for the city was situate in a retired place, and was inhabited after the manner of an island, being encompassed with a strong wall, and having the rivers to guard them from their enemies, and having great ramparts between the wall and the rivers, insomuch, that when the waters come with the greatest violence it can never be drowned; which ramparts make it next to impossible for even such as are gotten over the rivers to take the city. However, while Moses was uneasy at the army's lying idle, (for the enemies durst not come to battle,) this accident happened :- Tharbis was the daughter of the king of the Ethiopians: she happened to see Moses as he led the army near the walls, and fought with great courage; and admiring the subtlety of his undertakings, and believing him to be the author of the Egyptians' success, when they had before despaired of recovering their liberty, and to be the occasion of the great danger the Ethiopians were in, when they had before boasted of their great achievements, she fell deeply in love with him; and upon the prevalency of that passion, sent to him the most faithful of all her servants to discourse with him about their marriage. He thereupon accepted the offer, on condition she would procure the delivering up of the city; and gave her the assurance of an oath to take her to his wife; and that when he had once taken possession of the city, he would not break his oath to her. No sooner was the agreement made, but it took effect immediately; and when Moses had cut off the Ethiopians, he gave thanks to God, and consummated his marriage, and led the Egyptians back to their own land." NEC}

**Exodus 19.**

- 1 ¶ In the third month after the children of Israel were gone forth out of the land of Egypt, the same day came they into the wilderness of Sinai.
- 2 And when they were departed from Rephidim, and were come to the wilderness of Sinai, they encamped in the wilderness; and there Israel encamped before the mount.
- 3 And Moses went up unto God, and Jehovah called unto him out of the mountain, saying, Thus shalt thou say to the house of Jacob, and tell the children of Israel:
- 4 Ye have seen what I did unto the Egyptians, and how I bare you on eagles' wings, and brought you unto myself.
- 5 Now therefore, if ye will obey my voice indeed, and keep my covenant, then ye shall be mine own possession from among all peoples: for all the earth is mine:
- 6 and ye shall be unto me a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation. These are the words which thou shalt speak unto the children of Israel.
- 7 And Moses came and called for the elders of the people, and set before them all these words which Jehovah commanded him.
- 8 And all the people answered together, and said, All that Jehovah hath spoken we will do. And Moses reported the words of the people unto Jehovah.
- 9 ¶ And Jehovah said unto Moses, Lo, I come unto thee in a thick cloud, that the people may hear when I speak with thee, and may also believe thee for ever. And Moses told the words of the people unto Jehovah.
- 10 And Jehovah said unto Moses, Go unto the people, and sanctify them to-day and to-morrow, and let them wash their garments,
- 11 and be ready against the third day; for the third day Jehovah will come down in the sight of all the people upon mount Sinai.
- 12 And thou shalt set bounds unto the people round about, saying, Take heed to yourselves, that ye go not up into the mount, or touch the border of it: whosoever toucheth the mount shall be surely put to death:
- 13 no hand shall touch him, but he shall surely be stoned, or shot through; whether it be beast or man, he shall not live: when the trumpet soundeth long, they shall come up to the mount.
- 14 And Moses went down from the mount unto the people, and sanctified the people; and they washed their garments.
- 15 And he said unto the people, Be ready against the third day: come not near a woman.
- 16 ¶ And it came to pass on the third day, when it was morning, that there were thunders and lightnings, and a thick cloud upon the mount, and the voice of a trumpet exceeding loud; and all the people that were in the camp trembled.
- 17 And Moses brought forth the people out of the camp to meet God; and they stood at the nether part of the mount.
- 18 And mount Sinai, the whole of it, smoked, because Jehovah descended upon it in fire; and the smoke thereof ascended as the smoke of a furnace, and the whole mount quaked greatly.
- 19 And when the voice of the trumpet waxed louder and louder, Moses spake, and God answered him by a voice.
- 20 And Jehovah came down upon mount Sinai, to the top of the mount: and Jehovah called Moses to the top of the mount; and Moses went up.
- 21 And Jehovah said unto Moses, Go down, charge the people, lest they break through unto Jehovah to gaze, and many of them perish.
- 22 And let the priests also, that come near to Jehovah, sanctify themselves, lest Jehovah break forth upon them.
- 23 And Moses said unto Jehovah, The people cannot come up to mount Sinai: for thou didst charge us, saying, Set bounds about the mount, and sanctify it.
- 24 And Jehovah said unto him, Go, get thee down; and thou shalt come up, thou, and Aaron with thee: but let not the priests and the people break through to come up unto Jehovah, lest he break forth upon them.
- 25 So Moses went down unto the people, and told them.

II. The Giving of the Law (God's holiness revealed).

(19.-24.)

A- The significance of the law.

## 1- For Israel at Sinai

- a- Revealed basic principles of God's will for man.
- b- Constituted basis for covenant relations between God and Israel. This would determine national and personal blessing.

B- The covenant proposed.

(19.)

## 1- The initial proposal

vs. 1-8

- a- deliverance recalled. God has shown what He can do.
- b- Present obedience required. "Obedience determines blessing."
- c- Future blessing promised. To be a treasure - "A Kingdom of Priests." vs. 5-6

## 2- The response by Israel

vs. 9-15

- a- Cleansing. Sanctified for meeting with Jehovah vs. 10-11
- b- Warning. Don't touch the mountain vs. 12-13  
Note the posts around the mountain from Cornuke's expedition to Saudi Arabia. Figure 01.
- c- Education. Learn new respect for Jehovah. Holiness as well as Mercy. vs. 7-8

## 3- The Lord's appearance on Mt. Sinai.

vs. 18-25

Note the terror of the Lord. vs. 16

**Exodus 20.**

- 1 ¶ And God spake all these words, saying,
- 2 I am Jehovah thy God, who brought thee out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage.
- 3 Thou shalt have no other gods before me.
- 4 Thou shalt not make unto thee a graven image, nor any likeness of any thing that is in heaven above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in the water under the earth:
- 5 thou shalt not bow down thyself unto them, nor serve them; for I Jehovah thy God am a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children, upon the third and upon the fourth generation of them that hate me,
- 6 and showing lovingkindness unto thousands of them that love me and keep my commandments.
- 7 Thou shalt not take the name of Jehovah thy God in vain; for Jehovah will not hold him guiltless that taketh his name in vain.
- 8 Remember the sabbath day, to keep it holy.
- 9 Six days shalt thou labor, and do all thy work;
- 10 but the seventh day is a sabbath unto Jehovah thy God: in it thou shalt not do any work, thou, nor thy son, nor thy daughter, thy man-servant, nor thy maid-servant, nor thy cattle, nor thy stranger that is within thy gates:
- 11 for in six days Jehovah made heaven and earth, the sea, and all that in them is, and rested the seventh day: wherefore Jehovah blessed the sabbath day, and hallowed it.
- 12 ¶ Honor thy father and thy mother, that thy days may be long in the land which Jehovah thy God giveth thee.
- 13 Thou shalt not kill.
- 14 Thou shalt not commit adultery.
- 15 Thou shalt not steal.
- 16 Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbor.
- 17 Thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's house, thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's wife, nor his man-servant, nor his maid-servant, nor his ox, nor his ass, nor anything that is thy neighbor's.
- 18 ¶ And all the people perceived the thunders, and the lightnings, and the voice of the trumpet, and the mountain smoking: and when the people saw it, they trembled, and stood afar off.
- 19 And they said unto Moses, Speak thou with us, and we will hear; but let not God speak with us, lest we die.
- 20 And Moses said unto the people, Fear not: for God is come to prove you, and that his fear may be before you, that ye sin not.
- 21 And the people stood afar off, and Moses drew near unto the thick darkness where God was.
- 22 ¶ And Jehovah said unto Moses, Thus thou shalt say unto the children of Israel, Ye yourselves have seen that I have talked with you from heaven.
- 23 Ye shall not make other gods with me; gods of silver, or gods of gold, ye shall not make unto you.
- 24 An altar of earth thou shalt make unto me, and shalt sacrifice thereon thy burnt-offerings, and thy peace-offerings, thy sheep, and thine oxen: in every place where I record my name I will come unto thee and I will bless thee.
- 25 And if thou make me an altar of stone, thou shalt not build it of hewn stones; for if thou lift up thy tool upon it, thou hast polluted it.
- 26 Neither shalt thou go up by steps unto mine altar, that thy nakedness be not uncovered thereon.

- C- The Commandments Given governing moral life). (20.)
- 1- Relations With GOD vs. 1-12
    - a- Thoughts. #1&#2 No Other Gods, No Graven Images
    - b- Words. #3 No Vain Use Of God's Name.  
Deeds. #4&#5 Keep The Sabbath Holy, Honor Parents –  
they stand in place of God, in the family unit.
  - 2- Relations with men vs. 13-17
    - a- Deeds. #6,#7, and #8 No Murder, No Adultery, No Thievery.
    - b- Words. #9 No Slander Of Your Neighbor.
    - c- Thoughts. #10 No Improper Desire Of Your Neighbor.
  - 3- The people's reaction and Moses' explanation. vs. 18-20
    - a- Developed a new reverence for God. vs. 18-20
    - b- Purpose of the Law: to instruct concerning Sin. See Gal 3:especially vs.24-26 vs. 20
  - 4- Moses' second council with the LORD. vs. 21-26
    - a - Warning of idolatry restated, - First to be broken! vs. 23
    - b - Warning of indecency. - All heathen religions are Immoral! vs. 26

**Exodus 21.**

- 1 ¶ Now these are the ordinances which thou shalt set before them.
- 2 If thou buy a Hebrew servant, six years he shall serve: and in the seventh he shall go out free for nothing.
- 3 If he come in by himself, he shall go out by himself: if he be married, then his wife shall go out with him.
- 4 If his master give him a wife, and she bear him sons or daughters; the wife and her children shall be her master's, and he shall go out by himself.
- 5 But if the servant shall plainly say, I love my master, my wife, and my children; I will not go out free:
- 6 then his master shall bring him unto God, and shall bring him to the door, or unto the door-post; and his master shall bore his ear through with an awl; and he shall serve him for ever.
- 7 And if a man sell his daughter to be a maid-servant, she shall not go out as the men-servants do.
- 8 If she please not her master, who hath espoused her to himself, then shall he let her be redeemed: to sell her unto a foreign people he shall have no power, seeing he hath dealt deceitfully with her.
- 9 And if he espouse her unto his son, he shall deal with her after the manner of daughters.
- 10 If he take him another wife; her food, her raiment, and her duty of marriage, shall he not diminish.
- 11 And if he do not these three things unto her, then shall she go out for nothing, without money.
- 12 ¶ He that smiteth a man, so that he dieth, shall surely be put to death.
- 13 And if a man lie not in wait, but God deliver him into his hand; then I will appoint thee a place whither he shall flee.
- 14 And if a man come presumptuously upon his neighbor, to slay him with guile; thou shalt take him from mine altar, that he may die.
- 15 And he that smiteth his father, or his mother, shall be surely put to death.
- 16 And he that stealeth a man, and selleth him, or if he be found in his hand, he shall surely be put to death.
- 17 And he that curseth his father or his mother, shall surely be put to death.
- 18 And if men contend, and one smite the other with a stone, or with his fist, and he die not, but keep his bed;
- 19 if he rise again, and walk abroad upon his staff, then shall he that smote him be quit: only he shall pay for the loss of his time, and shall cause him to be thoroughly healed.
- 20 And if a man smite his servant, or his maid, with a rod, and he die under his hand; he shall surely be punished.
- 21 Notwithstanding, if he continue a day or two, he shall not be punished: for he is his money.
- 22 ¶ And if men strive together, and hurt a woman with child, so that her fruit depart, and yet no harm follow; he shall be surely fined, according as the woman's husband shall lay upon him; and he shall pay as the judges determine.
- 23 But if any harm follow, then thou shalt give life for life,
- 24 eye for eye, tooth for tooth, hand for hand, foot for foot,
- 25 burning for burning, wound for wound, stripe for stripe.
- 26 And if a man smite the eye of his servant, or the eye of his maid, and destroy it; he shall let him go free for his eye's sake.
- 27 And if he smite out his man-servant's tooth, or his maid-servant's tooth; he shall let him go free for his tooth's sake.
- 28 And if an ox gore a man or a woman to death, the ox shall be surely stoned, and its flesh shall not be eaten; but the owner of the ox shall be quit.
- 29 But if the ox was wont to gore in time past, and it hath been testified to its owner, and he hath not kept it in, but it hath killed a man or a woman; the ox shall be stoned, and its owner also shall be put to death.
- 30 If there be laid on him a ransom, then he shall give for the redemption of his life whatsoever is laid upon him.
- 31 Whether it have gored a son, or have gored a daughter, according to this judgment shall it be done unto him.
- 32 If the ox gore a man-servant or a maid-servant, there shall be given unto their master thirty shekels of silver, and the ox shall be stoned.

D- The judgments given (governing social and civil life). (21. – 23.)

Slavery Regulated, not Abolished.

- 1- Concerning slavery vs. 21:1-11
  - a- Men servants vs. 1-6
  - b- Maid servants vs. 7-11
- 2- Concerning murder and personal injury vs. 12-36
  - a- The death penalty. For intentional killing, smiting parents, kidnapping vs. 12,14-16, 23, 29
  - b- The general principle. Proportionate Punishment - Life for Life, Restitution.

**Exodus 21. cont.**

- 33 And if a man shall open a pit, or if a man shall dig a pit and not cover it, and an ox or an ass fall therein,  
34 the owner of the pit shall make it good; he shall give money unto the owner thereof, and the dead beast shall be his.  
35 And if one man's ox hurt another's, so that it dieth, then they shall sell the live ox, and divide the price of it; and the dead also they shall divide.  
36 Or if it be known that the ox was wont to gore in time past, and its owner hath not kept it in; he shall surely pay ox for ox, and the dead beast shall be his own.

**Exodus 22.**

- 1 ¶ If a man shall steal an ox, or a sheep, and kill it, or sell it; he shall pay five oxen for an ox, and four sheep for a sheep.  
2 If the thief be found breaking in, and be smitten so that he dieth, there shall be no bloodguiltiness for him.  
3 If the sun be risen upon him, there shall be bloodguiltiness for him; he shall make restitution: if he have nothing, then he shall be sold for his theft.  
4 If the theft be found in his hand alive, whether it be ox, or ass, or sheep; he shall pay double.  
5 If a man shall cause a field or vineyard to be eaten, and shall let his beast loose, and it feed in another man's field; of the best of his own field, and of the best of his own vineyard, shall he make restitution.  
6 If fire break out, and catch in thorns, so that the shocks of grain, or the standing grain, or the field are consumed; he that kindled the fire shall surely make restitution.  
7 ¶ If a man shall deliver unto his neighbor money or stuff to keep, and it be stolen out of the man's house; if the thief be found, he shall pay double.  
8 If the thief be not found, then the master of the house shall come near unto God, to see whether he have not put his hand unto his neighbor's goods.  
9 For every matter of trespass, whether it be for ox, for ass, for sheep, for raiment, or for any manner of lost thing, whereof one saith, This is it, the cause of both parties shall come before God; he whom God shall condemn shall pay double unto his neighbor.  
10 If a man deliver unto his neighbor an ass, or an ox, or a sheep, or any beast, to keep; and it die, or be hurt, or driven away, no man seeing it:  
11 the oath of Jehovah shall be between them both, whether he hath not put his hand unto his neighbor's goods; and the owner thereof shall accept it, and he shall not make restitution.  
12 But if it be stolen from him, he shall make restitution unto the owner thereof.  
13 If it be torn in pieces, let him bring it for witness; he shall not make good that which was torn.  
14 And if a man borrow aught of his neighbor, and it be hurt, or die, the owner thereof not being with it, he shall surely make restitution.  
15 If the owner thereof be with it, he shall not make it good: if it be a hired thing, it came for its hire.



3- Concerning property rights and destruction.

(21:33.-22:15.)

Proportionate Restitution - Tooth for Tooth - to keep Sin from snowballing. The Sin of neglect is still Sin!

---

Because of length of text, Ch. 22 & 23 are backed up.

### Exodus 22. cont.

- 16 ¶ And if a man entice a virgin that is not betrothed, and lie with her, he shall surely pay a dowry for her to be his wife.
- 17 If her father utterly refuse to give her unto him, he shall pay money according to the dowry of virgins.
- 18 Thou shalt not suffer a sorceress to live.
- 19 Whosoever lieth with a beast shall surely be put to death.
- 20 He that sacrificeth unto any god, save unto Jehovah only, shall be utterly destroyed.
- 21 And a sojourner shalt thou not wrong, neither shalt thou oppress him: for ye were sojourners in the land of Egypt.
- 22 Ye shall not afflict any widow, or fatherless child.
- 23 If thou afflict them at all, and they cry at all unto me, I will surely hear their cry;
- 24 and my wrath shall wax hot, and I will kill you with the sword; and your wives shall be widows, and your children fatherless.
- 25 ¶ If thou lend money to any of my people with thee that is poor, thou shalt not be to him as a creditor; neither shall ye lay upon him interest.
- 26 If thou at all take thy neighbor's garment to pledge, thou shalt restore it unto him before the sun goeth down:
- 27 for that is his only covering, it is his garment for his skin: wherein shall he sleep? and it shall come to pass, when he crieth unto me, that I will hear; for I am gracious.
- 28 **Thou shalt not revile God, nor curse a ruler of thy people.**
- 29 Thou shalt not delay to offer of thy harvest, and of the outflow of thy presses. The first-born of thy sons shalt thou give unto me.
- 30 Likewise shalt thou do with thine oxen, and with thy sheep: seven days it shall be with its dam; on the eighth day thou shalt give it me.
- 31 And ye shall be holy men unto me: therefore ye shall not eat any flesh that is torn of beasts in the field; ye shall cast it to the dogs.

### Exodus 23.

- 1 ¶ Thou shalt not take up a false report: put not thy hand with the wicked to be an unrighteous witness.
- 2 Thou shalt not follow a multitude to do evil; neither shalt thou speak in a cause to turn aside after a multitude to wrest justice:
- 3 neither shalt thou favor a poor man in his cause.
- 4 If thou meet thine enemy's ox or his ass going astray, thou shalt surely bring it back to him again.
- 5 If thou see the ass of him that hateth thee lying under his burden, thou shalt forbear to leave him, thou shalt surely release it with him.
- 6 Thou shalt not wrest the justice due to thy poor in his cause.
- 7 Keep thee far from a false matter; and the innocent and righteous slay thou not: for I will not justify the wicked.

- 8 And thou shalt take no bribe: for a bribe blindeth them that have sight, and perverteth the words of the righteous.
- 9 And a sojourner shalt thou not oppress: for ye know the heart of a sojourner, seeing ye were sojourners in the land of Egypt.
- 10 ¶ And six years thou shalt sow thy land, and shalt gather in the increase thereof:
- 11 but the seventh year thou shalt let it rest and lie fallow, that the poor of thy people may eat: and what they leave the beast of the field shall eat. In like manner thou shalt deal with thy vineyard, and with thy oliveyard.
- 12 Six days thou shalt do thy work, and on the seventh day thou shalt rest; that thine ox and thine ass may have rest, and the son of thy handmaid, and the sojourner, may be refreshed.
- 13 And in all things that I have said unto you take ye heed: and make no mention of the name of other gods, neither let it be heard out of thy mouth.
- 14 Three times thou shalt keep a feast unto me in the year.
- 15 The feast of unleavened bread shalt thou keep: seven days thou shalt eat unleavened bread, as I commanded thee, at the time appointed in the month Abib (for in it thou camest out from Egypt); and none shall appear before me empty:
- 16 and the feast of harvest, the first-fruits of thy labors, which thou sowest in the field: and the feast of ingathering, at the end of the year, when thou gatherest in thy labors out of the field.
- 17 Three times in the year all thy males shall appear before the Lord Jehovah.
- 18 Thou shalt not offer the blood of my sacrifice with leavened bread; neither shall the fat of my feast remain all night until the morning.
- 19 The first of the first-fruits of thy ground thou shalt bring into the house of Jehovah thy God. Thou shalt not boil a kid in its mother's milk.
- 20 ¶ Behold, I send an angel before thee, to keep thee by the way, and to bring thee into the place which I have prepared.
- 21 Take ye heed before him, and hearken unto his voice; provoke him not; for he will not pardon your transgression: for my name is in him.
- 22 But if thou shalt indeed hearken unto his voice, and do all that I speak; then I will be an enemy unto thine enemies, and an adversary unto thine adversaries.
- 23 For mine angel shall go before thee, and bring thee in unto the Amorite, and the Hittite, and the Perizzite, and the Canaanite, the Hivite, and the Jebusite: and I will cut them off.
- 24 Thou shalt not bow down to their gods, nor serve them, nor do after their works; but thou shalt utterly overthrow them, and break in pieces their pillars.
- 25 And ye shall serve Jehovah your God, and he will bless thy bread, and thy water; and I will take sickness away from the midst of thee.
- 26 There shall none cast her young, nor be barren, in thy land: the number of thy days I will fulfil.
- 27 I will send my terror before thee, and will discomfit all the people to whom thou shalt come, and I will make all thine enemies turn their backs unto thee.
- 28 And I will send the hornet before thee, which shall drive out the Hivite, the Canaanite, and the Hittite, from before thee.
- 29 I will not drive them out from before thee in one year, lest the land become desolate, and the beasts of the field multiply against thee.
- 30 By little and little I will drive them out from before thee, until thou be increased, and inherit the land.
- 31 And I will set thy border from the Red Sea even unto the sea of the Philistines, and from the wilderness unto the River: for I will deliver the inhabitants of the land into your hand; and thou shalt drive them out before thee.
- 32 Thou shalt make no covenant with them, nor with their gods.
- 33 They shall not dwell in thy land, lest they make thee sin against me; for if thou serve their gods, it will surely be a snare unto thee.

- 4- Diverse laws for social relations (22:16.-23:9.)
  - To promote Justice, Benevolence, and Honor vs. 22:16-31
- 5- The law of the sabbatical year vs. 23:10-13
  - Sow 6 years, rest the land the 7<sup>th</sup>. Let the poor come in and get their fill & after the poor let the animals feed.
- 6- The law of the feasts vs. 14-19
  - a- The three annual feasts. See Lev 23
    - 1) Feast of Unleavened Bread. First Fruits, Week following the 14<sup>th</sup> of Abib-Nissan; Is Typical of The resurrection of Christ.
    - 2) Feast of Weeks - Pentecost. 50 days after First Fruits. (Sivan). Typical of the descent of the Holy Spirit.
    - 3) Feast of Tabernacles. Seven days, starting the 15<sup>th</sup> day of 7<sup>th</sup> month (Tishri-Ethanim). Typical of the future regathering of Israel.
  - b- The general requirements. (Gen. Moses & Lt. Gen Joshua?)
    - All Male Adults( ≥ 20 years), must appear. (Cont. on next page)
- 7— Final instructions on entering the land vs. 20-33
  - a- The secret of victory
    - i. Obedience will bring help from the LORD.
    - ii. The Lord will send hornets (the LORD's Air-Force) to drive them out. vs. 28
    - iii. This will be done gradually.
  - b- The danger of foreign alliances.
    - They will allow the introduction of foreign gods that will pervert the worship of the one true GOD.

**Exodus 24.**

- 1 ¶ And he said unto Moses, Come up unto Jehovah, thou, and Aaron, Nadab, and Abihu, and seventy of the elders of Israel; and worship ye afar off:
- 2 and Moses alone shall come near unto Jehovah; but they shall not come near; neither shall the people go up with him.
- 3 And Moses came and told the people all the words of Jehovah, and all the ordinances: and all the people answered with one voice, and said, All the words which Jehovah hath spoken will we do.
- 4 And Moses wrote all the words of Jehovah, and rose up early in the morning, and builded an altar under the mount, and twelve pillars, according to the twelve tribes of Israel.
- 5 And he sent young men of the children of Israel, who offered burnt-offerings, and sacrificed peace-offerings of oxen unto Jehovah.
- 6 And Moses took half of the blood, and put it in basins; and half of the blood he sprinkled on the altar.
- 7 And he took the book of the covenant, and read in the audience of the people: and they said, All that Jehovah hath spoken will we do, and be obedient.
- 8 And Moses took the blood, and sprinkled it on the people, and said, Behold the blood of the covenant, which Jehovah hath made with you concerning all these words.
- 9 ¶ Then went up Moses, and Aaron, Nadab, and Abihu, and seventy of the elders of Israel:
- 10 and they saw the God of Israel; and there was under his feet as it were a paved work of sapphire stone, and as it were the very heaven for clearness.
- 11 And upon the nobles of the children of Israel he laid not his hand: and they beheld God, and did eat and drink.
- 12 ¶ And Jehovah said unto Moses, Come up to me into the mount, and be there: and I will give thee the tables of stone, and the law and the commandment, which I have written, that thou mayest teach them.
- 13 And Moses rose up, and Joshua his minister: and Moses went up into the mount of God.
- 14 And he said unto the elders, Tarry ye here for us, until we come again unto you: and, behold, Aaron and Hur are with you; whosoever hath a cause, let him come near unto them.
- 15 And Moses went up into the mount, and the cloud covered the mount.
- 16 And the glory of Jehovah abode upon mount Sinai, and the cloud covered it six days: and the seventh day he called unto Moses out of the midst of the cloud.
- 17 And the appearance of the glory of Jehovah was like devouring fire on the top of the mount in the eyes of the children of Israel.
- 18 And Moses entered into the midst of the cloud, and went up into the mount: and Moses was in the mount forty days and forty nights.

- E- The covenant accepted. ( 24.)
- 1- Acceptance by the people. vs. 3
  - “Everything that the LORD has said, We Will Do!”
- 2- Ratification by blood. vs. 6-8

**Exodus 25.**

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 2 Speak unto the children of Israel, that they take for me an offering: of every man whose heart maketh him willing ye shall take my offering.
- 3 And this is the offering which ye shall take of them: gold, and silver, and brass,
- 4 and blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine linen, and goats' hair,
- 5 and rams' skins dyed red, and sealskins, and acacia wood,
- 6 oil for the light, spices for the anointing oil, and for the sweet incense,
- 7 onyx stones, and stones to be set, for the ephod, and for the breastplate.
- 8 And let them make me a sanctuary, that I may dwell among them.
- 9 According to all that I show thee, the pattern of the tabernacle, and the pattern of all the furniture thereof, even so shall ye make it.

III. The Building of the Tabernacle (God's way of fellowship).

(25.-40.)

A- Significance of the Tabernacle.

## 1- The historical lesson.

a- As a symbol: it was acknowledged by everyone at that time - It symbolized a way of approach to GOD.

b- As a Type: Would not be acknowledged until the appearance of the AntiType.

{Note Jo 1:14<sup>a</sup> He is our Tabernacle! NEC}

## 2- The typical lesson.

It typified Christ as the only approach to GOD. The furniture typified aspects of Christ's ministry.

B- The divine design given.

(25.-31.)

## 1- Initial instructions

vs. 25:1-9

a- God provides through willing hearts.

vs. 2

b- God promises to dwell among them.

vs. 8

<sup>a</sup> 4637 σκηνώω skenow skay-no'-w from 4636; v; TDNT-7:385,1040; {See TDNT 717}

AV-dwell 5; 5 {Mistranslated in the KJV. NEC} to Tabernacle.

**1) to fix one's tabernacle, have one's tabernacle, abide (or live) in a tabernacle (or tent), tabernacle**{Constative [Dana & Mantey, A Manual Grammar of the Greek New Testament, pg. 196] **AAI 3S**}~~2) to dwell~~

1. This word (more commonly skeneo) means "to live or camp in a tent" (or other dwelling), and, transitively, "to pitch or inhabit a tent."

2. In the NT the verb occurs in #Joh 1:14 and several times in Revelation, but never in the literal sense. #Re 7:15 **refers to God's permanent dwelling among the redeemed** {cf. #Re 21:3} in abiding and gracious presence. In #Re 13:6, since a tent obviously cannot dwell in a tent, **the verb suggests the abiding of God's name and presence.** The thought of permanence is also present in #Re 12:12. The redeemed dwell forever in heaven. In #Joh 1:14 the term implies that the earthly stay of the incarnate Logos is an impermanent one between his preexistence and postexistence as the exalted Lord. Yet this is not where the emphasis rests, for the term more specifically shows that what we have here is the presence of the eternal Word in time.

**Exodus 25. cont.**

- 10 ¶ And they shall make an ark of acacia wood: two cubits and a half shall be the length thereof, and a cubit and a half the breadth thereof, and a cubit and a half the height thereof.
- 11 And thou shalt overlay it with pure gold, within and without shalt thou overlay it, and shalt make upon it a crown of gold round about.
- 12 And thou shalt cast four rings of gold for it, and put them in the four feet thereof; and two rings shall be on the one side of it, and two rings on the other side of it.
- 13 And thou shalt make staves of acacia wood, and overlay them with gold.
- 14 And thou shalt put the staves into the rings on the sides of the ark, wherewith to bear the ark.
- 15 The staves shall be in the rings of the ark: they shall not be taken from it.
- 16 And thou shalt put into the ark the testimony which I shall give thee.
- 17 And thou shalt make a mercy-seat of pure gold: two cubits and a half shall be the length thereof, and a cubit and a half the breadth thereof.
- 18 And thou shalt make two cherubim of gold; of beaten work shalt thou make them, at the two ends of the mercy-seat.
- 19 And make one cherub at the one end, and one cherub at the other end: of one piece with the mercy-seat shall ye make the cherubim on the two ends thereof.
- 20 And the cherubim shall spread out their wings on high, covering the mercy-seat with their wings, with their faces one to another; toward the mercy-seat shall the faces of the cherubim be.
- 21 And thou shalt put the mercy-seat above upon the ark; and in the ark thou shalt put the testimony that I shall give thee.
- 22 And there I will meet with thee, and I will commune with thee from above the mercy-seat, from between the two cherubim which are upon the ark of the testimony, of all things which I will give thee in commandment unto the children of Israel.
- 23 ¶ And thou shalt make a table of acacia wood: two cubits shall be the length thereof, and a cubit the breadth thereof, and a cubit and a half the height thereof.
- 24 And thou shalt overlay it with pure gold, and make thereto a crown of gold round about.
- 25 And thou shalt make unto it a border of a handbreadth round about; and thou shalt make a golden crown to the border thereof round about.
- 26 And thou shalt make for it four rings of gold, and put the rings in the four corners that are on the four feet thereof.
- 27 Close by the border shall the rings be, for places for the staves to bear the table.
- 28 And thou shalt make the staves of acacia wood, and overlay them with gold, that the table may be borne with them.
- 29 And thou shalt make the dishes thereof, and the spoons thereof, and the flagons thereof, and the bowls thereof, wherewith to pour out: of pure gold shalt thou make them.
- 30 And thou shalt set upon the table showbread before me alway.
- 31 ¶ And thou shalt make a candlestick of pure gold: of beaten work shall the candlestick be made, even its base, and its shaft; its cups, its knops, and its flowers, shall be of one piece with it:
- 32 and there shall be six branches going out of the sides thereof; three branches of the candlestick out of the one side thereof, and three branches of the candlestick out of the other side thereof:
- 33 three cups made like almond-blossoms in one branch, a knop and a flower; and three cups made like almond-blossoms in the other branch, a knop and a flower: so for the six branches going out of the candlestick:
- 34 and in the candlestick four cups made like almond-blossoms, the knops thereof, and the flowers thereof;
- 35 and a knop under two branches of one piece with it, and a knop under two branches of one piece with it, and a knop under two branches of one piece with it, for the six branches going out of the candlestick.



- 36 Their knops and their branches shall be of one piece with it; the whole of it one beaten work of pure gold.
- 37 And thou shalt make the lamps thereof, seven: and they shall light the lamps thereof, to give light over against it.
- 38 And the snuffers thereof, and the snuffdishes thereof, shall be of pure gold.
- 39 Of a talent of pure gold shall it be made, with all these vessels.
- 40 And see that thou make them after their pattern, which hath been showed thee in the mount.
- 

## 2- The ark of the covenant

vs. 25:10-22

## a - It's size (10). It's description includes it's size:

"two cubits and a half shall be the length thereof, and a cubit and a half the breadth thereof, and a cubit and a half the height thereof." Approx. 45" x 27" x 27".

## b - Materials.

Acacia Wood overlaid with gold.

vs. 10-11

## c - Historic purpose.

- 1) Contains: Table of the Law - symbolizes Judgment.
- 2) Contains: (on top) The Mercy Seat - symbolizes Grace.

## d - Symbolic purpose.

- 1) Provides a meeting place with God.
- 2) Symbolizes the presence of God.

## 3- The Table for Shew bread

vs. 23-30

## a- It's size.

vs. 23

"two cubits shall be the length thereof, and a cubit the breadth thereof, and a cubit and a half the height thereof." Approx. 36" x 27" x 27" (includes the 4 legs of acacia wood).

## b- Materials.

Acacia Wood overlaid with gold.

vs. 23-24

## c- Symbolic purpose.

Feasting on the Lord.

## 4- The Golden Lampstand

vs. 31-40

## a- The materials.

Solid Gold weighing 1 talent - Approx. 60 lbs. 7 lamps. Note Rev 1:12, 13, 20.

vs. 36-37

## b- Historic purpose.

Gives light in the Holy Place.

## c- Symbolic purpose.

The light of God's presence. Actually, the light of God's presence<sup>8</sup> lighted the Holiest of All - the Holy of Holies.

Table 01. A Composite Look At Artifacts discovered by Dr. Bob Cornuke, The “Real Indiana Jones”.

Object Name	Location Found	Purpose Of Object	Bible References	References In Cornukes's Book	Witnesses Of The Arc In Axum Ethiopia.	Where found in Tab./Te.
Silver Trumpets	Axum, The Church of St. Mary of Zion.	To assemble, priests, people, a call to war, announcement of The Day of Atonement (The 10 <sup>th</sup> Day of the 7 <sup>th</sup> month, in the year of the Jubile (every 50 years)	Ex 19:19, Ex 20:18, Le 25:9, Nu 10:4, Jos 6:5, Jos 6:20... 2 Chr 13:12	pp. 54-65, 95; Pictures 11, 11a.	The two witnesses were (1) the Atang-the Guardian- keeper of the ark, Abba Mekonen, age 69. He is quoted as saying when asked; what does the arc look like? He responded. "As it is described in the Bible, so it is. King Solomon placed the ark in the Holy of Holies of the temple that he built in Jerusalem. From there it was removed and brought to Ethiopia." And (2), An elderly priest who	Kept by the priests
Laver Basin of Bronze and stand of bronze	Island of Tanos. (For priests to wash hands and feet before entering the holy place. Note: in the desert, it must have been small to conserve water.)	#Ex 30:17-21; #Ex 38:8 The bronze for the "Laver of brass" and its foot was supplied from the bronze mirrors of the women who voluntarily gave up these articles of luxury. Bronze mirrors were much used by the ancient Egyptians. No hint is given as to the form of the laver. This had to be carried through the desert wanderings and must have been small. The brazen sea and the ten lavers that served the same purpose in the temple of Solomon, were elaborately worked in artistic designs and are minutely described. (#1Ki 7:23-29) The sea was of immense size. The ten lavers were round and 1.5 cubits across.	Ex 30:18, Ex 30:28, Ex 31:9, Ex 35:16, Ex 38:8, Ex 39:39, Ex 40:7, Ex 40:11, Ex 40:30, Le 8:11, 1Ki 7:30, 1Ki 7:38, 2Ki 16:17....	pp. 94-96, 123; Pictures 28, 28a.	was once charged with indoctrinating new guardians into the details of Ark and chapel maintenance in his heyday; and who held an esteemed position in the monastery. His Picture is number 14, in Cornuke's Book. He is quoted as saying: "my body feels like it is dead". Describing the effects of gazing on the Arc and Mercy Seat.	Found between the door of the Holy Place and the altar of sacrifice.
The Almond Flower	Island of Tanos. (Made of metal to resemble Aaron's rod that budded.)	Ex 7:12; Num 17:20 The Name Jabal al-Lawz (Arabic: جبل اللوز) is the tallest mountain in that part of S.A., 2580 meters above sea level, is thought by many of us (Not those who provide tours to the Egyptian Mt. Sinai.) to be the Biblical Sinai as Ga 1:17, Ga 4:25, so establishes!	Ex 25:33-34, 37:19-20; Num 17:8; Heb 9:4	pp. 96		Aaron's rod that budded kept in Arc of Cov.
The Meat Fork	Island of Tanos	Made of (unk) metal.	Ex 27:3, 38:3; Num 4:14; 2 Chr 4:16.	pp. 95-96, 123; Picture 29.		At Altar of burnt offering
The Ark Of The Covenant And Mercy Seat	Axum, Ethiopia.	Only the two witnesses that are mentioned have reported to have seen it (that are still alive).	Ex 25:10, Ex 25:22, Ex 26:33, Ex 26:34, Ex 30:6, Ex 30:26, Ex 31:7, Ex 37:1, The builder, Bezaleel. Ex 39:35, Ex 40:3, Ex 40:5, Ex 40:21, Nu 4:5 When Camp moves. Nu 7:89, Nu 10:33, Nu 14:44, etc.	pp. 112-117.		In the Holy of Holies.

## Exodus 26.

- 1 ¶ Moreover thou shalt make the tabernacle with ten curtains; of fine twined linen, and blue, and purple, and scarlet, with cherubim the work of the skilful workman shalt thou make them.
- 2 The length of each curtain shall be eight and twenty cubits, and the breadth of each curtain four cubits: all the curtains shall have one measure.
- 3 Five curtains shall be coupled together one to another; and the other five curtains shall be coupled one to another.
- 4 And thou shalt make loops of blue upon the edge of the one curtain from the selvedge in the coupling; and likewise shalt thou make in the edge of the curtain that is outmost in the second coupling.
- 5 Fifty loops shalt thou make in the one curtain, and fifty loops shalt thou make in the edge of the curtain that is in the second coupling; the loops shall be opposite one to another.
- 6 And thou shalt make fifty clasps of gold, and couple the curtains one to another with the clasps: and the tabernacle shall be one whole.
- 7 ¶ And thou shalt make curtains of goats' hair for a tent over the tabernacle: eleven curtains shalt thou make them.
- 8 The length of each curtain shall be thirty cubits, and the breadth of each curtain four cubits: the eleven curtains shall have one measure.
- 9 And thou shalt couple five curtains by themselves, and six curtains by themselves, and shalt double over the sixth curtain in the forefront of the tent.
- 10 And thou shalt make fifty loops on the edge of the one curtain that is outmost in the coupling, and fifty loops upon the edge of the curtain which is outmost in the second coupling.
- 11 And thou shalt make fifty clasps of brass, and put the clasps into the loops, and couple the tent together, that it may be one.
- 12 And the overhanging part that remaineth of the curtains of the tent, the half curtain that remaineth, shall hang over the back of the tabernacle.
- 13 And the cubit on the one side, and the cubit on the other side, of that which remaineth in the length of the curtains of the tent, shall hang over the sides of the tabernacle on this side and on that side, to cover it.
- 14 And thou shalt make a covering for the tent of rams' skins dyed red, and a covering of sealskins above.
- 15 ¶ And thou shalt make the boards for the tabernacle of acacia wood, standing up.

- 16 Ten cubits shall be the length of a board, and a cubit and a half the breadth of each board.
- 17 Two tenons shall there be in each board, joined one to another: thus shalt thou make for all the boards of the tabernacle.
- 18 And thou shalt make the boards for the tabernacle, twenty boards for the south side southward.
- 19 And thou shalt make forty sockets of silver under the twenty boards; two sockets under one board for its two tenons, and two sockets under another board for its two tenons:
- 20 and for the second side of the tabernacle, on the north side, twenty boards,
- 21 and their forty sockets of silver; two sockets under one board, and two sockets under another board.
- 22 And for the hinder part of the tabernacle westward thou shalt make six boards.
- 23 And two boards shalt thou make for the corners of the tabernacle in the hinder part.
- 24 And they shall be double beneath, and in like manner they shall be entire unto the top thereof unto one ring: thus shall it be for them both; they shall be for the two corners.
- 25 And there shall be eight boards, and their sockets of silver, sixteen sockets; two sockets under one board, and two sockets under another board.
- 26 And thou shalt make bars of acacia wood; five for the boards of the one side of the tabernacle,
- 27 and five bars for the boards of the other side of the tabernacle, and five bars for the boards of the side of the tabernacle, for the hinder part westward.
- 28 And the middle bar in the midst of the boards shall pass through from end to end.
- 29 And thou shalt overlay the boards with gold, and make their rings of gold for places for the bars: and thou shalt overlay the bars with gold.
- 30 And thou shalt rear up the tabernacle according to the fashion thereof which hath been showed thee in the mount.
- 31 ¶ And thou shalt make a veil of blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine twined linen: with cherubim the work of the skilful workman shall it be made:
- 32 and thou shalt hang it upon four pillars of acacia overlaid with gold; their hooks shall be of gold, upon four sockets of silver.
- 33 And thou shalt hang up the veil under the clasps, and shalt bring in thither within the veil the ark of the testimony: and the veil shall separate unto you between the holy place and the most holy.
- 34 And thou shalt put the mercy-seat upon the ark of the testimony in the most holy place.
- 35 And thou shalt set the table without the veil, and the candlestick over against the table on the side of the tabernacle toward the south: and thou shalt put the table on the north side.
- 36 And thou shalt make a screen for the door of the Tent, of blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine twined linen, the work of the embroiderer.
- 37 And thou shalt make for the screen five pillars of acacia, and overlay them with gold; their hooks shall be of gold: and thou shalt cast five sockets of brass for them.
- 35 And thou shalt set the table without the veil, and the candlestick over against the table on the side of the tabernacle toward the south: and thou shalt put the table on the north side.
- 36 And thou shalt make a screen for the door of the Tent, of blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine twined linen, the work of the embroiderer.
- 37 And thou shalt make for the screen five pillars of acacia, and overlay them with gold; their hooks shall be of gold: and thou shalt cast five sockets of brass for them.

---

5- Structure of the Tabernacle itself

(26.)

- |    |                                       |           |
|----|---------------------------------------|-----------|
| a- | Curtains. Wall drapery.               | vs. 1-6   |
| b- | Coverings. The roof.                  | vs. 7-14  |
| c- | Boards and sockets.                   | vs. 15-30 |
| d- | The veils. The outer and inner veils. | vs. 31-37 |

**Exodus 27.**

- 1 ¶ And thou shalt make the altar of acacia wood, five cubits long, and five cubits broad; the altar shall be foursquare: and the height thereof shall be three cubits.
- 2 And thou shalt make the horns of it upon the four corners thereof; the horns thereof shall be of one piece with it: and thou shalt overlay it with brass.
- 3 And thou shalt make its pots to take away its ashes, and its shovels, and its basins, and its flesh-hooks, and its firepans: all the vessels thereof thou shalt make of brass.
- 4 And thou shalt make for it a grating of network of brass; and upon the net shalt thou make four brazen rings in the four corners thereof.
- 5 And thou shalt put it under the ledge round the altar beneath, that the net may reach halfway up the altar.
- 6 And thou shalt make staves for the altar, staves of acacia wood, and overlay them with brass.
- 7 And the staves thereof shall be put into the rings, and the staves shall be upon the two sides of the altar, in bearing it.
- 8 Hollow with planks shalt thou make it: as it hath been showed thee in the mount, so shall they make it.
- 9 ¶ And thou shalt make the court of the tabernacle: for the south side southward there shall be hangings for the court of fine twined linen a hundred cubits long for one side:
- 10 and the pillars thereof shall be twenty, and their sockets twenty, of brass; the hooks of the pillars and their fillets shall be of silver.
- 11 And likewise for the north side in length there shall be hangings a hundred cubits long, and the pillars thereof twenty, and their sockets twenty, of brass; the hooks of the pillars, and their fillets, of silver.
- 12 And for the breadth of the court on the west side shall be hangings of fifty cubits; their pillars ten, and their sockets ten.
- 13 And the breadth of the court on the east side eastward shall be fifty cubits.
- 14 The hangings for the one side of the gate shall be fifteen cubits; their pillars three, and their sockets three.
- 15 And for the other side shall be hangings of fifteen cubits; their pillars three, and their sockets three.
- 16 And for the gate of the court shall be a screen of twenty cubits, of blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine twined linen, the work of the embroiderer; their pillars four, and their sockets four.
- 17 All the pillars of the court round about shall be filleted with silver; their hooks of silver, and their sockets of brass.
- 18 The length of the court shall be a hundred cubits, and the breadth fifty every where, and the height five cubits, of fine twined linen, and their sockets of brass.
- 19 All the instruments of the tabernacle in all the service thereof, and all the pins thereof, and all the pins of the court, shall be of brass.
- 20 ¶ And thou shalt command the children of Israel, that they bring unto thee pure olive oil beaten for the light, to cause a lamp to burn continually.
- 21 In the tent of meeting, without the veil which is before the testimony, Aaron and his sons shall keep it in order from evening to morning before Jehovah: it shall be a statute for ever throughout their generations on the behalf of the children of Israel.

## 6- The Brazen Altar

vs. 27:1-8

- a- The materials.  
Acacia wood overlaid with Brass. Approx. 7½' x 7½' x 4½'.
- b- Historic purpose.  
To consume the offerings made to God.
- c- Symbolic purpose.  
Symbolized the death of a substitute for Sin!

7- The court

vs. 9-19

Gate on the East. Fence 7 ½' high. Wall including gate was Approx. 150' x 75'.  
See Fig.s 01-03.

8- The oil for the lamp

vs. 20-21

Pure olive oil - Symbolized the sacred covenant..

9- The final instructionl for the Tabernacle construction

(27.)

- a- The brazen altar vs. 1-8
- b- The court vs. 9-18
- c- The instruments of brass vs. 19
- d- The lamp in the Holy Place shall burn continually vs. 20
- e- The Holy Place shal be kept in order by Aaron and his son's vs. 21

**Exodus 28.**

- 1 ¶ And bring thou near unto thee Aaron thy brother, and his sons with him, from among the children of Israel, that he may minister unto me in the priest's office, even Aaron, Nadab and Abihu, Eleazar and Ithamar, Aaron's sons.
- 2 And thou shalt make holy garments for Aaron thy brother, for glory and for beauty.
- 3 And thou shalt speak unto all that are wise-hearted, whom I have filled with the spirit of wisdom, that they make Aaron's garments to sanctify him, that he may minister unto me in the priest's office.
- 4 And these are the garments which they shall make: a breastplate, and an ephod, and a robe, and a coat of checker work, a mitre, and a girdle: and they shall make holy garments for Aaron thy brother, and his sons, that he may minister unto me in the priest's office.
- 5 And they shall take the gold, and the blue, and the purple, and the scarlet, and the fine linen.
- 6 ¶ And they shall make the ephod of gold, of blue, and purple, scarlet, and fine twined linen, the work of the skilful workman.
- 7 It shall have two shoulder-pieces joined to the two ends thereof, that it may be joined together.
- 8 And the skilfully woven band, which is upon it, wherewith to gird it on, shall be like the work thereof and of the same piece; of gold, of blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine twined linen.
- 9 And thou shalt take two onyx stones, and grave on them the names of the children of Israel:
- 10 six of their names on the one stone, and the names of the six that remain on the other stone, according to their birth.
- 11 With the work of an engraver in stone, like the engravings of a signet, shalt thou engrave the two stones, according to the names of the children of Israel: thou shalt make them to be inclosed in settings of gold.
- 12 And thou shalt put the two stones upon the shoulder-pieces of the ephod, to be stones of memorial for the children of Israel: and Aaron shall bear their names before Jehovah upon his two shoulders for a memorial.
- 13 And thou shalt make settings of gold,
- 14 and two chains of pure gold; like cords shalt thou make them, of wreathen work: and thou shalt put the wreathen chains on the settings.
- 15 ¶ And thou shalt make a breastplate of judgment, the work of the skilful workman; like the work of the ephod thou shalt make it; of gold, of blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine twined linen, shalt thou make it.
- 16 Foursquare it shall be and double; a span shall be the length thereof, and a span the breadth thereof.
- 17 And thou shalt set in it settings of stones, four rows of stones: a row of sardius, topaz, and carbuncle shall be the first row;
- 18 and the second row an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond;
- 19 and the third row a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst;
- 20 and the fourth row a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper: they shall be inclosed in gold in their settings.
- 21 And the stones shall be according to the names of the children of Israel, twelve, according to their names; like the engravings of a signet, every one according to his name, they shall be for the twelve tribes.
- 22 And thou shalt make upon the breastplate chains like cords, of wreathen work of pure gold.
- 23 And thou shalt make upon the breastplate two rings of gold, and shalt put the two rings on the two ends of the breastplate.
- 24 And thou shalt put the two wreathen chains of gold in the two rings at the ends of the breastplate.
- 25 And the other two ends of the two wreathen chains thou shalt put on the two settings, and put them on the shoulder-pieces of the ephod in the forepart thereof.
- 26 And thou shalt make two rings of gold, and thou shalt put them upon the two ends of the breastplate, upon the edge thereof, which is toward the side of the ephod inward.
- 27 And thou shalt make two rings of gold, and shalt put them on the two shoulder-pieces of the ephod underneath, in the forepart thereof, close by the coupling thereof, above the skilfully woven band of the ephod.
- 28 And they shall bind the breastplate by the rings thereof unto the rings of the ephod with a lace of blue, that it may be upon the skilfully woven band of the ephod, and that the breastplate be not loosed from the ephod.
- 29 And Aaron shall bear the names of the children of Israel in the breastplate of judgment upon his heart, when he goeth in unto the holy place, for a memorial before Jehovah continually.
- 30 And thou shalt put in the breastplate of judgment the Urim and the Thummim; and they shall be upon Aaron's heart, when he goeth in before Jehovah: and Aaron shall bear the judgment of the children of Israel upon his heart before Jehovah continually.
- 31 ¶ And thou shalt make the robe of the ephod all of blue.
- 32 And it shall have a hole for the head in the midst thereof: it shall have a binding of woven work round about the hole of it, as it were the hole of a coat of mail, that it be not rent.

- 33 And upon the skirts of it thou shalt make pomegranates of blue, and of purple, and of scarlet, round about the skirts thereof; and bells of gold between them round about:
- 34 a golden bell and a pomegranate, a golden bell and a pomegranate, upon the skirts of the robe round about.
- 35 And it shall be upon Aaron to minister: and the sound thereof shall be heard when he goeth in unto the holy place before Jehovah, and when he cometh out, that he die not.
- 36 And thou shalt make a plate of pure gold, and grave upon it, like the engravings of a signet, HOLY TO JEHOVAH.
- 37 And thou shalt put it on a lace of blue, and it shall be upon the mitre; upon the forefront of the mitre it shall be.
- 38 And it shall be upon Aaron's forehead, and Aaron shall bear the iniquity of the holy things, which the children of Israel shall hallow in all their holy gifts; and it shall be always upon his forehead, that they may be accepted before Jehovah.
- 39 And thou shalt weave the coat in checker work of fine linen, and thou shalt make a mitre of fine linen, and thou shalt make a girdle, the work of the embroiderer.
- 40 ¶ And for Aaron's sons thou shalt make coats, and thou shalt make for them girdles, and head-tires shalt thou make for them, for glory and for beauty.
- 41 And thou shalt put them upon Aaron thy brother, and upon his sons with him, and shalt anoint them, and consecrate them, and sanctify them, that they may minister unto me in the priest's office.
- 42 And thou shalt make them linen breeches to cover the flesh of their nakedness; from the loins even unto the thighs they shall reach:
- 43 and they shall be upon Aaron, and upon his sons, when they go in unto the tent of meeting, or when they come near unto the altar to minister in the holy place; that they bear not iniquity, and die: it shall be a statute for ever unto him and unto his seed after him.

---

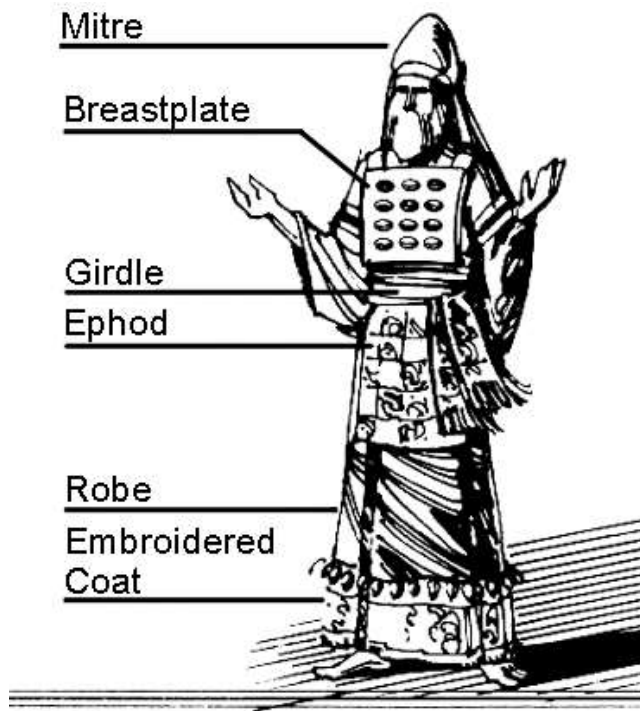
#### 10- The dress of the priests

(28.)

- |                                   |           |
|-----------------------------------|-----------|
| a. The Ephod                      | vs. 6-14  |
| A vest to carry the breastplate.  |           |
| b. The Breastplate                | vs. 15-30 |
| c. The robe under the Ephod       | vs. 31-39 |
| d. The crown or mitre             | vs. 36-38 |
| e. The ordinary priests' garments | vs. 39-43 |



**Figure 01. The High Priest In Holy of Holies Sprinkling Blood On The Mercy Seat.**



**Figure 02 The High Priest And His Garments.**



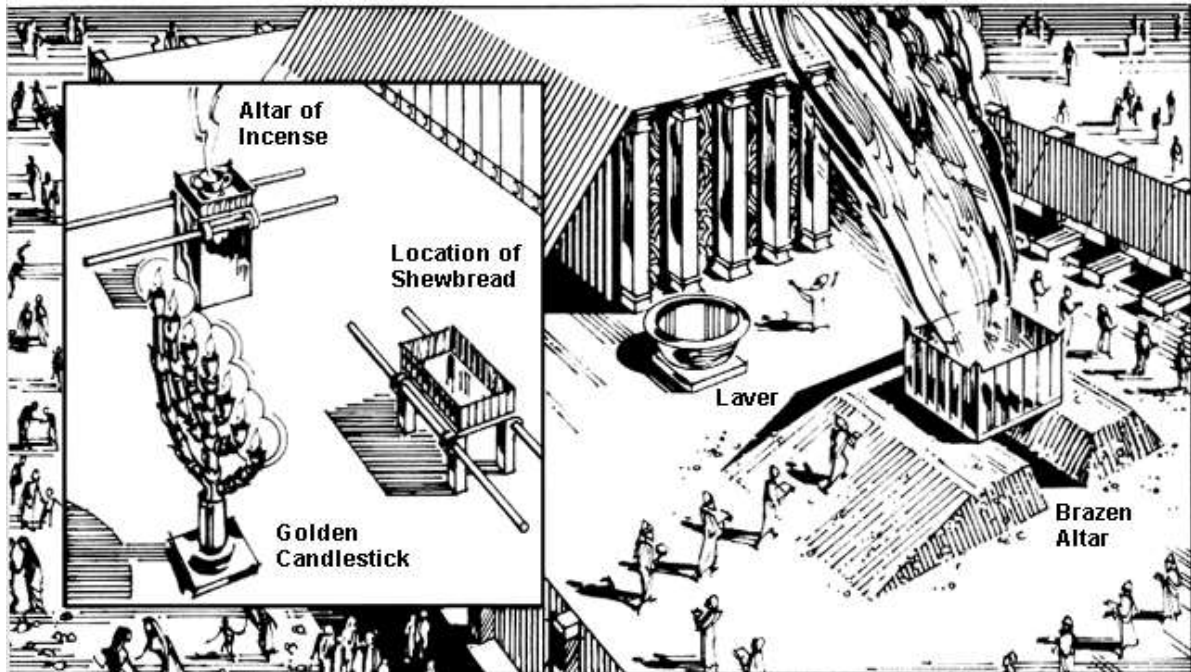


Figure 03. The furnishings of the Tabernacle And The Brazen Altar.

**Exodus 29.**

- 1 ¶ And this is the thing that thou shalt do unto them to hallow them, to minister unto me in the priest's office: take one young bullock and two rams without blemish,
- 2 and unleavened bread, and cakes unleavened mingled with oil, and wafers unleavened anointed with oil: of fine wheaten flour shalt thou make them.
- 3 And thou shalt put them into one basket, and bring them in the basket, with the bullock and the two rams.
- 4 And Aaron and his sons thou shalt bring unto the door of the tent of meeting, and shalt wash them with water.
- 5 And thou shalt take the garments, and put upon Aaron the coat, and the robe of the ephod, and the ephod, and the breastplate, and gird him with the skilfully woven band of the ephod;
- 6 and thou shalt set the mitre upon his head, and put the holy crown upon the mitre.
- 7 Then shalt thou take the anointing oil, and pour it upon his head, and anoint him.
- 8 And thou shalt bring his sons, and put coats upon them.
- 9 And thou shalt gird them with girdles, Aaron and his sons, and bind head-tires on them: and they shall have the priesthood by a perpetual statute: and thou shalt consecrate Aaron and his sons.
- 10 And thou shalt bring the bullock before the tent of meeting: and Aaron and his sons shall lay their hands upon the head of the bullock.
- 11 And thou shalt kill the bullock before Jehovah, at the door of the tent of meeting.
- 12 And thou shalt take of the blood of the bullock, and put it upon the horns of the altar with thy finger; and thou shalt pour out all the blood at the base of the altar.
- 13 And thou shalt take all the fat that covereth the inwards, and the caul upon the liver, and the two kidneys, and the fat that is upon them, and burn them upon the altar.
- 14 But the flesh of the bullock, and its skin, and its dung, shalt thou burn with fire without the camp: it is a sin-offering.
- 15 Thou shalt also take the one ram; and Aaron and his sons shall lay their hands upon the head of the ram.
- 16 And thou shalt slay the ram, and thou shalt take its blood, and sprinkle it round about upon the altar.
- 17 And thou shalt cut the ram into its pieces, and wash its inwards, and its legs, and put them with its pieces, and with its head.
- 18 And thou shalt burn the whole ram upon the altar: it is a burnt-offering unto Jehovah; it is a sweet savor, an offering made by fire unto Jehovah.
- 19 And thou shalt take the other ram; and Aaron and his sons shall lay their hands upon the head of the ram.
- 20 Then shalt thou kill the ram, and take of its blood, and put it upon the tip of the right ear of Aaron, and upon the tip of the right ear of his sons, and upon the thumb of their right hand, and upon the great toe of their right foot, and sprinkle the blood upon the altar round about.
- 21 And thou shalt take of the blood that is upon the altar, and of the anointing oil, and sprinkle it upon Aaron, and upon his garments, and upon his sons, and upon the garments of his sons with him: and he shall be hallowed, and his garments, and his sons, and his sons' garments with him.
- 22 Also thou shalt take of the ram the fat, and the fat tail, and the fat that covereth the inwards, and the caul of the liver, and the two kidneys, and the fat that is upon them, and the right thigh (for it is a ram of consecration),
- 23 and one loaf of bread, and one cake of oiled bread, and one wafer, out of the basket of unleavened bread that is before Jehovah:
- 24 and thou shalt put the whole upon the hands of Aaron, and upon the hands of his sons, and shalt wave them for a wave-offering before Jehovah.
- 25 And thou shalt take them from their hands, and burn them on the altar upon the burnt-offering, for a sweet savor before Jehovah: it is an offering made by fire unto Jehovah.
- 26 And thou shalt take the breast of Aaron's ram of consecration, and wave it for a wave-offering before Jehovah: and it shall be thy portion.
- 27 And thou shalt sanctify the breast of the wave-offering, and the thigh of the heave-offering, which is waved, and which is heaved up, of the ram of consecration, even of that which is for Aaron, and of that which is for his sons:
- 28 and it shall be for Aaron and his sons as their portion for ever from the children of Israel; for it is a heave-offering: and it shall be a heave-offering from the children of Israel of the sacrifices of their peace-offerings, even their heave-offering unto Jehovah.
- 29 And the holy garments of Aaron shall be for his sons after him, to be anointed in them, and to be consecrated in them.
- 30 Seven days shall the son that is priest in his stead put them on, when he cometh into the tent of meeting to minister in the holy place.
- 31 And thou shalt take the ram of consecration, and boil its flesh in a holy place.

- 32 And Aaron and his sons shall eat the flesh of the ram, and the bread that is in the basket, at the door of the tent of meeting.
- 33 And they shall eat those things wherewith atonement was made, to consecrate and to sanctify them: but a stranger shall not eat thereof, because they are holy.
- 34 And if aught of the flesh of the consecration, or of the bread, remain unto the morning, then thou shalt burn the remainder with fire: it shall not be eaten, because it is holy.
- 35 And thus shalt thou do unto Aaron, and to his sons, according to all that I have commanded thee: seven days shalt thou consecrate them.
- 36 And every day shalt thou offer the bullock of sin-offering for atonement: and thou shalt cleanse the altar, when thou makest atonement for it; and thou shalt anoint it, to sanctify it.
- 37 Seven days thou shalt make atonement for the altar, and sanctify it: and the altar shall be most holy; whatsoever toucheth the altar shall be holy.
- 38 ¶ Now this is that which thou shalt offer upon the altar: two lambs a year old day by day continually.
- 39 The one lamb thou shalt offer in the morning; and the other lamb thou shalt offer at even:
- 40 and with the one lamb a tenth part of an ephah of fine flour mingled with the fourth part of a hin of beaten oil; and the fourth part of a hin of wine for a drink-offering.
- 41 And the other lamb thou shalt offer at even, and shalt do thereto according to the meal-offering of the morning, and according to the drink-offering thereof, for a sweet savor, an offering made by fire unto Jehovah.
- 42 It shall be a continual burnt-offering throughout your generations at the door of the tent of meeting before Jehovah, where I will meet with you, to speak there unto thee.
- 43 And there I will meet with the children of Israel; and the Tent shall be sanctified by my glory.
- 44 And I will sanctify the tent of meeting, and the altar: Aaron also and his sons will I sanctify, to minister to me in the priest's office.
- 45 And I will dwell among the children of Israel, and will be their God.
- 46 And they shall know that I am Jehovah their God, that brought them forth out of the land of Egypt, that I might dwell among them: I am Jehovah their God.

## 11- Consecration of the priests

(29.)

<u>Method Used.</u>	<u>Typical Significance.</u>
a. Sin-offering--a bullock.	Christ suffering spiritual guilt.
b. Burnt offering--a ram.	Dedication of whole life to GOD.
c. Consecration--a ram.	
d. Meal or wave offering.	
e. Heave or peace-offering.	Christ being made our peace.
f. Consecration 7 days in the tabernacle.	

**Exodus 30.**

- 1 ¶ And thou shalt make an altar to burn incense upon: of acacia wood shalt thou make it.
- 2 A cubit shall be the length thereof, and a cubit the breadth thereof; foursquare shall it be; and two cubits shall be the height thereof: the horns thereof shall be of one piece with it.
- 3 And thou shalt overlay it with pure gold, the {1} top thereof, and the {2} sides thereof round about, and the horns thereof; and thou shalt make unto it a {3} crown of gold round about. {1} Heb roof 2) Heb walls 3) Or rim; Or moulding}
- 4 And two golden rings shalt thou make for it under the crown thereof; upon the two ribs thereof, upon the two sides of it shalt thou make them; and they shall be for places for staves wherewith to bear it.
- 5 And thou shalt make the staves of acacia wood, and overlay them with gold.
- 6 And thou shalt put it before the veil that is by the ark of the testimony, before the mercy-seat that is over the testimony, where I will meet with thee.
- 7 And Aaron shall burn thereon incense of sweet spices: every morning, when he dresseth the lamps, he shall burn it.
- 8 And when Aaron {1} lighteth the lamps {2} at even, he shall burn it, a perpetual incense before Jehovah throughout your generations. {1} Or setteth up; Heb causeth to ascend 2) Heb between the two evenings}
- 9 Ye shall offer no strange incense thereon, nor burnt-offering, nor meal-offering; and ye shall pour no drink-offering thereon.
- 10 And Aaron shall make atonement {1} upon the horns of it once in the year; with the blood of the sin-offering of atonement once in the year shall he make atonement {2} for it throughout your generations: it is most holy unto Jehovah. {1} Or for 2) Or upon}
- 11 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 12 When thou takest the sum of the children of Israel, according to those that are numbered of them, then shall they give every man a ransom for his soul unto Jehovah, when thou numberest them; that there be no plague among them, when thou numberest them.
- 13 This they shall give, every one that passeth over unto them that are numbered: half a shekel after the shekel of the sanctuary (the shekel is twenty gerahs), half a shekel for an offering to Jehovah.
- 14 Every one that passeth over unto them that are numbered, from twenty years old and upward, shall give the offering of Jehovah.
- 15 The rich shall not give more, and the poor shall not give less, than the half shekel, when they give the offering of Jehovah, to make atonement for your souls.
- 16 And thou shalt take the atonement money from the children of Israel, and shalt appoint it for the service of the tent of meeting; that it may be a memorial for the children of Israel before Jehovah, to make atonement for your souls.
- 17 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 18 Thou shalt also make a laver of brass, and the base thereof of brass, wherewith to wash. And thou shalt put it between the tent of meeting and the altar, and thou shalt put water therein.
- 19 And Aaron and his sons shall wash their hands and their feet thereat:
- 20 when they go into the tent of meeting, they shall wash with water, that they die not; or when they come near to the altar to minister, to burn an offering made by fire unto Jehovah.
- 21 So they shall wash their hands and their feet, that they die not: and it shall be a statute for ever to them, even to him and to his seed throughout their generations.
- 22 ¶ Moreover Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 23 Take thou also unto thee the chief spices: of flowing myrrh five hundred *shekels*, and of sweet cinnamon half so much, even two hundred and fifty, and of sweet calamus two hundred and fifty,
- 24 and of {1} cassia five hundred, after the shekel of the sanctuary, and of olive oil a hin; {1} Or *costus*}
- 25 and thou shalt make it a holy anointing oil, a perfume compounded after the art of the perfumer: it shall be a holy anointing oil.
- 26 And thou shalt anoint therewith the tent of meeting, and the ark of the testimony,
- 27 and the table and all the vessels thereof, and the candlestick and the vessels thereof, and the altar of incense,
- 28 and the altar of burnt-offering with all the vessels thereof, and the laver and the base thereof.
- 29 And thou shalt sanctify them, that they may be most holy: {1} whatsoever toucheth them shall be holy. {1} Or *whosoever*}
- 30 And thou shalt anoint Aaron and his sons, and sanctify them, that they may minister unto me in the priest's office.
- 31 And thou shalt speak unto the children of Israel, saying, This shall be a holy anointing oil unto me throughout your generations.
- 32 Upon the flesh of man shall it not be poured, neither shall ye make any like it, according to the composition thereof: it is holy, *and* it shall be holy unto you.

- 33 Whosoever compoundeth any like it, or whosoever putteth any of it upon a stranger, he shall be cut off from his people.
- 34 And Jehovah said unto Moses, Take unto thee sweet spices, *{1}* stacte, and onycha, and galbanum; sweet spices with pure frankincense: of each shall there be a like weight; *{1}* Or opobalsamum
- 35 and thou shalt make of it incense, a perfume after the art of the perfumer, *{1}* seasoned with salt, pure and holy: *{1}* Or tempered together
- 36 and thou shalt beat some of it very small, and put of it before the testimony in the tent of meeting, where I will meet with thee: it shall be unto you most holy.
- 37 And the incense which thou shalt make, according to the composition thereof ye shall not make for yourselves: it shall be unto thee holy for Jehovah.
- 38 Whosoever shall make like unto that, to smell thereof, he shall be cut off from his people.
- 

## 12- Worship in the Tabernacle

(30.)

- a- The Altar of Incense constructed vs. 1-10
- b- The ransom money to be collected vs. 11-16
- c- The Laver constructed vs. 17-31
- d- Anointing oil and incense made of sweet spices

**Exodus 31.**

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,  
2 See, I have called by name Bezalel the son of Uri, the son of Hur, of the tribe of Judah:  
3 and I have filled him with the Spirit of God, in wisdom, and in understanding, and in knowledge, and in all manner of workmanship,  
4 to devise skilful works, to work in gold, and in silver, and in brass,  
5 and in cutting of stones for setting, and in carving of wood, to work in all manner of workmanship.  
6 And I, behold, I have appointed with him Oholiab, the son of Ahisamach, of the tribe of Dan; and in the heart of all that are wise-hearted I have put wisdom, that they may make all that I have commanded thee:  
7 the tent of meeting, and the ark of the testimony, and the mercy-seat that is thereupon, and all the furniture of the Tent,  
8 and the table and its vessels, and the pure candlestick with all its vessels, and the altar of incense,  
9 and the altar of burnt-offering with all its vessels, and the laver and its base,  
10 and the finely wrought garments, and the holy garments for Aaron the priest, and the garments of his sons, to minister in the priest's office,  
11 and the anointing oil, and the incense of sweet spices for the holy place: according to all that I have commanded thee shall they do.  
12 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,  
13 Speak thou also unto the children of Israel, saying, Verily ye shall keep my sabbaths: for it is a sign between me and you throughout your generations; that ye may know that I am Jehovah who sanctifieth you.  
14 Ye shall keep the sabbath therefore; for it is holy unto you: every one that profaneth it shall surely be put to death; for whosoever doeth any work therein, that soul shall be cut off from among his people.  
15 Six days shall work be done; but on the seventh day is a sabbath of solemn rest, holy to Jehovah; whosoever doeth any work on the sabbath day, he shall surely be put to death.  
16 Wherefore the children of Israel shall keep the sabbath, to observe the sabbath throughout their generations, for a perpetual covenant.  
17 It is a sign between me and the children of Israel for ever: for in six days Jehovah made heaven and earth, and on the seventh day he rested, and was refreshed.  
18 And he gave unto Moses, when he had made an end of communing with him upon mount Sinai, the two tables of the testimony, tables of stone, written with the finger of God.

13- Builders of the Tabernacle	vs. 1-11
14- The sign of the Sabbath	vs. 12-18
a- The purpose of the Sabbath	vs. 13-17)
b- The penalty for not keeping the Sabbath	vs. 1-10
15- The tables of stone	vs. 18
The 10 commandments written by the finger of GOD. <sup>10</sup>	

---

Because of length of text, Ch. 32 is backed up.

## Exodus 32.

- 1 ¶ And when the people saw that Moses delayed to come down from the mount, the people gathered themselves together unto Aaron, and said unto him, Up, make us {1} gods, which shall go before us; for as for this Moses, the man that brought us up out of the land of Egypt, we know not what is become of him. {1} Or a god}
- 2 And Aaron said unto them, Break off the golden rings, which are in the ears of your wives, of your sons, and of your daughters, and bring them unto me.
- 3 And all the people brake off the golden rings which were in their ears, and brought them unto Aaron.
- 4 And he received it at their hand, and fashioned it with a graving tool, and made it a molten calf: and they said, {1} These are thy gods, O Israel, which brought thee up out of the land of Egypt. {1} Or This is thy God}
- 5 And when Aaron saw *this*, he built an altar before it; and Aaron made proclamation, and said, To-morrow shall be a feast to Jehovah.
- 6 And they rose up early on the morrow, and offered burnt-offerings, and brought peace-offerings; and the people sat down to eat and to drink, and rose up to play.
- 7 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, Go, get thee down; for thy people, that thou broughtest up out of the land of Egypt, have corrupted themselves:
- 8 they have turned aside quickly out of the way which I commanded them: they have made them a molten calf, and have worshipped it, and have sacrificed unto it, and said, These are thy gods, O Israel, which brought thee up out of the land of Egypt.
- 9 And Jehovah said unto Moses, I have seen this people, and, behold, it is a stiffnecked people:
- 10 now therefore let me alone, that my wrath may wax hot against them, and that I may consume them: and I will make of thee a great nation.
- 11 And Moses besought Jehovah his God, and said, Jehovah, why doth thy wrath wax hot against thy people, that thou hast brought forth out of the land of Egypt with great power and with a mighty hand?
- 12 Wherefore should the Egyptians speak, saying, For evil did he bring them forth, to slay them in the mountains, and to consume them from the face of the earth? Turn from thy fierce wrath, and repent of this evil against thy people.
- 13 Remember Abraham, Isaac, and Israel, thy servants, to whom thou swarest by thine own self, and saidst unto them, I will multiply your seed as the stars of heaven, and all this land that I have spoken of will I give unto your seed, and they shall inherit it for ever.
- 14 And Jehovah repented of the evil which he said he would do unto his people.

- 15 ¶ And Moses turned, and went down from the mount, with the two tables of the testimony in his hand; tables that were written on both their sides; on the one side and on the other were they written.
- 16 And the tables were the work of God, and the writing was the writing of God, graven upon the tables.
- 17 And when Joshua heard the noise of the people as they shouted, he said unto Moses, There is a noise of war in the camp.
- 18 And he said, It is not the voice of them that shout for mastery, neither is it the voice of them that cry for being overcome; but the noise of them that sing do I hear.
- 19 And it came to pass, as soon as he came nigh unto the camp, that he saw the calf and the dancing: and Moses' anger waxed hot, and he cast the tables out of his hands, and brake them beneath the mount.
- 20 And he took the calf which they had made, and burnt it with fire, and ground it to powder, and strewed it upon the water, and made the children of Israel drink of it.
- 21 ¶ And Moses said unto Aaron, What did this people unto thee, that thou hast brought a great sin upon them?
- 22 And Aaron said, Let not the anger of my lord wax hot: thou knowest the people, that they are *set* on evil.
- 23 For they said unto me, Make us gods, which shall go before us; for as for this Moses, the man that brought us up out of the land of Egypt, we know not what is become of him.
- 24 And I said unto them, Whosoever hath any gold, let them break it off: so they gave it me; and I cast it into the fire, and there came out this calf.
- 25 And when Moses saw that the people were broken loose (for Aaron had let them loose for a {1} derision among their enemies), {1} *Heb whispering*
- 26 then Moses stood in the gate of the camp, and said, Whoso is on Jehovah's side, *let him come* unto me. And all the sons of Levi gathered themselves together unto him.
- 27 And he said unto them, Thus saith Jehovah, the God of Israel, Put ye every man his sword upon his thigh, and go to and fro from gate to gate throughout the camp, and slay every man his brother, and every man his companion, and every man his neighbor.
- 28 And the sons of Levi did according to the word of Moses: and there fell of the people that day about three thousand men.
- 29 And Moses said, {1} Consecrate yourselves to-day to Jehovah, {2} yea, every man {3} against his son, and {3} against his brother; that he may bestow upon you a blessing this day. {1} *Heb Fill your hand* 2) *Or for every man hath been against his son and against his brother* 3) *Or upon* }
- 30 ¶ And it came to pass on the morrow, that Moses said unto the people, Ye have sinned a great sin: and now I will go up unto Jehovah; peradventure I shall make atonement for your sin.
- 31 And Moses returned unto Jehovah, and said, Oh, this people have sinned a great sin, and have made them gods of gold.
- 32 Yet now, if thou wilt forgive their sin—; and if not, blot me, I pray thee, out of thy book which thou hast written.
- 33 And Jehovah said unto Moses, Whosoever hath sinned against me, him will I blot out of my book.
- 34 And now go, lead the people unto *the place* of which I have spoken unto thee: behold, mine angel shall go before thee; nevertheless in the day when I visit, I will visit their sin upon them.
- 35 And Jehovah smote the people, because they made the calf, which Aaron made.



B- The delay because of idolatry.

(32.–34.)

## 1- Israel's sin and judgment

(32.)

Let's Party! Ya!! Ha!!!

## a- Aaron's weakness and idolatry

vs. 1-6

Acquiesced to people's wishes.

## b- Condemnation by the LORD

vs. 7-10

1) They broke (at least) Commandments 1, 2, 3, and 7,-rose up to play {Piel: to pervert, corrupt, deal corruptly (morally)}, 9, and probably 10. Can you find others?

2) The LORD proposes to start over with Moses!

## c- Intercession by Moses

vs. 11-14

1) He pleads that Egypt will rejoice if the whole crowd destroyed..

2) He reminds GOD (as if He needed a reminder,

## d- Discipline by Moses

vs. 15-29

1) The Tables containing the Law are broken.

The people weren't ready.

2) The calf became the grounds for excessive drinking.

3) Aaron's excuses

vs. 24

He passed the buck; "The calf built itself".

4) Moses' invitation.

vs. 25

"Who is on the LORD'S side?".

5) Judgment came through the sons of Levi.

a) The Levites answer Moses' call in

vs. 25

b) They slew 3000 men (possibly the ringleaders).

6) The Lord stresses individual responsibility.

a) Moses' beseeches the LORD to forgive his people.

vs. 31-32

(31 Then Moses returned unto the LORD and said, I pray thee, for, this people who have sinned a great sin and have made themselves gods of gold,

32 that thou wilt forgive their sin; and if not, blot me now out of thy book which thou hast written.).

**Exodus 33.**

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, Depart, go up hence, thou and the people that thou hast brought up out of the land of Egypt, unto the land of which I sware unto Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob, saying, Unto thy seed will I give it:
- 2 and I will send an angel before thee; and I will drive out the Canaanite, the Amorite, and the Hittite, and the Perizzite, the Hivite, and the Jebusite:
- 3 unto a land flowing with milk and honey: for I will not go up in the midst of thee; for thou art a stiffnecked people; lest I consume thee in the way.
- 4 And when the people heard these evil tidings, they mourned: and no man did put on him his ornaments.
- 5 And Jehovah said unto Moses, Say unto the children of Israel, Ye are a stiffnecked people; if I go up into the midst of thee for one moment, I shall consume thee: therefore now put off thy ornaments from thee, that I may know what to do unto thee.
- 6 And the children of Israel stripped themselves of their ornaments from mount Horeb onward.
- 7 ¶ Now Moses used to take the tent and to pitch it without the camp, afar off from the camp; and he called it, The tent of meeting. And it came to pass, that every one that sought Jehovah went out unto the tent of meeting, which was without the camp.
- 8 And it came to pass, when Moses went out unto the Tent, that all the people rose up, and stood, every man at his tent door, and looked after Moses, until he was gone into the Tent.
- 9 And it came to pass, when Moses entered into the Tent, the pillar of cloud descended, and stood at the door of the Tent: and *Jehovah* spake with Moses.
- 10 And all the people saw the pillar of cloud stand at the door of the Tent: and all the people rose up and worshipped, every man at his tent door.
- 11 And Jehovah spake unto Moses face to face, as a man speaketh unto his friend. And he turned again into the camp: but his minister Joshua, the son of Nun, a young man, departed not out of the Tent.
- 12 ¶ And Moses said unto Jehovah, See, thou sayest unto me, Bring up this people: and thou hast not let me know {1} whom thou wilt send with me. Yet thou hast said, I know thee by name, and thou hast also found favor in my sight. {1} Or him whom
- 13 Now therefore, I pray thee, if I have found favor in thy sight, show me now thy ways, that I may know thee, to the end that I may find favor in thy sight: and consider that this nation is thy people.
- 14 And he said, My presence shall go *with thee*, and I will give thee rest.
- 15 And he said unto him, If thy presence go not *with me*, carry us not up hence.
- 16 For wherein now shall it be known that I have found favor in thy sight, I and thy people? is it not in that thou goest with us, so that we are separated, I and thy people, from all the people that are upon the face of the earth?
- 17 And Jehovah said unto Moses, I will do this thing also that thou hast spoken; for thou hast found favor in my sight, and I know thee by name.
- 18 And he said, **Show me, I pray thee, thy glory.**
- 19 And he said, **I will make all my goodness pass before thee, and will proclaim the name of Jehovah before thee; and I will be gracious to whom I will be gracious, and will show mercy on whom I will show mercy.**
- 20 And he said, **Thou canst not see my face; for man shall not see me and live.**
- 21 And Jehovah said, Behold, there is a place by me, and thou shalt stand upon the rock:
- 22 and it shall come to pass, while my glory passeth by, that I will put thee in a cleft of the rock, and will cover thee with my hand until I have passed by:
- 23 and I will take away my hand, and **thou shalt see my back; but my face shall not be seen.**

- 2- Moses recommissioned (33.)
  - a- The repentant join Moses outside the camp vs. 1-8
  - b- Moses pleads for God's personal Presence vs. 9-17
  - c- Moses seeks a fresh vision of God vs. 18-23
  - d- Note the aspects of God's Glory
    - Goodness, Grace, and Mercy (and His Face not seen)

**Exodus 34.**

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah said unto Moses, Hew thee two tables of stone like unto the first: and I will write upon the tables the words that were on the first tables, which thou brakest.
- 2 And be ready by the morning, and come up in the morning unto mount Sinai, and present thyself there to me on the top of the mount.
- 3 And no man shall come up with thee; neither let any man be seen throughout all the mount; neither let the flocks nor herds feed before that mount.
- 4 And he hewed two tables of stone like unto the first; and Moses rose up early in the morning, and went up unto mount Sinai, as Jehovah had commanded him, and took in his hand two tables of stone.
- 5 ¶ And Jehovah descended in the cloud, {1} and stood with him there, and proclaimed {2} the name of Jehovah. {1} *Or and he stood with him there, and called upon etc 2) Or Jehovah by name}*
- 6 And Jehovah passed by before him, and proclaimed, Jehovah, Jehovah, a God merciful and gracious, slow to anger, and abundant in lovingkindness and truth;
- 7 keeping lovingkindness for thousands, forgiving iniquity and transgression and sin; and that will by no means clear *the guilty*, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children, and upon the children's children, upon the third and upon the fourth generation.
- 8 And Moses made haste, and bowed his head toward the earth, and worshipped.
- 9 And he said, If now I have found favor in thy sight, O Lord, let the Lord, I pray thee, go in the midst of us; for it is a stiffnecked people; and pardon our iniquity and our sin, and take us for thine inheritance.
- 10 ¶ And he said, Behold, I make a covenant: before all thy people I will do marvels, such as have not been {1} wrought in all the earth, nor in any nation; and all the people among which thou art shall see the work of Jehovah; for it is a terrible thing that I do with thee. {1} *Heb created}*
- 11 Observe thou that which I command thee this day: behold, I drive out before thee the Amorite, and the Canaanite, and the Hittite, and the Perizzite, and the Hivite, and the Jebusite.
- 12 Take heed to thyself, lest thou make a covenant with the inhabitants of the land whither thou goest, lest it be for a snare in the midst of thee:
- 13 but ye shall break down their altars, and dash in pieces their {1} pillars, and ye shall cut down their {2} Asherim {1} *Or obelisks 2) Probably the wooden symbols of a goddess Asherah.}*
- 14 (for thou shalt worship no other god: for Jehovah, whose name is Jealous, is a jealous God);
- 15 lest thou make a covenant with the inhabitants of the land, and they play the harlot after their gods, and sacrifice unto their gods, and one call thee and thou eat of his sacrifice;
- 16 and thou take of their daughters unto thy sons, and their daughters play the harlot after their gods, and make thy sons play the harlot after their gods.
- 17 Thou shalt make thee no molten gods.
- 18 ¶ The feast of unleavened bread shalt thou keep. Seven days thou shalt eat unleavened bread, as I commanded thee, at the time appointed in the month Abib; for in the month Abib thou camest out from Egypt.
- 19 All that openeth the womb is mine; and all thy cattle that is male, the firstlings of cow and sheep.
- 20 And the firstling of an ass thou shalt redeem with a {1} lamb: and if thou wilt not redeem it, then thou shalt break its neck. All the first-born of thy sons thou shalt redeem. And none shall appear before me empty. {1} *Or kid}*
- 21 Six days thou shalt work, but on the seventh day thou shalt rest: in plowing time and in harvest thou shalt rest.
- 22 And thou shalt observe the feast of weeks, *even* of the first-fruits of wheat harvest, and the feast of ingathering at the year's {1} end. {1} *Heb revolution }*
- 23 Three times in the year shall all thy males appear before the Lord Jehovah, the God of Israel.
- 24 For I will cast out nations before thee, and enlarge thy borders: neither shall any man desire thy land, when thou goest up to appear before Jehovah thy God three times in the year.
- 25 Thou shalt not offer the blood of my sacrifice with leavened bread; neither shall the sacrifice of the feast of the passover be left unto the morning.
- 26 The first of the first-fruits of thy ground thou shalt bring unto the house of Jehovah thy God. Thou shalt not boil a kid in its mother's milk.
- 27 And Jehovah said unto Moses, Write thou these words: for after the tenor of these words I have made a covenant with thee and with Israel.
- 28 ¶ And he was there with Jehovah forty days and forty nights; he did neither eat bread, nor drink water. And he wrote upon the tables the words of the covenant, the ten {1} commandments. {1} *Heb words}*
- 29 And it came to pass, when Moses came down from mount Sinai with the two tables of the testimony in Moses' hand, when he came down from the mount, that Moses knew not that the skin of his face {1} shone {2} by reason of his speaking with him. {1} *Or sent forth beams (Heb horns) 2) Or while he talked with him}*

- 30 And when Aaron and all the children of Israel saw Moses, behold, the skin of his face shone; and they were afraid to come nigh him.
- 31 And Moses called unto them; and Aaron and all the rulers of the congregation returned unto him: and Moses spake to them.
- 32 And afterward all the children of Israel came nigh: and he gave them in commandment all that Jehovah had spoken with him in mount Sinai.
- 33 And when Moses had done speaking with them, he put a veil on his face.
- 34 But when Moses went in before Jehovah to speak with him, he took the veil off, until he came out; and he came out, and spake unto the children of Israel that which he was commanded.
- 35 And the children of Israel saw the face of Moses, that the skin of Moses' face shone; and Moses put the veil upon his face again, until he went in to speak with him.

---

3- The covenant renewed	(34.)
a- The new tables	vs. 1-4
b- The new vision of GOD	vs. 5-9
c- The new covenant	vs. 10-27
d- The new writing of the law	vs. 28

**Exodus 35.**

- 1 ¶ And Moses assembled all the congregation of the children of Israel, and said unto them, These are the words which Jehovah hath commanded, that ye should do them.
- 2 Six days shall work be done; but on the seventh day there shall be to you a holy day, a sabbath of solemn rest to Jehovah: whosoever doeth any work therein shall be put to death.
- 3 Ye shall kindle no fire throughout your habitations upon the sabbath day.
- 4 And Moses spake unto all the congregation of the children of Israel, saying, This is the thing which Jehovah commanded, saying,
- 5 Take ye from among you an offering unto Jehovah; whosoever is of a willing heart, let him bring it, Jehovah's offering: gold, and silver, and brass,
- 6 and blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine linen, and goats' hair,
- 7 and rams' skins dyed red, and sealskins, and acacia wood,
- 8 and oil for the light, and spices for the anointing oil, and for the sweet incense,
- 9 and onyx stones, and stones to be set, for the ephod, and for the breastplate.
- 10 And let every wise-hearted man among you come, and make all that Jehovah hath commanded:
- 11 the tabernacle, its tent, and its covering, its clasps, and its boards, its bars, its pillars, and its sockets;
- 12 the ark, and the staves thereof, the mercy-seat, and the veil of the screen;
- 13 the table, and its staves, and all its vessels, and the {1} showbread; {1} Or Presence-bread
- 14 the candlestick also for the light, and its vessels, and its lamps, and the oil for the light;
- 15 and the altar of incense, and its staves, and the anointing oil, and the sweet incense, and the screen for the door, at the door of the tabernacle;
- 16 the altar of burnt-offering, with its grating of brass, its staves, and all its vessels, the laver and its base;
- 17 the hangings of the court, the pillars thereof, and their sockets, and the screen for the gate of the court;
- 18 the pins of the tabernacle, and the pins of the court, and their cords;
- 19 the finely wrought garments, for ministering in the holy place, the holy garments for Aaron the priest, and the garments of his sons, to minister in the priest's office.
- 20 ¶ And all the congregation of the children of Israel departed from the presence of Moses.
- 21 And they came, every one whose heart stirred him up, and every one whom his spirit made willing, and brought Jehovah's offering, for the work of the tent of meeting, and for all the service thereof, and for the holy garments.
- 22 And they came, both men and women, as many as were willing-hearted, and brought brooches, and {1} ear-rings, and signet-rings, and {2} armlets, all jewels of gold; even every man that offered an offering of gold unto Jehovah. {1} Or nose-rings 2) Or necklaces
- 23 And every man, with whom was found blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine linen, and goats' hair, and rams' skins dyed red, and sealskins, brought them.
- 24 Every one that did offer an offering of silver and brass brought Jehovah's offering; and every man, with whom was found acacia wood for any work of the service, brought it.
- 25 And all the women that were wise-hearted did spin with their hands, and brought that which they had spun, the blue, and the purple, the scarlet, and the fine linen.
- 26 And all the women whose heart stirred them up in wisdom spun the goats' hair.
- 27 And the rulers brought the {1} onyx stones, and the stones to be set, for the ephod, and for the breastplate; {1} Or beryl
- 28 and the spice, and the oil; for the light, and for the anointing oil, and for the sweet incense.
- 29 The children of Israel brought a freewill-offering unto Jehovah; every man and woman, whose heart made them willing to bring for all the work, which Jehovah had commanded to be made by Moses.
- 30 ¶ And Moses said unto the children of Israel, See, Jehovah hath called by name Bezalel the son of Uri, the son of Hur, of the tribe of Judah;
- 31 and he hath filled him with the Spirit of God, in wisdom, in understanding, and in knowledge, and in all manner of workmanship;
- 32 and to devise skilful works, to work in gold, and in silver, and in brass,
- 33 and in cutting of stones for setting, and in carving of wood, to work in all manner of skilful workmanship.
- 34 And he hath put in his heart that he may teach, both he, and Oholiab, the son of Ahisamach, of the tribe of Dan.
- 35 Them hath he filled with wisdom of heart, to work all manner of workmanship, of the {1} engraver, and of the skilful workman, and of the embroiderer, in blue, and in purple, in scarlet, and in fine linen, and of the weaver, even of them that do any workmanship, and of those that devise skilful works. {1} Or craftsman

C- Construction of the Tabernacle. (35.-40.)

1- Initial instructions (35.)

A Sabbath reminder vs. 1-3

The materials gathered vs. 4-29

1) The Willing-hearted give. vs. 5-9

2) The Wise-hearted to build. Vs. 10, 25, 30-35

**Exodus 36.**

- 1 ¶ And Bezalel and Oholiab shall work, and every wise-hearted man, in whom Jehovah hath put wisdom and understanding to know how to work all the work for the service of the sanctuary, according to all that Jehovah hath commanded.
- 2 And Moses called Bezalel and Oholiab, and every wise-hearted man, in whose heart Jehovah had put wisdom, even every one whose heart stirred him up to come unto the work to do it:
- 3 and they received of Moses all the offering which the children of Israel had brought for the work of the service of the sanctuary, wherewith to make it. And they brought yet unto him freewill-offerings every morning.
- 4 And all the wise men, that wrought all the work of the sanctuary, came every man from his work which they wrought;
- 5 and they spake unto Moses, saying, The people bring much more than enough for the service of the work which Jehovah commanded to make.
- 6 And Moses gave commandment, and they caused it to be proclaimed throughout the camp, saying, Let neither man nor woman make any more work for the offering of the sanctuary. So the people were restrained from bringing.
- 7 For the stuff they had was sufficient for all the work to make it, and too much.
- 8 ¶ And all the wise-hearted men among them that wrought the work made the tabernacle with ten curtains; of fine twined linen, and blue, and purple, and scarlet, with cherubim, the work of the skilful workman, *Bezalel* made them.
- 9 The length of each curtain was eight and twenty cubits, and the breadth of each curtain four cubits: all the curtains had one measure.
- 10 And he coupled five curtains one to another: and *the other* five curtains he coupled one to another.
- 11 And he made loops of blue upon the edge of the one curtain {1} from the selvedge in the coupling: likewise he made in the edge of the curtain that was outmost in the second {2} coupling. {1} Or that was outmost in the first set 2) Or set}
- 12 Fifty loops made he in the one curtain, and fifty loops made he in the edge of the curtain that was in the second {1} coupling: the loops were opposite one to another. {1} Or set}
- 13 And he made fifty clasps of gold, and coupled the curtains one to another with the clasps: so the tabernacle was one.
- rams' skins dyed red, and a covering of badgers' skins above that 14 ¶ And he made curtains of goats' *hair* for a tent over the tabernacle: eleven curtains he made them.
- 15 The length of each curtain was thirty cubits, and four cubits the breadth of each curtain: the eleven curtains had one measure.
- 16 And he coupled five curtains by themselves, and six curtains by themselves.
- 17 And he made fifty loops on the edge of the curtain that was outmost in the coupling, and fifty loops made he upon the edge of the curtain which was outmost in the second coupling.
- 18 And he made fifty clasps of brass to couple the tent together, that it might be one.
- 19 And he made a covering for the tent of rams' skins dyed red, and a covering of sealskins above.
- 20 And he made the boards for the tabernacle, of acacia wood, standing up.
- 21 Ten cubits was the length of a board, and a cubit and a half the breadth of each board.
- 22 Each board had two tenons, joined one to another: thus did he make for all the boards of the tabernacle.
- 23 And he made the boards for the tabernacle: twenty boards for the south side southward;
- 24 and he made forty sockets of silver under the twenty boards; two sockets under one board for its two tenons, and two sockets under another board for its two tenons.
- 25 And for the second side of the tabernacle, on the north side, he made twenty boards,
- 26 and their forty sockets of silver; two sockets under one board, and two sockets under another board.
- 27 And for the hinder part of the tabernacle westward he made six boards.
- 28 And two boards made he for the corners of the tabernacle in the hinder part.
- 29 And they were double beneath; and in like manner they were entire unto the top thereof unto one ring: thus he did to both of them in the two corners.
- 30 And there were eight boards, and their sockets of silver, sixteen sockets; under every board two sockets.
- 31 And he made bars of acacia wood; five for the boards of the one side of the tabernacle,
- 32 and five bars for the boards of the other side of the tabernacle, and five bars for the boards of the tabernacle for the hinder part westward.
- 33 And he made the middle bar to pass through in the midst of the boards from the one end to the other.
- 34 And he overlaid the boards with gold, and made their rings of gold for places for the bars, and overlaid the bars with gold.



- 35 ¶ And he made the veil of blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine twined linen: with cherubim, the work of the skilful workman, made he it.
- 36 And he made thereunto four pillars of acacia, and overlaid them with gold: their hooks were of gold: and he cast for them four sockets of silver.
- 37 And he made a screen for the door of the Tent, of blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine twined linen, the work of the embroiderer;
- 38 and the five pillars of it with their hooks: and he overlaid their capitals and their fillets with gold; and their five sockets were of brass.

---

2- <u>The articles constructed</u>	(36.-39.)
a- Structural parts	(36.)
1 ) Overabundance noted "Great giving after strong discipline."	.vs. 7
2 ) The coverings. Goat hair, Ram and Badger skins.	vs. 14, 19
3 ) The boards and sockets.	vs. 20-33
4 ) The bars and curtains.	vs. 35-38

**Exodus 37.**

- 1 ¶ And Bezalel made the ark of acacia wood: two cubits and a half was the length of it, and a cubit and a half the breadth of it, and a cubit and a half the height of it.
- 2 And he overlaid it with pure gold within and without, and made a crown of gold to it round about.
- 3 And he cast for it four rings of gold, in the four feet thereof; even two rings on the one side of it, and two rings on the other side of it.
- 4 And he made staves of acacia wood, and overlaid them with gold.
- 5 And he put the staves into the rings on the sides of the ark, to bear the ark.
- 6 And he made a mercy-seat of pure gold: two cubits and a half was the length thereof, and a cubit and a half the breadth thereof.
- 7 And he made two cherubim of gold; of beaten work made he them, at the two ends of the mercy-seat;
- 8 one cherub at the one end, and one cherub at the other end: of one piece with the mercy-seat made he the cherubim at the two ends thereof.
- 9 And the cherubim spread out their wings on high, covering the mercy-seat with their wings, with their faces one to another; toward the mercy-seat were the faces of the cherubim.
- 10 ¶ And he made the table of acacia wood: two cubits was the length thereof, and a cubit the breadth thereof, and a cubit and a half the height thereof.
- 11 And he overlaid it with pure gold, and made thereto a crown of gold round about.
- 12 And he made unto it a border of a handbreadth round about, and made a golden crown to the border thereof round about.
- 13 And he cast for it four rings of gold, and put the rings in the four corners that were on the four feet thereof.
- 14 Close by the border were the rings, the places for the staves to bear the table.
- 15 And he made the staves of acacia wood, and overlaid them with gold, to bear the table.
- 16 And he made the vessels which were upon the table, the dishes thereof, and the spoons thereof, and the bowls thereof, and the flagons thereof, wherewith to pour out, of pure gold.
- 17 And he made the candlestick of pure gold: of beaten work made he the candlestick, even its base, and its shaft; its cups, its knops, and its flowers, were of one piece with it.
- 18 And there were six branches going out of the sides thereof; three branches of the candlestick out of the one side thereof, and three branches of the candlestick out of the other side thereof:
- 19 three cups made like almond-blossoms in one branch, a knop and a flower, and three cups made like almond-blossoms in the other branch, a knop and a flower: so for the six branches going out of the candlestick.
- 20 And in the candlestick were four cups made like almond-blossoms, the knops thereof, and the flowers thereof;
- 21 and a knop under two branches of one piece with it, and a knop under two branches of one piece with it, and a knop under two branches of one piece with it, for the six branches going out of it.
- 22 Their knops and their branches were of one piece with it: the whole of it was one beaten work of pure gold.
- 23 And he made the lamps thereof, seven, and the snuffers thereof, and the snuffdishes thereof, of pure gold.
- 24 Of a talent of pure gold made he it, and all the vessels thereof.
- 25 ¶ And he made the altar of incense of acacia wood: a cubit was the length thereof, and a cubit the breadth thereof, foursquare; and two cubits was the height thereof; the horns thereof were of one piece with it.
- 26 And he overlaid it with pure gold, the top thereof, and the sides thereof round about, and the horns of it: and he made unto it a crown of gold round about.
- 27 And he made for it two golden rings under the crown thereof, upon the two ribs thereof, upon the two sides of it, for places for staves wherewith to bear it.
- 28 And he made the staves of acacia wood, and overlaid them with gold.
- 29 And he made the holy anointing oil, and the pure incense of sweet spices, after the art of the perfumer.

b - Internal furniture

( 37 . )

- 1) The ark and mercy seat. In the 'Holiest Approx. 45" x 27" x 27". vs. 1
- 2) The table of (for) showbread Approx. 36" x 27" x 27". vs. 10
- 3) The lampstand. 1 talent = Approx. 60 lbs. of gold. Ref 25:23-30.
- 4) The golden altar of incense Aprox. 18" x 18" x 36'. vs. 25

**Exodus 38.**

- 1 ¶ And he made the altar of burnt-offering of acacia wood: five cubits was the length thereof, and five cubits the breadth thereof, foursquare; and three cubits the height thereof.
- 2 And he made the horns thereof upon the four corners of it; the horns thereof were of one piece with it: and he overlaid it with brass.
- 3 And he made all the vessels of the altar, the pots, and the shovels, and the basins, the flesh-hooks, and the firepans: all the vessels thereof made he of brass.
- 4 And he made for the altar a grating of network of brass, under the ledge round it beneath, reaching halfway up.
- 5 And he cast four rings for the four ends of the grating of brass, to be places for the staves.
- 6 And he made the staves of acacia wood, and overlaid them with brass.
- 7 And he put the staves into the rings on the sides of the altar, wherewith to bear it; he made it hollow with planks.
- 8 And he made the laver of brass, and the base thereof of brass, of the mirrors of the ministering women that ministered at the door of the tent of meeting.
- 9 ¶ And he made the court: for the south side southward the hangings of the court were of fine twined linen, a hundred cubits;
- 10 their pillars were twenty, and their sockets twenty, of brass; the hooks of the pillars and their fillets were of silver.
- 11 And for the north side a hundred cubits, their pillars twenty, and their sockets twenty, of brass; the hooks of the pillars, and their fillets, of silver.
- 12 And for the west side were hangings of fifty cubits, their pillars ten, and their sockets ten; the hooks of the pillars, and their fillets, of silver.
- 13 And for the east side eastward fifty cubits.
- 14 The hangings for the one side of the gate were fifteen cubits; their pillars three, and their sockets three;
- 15 and so for the other side: on this hand and that hand by the gate of the court were hangings of fifteen cubits; their pillars three, and their sockets three.
- 16 All the hangings of the court round about were of fine twined linen.
- 17 And the sockets for the pillars were of brass; the hooks of the pillars, and their fillets, of silver; and the overlaying of their capitals, of silver; and all the pillars of the court were filleted with silver.
- 18 And the screen for the gate of the court was the work of the embroiderer, of blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine twined linen: and twenty cubits was the length, and the height in the breadth was five cubits, answerable to the hangings of the court.
- 19 And their pillars were four, and their sockets four, of brass; their hooks of silver, and the overlaying of their capitals, and their fillets, of silver.
- 20 And all the pins of the tabernacle, and of the court round about, were of brass.
- 21 ¶ This is the sum of the things for the tabernacle, even the tabernacle of the testimony, as they were counted, according to the commandment of Moses, for the service of the Levites, by the hand of Ithamar, the son of Aaron the priest.
- 22 And Bezalel the son of Uri, the son of Hur, of the tribe of Judah, made all that Jehovah commanded Moses.
- 23 And with him was Oholiab, the son of Ahisamach, of the tribe of Dan, an engraver, and a skilful workman, and an embroiderer in blue, and in purple, and in scarlet, and in fine linen.
- 24 All the gold that was used for the work in all the work of the sanctuary, even the gold of the offering, was twenty and nine talents, and seven hundred and thirty shekels, after the shekel of the sanctuary.
- 25 And the silver of them that were numbered of the congregation was a hundred talents, and a thousand seven hundred and threescore and fifteen shekels, after the shekel of the sanctuary:

- 26 a beka a head, that is, half a shekel, after the shekel of the sanctuary, for every one that passed over to them that were numbered, from twenty years old and upward, for six hundred thousand and three thousand and five hundred and fifty men.
- 27 And the hundred talents of silver were for casting the sockets of the sanctuary, and the sockets of the veil; a hundred sockets for the hundred talents, a talent for a socket.
- 28 And of the thousand seven hundred seventy and five shekels he made hooks for the pillars, and overlaid their capitals, and made fillets for them.
- 29 And the brass of the offering was seventy talents, and two thousand and four hundred shekels.
- 30 And therewith he made the sockets to the door of the tent of meeting, and the brazen altar, and the brazen grating for it, and all the vessels of the altar,
- 31 and the sockets of the court round about, and the sockets of the gate of the court, and all the pins of the tabernacle, and all the pins of the court round about.

---

c- External furniture

(38.)

- 1) The brazen altar. Approx.  $7\frac{1}{2}' \times 7\frac{1}{2}' \times 4\frac{1}{2}'$ .
- 2) The laver. (The giving up of their mirrors for the use of the sanctuary was a fit sacrifice for such women to make (Ref. 30:18-21) vs. 8
- 3) The courtyard. Approx.  $150' \times 75'$ , the eastern gate 2 parts  $22\frac{1}{2}'$  each. vs. 14-15

**Exodus 39.**

- 1 ¶ And of the blue, and purple, and scarlet, they made finely wrought garments, for ministering in the holy place, and made the holy garments for Aaron; as Jehovah commanded Moses.
- 2 And he made the ephod of gold, blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine twined linen.
- 3 And they did beat the gold into thin plates, and cut it into wires, to work it in the blue, and in the purple, and in the scarlet, and in the fine linen, the work of the skilful workman.
- 4 They made shoulder-pieces for it, joined together; at the two ends was it joined together.
- 5 And the skilfully woven band, that was upon it, wherewith to gird it on, was of the same piece and like the work thereof; of gold, of blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine twined linen; as Jehovah commanded Moses.
- 6 And they wrought the onyx stones, inclosed in settings of gold, graven with the engravings of a signet, according to the names of the children of Israel.
- 7 And he put them on the shoulder-pieces of the ephod, to be stones of memorial for the children of Israel; as Jehovah commanded Moses.
- 8 And he made the breastplate, the work of the skilful workman, like the work of the ephod; of gold, of blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine twined linen.
- 9 It was foursquare; they made the breastplate double: a span was the length thereof, and a span the breadth thereof, being double.
- 10 And they set in it four rows of stones. A row of sardius, topaz, and carbuncle was the first row;
- 11 and the second row, an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond;
- 12 and the third row, a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst;
- 13 and the fourth row, a beryl, an onyx, and a jasper: they were inclosed in inclosings of gold in their settings.
- 14 And the stones were according to the names of the children of Israel, twelve, according to their names; like the engravings of a signet, every one according to his name, for the twelve tribes.
- 15 And they made upon the breastplate chains like cords, of wreathen work of pure gold.
- 16 And they made two settings of gold, and two gold rings, and put the two rings on the two ends of the breastplate.
- 17 And they put the two wreathen chains of gold in the two rings at the ends of the breastplate.
- 18 And the other two ends of the two wreathen chains they put on the two settings, and put them on the shoulder-pieces of the ephod, in the forepart thereof.
- 19 And they made two rings of gold, and put them upon the two ends of the breastplate, upon the edge thereof, which was toward the side of the ephod inward.
- 20 And they made two rings of gold, and put them on the two shoulder-pieces of the ephod underneath, in the forepart thereof, close by the coupling thereof, above the skilfully woven band of the ephod.
- 21 And they did bind the breastplate by the rings thereof unto the rings of the ephod with a lace of blue, that it might be upon the skilfully woven band of the ephod, and that the breastplate might not be loosed from the ephod; as Jehovah commanded Moses.
- 22 And he made the robe of the ephod of woven work, all of blue;
- 23 and the hole of the robe in the midst thereof, as the hole of a coat of mail, with a binding round about the hole of it, that it should not be rent.
- 24 And they made upon the skirts of the robe pomegranates of blue, and purple, and scarlet, and twined linen.
- 25 And they made bells of pure gold, and put the bells between the pomegranates upon the skirts of the robe round about, between the pomegranates;
- 26 a bell and a pomegranate, a bell and a pomegranate, upon the skirts of the robe round about, to minister in; as Jehovah commanded Moses.
- 27 And they made the coats of fine linen of woven work for Aaron, and for his sons,
- 28 and the mitre of fine linen, and the goodly head-tires of fine linen, and the linen breeches of fine twined linen,
- 29 and the girdle of fine twined linen, and blue, and purple, and scarlet, the work of the embroiderer; as Jehovah commanded Moses.
- 30 And they made the plate of the holy crown of pure gold, and wrote upon it a writing, like the engravings of a signet, HOLY TO JEHOVAH.
- 31 And they tied unto it a lace of blue, to fasten it upon the mitre above; as Jehovah commanded Moses.
- 32 ¶ Thus was finished all the work of the tabernacle of the tent of meeting: and the children of Israel did according to all that Jehovah commanded Moses; so did they.
- 33 And they brought the tabernacle unto Moses, the Tent, and all its furniture, its clasps, its boards, its bars, and its pillars, and its sockets;
- 34 and the covering of rams' skins dyed red, and the covering of sealskins, and the veil of the screen;
- 35 the ark of the testimony, and the staves thereof, and the mercy-seat;

- 36 the table, all the vessels thereof, and the showbread;  
37 the pure candlestick, the lamps thereof, even the lamps to be set in order, and all the vessels thereof, and the oil for the light;  
38 and the golden altar, and the anointing oil, and the sweet incense, and the screen for the door of the Tent;  
39 the brazen altar, and its grating of brass, its staves, and all its vessels, the laver and its base;  
40 the hangings of the court, its pillars, and its sockets, and the screen for the gate of the court, the cords thereof, and the pins thereof, and all the instruments of the service of the tabernacle, for the tent of meeting;  
41 the finely wrought garments for ministering in the holy place, and the holy garments for Aaron the priest, and the garments of his sons, to minister in the priest's office.  
42 According to all that Jehovah commanded Moses, so the children of Israel did all the work.  
43 And Moses saw all the work, and, behold, they had done it; as Jehovah had commanded, even so had they done it: and Moses blessed them.

---

d- Priestly garments and presentation

(39.)

**Exodus 40.**

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 2 On the first day of the first month shalt thou rear up the tabernacle of the tent of meeting.
- 3 And thou shalt put therein the ark of the testimony, and thou shalt screen the ark with the veil.
- 4 And thou shalt bring in the table, and set in order the things that are upon it; and thou shalt bring in the candlestick, and light the lamps thereof.
- 5 And thou shalt set the golden altar for incense before the ark of the testimony, and put the screen of the door to the tabernacle.
- 6 And thou shalt set the altar of burnt-offering before the door of the tabernacle of the tent of meeting.
- 7 And thou shalt set the laver between the tent of meeting and the altar, and shalt put water therein.
- 8 And thou shalt set up the court round about, and hang up the screen of the gate of the court.
- 9 And thou shalt take the anointing oil, and anoint the tabernacle, and all that is therein, and shalt hallow it, and all the furniture thereof: and it shall be holy.
- 10 And thou shalt anoint the altar of burnt-offering, and all its vessels, and sanctify the altar: and the altar shall be most holy.
- 11 And thou shalt anoint the laver and its base, and sanctify it.
- 12 And thou shalt bring Aaron and his sons unto the door of the tent of meeting, and shalt wash them with water.
- 13 And thou shalt put upon Aaron the holy garments; and thou shalt anoint him, and sanctify him, that he may minister unto me in the priest's office.
- 14 And thou shalt bring his sons, and put coats upon them;
- 15 and thou shalt anoint them, as thou didst anoint their father, that they may minister unto me in the priest's office: and their anointing shall be to them for an everlasting priesthood throughout their generations.
- 16 ¶ Thus did Moses: according to all that Jehovah commanded him, so did he.
- 17 And it came to pass in the first month in the second year, on the first day of the month, that the tabernacle was reared up.
- 18 And Moses reared up the tabernacle, and laid its sockets, and set up the boards thereof, and put in the bars thereof, and reared up its pillars.
- 19 And he spread the tent over the tabernacle, and put the covering of the tent above upon it; as Jehovah commanded Moses.
- 20 And he took and put the testimony into the ark, and set the staves on the ark, and put the mercy-seat above upon the ark:
- 21 and he brought the ark into the tabernacle, and set up the veil of the screen, and screened the ark of the testimony; as Jehovah commanded Moses.
- 22 And he put the table in the tent of meeting, upon the side of the tabernacle northward, without the veil.
- 23 And he set the bread in order upon it before Jehovah; as Jehovah commanded Moses.
- 24 And he put the candlestick in the tent of meeting, over against the table, on the side of the tabernacle southward.
- 25 And he lighted the lamps before Jehovah; as Jehovah commanded Moses.
- 26 And he put the golden altar in the tent of meeting before the veil:
- 27 and he burnt thereon incense of sweet spices; as Jehovah commanded Moses.
- 28 And he put the screen of the door to the tabernacle.
- 29 And he set the altar of burnt-offering at the door of the tabernacle of the tent of meeting, and offered upon it the burnt-offering and the meal-offering; as Jehovah commanded Moses.
- 30 And he set the laver between the tent of meeting and the altar, and put water therein, wherewith to wash.
- 31 And Moses and Aaron and his sons washed their hands and their feet thereat;
- 32 when they went into the tent of meeting, and when they came near unto the altar, they washed; as Jehovah commanded Moses.
- 33 And he reared up the court round about the tabernacle and the altar, and set up the screen of the gate of the court. So Moses finished the work.
- 34 ¶ Then the cloud covered the tent of meeting, and the glory of Jehovah filled the tabernacle.
- 35 And Moses was not able to enter into the tent of meeting, because the cloud abode thereon, and the glory of Jehovah filled the tabernacle.
- 36 And when the cloud was taken up from over the tabernacle, the children of Israel went onward, throughout all their journeys:
- 37 but if the cloud was not taken up, then they journeyed not till the day that it was taken up.
- 38 For the cloud of Jehovah was upon the tabernacle by day, and there was fire therein by night, in the sight of all the house of Israel, throughout all their journeys.



## 3. The tabernacle erected (40.)

- a- The date of erection vs. 2, 17

the first month in the second year on the first day of the month that the tabernacle was raised up.

i.e.,  $-1445+1 = 1$  Abib 1444 BC

- b- The Placing of the furniture vs. 3-8

- c- The consecration with oil vs. 9-16

The furniture vs. 9-11

the peiests vs. 15-16

- d- The actual erection vs. 18-33

“as the LORD commanded Moses”, repeated 7 times.

## 4- The Glory of the LORD descends on the Tabernacle vs. 34-38

- a - It signified the Lord's presence. vs. 34-35

- b - It determined their steps. vs. 36

when the cloud was taken up they went onward.

- c - It determined their stops. vs. 37

If the cloud was not taken up, they remained.

**QUESTIONS ON EXODUS**

- 1) Give the approximate date of the exodus. \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2) Why is the late date (c. 1290 B.C.) unsatisfactory?
- 3) What three truths about God are revealed in the book of Exodus?
  - 1.
  - 2.
  - 3.
- 4) Give the threefold division of Exodus with chapters.
  - 1.
  - 2.
  - 3.
- 5) What event in Exodus 1 connects the book of Exodus with Genesis?
- 6) Name two growths that take place between the time of Joseph and Moses
  - 1.
  - 2.
- 7) Name three elements in Moses' background (in chapter 2) that were significant in his training.'
  - 1.
  - 2.
  - 3.
- 8) Name Moses' three objections i,n chapters ,3 and 4.
  - 1.
  - 2.
  - 3.
- 9) What three signs did Moses use to convince Israel that Jehovah had sent him?
  - 1.
  - 2.
  - 3.
- 10) What two results ensued from Moses' first interview with Pharaoh in chapter 5?
  - 1.
  - 2.
- 11) Of what does the Lord remind Moses in chapter 6?
- 12) What progression do you see in the plagues of Exodus 7-11?
- 13) Which judgment convinced the magicians and why?

- 14) What is significant about the eighth and ninth judgments of locusts and darkness (as to the effects on Pharaoh)?
- 15) What relation do you see between the first and the last plagues?
- 16) What three purposes were the plagues designed to fulfill (9:16; 10:2; 12:12; 1.  
2.  
3.
- 17) What is meant by the statement that God hardened Pharaoh's heart?
- 18) What does the Passover feast commemorate and what does it typify?
- 19) What were the elements of the Passover meal?
- 20) Why was the last plague a special blow to Pharaoh?
- 21) How long were the Israelites in Egypt?
- 22) Why did the Lord not lead them directly into the land of Canaan?
- 23) Did the Lord use natural or supernatural means to part the Red Sea?
- 24) What purpose was the exodus to have relative to the Canaanites?
- 25- In connection with what event was the observance of the Sabbath first Mentioned?
- 26- What was the victory over the Amalekites (Chapter 17) to demonstrate?
- 27- What was significant about the advice of Jethro in chapter 18?

- 28- Upon what was the blessing of the Mosaic covenant conditioned (19)?
- 29- What did the Lord suggest that this covenant could produce, and where is this found.
- 30- What does God emphasize relative to His nature in the giving of the Law, and where is this found?
- 31- How are the commands of chapter 20 distinguished from the judgments of of chapters 21-23?
- 32- Suggest a twofold division of the commandments.
- 33- Does the Lord abolish slavery?
- 34- What is the general principle of justice enunciated relative to killing other individuals and to injury?
- 35- Name the three annual feasts that are initiated in which all males are to appear before the Lord?
- 36- How does God suggest He will destroy the enemies of Israel if Israel isobedient (23)?
- 37- How did the LORD first give the Decalogue?
- 38- Name the articles of furniture described in chapters 25-27; 30.
- 39- Sketch a picture of the Tabernacle with its furniture.

40- What did the high priest's garments and his consecration suggest?

41- In what way does the Sabbath take on additional significance in chapter 31?

42- What is the basis of Moses' intercession for Israel in chapter 32 (following , the sin of Israel)?

43- Why did Moses break the tables of stone?

44- Describe God's method of judgment for their idolatry, here.

45- What danger is emphasized in the renewing of the covenant as given in chapter 35, and why?

46- Suggest a threefold division of the tabernacle parts as, listed in 36-38.

47- When was the tabernacle completed?

48- What event climaxed the construction of the tabernacle?

Copy these 4 pages, type your answers, and hand in or send by email to [swede@thecfbc.com](mailto:swede@thecfbc.com)

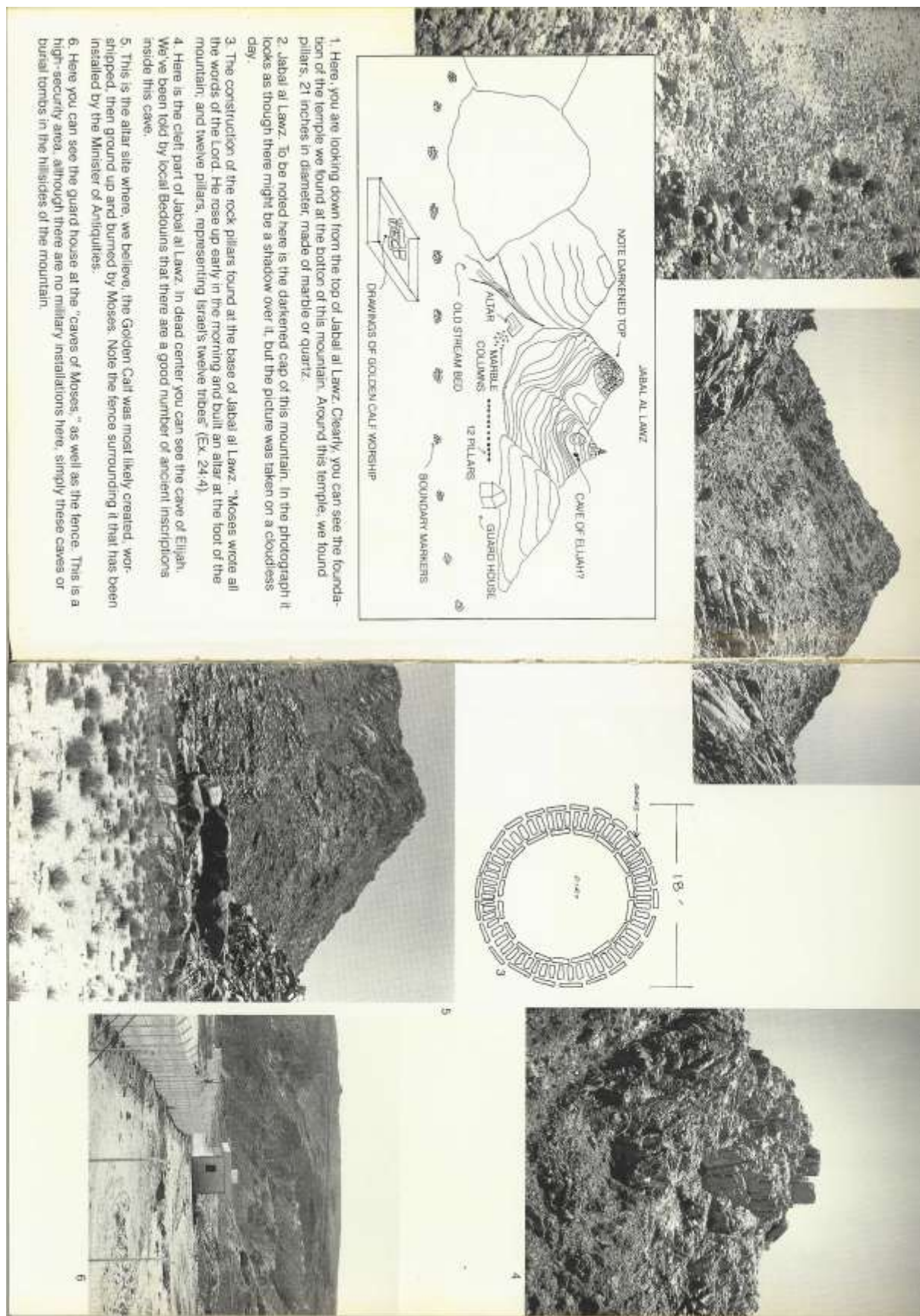


Figure 04. Photos And Topographical Feature Of Jabel Al Lawz. Courtesy of Bob Cornuke.



**Figure 05. The Pictographs Drawn On The Side Of The Altar  
see Fig. 01, above.**

**Both Figures provided by the courtesy of Dr. Robert "Bob" Cornuke, "The Real Indiana Jones".**





# **THE BOOK OF LEVITICUS**

**INTRODUCTION**

**PRINCIPLES**

**TEXT**

**OUTLINE**

**QUESTIONS**

Adapted from the larger work (under contract - prior his home-going) of  
**Dr. Stanley Ellisen, Beloved Professor of English Bible  
And Interpretation  
At The Western Baptist Theological Seminary.**

This Monograph was prepared for Seminary,  
Bible College, Church and Home Bible studies.  
Also contained in each book is an Introduction and  
on opposing pages the associated Biblical text taken from  
the ASV Version of 1901; and a list of  
Class Questions.

THE BOOK OF LEVITICUSINTRODUCTION<sup>a</sup>**I. Title:**

**A-** The Hebrews called it "And He called"; also "Law of the Priests."

**B-** The LXX translators named it Leviticus because of the emphasis on the Levitical priesthood

**II. Authorship:**

**A-** About 56 times Jehovah is said to have spoken to Moses in Leviticus. No other book contains so many such identification

**B-** Also the first word, "And," connects it with Exodus and Moses.

**III. Historical Setting.**

The location is the Wilderness of Sinai.

The time period is evidently between the setting up of the Tabernacle (c. April 1, 1444 B.C.) and the departure from Mt. Sinai (May 20)--about one month and 20 days (Exodus 40:1.7; Numbers 10:11).

The Tabernacle has just been constructed and erected. The priesthood has been set up and consecrated and the Glory has descended upon the holy of holies. They have been out of Egypt just one year.

**IV. Theme and Purpose of Leviticus.**

The **theme** of Leviticus is thloHoliness of God, and the ruling thought of thebook is that God's chosen people are to be holy. But because God is holyand man is sinful, man's approach to God must be on the basis of blood shedding.

The **purpose** then of the book is to show that the way of access to God is by sacrifice, and the way of fellowship with God is by separation.

An introductory Thought:

Leviticus is specifically concerned with the spiritual organization of the kingdom. It follows upon the completion of the tabernacle in Exodus and concerns the priestly code. Jehovah has taken up residence by His Glory in the tabernacle and now He speaks out of the tabernacle, prescribing the ritual of approach to Him and the requirements of fellowship with Him. It is almost wholly legislative rather than historical. It contains more direct messages from Jehovah than any other Bible book. Its grand theme is holiness; God is holy and, therefore, requires holiness of those who would fellowship with Him.

This is acquired by vicarious sacrifice of blood and by separation and cleanliness of life. Exodus speaks of redemption; Leviticus of Worship; Numbers of walk; and Deuteronomy of forthcoming service. **This is always the proper order.**

<sup>a</sup>

Theological Notes (A) Expiation: Denotes that end accomplished by certain divinely appointed sacrifices in respect to freeing the sinner from the punishment of his/her sins. The sacrifices recognized as expiatory are the sin offerings of the O.T. dispensation, and preeminently the offerings which Christ made of Himself for the sins of the world. (B) Propitiation: The Divine side of the work of the cross: Christ's atoning death for the world's sins altered the position of the whole human race in it's relationship to GOD. For the GOD-HEAD recognizes what Christ accomplished in behalf of the world whether men enter into the blessings of it or not. M.F. Unger

## OUTLINE OF LEVITICUS

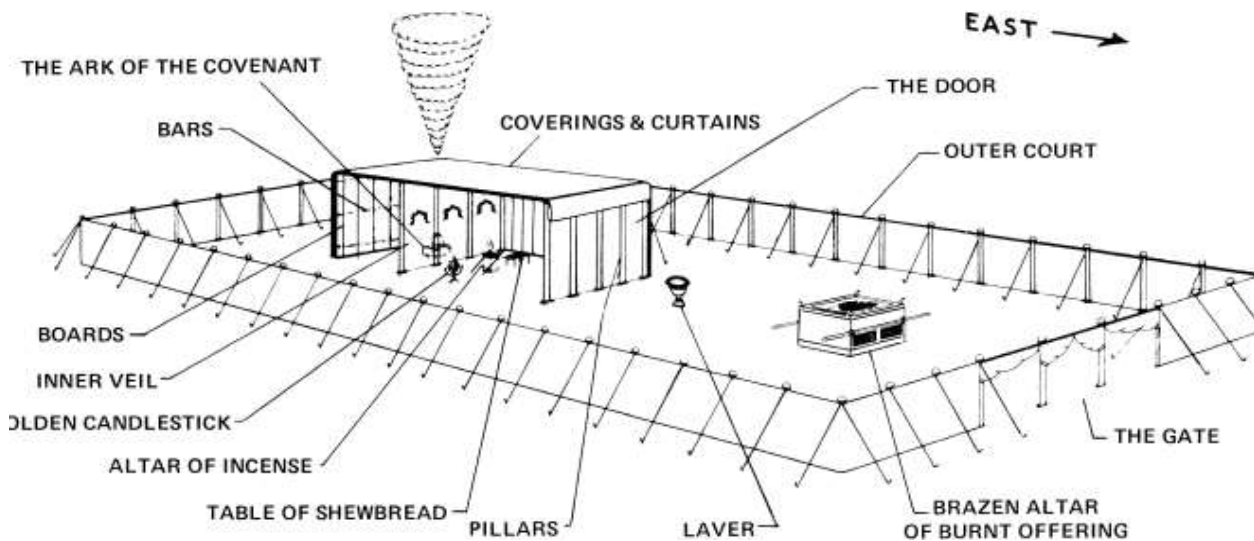
- |  |         |
|--|---------|
| 1. The Way of Access to God--by sacrifice.         | 1 - 17  |
| II. The Way of Fellowship with God--by separation, | 18 - 27 |



**Figure 01. The Tabernacle In The Wilderness**



**Figure 02. The Tabernacle In The Wilderness - Plan view**



**Figure 03. The Tabernacle In The Wilderness - Parts Identified**



## Leviticus 1

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah called unto Moses, and spake unto him out of the tent of meeting, saying,  
2 Speak unto the children of Israel, and say unto them, When any man of you offereth an oblation unto Jehovah, ye shall offer your oblation of the cattle, *even* of the herd and of the flock.  
3 ¶ If his oblation be a burnt-offering of the herd, he shall offer it a male without blemish: he shall offer it at the door of the tent of meeting, that he may be accepted before Jehovah.  
4 And he shall lay his hand upon the head of the burnt-offering; and it shall be accepted for him to make atonement for him.  
5 And he shall kill the bullock before Jehovah: and Aaron's sons, the priests, shall present the blood, and sprinkle the blood round about upon the altar that is at the door of the tent of meeting.  
6 And he shall flay the burnt-offering, and cut it into its pieces.  
7 And the sons of Aaron the priest shall put fire upon the altar, and lay wood in order upon the fire;  
8 and Aaron's sons, the priests, shall lay the pieces, the head, and the fat, in order upon the wood that is on the fire which is upon the altar:  
9 but its inwards and its legs shall he wash with water. And the priest shall burn the whole on the altar, for a burnt-offering, an offering made by fire, of a sweet savor unto Jehovah.  
10 ¶ And if his oblation be of the flock, of the sheep, or of the goats, for a burnt-offering; he shall offer it a male without blemish.  
11 And he shall kill it on the side of the altar northward before Jehovah: and Aaron's sons, the priests, shall sprinkle its blood upon the altar round about.  
12 And he shall cut it into its pieces, with its head and its fat; and the priest shall lay them in order on the wood that is on the fire which is upon the altar:  
13 but the inwards and the legs shall he wash with water. And the priest shall offer the whole, and burn it upon the altar: it is a burnt-offering, an offering made by fire, of a sweet savor unto Jehovah.  
14 And if his oblation to Jehovah be a burnt-offering of birds, then he shall offer his oblation of turtle-doves, or of young pigeons.  
15 And the priest shall bring it unto the altar, and {1} wring off its head, and burn it on the altar; and the blood thereof shall be drained out on the side of the altar; {1} Or pinch  
16 and he shall take away its crop with the {1} filth thereof, and cast it beside the altar on the east part, in the place of the ashes: {1} Or feathers  
17 and he shall rend it by the wings thereof, *but* shall not divide it asunder. And the priest shall burn it upon the altar, upon the wood that is upon the fire: it is a burnt-offering, an offering made by fire, of a sweet savor unto Jehovah.

I. The Way of Access to God--By sacrifice. (1.-17.)A- The law of offerings. (1.-7.)

## 1- The Sweet-Savour Offerings (1.-3.)

## a- The Burnt Offering (1.)

The whole animal consumed. On the braen altar, often and regularly. The lamb every morning and evening. Perfect domestic killing- clean animal- Hands on offering-killed animal himself. The sacrifice: Animals and birds; no one left out.

(1) Bullock - ox

(2) Lamb-Sheep or Goat.

(3) Turtledove or young pigeon.

**Leviticus 2**

- 1 ¶ And when any one offereth an oblation of a meal-offering unto Jehovah, his oblation shall be of fine flour; and he shall pour oil upon it, and put frankincense thereon:
- 2 and he shall bring it to Aaron's sons the priests; and he shall take thereout his handful of the fine flour thereof, and of the oil thereof, with all the frankincense thereof. And the priest shall burn *it as* the memorial thereof upon the altar, an offering made by fire, of a sweet savor unto Jehovah:
- 3 and that which is left of the meal-offering shall be Aaron's and his sons': it is a thing most holy of the offerings of Jehovah made by fire.
- 4 And when thou offerest an oblation of a meal-offering baken in the oven, it shall be unleavened cakes of fine flour mingled with oil, or unleavened wafers anointed with oil.
- 5 And if thy oblation be a meal-offering of the *{1}* baking-pan, it shall be of fine flour unleavened, mingled with oil. *{1} Or flat plate*
- 6 Thou shalt part it in pieces, and pour oil thereon: it is a meal-offering.
- 7 And if thy oblation be a meal-offering of the frying-pan, it shall be made of fine flour with oil.
- 8 And thou shalt bring the meal-offering that is made of these things unto Jehovah: and it shall be presented unto the priest, and he shall bring it unto the altar.
- 9 And the priest shall take up from the meal-offering the memorial thereof, and shall burn it upon the altar, an offering made by fire, of a sweet savor unto Jehovah.
- 10 And that which is left of the meal-offering shall be Aaron's and his sons': it is a thing most holy of the offerings of Jehovah made by fire.
- 11 ¶ No meal-offering, which ye shall offer unto Jehovah, shall be made with leaven; for ye shall burn no leaven, nor any honey, as an offering made by fire unto Jehovah.
- 12 As an oblation of first-fruits ye shall offer them unto Jehovah: but they shall not come up for a sweet savor on the altar.
- 13 And every oblation of thy meal-offering shalt thou season with salt; neither shalt thou suffer the salt of the covenant of thy God to be lacking from thy meal-offering: with all thine oblations thou shalt offer salt.
- 14 And if thou offer a meal-offering of first-fruits unto Jehovah, thou shalt offer for the meal-offering of thy first-fruits grain in the ear parched with fire, bruised grain of the fresh ear.
- 15 And thou shalt put oil upon it, and lay frankincense thereon: it is a meal-offering.
- 16 And the priest shall burn the memorial of it, part of the bruised grain thereof, and part of the oil thereof, with all the frankincense thereof: it is an offering made by fire unto Jehovah.

**Leviticus 3**

- 1 ¶ And if his oblation be a sacrifice of *{1}* peace-offerings; if he offer of the herd, whether male or female, he shall offer it without blemish before Jehovah. *{1} Or thank-offerings*
- 2 And he shall lay his hand upon the head of his oblation, and kill it at the door of the tent of meeting: and Aaron's sons the priests shall sprinkle the blood upon the altar round about.
- 3 And he shall offer of the sacrifice of peace-offerings an offering made by fire unto Jehovah; the fat that covereth the inwards, and all the fat that is upon the inwards,
- 4 and the two kidneys, and the fat that is on them, which is by the loins, and the caul upon the liver, *{1}* with the kidneys, shall he take away. *{1} Or which he shall take away by the kidneys*
- 5 And Aaron's sons shall burn it on the altar upon the burnt-offering, which is upon the wood that is on the fire: it is an offering made by fire, of a sweet savor unto Jehovah.
- 6 ¶ And if his oblation for a sacrifice of peace-offerings unto Jehovah be of the flock; male or female, he shall offer it without blemish.
- 7 If he offer a lamb for his oblation, then shall he offer it before Jehovah;
- 8 and he shall lay his hand upon the head of his oblation, and kill it before the tent of meeting: and Aaron's sons shall sprinkle the blood thereof upon the altar round about.
- 9 And he shall offer of the sacrifice of peace-offerings an offering made by fire unto Jehovah; the fat thereof, the fat tail entire, he shall take away hard by the backbone; and the fat that covereth the inwards, and all the fat that is upon the inwards,
- 10 and the two kidneys, and the fat that is upon them, which is by the loins, and the caul upon the liver, with the kidneys, shall he take away.
- 11 And the priest shall burn it upon the altar: it is the *{1}* food of the offering made by fire unto Jehovah. *{1} Heb bread*
- 12 And if his oblation be a goat, then he shall offer it before Jehovah:
- 13 and he shall lay his hand upon the head of it, and kill it before the tent of meeting; and the sons of Aaron shall sprinkle the blood thereof upon the altar round about.
- 14 And he shall offer thereof his oblation, *even* an offering made by fire unto Jehovah; the fat that covereth the inwards, and all the fat that is upon the inwards,
- 15 and the two kidneys, and the fat that is upon them, which is by the loins, and the caul upon the liver, with the kidneys, shall he take away.
- 16 And the priest shall burn them upon the altar: it is the food of the offering made by fire, for a sweet savor; all the fat is Jehovah's.



17 It shall be a perpetual statute throughout your generations in all your dwellings, that ye shall eat neither fat nor blood.

---

b- The Meal offering (2.)

- (1) A non-blood offering. It prefigures Christ in His sinless humanity.
- (2) Fine flour (as unleavened bread) baked in fry pan or oven.
- (3) offered in evening and evening following the Burnt offering.

c- The Peace Offering (3.)

- (1) offered only at Pentecost
  - (2) Part given to Priest - Part eaten by offerer.
  - (3) It depicts Fellowship.
- 

Because of length of text, Ch. 4&5 is backed up.

#### Leviticus 4

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 2 Speak unto the children of Israel, saying, If any one shall sin {1} unwittingly, in any of the things which Jehovah hath commanded not to be done, and shall do any one of them: {1} Or through error
- 3 if the anointed priest shall sin so as to bring guilt on the people, then let him offer for his sin, which he hath sinned, a young bullock without blemish unto Jehovah for a sin-offering.
- 4 And he shall bring the bullock unto the door of the tent of meeting before Jehovah; and he shall lay his hand upon the head of the bullock, and kill the bullock before Jehovah.
- 5 And the anointed priest shall take of the blood of the bullock, and bring it to the tent of meeting:
- 6 and the priest shall dip his finger in the blood, and sprinkle of the blood seven times before Jehovah, before the veil of the sanctuary.
- 7 And the priest shall put of the blood upon the horns of the altar of sweet incense before Jehovah, which is in the tent of meeting; and all the blood of the bullock shall he pour out at the base of the altar of burnt-offering, which is at the door of the tent of meeting.
- 8 And all the fat of the bullock of the sin-offering he shall take off from it; the fat that covereth the inwards, and all the fat that is upon the inwards,
- 9 and the two kidneys, and the fat that is upon them, which is by the loins, and the caul upon the liver, with the kidneys, shall he take away,
- 10 as it is taken off from the ox of the sacrifice of peace-offerings: and the priest shall burn them upon the altar of burnt-offering.
- 11 And the skin of the bullock, and all its flesh, with its head, and with its legs, and its inwards, and its dung,
- 12 even the whole bullock shall he carry forth without the camp unto a clean place, where the ashes are poured out, and burn it on wood with fire: where the ashes are poured out shall it be burnt.
- 13 ¶ And if the whole congregation of Israel err, and the thing be hid from the eyes of the assembly, and they have done any of the things which Jehovah hath commanded not to be done, and are guilty;
- 14 when the sin wherein they have sinned is known, then the assembly shall offer a young bullock for a sin-offering, and bring it before the tent of meeting.
- 15 And the elders of the congregation shall lay their hands upon the head of the bullock before Jehovah; and the bullock shall be killed before Jehovah.
- 16 And the anointed priest shall bring of the blood of the bullock to the tent of meeting:
- 17 and the priest shall dip his finger in the blood, and sprinkle it seven times before Jehovah, before the veil.
- 18 And he shall put of the blood upon the horns of the altar which is before Jehovah, that is in the tent of meeting; and all the blood shall he pour out at the base of the altar of burnt-offering, which is at the door of the tent of meeting.
- 19 And all the fat thereof shall he take off from it, and burn it upon the altar.
- 20 Thus shall he do with the bullock; as he did with the bullock of the sin-offering, so shall he do with this; and the priest shall make atonement for them, and they shall be forgiven.
- 21 And he shall carry forth the bullock without the camp, and burn it as he burned the first bullock: it is the sin-

offering for the assembly.

- 22 ¶ When a ruler sinneth, and doeth unwittingly any one of all the things which Jehovah his God hath commanded not to be done, and is guilty;
- 23 if his sin, wherein he hath sinned, be made known to him, he shall bring for his oblation a goat, a male without blemish.
- 24 And he shall lay his hand upon the head of the goat, and kill it in the place where they kill the burnt-offering before Jehovah: it is a sin-offering.
- 25 And the priest shall take of the blood of the sin-offering with his finger, and put it upon the horns of the altar of burnt-offering; and the blood thereof shall he pour out at the base of the altar of burnt-offering.
- 26 And all the fat thereof shall he burn upon the altar, as the fat of the sacrifice of peace-offerings; and the priest shall make atonement for him as concerning his sin, and he shall be forgiven.
- 27 ¶ And if any one of the *{1}* common people sin unwittingly, in doing any of the things which Jehovah hath commanded not to be done, and be guilty; *{1}* *Heb people of the land*
- 28 if his sin, which he hath sinned, be made known to him, then he shall bring for his oblation a goat, a female without blemish, for his sin which he hath sinned.
- 29 And he shall lay his hand upon the head of the sin-offering, and kill the sin-offering in the place of burnt-offering.
- 30 And the priest shall take of the blood thereof with his finger, and put it upon the horns of the altar of burnt-offering; and all the blood thereof shall he pour out at the base of the altar.
- 31 And all the fat thereof shall he take away, as the fat is taken away from off the sacrifice of peace-offerings; and the priest shall burn it upon the altar for a sweet savor unto Jehovah; and the priest shall make atonement for him, and he shall be forgiven.
- 32 And if he bring a lamb as his oblation for a sin-offering, he shall bring it a female without blemish.
- 33 And he shall lay his hand upon the head of the sin-offering, and kill it for a sin-offering in the place where they kill the burnt-offering.
- 34 And the priest shall take of the blood of the sin-offering with his finger, and put it upon the horns of the altar of burnt-offering; and all the blood thereof shall he pour out at the base of the altar.
- 35 And all the fat thereof shall he take away, as the fat of the lamb is taken away from the sacrifice of peace-offerings; and the priest shall burn them on the altar, *{1}* upon the offerings of Jehovah made by fire; and the priest shall make atonement for him as touching his sin that he hath sinned, and he shall be forgiven. *{1}* *Or after the manner of*

### Leviticus 5

- 1 ¶ And if any one sin, in that he heareth the voice of adjuration, he being a witness, whether he hath seen or known, if he do not utter *it*, then he shall bear his iniquity.
- 2 Or if any one touch any unclean thing, whether it be the carcass of an unclean beast, or the carcass of unclean cattle, or the carcass of unclean creeping things, and it be hidden from him, and he be unclean, then he shall be guilty.
- 3 Or if he touch the uncleanness of man, whatsoever his uncleanness be wherewith he is unclean, and it be hid from him; when he knoweth of it, then he shall be guilty.
- 4 Or if any one swear rashly with his lips to do evil, or to do good, whatsoever it be that a man shall utter rashly with an oath, and it be hid from him; when he knoweth of it, then he shall be guilty in one of these *things*.
- 5 And it shall be, when he shall be guilty in one of these *things*, that he shall confess that wherein he hath sinned:
- 6 and he shall bring *{1}* his trespass-offering unto Jehovah for his sin which he hath sinned, a female from the flock, a lamb or a goat, for a sin-offering; and the priest shall make atonement for him as concerning his sin. *{1}* *Or for his guilt*
- 7 ¶ And if his means suffice not for a lamb, then he shall bring his trespass-offering for that wherein he hath sinned, two turtle-doves, or two young pigeons, unto Jehovah; one for a sin-offering, and the other for a burnt-offering.
- 8 And he shall bring them unto the priest, who shall offer that which is for the sin-offering first, and *{1}* wring off its head from its neck, but shall not divide it asunder: *{1}* *Or pinch*
- 9 and he shall sprinkle of the blood of the sin-offering upon the side of the altar; and the rest of the blood shall be drained out at the base of the altar: it is a sin-offering.
- 10 And he shall *{1}* offer the second for a burnt-offering, according to the ordinance; and the priest shall make atonement for him as concerning his sin which he hath sinned, and he shall be forgiven. *{1}* *Or prepare*
- 11 But if his means suffice not for two turtle-doves, or two young pigeons, then he shall bring his oblation for that wherein he hath sinned, the tenth part of an ephah of fine flour for a sin-offering: he shall put no oil upon it, neither shall he put any frankincense thereon; for it is a sin-offering.
- 12 And he shall bring it to the priest, and the priest shall take his handful of it as the memorial thereof, and burn it on the altar, *{1}* upon the offerings of Jehovah made by fire: it is a sin-offering. *{1}* *Or after the manner of*
- 13 And the priest shall make atonement for him as touching his sin that he hath sinned in any of these things, and he shall be forgiven: and *the remnant* shall be the priest's, as the meal-offering.

2- The Non-Sweet-Savour Offerings (4:1.-6:7.)

a- The Sin offering (4:1.-5:13.)

- (1) offered only for unintentional sins
- (2) offered every feast day for Corporate Sins - the whole Nation.

**Leviticus 5 (cont.)**

- 14 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 15 If any one commit a trespass, and sin unwittingly, in the holy things of Jehovah; then he shall bring his trespass-offering unto Jehovah, a ram without blemish out of the flock, according to thy estimation in silver by shekels, after the shekel of the sanctuary, for a trespass-offering:
- 16 and he shall make restitution for that which he hath done amiss in the holy thing, and shall add the fifth part thereto, and give it unto the priest; and the priest shall make atonement for him with the ram of the trespass-offering, and he shall be forgiven.
- 17 And if any one sin, and do any of the things which Jehovah hath commanded not to be done; though he knew it not, yet is he guilty, and shall bear his iniquity.
- 18 And he shall bring a ram without blemish out of the flock, according to thy estimation, for a trespass-offering, unto the priest; and the priest shall make atonement for him concerning the thing wherein he erred unwittingly and knew it not, and he shall be forgiven.
- 19 It is a trespass-offering: he is certainly guilty before Jehovah.

**Leviticus 6**

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 2 If any one sin, and commit a trespass against Jehovah, and deal falsely with his neighbor in a matter of deposit, or of *{1}* bargain, or of robbery, or have oppressed his neighbor, *{1}* Or *pledge*
- 3 or have found that which was lost, and deal falsely therein, and swear to a lie; in any of all these things that a man doeth, sinning therein;
- 4 then it shall be, if he hath sinned, and is guilty, that he shall restore that which he took by robbery, or the thing which he hath gotten by oppression, or the deposit which was committed to him, or the lost thing which he found,
- 5 or any thing about which he hath sworn falsely; he shall even restore it in full, and shall add the fifth part more thereto: unto him to whom it appertaineth shall he give it, in the day of his being found guilty.
- 6 And he shall bring his trespass-offering unto Jehovah, a ram without blemish out of the flock, according to thy estimation, for a trespass-offering, unto the priest:
- 7 and the priest shall make atonement for him before Jehovah; and he shall be forgiven concerning whatsoever he doeth so as to be guilty thereby.

## b- The Trespass Offering

(5:14.-6:7.)

- (1) offered by individuals guilty of the invasion of the rights of other.
- (2) offered by individuals guilty of breaking a vow.
- (3) Not Tithing.
- (4) Bad business practices, etc.

---

Because of length of text, Ch. 6 Cont. & 7 are backed up.

**Leviticus 6 cont.**

- 8 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 9 Command Aaron and his sons, saying, This is the law of the burnt-offering: the burnt-offering shall be *{1}* on the hearth upon the altar all night unto the morning; and the fire of the altar shall be kept burning thereon. *{1} Or on its firewood}*
- 10 And the priest shall put on his linen garment, and his linen breeches shall he put upon his flesh; and he shall take up the ashes whereto the fire hath consumed the burnt-offering on the altar, and he shall put them beside the altar.
- 11 And he shall put off his garments, and put on other garments, and carry forth the ashes without the camp unto a clean place.
- 12 And the fire upon the altar shall be kept burning thereon, it shall not go out; and the priest shall burn wood on it every morning: and he shall lay the burnt-offering in order upon it, and shall burn thereon the fat of the peace-offerings.
- 13 Fire shall be kept burning upon the altar continually; it shall not go out.
- 14 ¶ And this is the law of the meal-offering: the sons of Aaron shall offer it before Jehovah, before the altar.
- 15 And he shall take up therefrom his handful, of the fine flour of the meal-offering, and of the oil thereof, and all the frankincense which is upon the meal-offering, and shall burn it upon the altar for a sweet savor, as the memorial thereof, unto Jehovah.
- 16 And that which is left thereof shall Aaron and his sons eat: it shall be eaten without leaven in a holy place; in the court of the tent of meeting they shall eat it.
- 17 It shall not be baked with leaven. I have given it as their portion of my offerings made by fire; it is most holy, as the sin-offering, and as the trespass-offering.
- 18 Every male among the children of Aaron shall eat of it, as *his* portion for ever throughout your generations, from the offerings of Jehovah made by fire: whosoever toucheth them shall be holy.
- 19 And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 20 This is the oblation of Aaron and of his sons, which they shall offer unto Jehovah in the day when he is anointed: the tenth part of an ephah of fine flour for a meal-offering perpetually, half of it in the morning, and half thereof in the evening.
- 21 On a baking-pan it shall be made with oil; when it is soaked, thou shalt bring it in: in *{1}* baked pieces shalt thou offer the meal-offering for a sweet savor unto Jehovah. *{1} The meaning of the Hebrew word is uncertain.*
- 22 And the anointed priest that shall be in his stead from among his sons shall offer it: by a statute for ever it shall be wholly burnt unto Jehovah.
- 23 And every meal-offering of the priest shall be wholly burnt: it shall not be eaten.
- 24 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 25 Speak unto Aaron and to his sons, saying, This is the law of the sin-offering: in the place where the burnt-offering is killed shall the sin-offering be killed before Jehovah: it is most holy.
- 26 The priest that offereth it for sin shall eat it: in a holy place shall it be eaten, in the court of the tent of meeting.
- 27 *{1}* Whatsoever shall touch the flesh thereof shall be holy; and when there is sprinkled of the blood thereof upon any garment, thou shalt wash that whereon it was sprinkled in a holy place. *{1} Or Whosoever}*
- 28 But the earthen vessel wherein it is boiled shall be broken; and if it be boiled in a brazen vessel, it shall be scoured, and rinsed in water.
- 29 Every male among the priests shall eat thereof: it is most holy.
- 30 And no sin-offering, whereof any of the blood is brought into the tent of meeting to make atonement in the holy

place, shall be eaten: it shall be burnt with fire.

**Leviticus 7**

- 1 ¶ And this is the law of the trespass-offering: it is most holy.
- 2 In the place where they kill the burnt-offering shall they kill the trespass-offering; and the blood thereof shall he sprinkle upon the altar round about.
- 3 And he shall offer of it all the fat thereof: the fat tail, and the fat that covereth the inwards,
- 4 and the two kidneys, and the fat that is on them, which is by the loins, and the caul upon the liver, with the kidneys, shall he take away;
- 5 and the priest shall burn them upon the altar for an offering made by fire unto Jehovah: it is a trespass-offering.
- 6 Every male among the priests shall eat thereof: it shall be eaten in a holy place: it is most holy.
- 7 As is the sin-offering, so is the trespass-offering; there is one law for them: the priest that maketh atonement therewith, he shall have it.
- 8 And the priest that offereth any man's burnt-offering, even the priest shall have to himself the skin of the burnt-offering which he hath offered.
- 9 And every meal-offering that is baked in the oven, and all that is dressed in the frying-pan, and on the baking-pan, shall be the priest's that offereth it.
- 10 And every meal-offering, mingled with oil, or dry, shall all the sons of Aaron have, one as well as another.
- 11 ¶ And this is the law of the sacrifice of peace-offerings, which one shall offer unto Jehovah.
- 12 If he offer it for a thanksgiving, then he shall offer with the sacrifice of thanksgiving unleavened cakes mingled with oil, and unleavened wafers anointed with oil, and cakes mingled with oil, of fine flour soaked.
- 13 With cakes of leavened bread he shall offer his oblation with the sacrifice of his peace-offerings for thanksgiving.
- 14 And of it he shall offer one out of each oblation for a heave-offering unto Jehovah; it shall be the priest's that sprinkleth the blood of the peace-offerings.
- 15 And the flesh of the sacrifice of his peace-offerings for thanksgiving shall be eaten on the day of his oblation; he shall not leave any of it until the morning.
- 16 But if the sacrifice of his oblation be a vow, or a freewill-offering, it shall be eaten on the day that he offereth his sacrifice; and on the morrow that which remaineth of it shall be eaten:
- 17 but that which remaineth of the flesh of the sacrifice on the third day shall be burnt with fire.
- 18 And if any of the flesh of the sacrifice of his peace-offerings be eaten on the third day, it shall not be accepted, neither shall it be imputed unto him that offereth it: it shall be an abomination, and the soul that eateth of it shall bear his iniquity.
- 19 And the flesh that toucheth any unclean thing shall not be eaten; it shall be burnt with fire. And as for the flesh, every one that is clean shall eat thereof:
- 20 but the soul that eateth of the flesh of the sacrifice of peace-offerings, that pertain unto Jehovah, having his uncleanness upon him, that soul shall be cut off from his people.
- 21 And when any one shall touch any unclean thing, the uncleanness of man, or an unclean beast, or any unclean abomination, and eat of the flesh of the sacrifice of peace-offerings, which pertain unto Jehovah, that soul shall be cut off from his people.
- 22 And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 23 Speak unto the children of Israel, saying, Ye shall eat no fat, of ox, or sheep, or goat.
- 24 And the fat of that which dieth of itself, and the fat of that which is torn of beasts, may be used for any other service; but ye shall in no wise eat of it.
- 25 For whosoever eateth the fat of the beast, of which men offer an offering made by fire unto Jehovah, even the soul that eateth it shall be cut off from his people.
- 26 And ye shall eat no manner of blood, whether it be of bird or of beast, in any of your dwellings.
- 27 Whosoever it be that eateth any blood, that soul shall be cut off from his people.
- 28 And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 29 Speak unto the children of Israel, saying, He that offereth the sacrifice of his peace-offerings unto Jehovah shall bring his oblation unto Jehovah out of the sacrifice of his peace-offerings:
- 30 his own hands shall bring the offerings of Jehovah made by fire; the fat with the breast shall he bring, that the breast may be waved for a wave-offering before Jehovah.
- 31 And the priest shall burn the fat upon the altar; but the breast shall be Aaron's and his sons'.
- 32 And the right *{1}* thigh shall ye give unto the priest for a heave-offering out of the sacrifices of your peace-offerings. *{1} Or shoulder*
- 33 He among the sons of Aaron that offereth the blood of the peace-offerings, and the fat, shall have the right *{1}* thigh for a portion. *{1} Or shoulder*
- 34 For the wave-breast and the heave *{1}* thigh have I taken of the children of Israel out of the sacrifices of their peace-offerings, and have given them unto Aaron the priest and unto his sons as *their* portion for ever from the children of Israel. *{1} Or shoulder*
- 35 ¶ This is the *{1}* anointing-portion of Aaron, and the anointing-portion of his sons, out of the offerings of

Jehovah made by fire, in the day when he presented them to minister unto Jehovah in the priest's office; *{1} Or portion*

- 36 which Jehovah commanded to be given them of the children of Israel, in the day that he anointed them. It is *their* portion for ever throughout their generations.
- 37 This is the law of the burnt-offering, of the meal-offering, and of the sin-offering, and of the trespass-offering, and of the consecration, and of the sacrifice of peace-offerings;
- 38 which Jehovah commanded Moses in mount Sinai, in the day that he commanded the children of Israel to offer their oblations unto Jehovah, in the wilderness of Sinai.

---

3-	The Special Instructions For The Priests	(6:8-7:38)
a-	The Burnt Offerings	vs. 6:8-13
b-	The Meal offerings	vs. 14-23
c-	The Sin Offerings	vs. 24-30
d-	The Trespass Offerings	vs. 7:1-10
e-	The Peace Offerings	vs. 11-38

---

Because of length of text, Ch. 8 & 9 are backed up.

### Leviticus 8

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 2 Take Aaron and his sons with him, and the garments, and the anointing oil, and the bullock of the sin-offering, and the two rams, and the basket of unleavened bread;
- 3 and assemble thou all the congregation at the door of the tent of meeting.
- 4 And Moses did as Jehovah commanded him; and the congregation was assembled at the door of the tent of meeting.
- 5 And Moses said unto the congregation, This is the thing which Jehovah hath commanded to be done.
- 6 And Moses brought Aaron and his sons, and washed them with water.
- 7 And he put upon him the coat, and girded him with the girdle, and clothed him with the robe, and put the ephod upon him, and he girded him with the skilfully woven band of the ephod, and bound it unto him therewith.
- 8 And he placed the breastplate upon him: and in the breastplate he put *{1}* the Urim and the Thummim. *{1} That is the Lights and the Perfections*
- 9 And he set the *{1}* mitre upon his head; and upon the *{1}* mitre, in front, did he set the golden plate, the holy crown; as Jehovah commanded Moses. *{1} Or turban*
- 10 And Moses took the anointing oil, and anointed the tabernacle and all that was therein, and sanctified them.
- 11 And he sprinkled thereof upon the altar seven times, and anointed the altar and all its vessels, and the laver and its base, to sanctify them.
- 12 And he poured of the anointing oil upon Aaron's head, and anointed him, to sanctify him.
- 13 And Moses brought Aaron's sons, and clothed them with coats, and girded them with girdles, and bound head-tires upon them; as Jehovah commanded Moses.
- 14 ¶ And he brought the bullock of the sin-offering: and Aaron and his sons laid their hands upon the head of the bullock of the sin-offering.
- 15 And he slew it; and Moses took the blood, and put it upon the horns of the altar round about with his finger, and purified the altar, and poured out the blood at the base of the altar, and sanctified it, to make atonement for it.
- 16 And he took all the fat that was upon the inwards, and the caul of the liver, and the two kidneys, and their fat; and Moses burned it upon the altar.
- 17 But the bullock, and its skin, and its flesh, and its dung, he burnt with fire without the camp; as Jehovah commanded Moses.
- 18 And he presented the ram of the burnt-offering: and Aaron and his sons laid their hands upon the head of the ram.
- 19 And he killed it; and Moses sprinkled the blood upon the altar round about.
- 20 And he cut the ram into its pieces; and Moses burnt the head, and the pieces, and the fat.
- 21 And he washed the inwards and the legs with water; and Moses burnt the whole ram upon the altar: it was a burnt-offering for a sweet savor: it was an offering made by fire unto Jehovah; as Jehovah commanded Moses.

- 22 And he presented the other ram, the ram of consecration: and Aaron and his sons laid their hands upon the head of the ram.
- 23 And he slew it; and Moses took of the blood thereof, and put it upon the tip of Aaron's right ear, and upon the thumb of his right hand, and upon the great toe of his right foot.
- 24 And he brought Aaron's sons; and Moses put of the blood upon the tip of their right ear, and upon the thumb of their right hand, and upon the great toe of their right foot: and Moses sprinkled the blood upon the altar round about.
- 25 And he took the fat, and the fat tail, and all the fat that was upon the inwards, and the caul of the liver, and the two kidneys, and their fat, and the right *{1}* thigh: *{1}* Or shoulder
- 26 and out of the basket of unleavened bread, that was before Jehovah, he took one unleavened cake, and one cake of oiled bread, and one wafer, and placed them on the fat, and upon the right thigh:
- 27 and he put the whole upon the hands of Aaron, and upon the hands of his sons, and waved them for a wave-offering before Jehovah.
- 28 And Moses took them from off their hands, and burnt them on the altar upon the burnt-offering: they were a consecration for a sweet savor: it was an offering made by fire unto Jehovah.

### Leviticus 9

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass on the eighth day, that Moses called Aaron and his sons, and the elders of Israel;
- 2 and he said unto Aaron, Take thee a calf of the herd for a sin-offering, and a ram for a burnt-offering, without blemish, and offer them before Jehovah.
- 3 And unto the children of Israel thou shalt speak, saying, Take ye a he-goat for a sin-offering; and a calf and a lamb, both a year old, without blemish, for a burnt-offering;
- 4 and an ox and a ram for peace-offerings, to sacrifice before Jehovah; and a meal-offering mingled with oil: for to-day Jehovah appeareth unto you.
- 5 And they brought that which Moses commanded before the tent of meeting: and all the congregation drew near and stood before Jehovah.
- 6 And Moses said, This is the thing which Jehovah commanded that ye should do: and the glory of Jehovah shall appear unto you.
- 7 And Moses said unto Aaron, Draw near unto the altar, and offer thy sin-offering, and thy burnt-offering, and make atonement for thyself, and for the people; and offer the oblation of the people, and make atonement for them; as Jehovah commanded.
- 8 ¶ So Aaron drew near unto the altar, and slew the calf of the sin-offering, which was for himself.
- 9 And the sons of Aaron presented the blood unto him; and he dipped his finger in the blood, and put it upon the horns of the altar, and poured out the blood at the base of the altar:
- 10 but the fat, and the kidneys, and the caul from the liver of the sin-offering, he burnt upon the altar; as Jehovah commanded Moses.
- 11 And the flesh and the skin he burnt with fire without the camp.
- 12 And he slew the burnt-offering; and Aaron's sons delivered unto him the blood, and he sprinkled it upon the altar round about.
- 13 And they delivered the burnt-offering unto him, piece by piece, and the head: and he burnt them upon the altar.
- 14 And he washed the inwards and the legs, and burnt them upon the burnt-offering on the altar.
- 15 And he presented the people's oblation, and took the goat of the sin-offering which was for the people, and slew it, and offered it for sin, as the first.
- 16 And he presented the burnt-offering, and offered it according to the ordinance.
- 17 And he presented the meal-offering, and filled his hand therefrom, and burnt it upon the altar, besides the burnt-offering of the morning.
- 18 He slew also the ox and the ram, the sacrifice of peace-offerings, which was for the people: and Aaron's sons delivered unto him the blood, which he sprinkled upon the altar round about,
- 19 and the fat of the ox and of the ram, the fat tail, and that which covereth *the inwards*, and the kidneys, and the caul of the liver:
- 20 and they put the fat upon the breasts, and he burnt the fat upon the altar:
- 21 and the breasts and the right thigh Aaron waved for a wave-offering before Jehovah; as Moses commanded.
- 22 And Aaron lifted up his hands toward the people, and blessed them; and he came down from offering the sin-offering, and the burnt-offering, and the peace-offerings.
- 23 ¶ And Moses and Aaron went into the tent of meeting, and came out, and blessed the people: and the glory of Jehovah appeared unto all the people.
- 24 And there came forth fire from before Jehovah, and consumed upon the altar the burnt-offering and the fat: and when all the people saw it, they shouted, and fell on their faces.



**B- The laws Of The Priesthood.****8. - 10**

- 1- The Consecration of the Priests (8.)
  - a- Cleansed with water (8:1-6).
  - b- Clothed with special garments (7-9).
  - c- Anointed with oil (10-12). - High priests and sons.
  - d- Consecrated with blood (14-30). - All but the Trespass offering. (Cont. on next page)
  - e- Dwelling in the Tabernacle seven days (31-36)  
- Aaron + 4 sons.
- 2- The Ministration of the Priests (9.)
  - a- The sacrificial system begins by the House of Aaron vs. 1-21
  - b- The blessing pronounced vs. 22-23
  - c- Fire from The LORD signifies acceptance vs. 23-24
    - Consumes offerings on the altar (Brazen) Burnt + Meal with frankincense and the fat of the sin offering.

## Leviticus 10

- 1 ¶ And Nadab and Abihu, the sons of Aaron, took each of them his censer, and put fire therein, and laid incense thereon, and offered strange fire before Jehovah, which he had not commanded them.
- 2 And there came forth fire from before Jehovah, and devoured them, and they died before Jehovah.
- 3 ¶ Then Moses said unto Aaron, This is it that Jehovah spake, saying, I will be sanctified in them that *{1}* come nigh me, and before all the people I will be glorified. And Aaron held his peace. *{1}* *Or are nigh*
- 4 And Moses called Mishael and Elzaphan, the sons of Uzziel the uncle of Aaron, and said unto them, Draw near, carry your brethren from before the sanctuary out of the camp.
- 5 So they drew near, and carried them in their coats out of the camp, as Moses had said.
- 6 And Moses said unto Aaron, and unto Eleazar and unto Ithamar, his sons, *{1}* Let not the hair of your heads go loose, neither rend your clothes; that ye die not, and that he be not wroth with all the congregation: but let your brethren, the whole house of Israel, bewail the burning which Jehovah hath kindled. *{1}* *According to Sept, Vulg, and Syr Uncover not your heads*
- 7 And ye shall not go out from the door of the tent of meeting, lest ye die; for the anointing oil of Jehovah is upon you. And they did according to the word of Moses.
- 8 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Aaron, saying,
- 9 Drink no wine nor strong drink, thou, nor thy sons with thee, when ye go into the tent of meeting, that ye die not: it shall be a statute for ever throughout your generations:
- 10 and *{1}* that ye may make a distinction between the holy and the common, and between the unclean and the clean; *{1}* *Or ye shall*
- 11 and *{1}* that ye may teach the children of Israel all the statutes which Jehovah hath spoken unto them by Moses. *{1}* *Or ye shall*
- 12 ¶ And Moses spake unto Aaron, and unto Eleazar and unto Ithamar, his sons that were left, Take the meal-offering that remaineth of the offerings of Jehovah made by fire, and eat it without leaven beside the altar; for it is most holy;
- 13 and ye shall eat it in a holy place, because it is thy portion, and thy sons' portion, of the offerings of Jehovah made by fire: for so I am commanded.
- 14 And the wave-breast and the heave-thigh shall ye eat in a clean place, thou, and thy sons, and thy daughters with thee: for they are given as thy portion, and thy sons' portion, out of the sacrifices of the peace-offerings of the children of Israel.
- 15 The heave-thigh and the wave-breast shall they bring with the offerings made by fire of the fat, to wave it for a wave-offering before Jehovah: and it shall be thine, and thy sons' with thee, as a portion for ever; as Jehovah hath commanded.
- 16 And Moses diligently sought the goat of the sin-offering, and, behold, it was burnt: and he was angry with Eleazar and with Ithamar, the sons of Aaron that were left, saying,
- 17 Wherefore have ye not eaten the sin-offering in the place of the sanctuary, seeing it is most holy, and he hath given it you *{1}* to bear the iniquity of the congregation, to make atonement for them before Jehovah? *{1}* *Or to take away*
- 18 Behold, the blood of it was not brought into the sanctuary within: ye should certainly have eaten it in the sanctuary, as I commanded.
- 19 And Aaron spake unto Moses, Behold, this day have they offered their sin-offering and their burnt-offering before Jehovah; and there have befallen me such things as these: and if I had eaten the sin-offering to-day, would it have been well-pleasing in the sight of Jehovah?
- 20 And when Moses heard *that*, it was well-pleasing in his sight.

## 3- The violation by the Priests (10.)

## a- The sin of Nadab and Abihu vs. 1-11

- (1) Strange Fire Offered - Failed to light incense from the brazen altar vs. 9
- (2) Fire from the LORD devours them.
- (3) Moses' warning not to bewail the dead. - They are not allowed to mourn for their two sons because that would question of God's Judgment!

## b- The sin of Eleazar and Ithamar vs. 12-20

- (1) Failed to eat meat of the sin-offering Required of Ruler, Priests and whole Nation. vs. 17
- (2) Blood not brought into the Holy Place. vs. 18
- (3) Explanation accepted by Moses. vs. 19

---

Because of length of text, Ch. 11 & 12 are backed up.

**Leviticus 11**

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses and to Aaron, saying unto them,
- 2 Speak unto the children of Israel, saying, These are the living things which ye may eat among all the beasts that are on the earth.
- 3 Whatsoever parteth the hoof, and is clovenfooted, *and {1} cheweth the cud*, among the beasts, that may ye eat. *{1} Heb bringeth up}*
- 4 Nevertheless these shall ye not eat of them that chew the cud, or of them that part the hoof: the camel, because he *{1} cheweth the cud but parteth not the hoof*, he is unclean unto you. *{1} Heb bringeth up}*
- 5 And the *{1} coney*, because he *{2} cheweth the cud but parteth not the hoof*, he is unclean unto you. *{1} Heb shaphan, the Hyrax Syriacus or rock-badger 2) Heb bringeth up}*
- 6 And the hare, because she *{1} cheweth the cud but parteth not the hoof*, she is unclean unto you. *{1} Heb bringeth up}*
- 7 And the swine, because he parteth the hoof, and is clovenfooted, but *{1} cheweth not the cud*, he is unclean unto you. *{1} Heb bringeth up}*
- 8 Of their flesh ye shall not eat, and their carcasses ye shall not touch; they are unclean unto you.
- 9 ¶ These may ye eat of all that are in the waters: whatsoever hath fins and scales in the waters, in the seas, and in the rivers, that may ye eat.
- 10 And all that have not fins and scales in the seas, and in the rivers, of all that move in the waters, and of all the living creatures that are in the waters, they are an abomination unto you,
- 11 and they shall be an abomination unto you; ye shall not eat of their flesh, and their carcasses ye shall have in abomination.
- 12 Whatsoever hath no fins nor scales in the waters, that is an abomination unto you.
- 13 And these ye shall have in abomination among the birds; they shall not be eaten, they are an abomination: the *{1} eagle*, and the gier-eagle, and the ospray, *{1} Or great vulture}*
- 14 and the kite, and the falcon after its kind,
- 15 every raven after its kind,
- 16 and the ostrich, and the *{1} night-hawk*, and the sea-mew, and the hawk after its kind, *{1} Heb tahmas, of uncertain meaning}*
- 17 and the little owl, and the cormorant, and the great owl,
- 18 and the *{1} horned owl*, and the pelican, and the vulture, *{1} Or swan}*
- 19 and the stork, the *{1} heron* after its kind, and the hoopoe, and the bat. *{1} Or ibis}*
- 20 ¶ All winged creeping things that go upon all fours are an abomination unto you.
- 21 Yet these may ye eat of all winged creeping things that go upon all fours, which have legs above their feet, wherewith to leap upon the earth.
- 22 Even these of them ye may eat: the *{1} locust* after its kind, and the *{1} bald locust* after its kind, and the *{1} cricket* after its kind, and the *{1} grasshopper* after its kind. *{1} Four kinds of locusts or grasshoppers, which are not certainly known.}*
- 23 But all winged creeping things, which have four feet, are an abomination unto you.
- 24 And by these ye shall become unclean: whosoever toucheth the carcass of them shall be unclean until the even;
- 25 And whosoever beareth *aught* of the carcass of them shall wash his clothes, and be unclean until the even.
- 26 Every beast which parteth the hoof, and is not clovenfooted, nor cheweth the cud, is unclean unto you: every one that toucheth them shall be unclean.

- 27 And whatsoever goeth upon its paws, among all beasts that go on all fours, they are unclean unto you: whoso toucheth their carcass shall be unclean until the even.
- 28 And he that beareth the carcass of them shall wash his clothes, and be unclean until the even: they are unclean unto you.
- 29 And these are they which are unclean unto you among the creeping things that creep upon the earth: the weasel, and the mouse, and the great lizard after its kind,
- 30 and the {1} gecko, and the {1} land-crocodile, and the {1} lizard, and the {1} sand-lizard, and the chameleon. {1} *Words of uncertain meaning, but probably denoting four kinds of lizards.*
- 31 These are they which are unclean to you among all that creep: whosoever doth touch them, when they are dead, shall be unclean until the even.
- 32 And upon whatsoever any of them, when they are dead, doth fall, it shall be unclean; whether it be any vessel of wood, or raiment, or skin, or sack, whatsoever vessel it be, wherewith any work is done, it must be put into water, and it shall be unclean until the even; then shall it be clean.
- 33 And every earthen vessel, whereinto any of them falleth, whatsoever is in it shall be unclean, and it ye shall break.
- 34 All food *therein* which may be eaten, that on which water cometh, shall be unclean; and all drink that may be drunk in every *such* vessel shall be unclean.
- 35 And every thing whereupon *any part* of their carcass falleth shall be unclean; whether oven, or {1} range for pots, it shall be broken in pieces: they are unclean, and shall be unclean unto you. {1} *Or stewpan*
- 36 Nevertheless a fountain or a {1} pit wherein is a gathering of water shall be clean: but {2} that which toucheth their carcass shall be unclean. {1} *Or cistern* 2) *Or he who*
- 37 And if *ought* of their carcass fall upon any sowing seed which is to be sown, it is clean.
- 38 But if water be put upon the seed, and *ought* of their carcass fall thereon, it is unclean unto you.
- 39 And if any beast, of which ye may eat, die; he that toucheth the carcass thereof shall be unclean until the even.
- 40 And he that eateth of the carcass of it shall wash his clothes, and be unclean until the even: he also that beareth the carcass of it shall wash his clothes, and be unclean until the even.
- 41 And every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth is an abomination; it shall not be eaten.
- 42 Whatsoever goeth upon the belly, and whatsoever goeth upon all fours, or whatsoever hath many feet, even all creeping things that creep upon the earth, them ye shall not eat; for they are an abomination.
- 43 ¶ Ye shall not make yourselves abominable with any creeping thing that creepeth, neither shall ye make yourselves unclean with them, that ye should be defiled thereby.
- 44 For I am Jehovah your God: sanctify yourselves therefore, and be ye holy; for I am holy: neither shall ye defile yourselves with any manner of creeping thing that moveth upon the earth.
- 45 For I am Jehovah that brought you up out of the land of Egypt, to be your God: ye shall therefore be holy, for I am holy.
- 46 This is the law of the beast, and of the bird, and of every living creature that moveth in the waters, and of every creature that creepeth upon the earth;
- 47 to make a distinction between the unclean and the clean, and between the living thing that may be eaten and the living thing that may not be eaten.

**Leviticus 12**

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 2 Speak unto the children of Israel, saying, If a woman conceive seed, and bear a man-child, then she shall be unclean seven days; as in the days of the {1} impurity of her sickness shall she be unclean. {1} *Or separation*
- 3 And in the eighth day the flesh of his foreskin shall be circumcised.
- 4 And she shall continue in the blood of *her* purifying three and thirty days; she shall touch no hallowed thing, nor come into the sanctuary, until the days of her purifying be fulfilled.
- 5 But if she bear a maid-child, then she shall be unclean two weeks, as in her {1} impurity; and she shall continue in the blood of *her* purifying threescore and six days. {1} *Or separation*
- 6 ¶ And when the days of her purifying are fulfilled, for a son, or for a daughter, she shall bring a lamb a year old for a burnt-offering, and a young pigeon, or a turtle-dove, for a sin-offering, unto the door of the tent of meeting, unto the priest:
- 7 and he shall offer it before Jehovah, and make atonement for her; and she shall be cleansed from the fountain of her blood. This is the law for her that beareth, whether a male or a female.
- 8 And if her means suffice not for a lamb, then she shall take two turtle-doves, or two young pigeons; the one for a burnt-offering, and the other for a sin-offering: and the priest shall make atonement for her, and she shall be clean.

**C- The laws Concerning The People.****(11. - 16.)**

- 1- Clean Foods Specified (11.)
  - a- Animals dividing the hoof AND chewing the Cud vs. 2-8
    - may be eaten.
  - b- Seafood with Fins and Scales vs. 9-12
    - may be eaten.
  - c- Birds of prey vs.13-19
    - . - may NOT be eaten.
  - d- All insects (except 4 locust types) may NOT be eaten vs. 20-23
- 2- Clean Bodies Emphasized (11:24.-15:30.)
  - a- Sundry defilements vs. 24-27
    - (contact with dead unclean animals).
  - b- Childbirth and Purification (12.)
    - See Psalm 51.

- (1) For Male Children 40 days, for Maids 80 days vs. 2-3
- (2) Required a burnt and sin offering. vs. 4-5

---

Because of length of text, Ch. 13 is backed up.

**Leviticus 13**

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses and unto Aaron, saying,
- 2 When a man shall have in the skin of his flesh a rising, or a scab, or a bright spot, and it become in the skin of his flesh the plague of leprosy, then he shall be brought unto Aaron the priest, or unto one of his sons the priests:
- 3 and the priest shall look on the plague in the skin of the flesh: and if the hair in the plague be turned white, and the appearance of the plague be deeper than the skin of his flesh, it is the plague of leprosy; and the priest shall look on him, and pronounce him unclean.
- 4 And if the bright spot be white in the skin of his flesh, and the appearance thereof be not deeper than the skin, and the hair thereof be not turned white, then the priest shall shut up *him that hath* the plague seven days:
- 5 and the priest shall look on him the seventh day: and, behold, if in his eyes the plague be at a stay, and the plague be not spread in the skin, then the priest shall shut him up seven days more:
- 6 and the priest shall look on him again the seventh day; and, behold, if the plague be dim, and the plague be not spread in the skin, then the priest shall pronounce him clean: it is a scab: and he shall wash his clothes, and be clean.
- 7 But if the scab spread abroad in the skin, after that he hath showed himself to the priest for his cleansing, he shall show himself to the priest again:
- 8 and the priest shall look; and, behold, if the scab be spread in the skin, then the priest shall pronounce him

unclean: it is leprosy.

- 9 When the plague of leprosy is in a man, then he shall be brought unto the priest;  
10 and the priest shall look; and, behold, if there be a white rising in the skin, and it have turned the hair white, and there be quick raw flesh in the rising,  
11 it is an old leprosy in the skin of his flesh, and the priest shall pronounce him unclean: he shall not shut him up, for he is unclean.  
12 And if the leprosy break out abroad in the skin, and the leprosy cover all the skin of *him that hath* the plague from his head even to his feet, as far as appeareth to the priest;  
13 then the priest shall look; and, behold, if the leprosy have covered all his flesh, he shall pronounce *him* clean *that hath* the plague: it is all turned white: he is clean.  
14 But whensoever raw flesh appeareth in him, he shall be unclean.  
15 And the priest shall look on the raw flesh, and pronounce him unclean: the raw flesh is unclean: it is leprosy.  
16 Or if the raw flesh turn again, and be changed unto white, then he shall come unto the priest;  
17 and the priest shall look on him; and, behold, if the plague be turned into white, then the priest shall pronounce *him* clean *that hath* the plague: he is clean.  
18 ¶ And when the flesh hath in the skin thereof a boil, and it is healed,  
19 and in the place of the boil there is a white rising, or a bright spot, reddish-white, then it shall be showed to the priest;  
20 and the priest shall look; and, behold, if the appearance thereof be lower than the skin, and the hair thereof be turned white, then the priest shall pronounce him unclean: it is the plague of leprosy, it hath broken out in the boil.  
21 But if the priest look on it, and, behold, there be no white hairs therein, and it be not lower than the skin, but be dim; then the priest shall shut him up seven days:  
22 And if it spread abroad in the skin, then the priest shall pronounce him unclean: it is a plague.  
23 But if the bright spot stay in its place, and be not spread, it is the scar of the boil; and the priest shall pronounce him clean.  
24 Or when the flesh hath in the skin thereof a burning by fire, and the quick *flesh* of the burning become a bright spot, reddish-white, or white;  
25 then the priest shall look upon it; and, behold, if the hair in the bright spot be turned white, and the appearance thereof be deeper than the skin; it is leprosy, it hath broken out in the burning: and the priest shall pronounce him unclean: it is the plague of leprosy.  
26 But if the priest look on it, and, behold, there be no white hair in the bright spot, and it be no lower than the skin, but be dim; then the priest shall shut him up seven days:  
27 and the priest shall look upon him the seventh day: if it spread abroad in the skin, then the priest shall pronounce him unclean: it is the plague of leprosy.  
28 And if the bright spot stay in its place, and be not spread in the skin, but be dim; it is the rising of the burning, and the priest shall pronounce him clean: for it is the scar of the burning.  
29 And when a man or woman hath a plague upon the head or upon the beard,  
30 then the priest shall look on the plague; and, behold, if the appearance thereof be deeper than the skin, and there be in it yellow thin hair, then the priest shall pronounce him unclean: it is a scall, it is leprosy of the head or of the beard.  
31 And if the priest look on the plague of the scall, and, behold, the appearance thereof be not deeper than the skin, and there be no black hair in it, then the priest shall shut up *him that hath* the plague of the scall seven days:  
32 And in the seventh day the priest shall look on the plague; and, behold, if the scall be not spread, and there be in it no yellow hair, and the appearance of the scall be not deeper than the skin,  
33 then he shall be shaven, but the scall shall he not shave; and the priest shall shut up *him that hath* the scall seven days more:  
34 and in the seventh day the priest shall look on the scall; and, behold, if the scall be not spread in the skin, and the appearance thereof be not deeper than the skin; then the priest shall pronounce him clean: and he shall wash his clothes, and be clean.  
35 But if the scall spread abroad in the skin after his cleansing,  
36 then the priest shall look on him; and, behold, if the scall be spread in the skin, the priest shall not seek for the yellow hair; he is unclean.  
37 But if in his eyes the scall be at a stay, and black hair be grown up therein; the scall is healed, he is clean: and the priest shall pronounce him clean.  
38 ¶ And when a man or a woman hath in the skin of the flesh bright spots, even white bright spots;  
39 then the priest shall look; and, behold, if the bright spots in the skin of their flesh be of a dull white, it is a tetter, it hath broken out in the skin; he is clean.  
40 And if a man's hair be fallen off his head, he is bald; *yet* is he clean.  
41 And if his hair be fallen off from the front part of his head, he is forehead bald; *yet* is he clean.  
42 But if there be in the bald head, or the bald forehead, a reddish-white plague; it is leprosy breaking out in his

- bald head, or his bald forehead.
- 43 Then the priest shall look upon him; and, behold, if the rising of the plague be reddish-white in his bald head, or in his bald forehead, as the appearance of leprosy in the skin of the flesh;
- 44 he is a leprous man, he is unclean: the priest shall surely pronounce him unclean; his plague is in his head.
- 45 And the leper in whom the plague is, his clothes shall be rent, and the hair of his head shall go loose, and he shall cover his upper lip, and shall cry, Unclean, unclean.
- 46 All the days wherein the plague is in him he shall be unclean; he is unclean: he shall dwell alone; without the camp shall his dwelling be.
- 47 ¶ The garment also that the plague of leprosy is in, whether it be a woollen garment, or a linen garment;
- 48 whether it be in *{1}* warp, or woof; of linen, or of woollen; whether in a skin, or in anything made of skin; *{1}* *Or woven or knitted stuff* (and in verse 49, etc)}
- 49 if the plague be greenish or reddish in the garment, or in the skin, or in the warp, or in the woof, or in anything of skin; it is the plague of leprosy, and shall be showed unto the priest.
- 50 And the priest shall look upon the plague, and shut up *that which hath* the plague seven days:
- 51 and he shall look on the plague on the seventh day: if the plague be spread in the garment, either in the warp, or in the woof, or in the skin, whatever service skin is used for; the plague is a fretting leprosy; it is unclean.
- 52 And he shall burn the garment, whether the warp or the woof, in woollen or in linen, or anything of skin, wherein the plague is: for it is a fretting leprosy; it shall be burnt in the fire.
- 53 And if the priest shall look, and, behold, the plague be not spread in the garment, either in the warp, or in the woof, or in anything of skin;
- 54 then the priest shall command that they wash the thing wherein the plague is, and he shall shut it up seven days more:
- 55 and the priest shall look, after that the plague is washed; and, behold, if the plague have not changed its color, and the plague be not spread, it is unclean; thou shalt burn it in the fire: it is a fret, *{1}* whether the bareness be within or without. *{1}* *Heb. whether it be bald in the head thereof, or in the forehead thereof*
- 56 And if the priest look, and, behold, the plague be dim after the washing thereof, then he shall rend it out of the garment, or out of the skin, or out of the warp, or out of the woof:
- 57 and if it appear still in the garment, either in the warp, or in the woof, or in anything of skin, it is breaking out: thou shalt burn that wherein the plague is with fire.
- 58 And the garment, either the warp, or the woof, or whatsoever thing of skin it be, which thou shalt wash, if the plague be departed from them, then it shall be washed the second time, and shall be clean.
- 59 This is the law of the plague of leprosy in a garment of woollen or linen, either in the warp, or the woof, or anything of skin, to pronounce it clean, or to pronounce it unclean.

---

c-	Leperosy and Purification	(13.-14.)
	(1) Details for the discovery of Leprosy.	vs. 13:1-44
	(2) Details for isolating Leprosy	vs. 45-59
	- Outside the camp. The leper is to cry "UNCLEAN".	

## Leviticus 14

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,  
2 This shall be the law of the leper in the day of his cleansing: he shall be brought unto the priest:  
3 and the priest shall go forth out of the camp; and the priest shall look; and, behold, if the plague of leprosy be healed in the leper,  
4 then shall the priest command to take for him that is to be cleansed two living clean birds, and cedar wood, and scarlet, and hyssop:  
5 And the priest shall command to kill one of the birds in an earthen vessel over *{1}* running water. *{1}* Heb living}  
6 As for the living bird, he shall take it, and the cedar wood, and the scarlet, and the hyssop, and shall dip them and the living bird in the blood of the bird that was killed over the *{1}* running water: *{1}* Heb living}  
7 And he shall sprinkle upon him that is to be cleansed from the leprosy seven times, and shall pronounce him clean, and shall let go the living bird into the open field.  
8 And he that is to be cleansed shall wash his clothes, and shave off all his hair, and bathe himself in water; and he shall be clean: and after that he shall come into the camp, but shall dwell outside his tent seven days.  
9 And it shall be on the seventh day, that he shall shave all his hair off his head and his beard and his eyebrows, even all his hair he shall shave off: and he shall wash his clothes, and he shall bathe his flesh in water, and he shall be clean.  
10 ¶ And on the eighth day he shall take two he-lambs without blemish, and one ewe-lamb a year old without blemish, and three tenth parts of an ephah of fine flour for a meal-offering, mingled with oil, and one log of oil.  
11 And the priest that cleanseth him shall set the man that is to be cleansed, and those things, before Jehovah, at the door of the tent of meeting.  
12 And the priest shall take one of the he-lambs, and offer him for a trespass-offering, and the log of oil, and wave them for a wave-offering before Jehovah:  
13 and he shall kill the he-lamb in the place where they kill the sin-offering and the burnt-offering, in the place of the sanctuary: for as the sin-offering is the priest's, so is the trespass-offering: it is most holy:  
14 and the priest shall take of the blood of the trespass-offering, and the priest shall put it upon the tip of the right ear of him that is to be cleansed, and upon the thumb of his right hand, and upon the great toe of his right foot.  
15 And the priest shall take of the log of oil, and pour it into the palm of his own left hand;  
16 and the priest shall dip his right finger in the oil that is in his left hand, and shall sprinkle of the oil with his finger seven times before Jehovah:  
17 and of the rest of the oil that is in his hand shall the priest put upon the tip of the right ear of him that is to be cleansed, and upon the thumb of his right hand, and upon the great toe of his right foot, upon the blood of the trespass-offering:  
18 and the rest of the oil that is in the priest's hand he shall put upon the head of him that is to be cleansed: and the priest shall make atonement for him before Jehovah.  
19 And the priest shall offer the sin-offering, and make atonement for him that is to be cleansed because of his uncleanness: and afterward he shall kill the burnt-offering;  
20 and the priest shall offer the burnt-offering and the meal-offering upon the altar: and the priest shall make atonement for him, and he shall be clean.  
21 ¶ And if he be poor, and cannot get so much, then he shall take one he-lamb for a trespass-offering to be waved, to make atonement for him, and one tenth part of an ephah of fine flour mingled with oil for a meal-offering, and a log of oil;  
22 and two turtle-doves, or two young pigeons, such as he is able to get; and the one shall be a sin-offering, and the other a burnt-offering.  
23 And on the eighth day he shall bring them for his cleansing unto the priest, unto the door of the tent of meeting, before Jehovah:  
24 and the priest shall take the lamb of the trespass-offering, and the log of oil, and the priest shall wave them for a wave-offering before Jehovah.  
25 And he shall kill the lamb of the trespass-offering; and the priest shall take of the blood of the trespass-offering, and put it upon the tip of the right ear of him that is to be cleansed, and upon the thumb of his right hand, and upon the great toe of his right foot.  
26 And the priest shall pour of the oil into the palm of his own left hand;  
27 and the priest shall sprinkle with his right finger some of the oil that is in his left hand seven times before Jehovah:  
28 and the priest shall put of the oil that is in his hand upon the tip of the right ear of him that is to be cleansed, and upon the thumb of his right hand, and upon the great toe of his right foot, upon the place of the blood of the trespass-offering:  
29 and the rest of the oil that is in the priest's hand he shall put upon the head of him that is to be cleansed, to make atonement for him before Jehovah.  
30 And he shall offer one of the turtle-doves, or of the young pigeons, such as he is able to get,  
31 even such as he is able to get, the one for a sin-offering, and the other for a burnt-offering, with the meal-



- offering: and the priest shall make atonement for him that is to be cleansed before Jehovah.
- 32 This is the law of him in whom is the plague of leprosy, who is not able to get *that which pertaineth* to his cleansing.
- 33 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses and unto Aaron, saying,
- 34 When ye are come into the land of Canaan, which I give to you for a possession, and I put the plague of leprosy in a house of the land of your possession;
- 35 then he that owneth the house shall come and tell the priest, saying, There seemeth to me to be as it were a plague in the house.
- 36 And the priest shall command that they empty the house, before the priest goeth in to see the plague, that all that is in the house be not made unclean: and afterward the priest shall go in to see the house:
- 37 and he shall look on the plague; and, behold, if the plague be in the walls of the house with hollow streaks, greenish or reddish, and the appearance thereof be lower than the wall;
- 38 then the priest shall go out of the house to the door of the house, and shut up the house seven days.
- 39 And the priest shall come again the seventh day, and shall look; and, behold, if the plague be spread in the walls of the house;
- 40 then the priest shall command that they take out the stones in which the plague is, and cast them into an unclean place without the city:
- 41 and he shall cause the house to be scraped within round about, and they shall pour out the mortar, that they scrape off, without the city into an unclean place:
- 42 and they shall take other stones, and put them in the place of those stones; and he shall take other mortar, and shall plaster the house.
- 43 And if the plague come again, and break out in the house, after that he hath taken out the stones, and after he hath scraped the house, and after it is plastered;
- 44 then the priest shall come in and look; and, behold, if the plague be spread in the house, it is a fretting leprosy in the house: it is unclean.
- 45 And he shall break down the house, the stones of it, and the timber thereof, and all the mortar of the house; and he shall carry them forth out of the city into an unclean place.
- 46 Moreover he that goeth into the house all the while that it is shut up shall be unclean until the even.
- 47 And he that lieth in the house shall wash his clothes; and he that eateth in the house shall wash his clothes.
- 48 And if the priest shall come in, and look, and, behold, the plague hath not spread in the house, after the house was plastered; then the priest shall pronounce the house clean, because the plague is healed.
- 49 And he shall take to cleanse the house two birds, and cedar wood, and scarlet, and hyssop:
- 50 and he shall kill one of the birds in an earthen vessel over *{1}* running water: *{1}* Heb living}
- 51 and he shall take the cedar wood, and the hyssop, and the scarlet, and the living bird, and dip them in the blood of the slain bird, and in the *{1}* running water, and sprinkle the house seven times: *{1}* Heb living}
- 52 and he shall cleanse the house with the blood of the bird, and with the *{1}* running water, and with the living bird, and with the cedar wood, and with the hyssop, and with the scarlet: *{1}* Heb living}
- 53 but he shall let go the living bird out of the city into the open field: so shall he make atonement for the house; and it shall be clean.
- 54 ¶ This is the law for all manner of plague of leprosy, and for a scall,
- 55 and for the leprosy of a garment, and for a house,
- 56 and for a rising, and for a scab, and for a bright spot;
- 57 to teach when it is unclean, and when it is clean: this is the law of leprosy.

- 
- (3) Details for restoring the Leper vs. 14:1-53  
 . Two birds offered: 1 slain and the other released.
- (4) The principle taught vs. 54-57  
 - God's people and Sanctuary are not to be defiled.

## Leviticus 15

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses and to Aaron, saying,
- 2 Speak unto the children of Israel, and say unto them, When any man hath an issue out of his flesh, because of his issue he is unclean.
- 3 And this shall be his uncleanness in his issue: whether his flesh run with his issue, or his flesh be stopped from his issue, it is his uncleanness.
- 4 Every bed whereon he that hath the issue lieth shall be unclean; and everything whereon he sitteth shall be unclean.
- 5 And whosoever toucheth his bed shall wash his clothes, and bathe himself in water, and be unclean until the even.
- 6 And he that sitteth on anything whereon he that hath the issue sat shall wash his clothes, and bathe himself in water, and be unclean until the even.
- 7 And he that toucheth the flesh of him that hath the issue shall wash his clothes, and bathe himself in water, and be unclean until the even.
- 8 And if he that hath the issue spit upon him that is clean, then he shall wash his clothes, and bathe himself in water, and be unclean until the even.
- 9 And what *{1}* saddle soever he that hath the issue rideth upon shall be unclean. *{1} Or carriage*
- 10 And whosoever toucheth anything that was under him shall be unclean until the even: and he that beareth those things shall wash his clothes, and bathe himself in water, and be unclean until the even.
- 11 And whomsoever he that hath the issue toucheth, without having rinsed his hands in water, he shall wash his clothes, and bathe himself in water, and be unclean until the even.
- 12 And the earthen vessel, which he that hath the issue toucheth, shall be broken; and every vessel of wood shall be rinsed in water.
- 13 And when he that hath an issue is cleansed of his issue, then he shall number to himself seven days for his cleansing, and wash his clothes; and he shall bathe his flesh in *{1}* running water, and shall be clean. *{1} Heb living*
- 14 And on the eighth day he shall take to him two turtle-doves, or two young pigeons, and come before Jehovah unto the door of the tent of meeting, and give them unto the priest:
- 15 and the priest shall offer them, the one for a sin-offering, and the other for a burnt-offering; and the priest shall make atonement for him before Jehovah for his issue.
- 16 And if any man's seed of copulation go out from him, then he shall bathe all his flesh in water, and be unclean until the even.
- 17 And every garment, and every skin, whereon is the seed of copulation, shall be washed with water, and be unclean until the even.
- 18 The woman also with whom a man shall lie with seed of copulation, they shall both bathe themselves in water, and be unclean until the even.
- 19 ¶ And if a woman have an issue, *and* her issue in her flesh be blood, she shall be in her *{1}* impurity seven days: and whosoever toucheth her shall be unclean until the even. *{1} Or separation*
- 20 And everything that she lieth upon in her *{1}* impurity shall be unclean: everything also that she sitteth upon shall be unclean. *{1} Or separation*
- 21 And whosoever toucheth her bed shall wash his clothes, and bathe himself in water, and be unclean until the even.
- 22 And whosoever toucheth anything that she sitteth upon shall wash his clothes, and bathe himself in water, and be unclean until the even.
- 23 And if it be on the bed, or on anything whereon she sitteth, when he toucheth it, he shall be unclean until the even.
- 24 And if any man lie with her, and her impurity be upon him, he shall be unclean seven days; and every bed whereon he lieth shall be unclean.
- 25 And if a woman have an issue of her blood many days not in the time of her impurity, or if she have an issue beyond the time of her impurity; all the days of the issue of her uncleanness she shall be as in the days of her impurity: she is unclean.
- 26 Every bed whereon she lieth all the days of her issue shall be unto her as the bed of her impurity: and everything whereon she sitteth shall be unclean, as the uncleanness of her impurity.
- 27 And whosoever toucheth those things shall be unclean, and shall wash his clothes, and bathe himself in water, and be unclean until the even.
- 28 But if she be cleansed of her issue, then she shall number to herself seven days, and after that she shall be clean.
- 29 And on the eighth day she shall take unto her two turtle-doves, or two young pigeons, and bring them unto the priest, to the door of the tent of meeting.
- 30 And the priest shall offer the one for a sin-offering, and the other for a burnt-offering; and the priest shall make atonement for her before Jehovah for the issue of her uncleanness.
- 31 Thus shall ye separate the children of Israel from their uncleanness, that they die not in their uncleanness, when

they defile my tabernacle that is in the midst of them.

32 This is the law of him that hath an issue, and of him whose seed of copulation goeth from him, so that he is unclean thereby;

33 and of her that is sick with her impurity, and of him that hath an issue, of the man, and of the woman, and of him that lieth with her that is unclean.

---

d- Physical Purification

(15.)

(1) After defilment, bathe, wash clothes, and present offering.

vs. 1-44

(2) Purpose-- Do not defile God's Tabernacle.

## Leviticus 16

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, after the death of the two sons of Aaron, when they drew near before Jehovah, and died;
- 2 and Jehovah said unto Moses, Speak unto Aaron thy brother, that he come not at all times into the holy place within the veil, before the mercy-seat which is upon the ark; that he die not: for I will appear in the cloud upon the mercy-seat.
- 3 Herewith shall Aaron come into the holy place: with a young bullock for a sin-offering, and a ram for a burnt-offering.
- 4 He shall put on the holy linen coat, and he shall have the linen breeches upon his flesh, and shall be girded with the linen girdle, and with the linen *{1}* mitre shall he be attired: they are the holy garments; and he shall bathe his flesh in water, and put them on. *{1}* Or turban
- 5 ¶ And he shall take of the congregation of the children of Israel two he-goats for a sin-offering, and one ram for a burnt-offering.
- 6 And Aaron shall present the bullock of the sin-offering, which is for himself, and make atonement for himself, and for his house.
- 7 And he shall take the two goats, and set them before Jehovah at the door of the tent of meeting.
- 8 And Aaron shall cast lots upon the two goats; one lot for Jehovah, and the other lot for *{1}* Azazel. *{1}* Or removal
- 9 And Aaron shall present the goat upon which the lot fell for Jehovah, and offer him for a sin-offering.
- 10 But the goat, on which the lot fell for Azazel, shall be set alive before Jehovah, to make atonement *{1}* for him, to send him away for Azazel into the wilderness. *{1}* Or over
- 11 And Aaron shall present the bullock of the sin-offering, which is for himself, and shall make atonement for himself, and for his house, and shall kill the bullock of the sin-offering which is for himself:
- 12 and he shall take a censer full of coals of fire from off the altar before Jehovah, and his hands full of sweet incense beaten small, and bring it within the veil:
- 13 and he shall put the incense upon the fire before Jehovah, that the cloud of the incense may cover the mercy-seat that is upon the testimony, that he die not:
- 14 and he shall take of the blood of the bullock, and sprinkle it with his finger upon the mercy-seat on the east; and before the mercy-seat shall he sprinkle of the blood with his finger seven times.
- 15 ¶ Then shall he kill the goat of the sin-offering, that is for the people, and bring his blood within the veil, and do with his blood as he did with the blood of the bullock, and sprinkle it upon the mercy-seat, and before the mercy-seat:
- 16 and he shall make atonement for the holy place, because of the uncleannesses of the children of Israel, and because of their transgressions, even all their sins: and so shall he do for the tent of meeting, that dwelleth with them in the midst of their uncleannesses.
- 17 And there shall be no man in the tent of meeting when he goeth in to make atonement in the holy place, until he come out, and have made atonement for himself, and for his household, and for all the assembly of Israel.
- 18 And he shall go out unto the altar that is before Jehovah, and make atonement for it, and shall take of the blood of the bullock, and of the blood of the goat, and put it upon the horns of the altar round about.
- 19 And he shall sprinkle of the blood upon it with his finger seven times, and cleanse it, and hallow it from the uncleannesses of the children of Israel.
- 20 ¶ And when he hath made an end of atoning for the holy place, and the tent of meeting, and the altar, he shall present the live goat:
- 21 and Aaron shall lay both his hands upon the head of the live goat, and confess over him all the iniquities of the children of Israel, and all their transgressions, even all their sins; and he shall put them upon the head of the goat, and shall send him away by the hand of a man *{1}* that is in readiness into the wilderness: *{1}* Or appointed
- 22 and the goat shall bear upon him all their iniquities unto a solitary land: and he shall let go the goat in the wilderness.
- 23 And Aaron shall come into the tent of meeting, and shall put off the linen garments, which he put on when he went into the holy place, and shall leave them there:
- 24 and he shall bathe his flesh in water in a holy place, and put on his garments, and come forth, and offer his burnt-offering and the burnt-offering of the people, and make atonement for himself and for the people.
- 25 And the fat of the sin-offering shall he burn upon the altar.
- 26 And he that letteth go the goat for *{1}* Azazel shall wash his clothes, and bathe his flesh in water, and afterward he shall come into the camp. *{1}* Or removal
- 27 And the bullock of the sin-offering, and the goat of the sin-offering, whose blood was brought in to make atonement in the holy place, shall be carried forth without the camp; and they shall burn in the fire their skins, and their flesh, and their dung.
- 28 And he that burneth them shall wash his clothes, and bathe his flesh in water, and afterward he shall come into the camp.

- 29 ¶ And it shall be a statute for ever unto you: in the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month, ye shall afflict your souls, and shall do no manner of work, the home-born, or the stranger that sojourneth among you:
- 30 for on this day shall atonement be made for you, to cleanse you; from all your sins shall ye be clean before Jehovah.
- 31 It is a sabbath of solemn rest unto you, and ye shall afflict your souls; it is a statute for ever.
- 32 And the priest, who shall be anointed and who shall be consecrated to be priest in his father's stead, shall make the atonement, and shall put on the linen garments, even the holy garments:
- 33 and he shall make atonement for the holy sanctuary; and he shall make atonement for the tent of meeting and for the altar; and he shall make atonement for the priests and for all the people of the assembly.
- 34 And this shall be an everlasting statute unto you, to make atonement for the children of Israel because of all their sins once in the year. And he did as Jehovah commanded Moses.

### 3- Clean Nation Through The Atonement (16.)

- The Day Of Atonement or The Great Day of Mourning! Note: the book of Hebrews is concerned with the sin offering on the day of atonement.

- a- The Preparation of the high priest vs. 1-5
  - (1) washes in water vs. 8:6; 16:4c
  - (2) Changes to (white) Linen garments see 2 Chr 5:12 vs. 4c
  - (3) Prepares 2 male goats (sin O.) and a ram (burnt O.) (5)
- b- The High Priest offers bullock sin offering for himself vs. 14-23
- c- The High Priest offers a goat sin offering for the people vs. 24-30
  - (1) Lot is cast for the slain goat vs. 8
  - (2) He enters the Holy of Holies and sprinkles blood on the Mercy Seat 7 times. vs. 19
  - (3) This offering is to atone for all uncleanness and iniquities of the house of Aaron. vs. 16
  - (4) The bullock is burned outside the camp. vs. 27
- d- The Ritual of the Scapegoat vs. 20-22
  - (1) The sins of the people confessed on the head of the goat vs. 21
  - (2) A fit man leads the goat into the wilderness vs. 21
- e- The concluding ritual of offerings and cleansing vs. 23-28
- f- The significance of the Day of Atonement vs. 29-34
  - (1) Atonement is made for the Sanctuary, the Priests, and all the people. vs. 27
  - (2) All the congregation is to afflict their souls. vs. 29
  - (3) It is basically concerned with inadvertent sins of the Nation for the past year. Note: it preserved their relation with GOD. vs. 30-34

## Leviticus 17

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,  
2 Speak unto Aaron, and unto his sons, and unto all the children of Israel, and say unto them: This is the thing which Jehovah hath commanded, saying,  
3 What man soever there be of the house of Israel, that killeth an ox, or lamb, or goat, in the camp, or that killeth it without the camp,  
4 and hath not brought it unto the door of the tent of meeting, to offer it as an oblation unto Jehovah before the tabernacle of Jehovah: blood shall be imputed unto that man; he hath shed blood; and that man shall be cut off from among his people:  
5 To the end that the children of Israel may bring their sacrifices, which they sacrifice in the open field, even that they may bring them unto Jehovah, unto the door of the tent of meeting, unto the priest, and sacrifice them for sacrifices of peace-offerings unto Jehovah.  
6 And the priest shall sprinkle the blood upon the altar of Jehovah at the door of the tent of meeting, and burn the fat for a sweet savor unto Jehovah.  
7 And they shall no more sacrifice their sacrifices unto the he-goats, after which they play the harlot. This shall be a statute for ever unto them throughout their generations.  
8 And thou shalt say unto them, Whatsoever man there be of the house of Israel, or of the strangers that sojourn among them, that offereth a burnt-offering or sacrifice,  
9 and bringeth it not unto the door of the tent of meeting, to sacrifice it unto Jehovah; that man shall be cut off from his people.  
10 ¶ And whatsoever man there be of the house of Israel, or of the strangers that sojourn among them, that eateth any manner of blood, I will set my face against that soul that eateth blood, and will cut him off from among his people.  
11 For the {1} life of the flesh is in the blood; and I have given it to you upon the altar to make atonement for your souls: for it is the blood that maketh atonement by reason of the {1} life. {1} Heb soul}  
12 Therefore I said unto the children of Israel, No soul of you shall eat blood, neither shall any stranger that sojourneth among you eat blood.  
13 And whatsoever man there be of the children of Israel, or of the strangers that sojourn among them, who taketh in hunting any beast or bird that may be eaten; he shall pour out the blood thereof, and cover it with dust.  
14 For as to the life of all flesh, the blood thereof is *all one* with the life thereof: therefore I said unto the children of Israel, Ye shall eat the blood of no manner of flesh; for the life of all flesh is the blood thereof: whosoever eateth it shall be cut off.  
15 And every soul that eateth {1} that which dieth of itself, or that which is torn of beasts, whether he be home-born or a sojourner, he shall wash his clothes, and bathe himself in water, and be unclean until the even: then shall he be clean. {1} Heb a carcass}  
16 But if he wash them not, nor bathe his flesh, then he shall bear his iniquity.

**D- The laws Concerning The Altar.****17.**

- 1- One place of sacrifice vs. 1-9
  - They couldn't slay the animal in the field. This rule  
designed to keep the people from idolatry. vs. 7
  - a- Animals dividing the hoof AND chewing the Cud vs. 2-8
    - may be eaten.
  - b- Seafood with Fins and Scales vs. 9-12
    - may be eaten.
  - c- Birds of prey vs. 13-19
    - may NOT be eaten.
  - d- All insects (except 4 locust types) may NOT be eaten. vs. 20-23
- 2- Only one use for the blood. vs. 10-16
  - Not to be eaten but to be used to make atonement for the soul.

## Leviticus 18

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,  
2 Speak unto the children of Israel, and say unto them, I am Jehovah your God.  
3 After the doings of the land of Egypt, wherein ye dwelt, shall ye not do: and after the doings of the land of Canaan, whither I bring you, shall ye not do; neither shall ye walk in their statutes.  
4 Mine ordinances shall ye do, and my statutes shall ye keep, to walk therein: I am Jehovah your God.  
5 Ye shall therefore keep my statutes, and mine ordinances; which if a man do, he shall live {1} in them: I am Jehovah. {1} Or by  
6 ¶ None of you shall approach to any that are near of kin to him, to uncover *their* nakedness: I am Jehovah.  
7 The nakedness of thy father, even the nakedness of thy mother, shalt thou not uncover: she is thy mother; thou shalt not uncover her nakedness.  
8 The nakedness of thy father's wife shalt thou not uncover: it is thy father's nakedness.  
9 The nakedness of thy sister, the daughter of thy father, or the daughter of thy mother, whether born at home, or born abroad, even their nakedness thou shalt not uncover.  
10 The nakedness of thy son's daughter, or of thy daughter's daughter, even their nakedness thou shalt not uncover: for theirs is thine own nakedness.  
11 The nakedness of thy father's wife's daughter, begotten of thy father, she is thy sister, thou shalt not uncover her nakedness.  
12 Thou shalt not uncover the nakedness of thy father's sister: she is thy father's near kinswoman.  
13 Thou shalt not uncover the nakedness of thy mother's sister: for she is thy mother's near kinswoman.  
14 Thou shalt not uncover the nakedness of thy father's brother, thou shalt not approach to his wife: she is thine aunt.  
15 Thou shalt not uncover the nakedness of thy daughter-in-law: she is thy son's wife; thou shalt not uncover her nakedness.  
16 Thou shalt not uncover the nakedness of thy brother's wife: it is thy brother's nakedness.  
17 Thou shalt not uncover the nakedness of a woman and her daughter; thou shalt not take her son's daughter, or her daughter's daughter, to uncover her nakedness; they are near kinswomen: it is {1} wickedness. {1} Or enormity  
18 And thou shalt not take a wife to her sister, to be a rival *to her*, to uncover her nakedness, besides the other in her life-time.  
19 ¶ And thou shalt not approach unto a woman to uncover her nakedness, as long as she is {1} impure by her uncleanness. {1} Or separated for  
20 And thou shalt not lie carnally with thy neighbor's wife, to defile thyself with her.  
21 And thou shalt not give any of thy seed {1} to make them pass through *the fire* to Molech; neither shalt thou profane the name of thy God: I am Jehovah. {1} Or to set them apart to Molech  
22 Thou shalt not lie with mankind, as with womankind: it is abomination.  
23 And thou shalt not lie with any beast to defile thyself therewith; neither shall any woman stand before a beast, to lie down thereto: it is confusion.  
24 Defile not ye yourselves in any of these things: for in all these the nations are defiled which I cast out from before you;  
25 And the land is defiled: therefore I do visit the iniquity thereof upon it, and the land vomiteth out her inhabitants.  
26 Ye therefore shall keep my statutes and mine ordinances, and shall not do any of these abominations; neither the home-born, nor the stranger that sojourneth among you;  
27 (for all these abominations have the men of the land done, that were before you, and the land is defiled);  
28 that the land vomit not you out also, when ye defile it, as it vomited out the nation that was before you.  
29 For whosoever shall do any of these abominations, even the souls that do them shall be cut off from among their people.  
30 Therefore shall ye keep my charge, that ye practise not any of these abominable customs, which were practised before you, and that ye defile not yourselves therein: I am Jehovah your God.



**II. The Way of Fellowship with God--By separation. (18.-27.)****A- Regulations concerning the people. (18.-27.)****1- Holiness in sex life. (18.)****a- Prohibitions vs. 1-23**

(1) Do not marry next of kin. vs. 6-18

(2) Beware of sexual perversions vs. 19-23

Ref. Rom 1:21-32. Out Goes Pornography!

**b- Results of disobedience vs. 24-30**

Cast out of the land! Remember what happened to the Canaanites.

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,  
2 Speak unto all the congregation of the children of Israel, and say unto them, Ye shall be holy; for I Jehovah your God am holy.  
3 Ye shall fear every man his mother, and his father; and ye shall keep my sabbaths: I am Jehovah your God.  
4 Turn ye not unto *{1}* idols, nor make to yourselves molten gods: I am Jehovah your God. *{1} Heb things of nought*  
5 And when ye offer a sacrifice of peace-offerings unto Jehovah, ye shall offer it that ye may be accepted.  
6 It shall be eaten the same day ye offer it, and on the morrow: and if aught remain until the third day, it shall be burnt with fire.  
7 And if it be eaten at all on the third day, it is an abomination; it shall not be accepted:  
8 but every one that eateth it shall bear his iniquity, because he hath profaned the holy thing of Jehovah: and that soul shall be cut off from his people.  
9 And when ye reap the harvest of your land, thou shalt not wholly reap the corners of thy field, neither shalt thou gather the gleaning of thy harvest.  
10 And thou shalt not glean thy vineyard, neither shalt thou gather the fallen fruit of thy vineyard; thou shalt leave them for the poor and for the sojourner: I am Jehovah your God.  
11 ¶ Ye shall not steal; neither shall ye deal falsely, nor lie one to another.  
12 And ye shall not swear by my name falsely, and profane the name of thy God: I am Jehovah.  
13 Thou shalt not oppress thy neighbor, nor rob him: the wages of a hired servant shall not abide with thee all night until the morning.  
14 Thou shalt not curse the deaf, nor put a stumblingblock before the blind; but thou shalt fear thy God: I am Jehovah.  
15 Ye shall do no unrighteousness in judgment: thou shalt not respect the person of the poor, nor honor the person of the mighty; but in righteousness shalt thou judge thy neighbor.  
16 Thou shalt not go up and down as a talebearer among thy people: neither shalt thou stand against the blood of thy neighbor: I am Jehovah.  
17 Thou shalt not hate thy brother in thy heart: thou shalt surely rebuke thy neighbor, and not bear sin because of him.  
18 Thou shalt not take vengeance, nor bear any grudge against the children of thy people; but thou shalt love thy neighbor as thyself: I am Jehovah.  
19 ¶ Ye shall keep my statutes. Thou shalt not let thy cattle gender with a diverse kind: thou shalt not sow thy field with two kinds of seed: neither shall there come upon thee a garment of two kinds of stuff mingled together.  
20 And whosoever lieth carnally with a woman, that is a bondmaid, betrothed to a husband, and not at all redeemed, nor freedom given her; *{1}* they shall be punished; they shall not be put to death, because she was not free. *{1} Heb there shall be inquisition*  
21 And he shall bring his trespass-offering unto Jehovah, unto the door of the tent of meeting, even a ram for a trespass-offering.  
22 And the priest shall make atonement for him with the ram of the trespass-offering before Jehovah for his sin which he hath sinned: and the sin which he hath sinned shall be forgiven him.  
23 And when ye shall come into the land, and shall have planted all manner of trees for food, then ye shall count the fruit thereof as their uncircumcision: three years shall they be as uncircumcised unto you; it shall not be eaten.  
24 But in the fourth year all the fruit thereof shall be holy, for giving praise unto Jehovah.  
25 And in the fifth year shall ye eat of the fruit thereof, that it may yield unto you the increase thereof: I am Jehovah your God.  
26 Ye shall not eat anything with the blood: neither shall ye use enchantments, nor practise augury.  
27 Ye shall not round the corners of your heads, neither shalt thou mar the corners of thy beard.  
28 Ye shall not make any cuttings in your flesh for the dead, nor print any marks upon you: I am Jehovah.  
29 Profane not thy daughter, to make her a harlot; lest the land fall to whoredom, and the land become full of *{1}* wickedness. *{1} Or enormity*  
30 ¶ Ye shall keep my sabbaths, and reverence my sanctuary; I am Jehovah.  
31 Turn ye not unto them that have familiar spirits, nor unto the wizards; seek them not out, to be defiled by them: I am Jehovah your God.  
32 Thou shalt rise up before the hoary head, and honor the face of the old man, and thou shalt fear thy God: I am Jehovah.  
33 And if a stranger sojourn with thee in your land, ye shall not do him wrong.  
34 The stranger that sojourneth with you shall be unto you as the home-born among you, and thou shalt love him as thyself; for ye were sojourners in the land of Egypt: I am Jehovah your God.  
35 Ye shall do no unrighteousness in judgment, in measures of length, of weight, or of quantity.  
36 Just balances, just weights, a just ephah, and a just hin, shall ye have: I am Jehovah your God, who brought you out of the land of Egypt.  
37 And ye shall observe all my statutes, and all mine ordinances, and do them: I am Jehovah.

- 2- Holiness in conduct. (19.)
  - a- The principle stated vs. 1-2  
The Sermon on the Mount of the O.T.
  - b- Right relations with God stressed vs. 3-8
    - (1) Honor Parents. vs. 3
    - (2) Keep the sabbaths vs. 3
    - (3) Avoid idolatry vs. 4
    - (4) Death to those who profane the peace offering vs. 5-8
  - c- Right relations with society vs. 9-18
    - (1) Liberality to the poor. vs. 9-13
    - (2) Care for the afflicted vs. 14  
to the deaf and blind.
    - (3) Love thy neighbor as thyself vs. 18
  - d- Various instructions vs. 19-37
    - (1) Mixing cattle, seeds of a field, linen and wool. vs. 19  
Separation.
    - (2) Kindness (loyal Love) to one's neighbor and sojourners vs. 33-34
    - (3) Correct weights, etc. vs. 35-37

## Leviticus 20

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 2 Moreover, thou shalt say to the children of Israel, Whosoever he be of the children of Israel, or of the strangers that sojourn in Israel, that giveth of his seed unto Molech; he shall surely be put to death: the people of the land shall stone him with stones.
- 3 I also will set my face against that man, and will cut him off from among his people; because he hath given of his seed unto Molech, to defile my sanctuary, and to profane my holy name.
- 4 And if the people at the land do at all hide their eyes from that man, when he giveth of his seed unto Molech, and put him not to death;
- 5 then I will set my face against that man, and against his family, and will cut him off, and all that play the harlot after him, to play the harlot with Molech, from among their people.
- 6 And the soul that turneth unto them that have familiar spirits, and unto the wizards, to play the harlot after them, I will even set my face against that soul, and will cut him off from among his people.
- 7 Sanctify yourselves therefore, and be ye holy; for I am Jehovah your God.
- 8 And ye shall keep my statutes, and do them: I am Jehovah who sanctifieth you.
- 9 For every one that curseth his father or his mother shall surely be put to death: he hath cursed his father or his mother; his blood shall be upon him.
- 10 ¶ And the man that committeth adultery with another man's wife, even he that committeth adultery with his neighbor's wife, the adulterer and the adulteress shall surely be put to death.
- 11 And the man that lieth with his father's wife hath uncovered his father's nakedness: both of them shall surely be put to death; their blood shall be upon them.
- 12 And if a man lie with his daughter-in-law, both of them shall surely be put to death: they have wrought confusion; their blood shall be upon them.
- 13 And if a man lie with mankind, as with womankind, both of them have committed abomination: they shall surely be put to death; their blood shall be upon them.
- 14 And if a man take a wife and her mother, it is *{1}* wickedness: they shall be burnt with fire, both he and they; that there be no wickedness among you. *{1} Or enormity }*
- 15 And if a man lie with a beast, he shall surely be put to death: and ye shall slay the beast.
- 16 And if a woman approach unto any beast, and lie down thereto, thou shalt kill the woman, and the beast: they shall surely be put to death; their blood shall be upon them.
- 17 And if a man shall take his sister, his father's daughter, or his mother's daughter, and see her nakedness, and she see his nakedness; it is a shameful thing; and they shall be cut off in the sight of the children of their people: he hath uncovered his sister's nakedness; he shall bear his iniquity.
- 18 And if a man shall lie with a woman having her sickness, and shall uncover her nakedness; he hath made naked her fountain, and she hath uncovered the fountain of her blood: and both of them shall be cut off from among their people.
- 19 And thou shalt not uncover the nakedness of thy mother's sister, nor of thy father's sister; for he hath made naked his near kin: they shall bear their iniquity.
- 20 And if a man shall lie with his uncle's wife, he hath uncovered his uncle's nakedness: they shall bear their sin; they shall die childless.
- 21 And if a man shall take his brother's wife, it is impurity: he hath uncovered his brother's nakedness; they shall be childless.
- 22 ¶ Ye shall therefore keep all my statutes, and all mine ordinances, and do them; that the land, whither I bring you to dwell therein, vomit you not out.
- 23 And ye shall not walk in the customs of the nation, which I cast out before you: for they did all these things, and therefore I abhorred them.
- 24 But I have said unto you, Ye shall inherit their land, and I will give it unto you to possess it, a land flowing with milk and honey: I am Jehovah your God, who hath separated you from the peoples.
- 25 Ye shall therefore make a distinction between the clean beast and the unclean, and between the unclean fowl and the clean: and ye shall not make your souls abominable by beast, or by bird, or by anything wherewith the ground *{1}* teemeth, which I have separated from you as unclean. *{1} Heb creepeth }*
- 26 And ye shall be holy unto me: for I, Jehovah, am holy, and have set you apart from the peoples, that ye should be mine.
- 27 A man also or a woman that hath a familiar spirit, or that is a wizard, shall surely be put to death: they shall stone them with stones; their blood shall be upon them.

## 3- The Penal Code (penalties for disobedience) (20.)

## a- The Death Penalty stressed (2, 6, 9-18, 27)

(1) For idolatry. (2-6)

(2) For cursing parents - for the blaspheming God. (9)

(3) Sex Crimes (10-18)

## b- The Purpose of the code (22-27)

- To learn cleanliness and obedience.

Note:

The Boy Scout Oath and laws of the O.T.

---

Because of length of text, Ch. 21 is backed up.

**Leviticus 21**

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah said unto Moses, Speak unto the priests, the sons of Aaron, and say unto them, There shall none defile himself for the dead among his people;
- 2 except for his kin, that is near unto him, for his mother, and for his father, and for his son, and for his daughter, and for his brother,
- 3 and for his sister a virgin, that is near unto him, that hath had no husband; for her may he defile himself.
- 4 He shall not defile himself, *{1} being a chief man among his people, to profane himself. {1} Or, as a husband}*
- 5 They shall not make baldness upon their head, neither shall they shave off the corner of their beard, nor make any cuttings in their flesh.
- 6 They shall be holy unto their God, and not profane the name of their God; for the offerings of Jehovah made by fire, the bread of their God, they do offer: therefore they shall be holy.
- 7 They shall not take a woman that is a harlot, or *{1} profane*; neither shall they take a woman put away from her husband: for he is holy unto his God. *{1} Or polluted}*
- 8 Thou shalt sanctify him therefore; for he offereth the bread of thy God: he shall be holy unto thee: for I Jehovah, who sanctify you, am holy.
- 9 And the daughter of any priest, if she profane herself by playing the harlot, she profaneth her father: she shall be burnt with fire.
- 10 ¶ And he that is the high priest among his brethren, upon whose head the anointing oil is poured, and *{1} that is consecrated to put on the garments, shall not let the hair of his head go loose, nor rend his clothes; {1} Heb whose hand is filled}*
- 11 neither shall he go in to any dead body, nor defile himself for his father, or for his mother;
- 12 neither shall he go out of the sanctuary, nor profane the sanctuary of his God; for the *{1} crown of the anointing oil of his God is upon him: I am Jehovah. {1} Or consecration}*
- 13 And he shall take a wife in her virginity.
- 14 A widow, or one divorced, or a *{1} profane woman, a harlot, these shall he not take: but a virgin of his own people shall he take to wife. {1} Or polluted}*
- 15 And he shall not profane his seed among his people: for I am Jehovah who sanctifieth him.
- 16 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 17 Speak unto Aaron, saying, Whosoever he be of thy seed throughout their generations that hath a blemish, let him not approach to offer the bread of his God.
- 18 For whatsoever man he be that hath a blemish, he shall not approach: a blind man, or a lame, or he that hath a *{1} flat nose, or anything superfluous, {1} Or slit}*
- 19 or a man that is broken-footed, or broken-handed,
- 20 or crook-backed, or a dwarf, or that hath a blemish in his eye, or is scurvy, or scabbed, or hath his stones broken;
- 21 no man of the seed of Aaron the priest, that hath a blemish, shall come nigh to offer the offerings of Jehovah made by fire: he hath a blemish; he shall not come nigh to offer the bread of his God.
- 22 He shall eat the bread of his God, both of the most holy, and of the holy:

23 only he shall not go in unto the veil, nor come nigh unto the altar, because he hath a blemish; that he profane not my sanctuaries: for I am Jehovah who sanctifieth them.

24 So Moses spake unto Aaron, and to his sons, and unto all the children of Israel.

### Leviticus 22

1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,

2 Speak unto Aaron and to his sons, that they separate themselves from the holy things of the children of Israel, which they hallow unto me, and that they profane not my holy name: I am Jehovah.

3 Say unto them, Whosoever he be of all your seed throughout your generations, that approacheth unto the holy things, which the children of Israel hallow unto Jehovah, having his uncleanness upon him, that soul shall be cut off from before me: I am Jehovah.

4 What man soever of the seed of Aaron is a leper, or hath an issue; he shall not eat of the holy things, until he be clean. And whoso toucheth *{1}* anything that is unclean by the dead, or a man whose seed goeth from him; *{1}* *Or any one*

5 or whosoever toucheth any creeping thing, whereby he may be made unclean, or a man of whom he may take uncleanness, whatsoever uncleanness he hath;

6 the soul that toucheth any such shall be unclean until the even, and shall not eat of the holy things, unless he bathe his flesh in water.

7 And when the sun is down, he shall be clean; and afterward he shall eat of the holy things, because it is his bread.

8 That which dieth of itself, or is torn of beasts, he shall not eat, to defile himself therewith: I am Jehovah.

9 They shall therefore keep my charge, lest they bear sin for it, and die therein, if they profane it: I am Jehovah who sanctifieth them.

10 ¶ There shall no stranger eat of the holy thing: a sojourner of the priest's, or a hired servant, shall not eat of the holy thing.

11 But if a priest buy any soul, the purchase of his money, he shall eat of it; and such as are born in his house, they shall eat of his bread.

12 And if a priest's daughter be married unto a stranger, she shall not eat of the heave-offering of the holy things.

13 But if a priest's daughter be a widow, or divorced, and have no child, and be returned unto her father's house, as in her youth, she shall eat of her father's bread: but there shall no stranger eat thereof.

14 And if a man eat of the holy thing unwittingly, then he shall put the fifth part thereof unto it, and shall give unto the priest the holy thing.

15 And they shall not profane the holy things of the children of Israel, which they offer unto Jehovah,

16 and so cause them to bear the iniquity that bringeth guilt, when they eat their holy things: for I am Jehovah who sanctifieth them.

17 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,

18 Speak unto Aaron, and to his sons, and unto all the children of Israel, and say unto them, Whosoever he be of the house of Israel, or of the sojourners in Israel, that offereth his oblation, whether it be any of their vows, or any of their freewill-offerings, which they offer unto Jehovah for a burnt-offering;

19 that ye may be accepted, *ye shall offer* a male without blemish, of the bullocks, of the sheep, or of the goats.

20 But whatsoever hath a blemish, that shall ye not offer: for it shall not be acceptable for you.

21 And whosoever offereth a sacrifice of peace-offerings unto Jehovah to *{1}* accomplish a vow, or for a freewill-offering, of the herd or of the flock, it shall be perfect to be accepted; there shall be no blemish therein. *{1}* *Or make a special vow*

22 Blind, or broken, or maimed, or having *{1}* a wen, or scurvy, or scabbed, ye shall not offer these unto Jehovah, nor make an offering by fire of them upon the altar unto Jehovah. *{1}* *Or sores*

23 Either a bullock or a lamb that hath anything superfluous or lacking in his parts, that mayest thou offer for a freewill-offering; but for a vow it shall not be accepted.

24 That which hath its stones bruised, or crushed, or broken, or cut, ye shall not offer unto Jehovah; neither shall ye *{1}* do *thus* in your land. *{1}* *Or sacrifice* them

25 Neither from the hand of a foreigner shall ye offer the bread of your God of any of these; because their corruption is in them, there is a blemish in them: they shall not be accepted for you.

26 And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,

27 When a bullock, or a sheep, or a goat, is brought forth, then it shall be seven days under the dam; and from the eighth day and thenceforth it shall be accepted for the oblation of an offering made by fire unto Jehovah.

28 And whether it be cow or ewe, ye shall not kill it and its young both in one day.

29 And when ye sacrifice a sacrifice of thanksgiving unto Jehovah, ye shall sacrifice it that ye may be accepted.

30 On the same day it shall be eaten; ye shall leave none of it until the morning: I am Jehovah.

31 Therefore shall ye keep my commandments, and do them: I am Jehovah.

32 And ye shall not profane my holy name; but I will be hallowed among the children of Israel: I am Jehovah who halloweth you,

33 who brought you out of the land of Egypt, to be your God: I am Jehovah.

**B- The Regulations Concerning The Priests.****(21. – 22.)**

- 1- The Prohibited Practices vs. 21:1-15
  - a- Touching the dead vs. 1-4
    - Except for close relatives, orphans, or widows.
  - b- No Shaving the head (or face) or corners of beard nor cut their flesh. vs. 5
  - c- Marrying harlots, loose women, Divorcees vs. 7
  - d- Special requirements for the high priest vs. 10-15
    - May may marry only a virgin (no widows or divorcees).
- 2- The Prohibited Persons (21:16.-22:16.)
  - a- No physical blemishes vs. 16-24
  - b- No ceremonial uncleanness. vs. 22:1-10
  - c- Partaking of holy food vs. 11-16
    - Only for those of immediate family of priests. Note the exceptions!
- 3- The Prohibited offerings vs. 17-33
  - a- without blemishes vs. 17-24
  - b- No ceremonial uncleanness. vs. 25-33

**Leviticus 23**

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 2 Speak unto the children of Israel, and say unto them, The {1} set feasts of Jehovah, which ye shall proclaim to be holy convocations, even these are my set feasts. {1} *Or appointed seasons*
- 3 Six days shall work be done: but on the seventh day is a sabbath of solemn rest, a holy convocation; ye shall do no manner of work: it is a sabbath unto Jehovah in all your dwellings.
- 4 ¶ These are the set feasts of Jehovah, even holy convocations, which ye shall proclaim in their appointed season.
- 5 In the first month, on the fourteenth day of the month {1} at even, is Jehovah's passover. {1} *Heb between the two evenings*
- 6 And on the fifteenth day of the same month is the feast of unleavened bread unto Jehovah: seven days ye shall eat unleavened bread.
- 7 In the first day ye shall have a holy convocation: ye shall do no {1} servile work. {1} *Heb work of labor*
- 8 But ye shall offer an offering made by fire unto Jehovah seven days: in the seventh day is a holy convocation; ye shall do no servile work.
- 9 And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 10 Speak unto the children of Israel, and say unto them, When ye are come into the land which I give unto you, and shall reap the harvest thereof, then ye shall bring the sheaf of the first-fruits of your harvest unto the priest:
- 11 and he shall wave the sheaf before Jehovah, to be accepted for you: on the morrow after the sabbath the priest shall wave it.
- 12 And in the day when ye wave the sheaf, ye shall offer a he-lamb without blemish a year old for a burnt-offering unto Jehovah.
- 13 And the meal-offering thereof shall be two tenth parts *of an ephah* of fine flour mingled with oil, an offering made by fire unto Jehovah for a sweet savor; and the drink-offering thereof shall be of wine, the fourth part of a hin.
- 14 And ye shall eat neither bread, nor parched grain, nor fresh ears, until this selfsame day, until ye have brought the oblation of your God: it is a statute for ever throughout your generations in all your dwellings.



**C- The Regulations Concerning The Feasts. 23. - 24.**

The feasts of Jehovah were appointments of Israel with Jehovah at periodic intervals for blessing and instruction. There were three types of convocations.

- 1- The weekly Sabbath for local and family meetings (Not at the Sanctuary).
- 2- The three great "set seasons" in which all males were to appear at the Sanctuary. In Spring - Passover; In Summer - Pentecost; In Fall - Tabernacles.
- 3- These three feasts (or convocations) had specific purposes.

These feasts of Jehovah were designed to:

- 1- Instruct in holiness.
- 2- Be a constant reminder to Israel of their covenant relations with Jehovah.
- 3- Keep the people united by their place of worship..

The various Sabbaths of Jehovah were considered the "signature of the covenant" (Ex 31:13), and the number Seven had a special significance (emphasis).

- |  |                                   |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| 1- weekly Sabbath                      | -- 7 <sup>th</sup> day.           |
| 2- Passover and unleavened bread       | -- 7 days.                        |
| 3- Pentecost (weeks)                   | -- 7 <sup>th</sup> week.          |
| 4- Trumpets, Atonement, and Tabernacle | -- 7 <sup>th</sup> Month.         |
| 5- sabbatical year                     | -- 7 <sup>th</sup> Year.          |
| 6- Jubilee year                        | -- 7 <sup>th</sup> week of Years. |

we should answer the question: why was the captivity 70 years? Note also the 70 weeks of Daniel.

- 7- The weekly Sabbath (or Shabbat) (23:1-3, Ex 34:21, Num 28)
  - a- Purpose.
    - (1) To remember the covenant keeping GOD.
    - (2) To give rest to man and beast.
  - b- Ritual or Requirement for each person or home.
    - (1) To do no servile work.
    - (2) To double the daily offerings (Burnt, Meal and Drink offerings).
    - (3) To present fresh loaves in the Tabernacle (Shewbread).
  - c- Historical significance. (Cont. on next page)
    - (1) Typified God's rest after creation as an adumbration of the millennial rest.
    - (2) Symbolized God entering covenant relations with the nation Israel.
  - d- Typical significance.
    - (1) Signifies God's promise to fulfill His covenant with Israel.
    - (2) Typifies the Christian entering rest or satisfaction through Christ's finished work.

- 8- The Passover and vs. 23:4-5
- 9- Unleavened Bread (23:6-8, Ex 34., Num 28 and Deu 16)
  - a- Date. 14<sup>th</sup> Abib (April) (Cont. on next page)

- b- Purpose.
    - (1) To remind Israel of their deliverance from bondage.
    - (2) To remind Israel of their deliverance from judgment of the 10 plagues and especially of the death of the firstborn and promise of future redemption.
    - (3) It typified their final redemption.
  - c- Ritual or requirement.
    - (1) No servile work to be done on the first and seventh days.
    - (2) All males to appear at the Tabernacle.
    - (3) Eat unleavened bread and cleanse the house of leaven (for 1 week).
    - (4) Make special offerings.
      - a) Separate unblemished lamb on the 10<sup>th</sup> Abib.
      - b) Slay lamb on the 14<sup>th</sup> Abib. Sprinkle the blood and eat meat in the evening
      - c) Specific Burnt and Sin offerings made for 7 days.
  - d- Historical significance.
    - (1) Memorialized the exodus from Egypt.
    - (2) Memorialized the deliverance and consecration of the firstborn.
  - e- Typical significance.
    - (1) The Slain Lamb typified Christ as the Perfect, vicarious Sacrifice for sins.
    - (2) The Unleavened Bread typified the sinless life of (Jesus) Christ on which the believer feeds.
- 10- Feast of Firstfruits (23:9-14, Num 28:26-21)
- a- Date. 16<sup>th</sup> Abib (April)
  - b- Purpose.
    - (1) To recognize God's deed to the whole harvest and their position as tenants on God's land.
    - (2) To guarantee and hallow the full harvest.
  - c- Ritual or requirement.
    - (1) To be observed when they entered the land.
    - (2) To make special offerings (Wave Offering) - Fine grain.  
Designated on the 14<sup>th</sup> Abib - Passover - Harvest on 15<sup>th</sup> harvested sheaf of grain - waved by the priest on the 16<sup>th</sup> (Sunday). - They weren't to eat any of their harvest until after this was done.
  - d- Historical significance.
    - (1) Signified dedication of the whole harvest to God.
  - e- Typical significance.
    - (1) Typified Christ's resurrection (1Co 15:20).

**Leviticus 23 cont.**

- 15 ¶ And ye shall count unto you from the morrow after the sabbath, from the day that ye brought the sheaf of the wave-offering; seven sabbaths shall there be complete:
- 16 even unto the morrow after the seventh sabbath shall ye number fifty days; and ye shall offer a new meal-offering unto Jehovah.
- 17 Ye shall bring out of your habitations two wave-loaves of two tenth parts *of an ephah*: they shall be of fine flour, they shall be baked with leaven, for first-fruits unto Jehovah.
- 18 And ye shall present with the bread seven lambs without blemish a year old, and one young bullock, and two rams: they shall be a burnt-offering unto Jehovah, with their meal-offering, and their drink-offerings, even an offering made by fire, of a sweet savor unto Jehovah.
- 19 And ye shall offer one he-goat for a sin-offering, and two he-lambs a year old for a sacrifice of peace-offerings.
- 20 And the priest shall wave them with the bread of the first-fruits for a wave-offering before Jehovah, with the two lambs: they shall be holy to Jehovah for the priest.
- 21 And ye shall make proclamation on the selfsame day; there shall be a holy convocation unto you; ye shall do no servile work: it is a statute for ever in all your dwellings throughout your generations.
- 22 And when ye reap the harvest of your land, thou shalt not wholly reap the corners of thy field, neither shalt thou gather the gleanings of thy harvest: thou shalt leave them for the poor, and for the sojourner: I am Jehovah your God.

11- Feast of Pentecost (of weeks) vs. 23:15-22, Deu 16.

- a- Date. 50 days after Firstfruits (7<sup>th</sup> week)
- b- Purpose.
  - (1) To celebrate the end of the barley harvest which was a pledge of the full harvest and to consecrate all to God.
- c- Ritual or requirement.
  - (1) All males to appear at the Tabernacle.
  - (2) Special offering of **leavened** loaves. The two loaves represented consecration of their daily food.
  - (3) special Burnt offerings. 7 lambs, 1 bullock, and 2 rams.
  - (4) Special sin and peace offerings.
  - (5) To show liberality to the poor.
- d- Historical significance.
  - (1) To "remember thou wast a bondman in Egypt."
- e- Typical significance.
  - (1) Typified formation of the Body of Christ, on the day of Pentecost (**from sinners**).

**Leviticus 23 cont.**

- 23 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 24 Speak unto the children of Israel, saying, In the seventh month, on the first day of the month, shall be a solemn rest unto you, a memorial of blowing of trumpets, a holy convocation.
- 25 Ye shall do no servile work; and ye shall offer an offering made by fire unto Jehovah.
- 26 And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 27 Howbeit on the tenth day of this seventh month is the day of atonement: it shall be a holy convocation unto you, and ye shall afflict your souls; and ye shall offer an offering made by fire unto Jehovah.
- 28 And ye shall do no manner of work in that same day; for it is a day of atonement, to make atonement for you before Jehovah your God.
- 29 For whatsoever soul it be that shall not be afflicted in that same day; he shall be cut off from his people.
- 30 And whatsoever soul it be that doeth any manner of work in that same day, that soul will I destroy from among his people.
- 31 Ye shall do no manner of work: it is a statute for ever throughout your generations in all your dwellings.
- 32 It shall be unto you a sabbath of solemn rest, and ye shall afflict your souls: in the ninth day of the month at even, from even unto even, shall ye keep your sabbath.

## 12- Feast of Trumpets

vs. 23:23-25, Num 29.

- a- Date. 1<sup>st</sup> of Ethanim (7<sup>th</sup> month).
- b- Purpose.
  - (1) The Trumpet symbolized the voice of the Omnipotent GOD alerting the people concerning the sacred month approaching.
- c- Ritual or requirement.
  - (1) Trumpets to be blown longer and louder than for the monthly new moons.
  - (2) To do no servile work.
  - (3) Regular daily and monthly offerings made.
- d- Historical significance.
  - (1) Marked the beginning of the civil year - "They blew in the New Year."
- e- Typical significance.
  - (1) Typified Israel's regathering to the land prior to their day of mourning and Millennial joy.

13- The Great Day of Atonement

vs. 26-32

cf. chapter 16, and Num 29.).

- a- Date. 10<sup>th</sup> of Ethanim (Friday - the good Friday of the OT).
- b- Purpose.
  - (1) Emphasizes the People's sense of sin compared with Holiness of God.
  - (2) Symbolizes God's removal of sin by sacrifice and cleansing of nation for another year.
- c- Ritual or requirement. See Lev 16.
  - (1) No servile work.
  - (2) To mourn and afflict their souls.
  - (3) To offer special sin offerings.
    - A bullock for the High Priest.
    - A goat for the people.
    - A scapegoat led into the wilderness.
- d- Historical significance.
  - (1) To remind the nation of their need for cleansing from sin this, once a year.
  - (2) To remind the nation of the solemnity of approaching GOD.
- e- Typical significance.
  - (1) The High Priest typified Christ entering the most Holy with His Own Blood for the sins of the people (Once-For-All) Cf. Heb 9.
  - (2) The slain goat typified the Godward satisfaction of Christ's Sacrificial death.
  - (3) The scapegoat typified Christ's bearing the sins away..
  - (4) The Day also typified Israel's future cleansing before Its Millennial Glory. - cf. Zec 12:10-13:1.

**Leviticus 23 cont.**

- 33 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 34 Speak unto the children of Israel, saying, On the fifteenth day of this seventh month is the feast of *{1}* tabernacles for seven days unto Jehovah. *{1} Heb booths*
- 35 On the first day shall be a holy convocation: ye shall do no servile work.
- 36 Seven days ye shall offer an offering made by fire unto Jehovah: on the eighth day shall be a holy convocation unto you; and ye shall offer an offering made by fire unto Jehovah: it is a *{1}* solemn assembly; ye shall do no servile work. *{1} Or closing festival*
- 37 These are the set feasts of Jehovah, which ye shall proclaim to be holy convocations, to offer an offering made by fire unto Jehovah, a burnt-offering, and a meal-offering, a sacrifice, and drink-offerings, each on its own day;
- 38 besides the sabbaths of Jehovah, and besides your gifts, and besides all your vows, and besides all your freewill-offerings, which ye give unto Jehovah.
- 39 Howbeit on the fifteenth day of the seventh month, when ye have gathered in the fruits of the land, ye shall keep the feast of Jehovah seven days: on the first day shall be a solemn rest, and on the eighth day shall be a solemn rest.
- 40 And ye shall take you on the first day the fruit of goodly trees, branches of palm-trees, and boughs of thick trees, and willows of the brook; and ye shall rejoice before Jehovah your God seven days.
- 41 And ye shall keep it a feast unto Jehovah seven days in the year: it is a statute for ever throughout your generations; ye shall keep it in the seventh month.
- 42 Ye shall dwell in booths seven days; all that are home-born in Israel shall dwell in booths;
- 43 that your generations may know that I made the children of Israel to dwell in booths, when I brought them out of the land of Egypt: I am Jehovah your God.
- 44 And Moses declared unto the children of Israel the set feasts of Jehovah.

8- The Feast of Tabernacles

vs. 23:33-44

cf. chapter 16, and Num 29.).

a- Date. 15<sup>th</sup>-22 of Ethanim (2 Wednesdays inclusive).

b- Purpose.

- (1) To give opportunity for thanks to God for the harvest.
- (2) To give opportunity to complete the vows of free-will offerings made during the year.
- (3) To remind the people of Jehovah's care for their fathers in the wilderness and His present provision.

c- Ritual or requirement. See Lev 16.

(1) Special Burnt offerings daily starting on the 13<sup>th</sup> of Ethanim.a) 13 bullocks on first day 12 on second day, . . . 7 on the 7<sup>th</sup> day making a total of 70 bullocks!

b) 2 rams with their meal offerings.

c) 14 lambs with their meal offerings.

(2) To dwell in booths (Note our Lord's dwelling in John 1: σκηνοῦσκειν 1) to fix one's tabernacle, have one's tabernacle, abide (or live) in a tabernacle (or tent), tabernacle. 2) to dwell.

(3) To keep year-end vows (Num 29:39).

(4) To observe special time of rejoicing. - To wave palm branches.

(5) No servile work on first and eighth days.

(6) The entire Law was to be read aloud each-seventh year.

d- Historical significance.

(1) To remind them of the Lord's care in the wilderness when they dwelt in tents.

e- Typical significance.

(1) Typified Israel's Millennial joy after cleansing. cf. Zec 14:16.

**Leviticus 24**

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 2 Command the children of Israel, that they bring unto thee pure olive oil beaten for the light, {1} to cause a lamp to burn continually. {1} *Or to set up a lamp continually* }
- 3 Without the veil of the testimony, in the tent of meeting, shall Aaron keep it in order from evening to morning before Jehovah continually: it shall be a statute for ever throughout your generations.
- 4 He shall keep in order the lamps upon the pure candlestick before Jehovah continually.
- 5 And thou shalt take fine flour, and bake twelve cakes thereof: two tenth parts *of an ephah* shall be in one cake.
- 6 And thou shalt set them in {1} two rows, six on a row, upon the pure table before Jehovah. {1} *Or two piles, six in a pile* }
- 7 And thou shalt put pure frankincense upon each {1} row, that it may be to the bread for a memorial, even an offering made by fire unto Jehovah. {1} *Or pile* }
- 8 Every sabbath day he shall set it in order before Jehovah continually; it is {1} on the behalf of the children of Israel, an everlasting covenant. {1} *Or from* }
- 9 And it shall be for Aaron and his sons; and they shall eat it in a holy place: for it is most holy unto him of the offerings of Jehovah made by fire by a perpetual statute.
- 10 ¶ And the son of an Israelitish woman, whose father was an Egyptian, went out among the children of Israel; and the son of the Israelitish woman and a man of Israel strove together in the camp:
- 11 and the son of the Israelitish woman blasphemed the Name, and cursed; and they brought him unto Moses. And his mother's name was Shelomith, the daughter of Dibri, of the tribe of Dan.
- 12 And they put him in ward, that it might be declared unto them at the mouth of Jehovah.
- 13 And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 14 Bring forth him that hath cursed without the camp; and let all that heard him lay their hands upon his head, and let all the congregation stone him.
- 15 And thou shalt speak unto the children of Israel, saying, Whosoever curseth his God shall bear his sin.
- 16 And he that blasphemeth the name of Jehovah, he shall surely be put to death; all the congregation shall certainly stone him: as well the sojourner, as the home-born, when he blasphemeth the name *of Jehovah* , shall be put to death.
- 17 And he that smiteth any man mortally shall surely be put to death.
- 18 And he that smiteth a beast mortally shall make it good, life for life.
- 19 And if a man cause a blemish in his neighbor; as he hath done, so shall it be done to him:
- 20 breach for breach, eye for eye, tooth for tooth; as he hath caused a blemish in a man, so shall it be rendered unto him.
- 21 And he that killeth a beast shall make it good: and he that killeth a man shall be put to death.
- 22 Ye shall have one manner of law, as well for the sojourner, as for the home-born: for I am Jehovah your God.
- 23 And Moses spake to the children of Israel; and they brought forth him that had cursed out of the camp, and stoned him with stones. And the children of Israel did as Jehovah commanded Moses.



- D- Parenthetical Regulations- (24.)
  - 1- Concerning holy lamps and showbread vs. 1-9
  - 2- concerning blasphemy vs. 10-23
    - a- Purpose.
      - (1) Blasphemers to be stoned. (this has nothing to do with drugs).
      - (2) The principle of exacting justice restated. vs. 17-23

## Leviticus 25

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses in mount Sinai, saying,
- 2 Speak unto the children of Israel, and say unto them, When ye come into the land which I give you, then shall the land keep a sabbath unto Jehovah.
- 3 Six years thou shalt sow thy field, and six years thou shalt prune thy vineyard, and gather in the fruits thereof;
- 4 but in the seventh year shall be a sabbath of solemn rest for the land, a sabbath unto Jehovah: thou shalt neither sow thy field, nor prune thy vineyard.
- 5 That which groweth of itself of thy harvest thou shalt not reap, and the grapes of thy undressed vine thou shalt not gather: it shall be a year of solemn rest for the land.
- 6 And the sabbath of the land shall be for food for you; for thee, and for thy servant and for thy maid, and for thy hired servant and for thy stranger, who sojourn with thee.
- 7 And for thy cattle, and for the beasts that are in thy land, shall all the increase thereof be for food.
- 8 ¶ And thou shalt number seven sabbaths of years unto thee, seven times seven years; and there shall be unto thee the days of seven sabbaths of years, even forty and nine years.
- 9 Then shalt thou send abroad the loud trumpet on the tenth day of the seventh month; in the day of atonement shall ye send abroad the trumpet throughout all your land.
- 10 And ye shall hallow the fiftieth year, and proclaim liberty throughout the land unto all the inhabitants thereof: it shall be a jubilee unto you; and ye shall return every man unto his possession, and ye shall return every man unto his family.
- 11 A jubilee shall that fiftieth year be unto you: ye shall not sow, neither reap that which groweth of itself in it, nor gather *the grapes* in it of the undressed vines.
- 12 For it is a jubilee; it shall be holy unto you: ye shall eat the increase thereof out of the field.
- 13 In this year of jubilee ye shall return every man unto his possession.
- 14 And if thou sell aught unto thy neighbor, or buy of thy neighbor's hand, ye shall not wrong one another.
- 15 According to the number of years after the jubilee thou shalt buy of thy neighbor, *and* according unto the number of years of the crops he shall sell unto thee.
- 16 According to the multitude of the years thou shalt increase the price thereof, and according to the fewness of the years thou shalt diminish the price of it; for the number of the crops doth he sell unto thee.
- 17 And ye shall not wrong one another; but thou shalt fear thy God: for I am Jehovah your God.
- 18 Wherefore ye shall do my statutes, and keep mine ordinances and do them; and ye shall dwell in the land in safety.
- 19 And the land shall yield its fruit, and ye shall eat your fill, and dwell therein in safety.
- 20 And if ye shall say, What shall we eat the seventh year? Behold, we shall not sow, nor gather in our increase;
- 21 then I will command my blessing upon you in the sixth year, and it shall bring forth fruit for the three years.
- 22 And ye shall sow the eighth year, and eat of the fruits, the old store; until the ninth year, until its fruits come in, ye shall eat the old store.
- 23 ¶ And the land shall not be sold in perpetuity; for the land is mine: for ye are strangers and sojourners with me.
- 24 And in all the land of your possession ye shall grant a redemption for the land.
- 25 If thy brother be waxed poor, and sell some of his possession, then shall his kinsman that is next unto him come, and shall redeem that which his brother hath sold.
- 26 And if a man have no one to redeem it, and he be waxed rich and find sufficient to redeem it;
- 27 then let him reckon the years of the sale thereof, and restore the overplus unto the man to whom he sold it; and he shall return unto his possession.
- 28 But if he be not able to get it back for himself, then that which he hath sold shall remain in the hand of him that hath bought it until the year of jubilee: and in the jubilee it shall go out, and he shall return unto his possession.
- 29 And if a man sell a dwelling-house in a walled city, then he may redeem it within a whole year after it is sold; for a full year shall he have the right of redemption.
- 30 And if it be not redeemed within the space of a full year, then the house that is in the walled city shall be made sure in perpetuity to him that bought it, throughout his generations: it shall not go out in the jubilee.
- 31 But the houses of the villages which have no wall round about them shall be reckoned with the fields of the country: they may be redeemed, and they shall go out in the jubilee.
- 32 Nevertheless the cities of the Levites, the houses of the cities of their possession, may the Levites redeem at any time.
- 33 And {1} if one of the Levites redeem, then the house that was sold, and the city of his possession, shall go out in the jubilee; for the houses of the cities of the Levites are their possession among the children of Israel. {1} *Or if a man redeem from the Levites; Or according to Vulg if they have not been redeemed*
- 34 But the field of the {1} suburbs of their cities may not be sold; for it is their perpetual possession. {1} *Or pasture lands*
- 35 And if thy brother be waxed poor, and his hand fail with thee; then thou shalt {1} uphold him: *as a stranger and a sojourner shall he live with thee. {1} Or relieve*
- 36 Take thou no interest of him or increase, but fear thy God; that thy brother may live with thee.

- 37 Thou shalt not give him thy money upon interest, nor give him thy victuals for increase.
- 38 I am Jehovah your God, who brought you forth out of the land of Egypt, to give you the land of Canaan, *and* to be your God.
- 39 ¶ And if thy brother be waxed poor with thee, and sell himself unto thee; thou shalt not make him to serve as a bond-servant.
- 40 As a hired servant, and as a sojourner, he shall be with thee; he shall serve with thee unto the year of jubilee:
- 41 then shall he go out from thee, he and his children with him, and shall return unto his own family, and unto the possession of his fathers shall he return.
- 42 For they are my servants, whom I brought forth out of the land of Egypt: they shall not be sold as bondmen.
- 43 Thou shalt not rule over him with rigor, but shalt fear thy God.
- 44 And as for thy bondmen, and thy bondmaids, whom thou shalt have; of the nations that are round about you, of them shall ye buy bondmen and bondmaids.
- 45 Moreover of the children of the strangers that sojourn among you, of them shall ye buy, and of their families that are with you, which they have begotten in your land: and they shall be your possession.
- 46 And ye shall make them an inheritance for your children after you, to hold for a possession; of them shall ye take your bondmen for ever: but over your brethren the children of Israel ye shall not rule, one over another, with rigor.
- 47 And if a stranger or sojourner with thee be waxed rich, and thy brother be waxed poor beside him, and sell himself unto the stranger *or* sojourner with thee, or to the stock of the stranger's family;
- 48 after that he is sold he may be redeemed: one of his brethren may redeem him;
- 49 or his uncle, or his uncle's son, may redeem him, or any that is nigh of kin unto him of his family may redeem him; or if he be waxed rich, he may redeem himself.
- 50 And he shall reckon with him that bought him from the year that he sold himself to him unto the year of jubilee: and the price of his sale shall be according unto the number of years; according to the time of a hired servant shall he be with him.
- 51 If there be yet many years, according unto them he shall give back the price of his redemption out of the money that he was bought for.
- 52 And if there remain but few years unto the year of jubilee, then he shall reckon with him; according unto his years shall he give back the price of his redemption.
- 53 As a servant hired year by year shall he be with him: he shall not rule with rigor over him in thy sight.
- 54 And if he be not redeemed *{1}* by these *means*, then he shall go out in the year of jubilee, he, and his children with him. *{1} Or in these years}*
- 55 For unto me the children of Israel are servants; they are my servants whom I brought forth out of the land of Egypt: I am Jehovah your God.

E-	Regulations Concerning Canaan-	(25.-26.)
1-	The sabbatic Year And The Year Of Jubilee	(25.)
a-	The Sabbatic Year	vs. 1-7
	(1) No Sowing or Reaping.	
	(2) The principle of exacting justice restated.	vs. 17-23
a-	The Year Of Jubilee	vs. 8-55
	(1) To begin on the Day of Atonement on the 49 <sup>th</sup> year..	
	(2) To be a year of liberation and restoration.	
	Property was to be returned to original owner or family.	
	This governed the sale of property and slaves.	
	(3) The Law of Redemption stated	vs. 23-34
	(4) Responsibility to the poor	vs. 35-55

## Leviticus 26

- 1 ¶ Ye shall make you no idols, neither shall ye rear you up a graven image, or {1} a pillar, neither shall ye place any figured stone in your land, to bow down {2} unto it: for I am Jehovah your God. {1} Or an obelisk 2) Or thereon}
- 2 Ye shall keep my sabbaths, and reverence my sanctuary: I am Jehovah.
- 3 If ye walk in my statutes, and keep my commandments, and do them;
- 4 then I will give your rains in their season, and the land shall yield its increase, and the trees of the field shall yield their fruit.
- 5 And your threshing shall reach unto the vintage, and the vintage shall reach unto the sowing time; and ye shall eat your bread to the full, and dwell in your land safely.
- 6 And I will give peace in the land, and ye shall lie down, and none shall make you afraid: and I will cause evil beasts to cease out of the land, neither shall the sword go through your land.
- 7 And ye shall chase your enemies, and they shall fall before you by the sword.
- 8 And five of you shall chase a hundred, and a hundred of you shall chase ten thousand; and your enemies shall fall before you by the sword.
- 9 And I will have respect unto you, and make you fruitful, and multiply you, and will establish my covenant with you.
- 10 And ye shall eat old store long kept, and ye shall bring forth the old {1} because of the new. {1} Or from before}
- 11 And I will set my tabernacle among you: and my soul shall not abhor you.
- 12 And I will walk among you, and will be your God, and ye shall be my people.
- 13 I am Jehovah your God, who brought you forth out of the land of Egypt, that ye should not be their bondmen; and I have broken the bars of your yoke, and made you go upright.
- 14 ¶ But if ye will not hearken unto me, and will not do all these commandments;
- 15 and if ye shall reject my statutes, and if your soul abhor mine ordinances, so that ye will not do all my commandments, but break my covenant;
- 16 I also will do this unto you: I will appoint terror over you, even consumption and fever, that shall consume the eyes, and make the soul to pine away; and ye shall sow your seed in vain, for your enemies shall eat it.
- 17 And I will set my face against you, and ye shall be smitten before your enemies: they that hate you shall rule over you; and ye shall flee when none pursueth you.
- 18 And if ye will not yet for these things hearken unto me, then I will chastise you seven times more for your sins.
- 19 And I will break the pride of your power: and I will make your heaven as iron, and your earth as brass;
- 20 and your strength shall be spent in vain; for your land shall not yield its increase, neither shall the trees of the land yield their fruit.
- 21 And if ye walk contrary unto me, and will not hearken unto me, I will bring seven times more plagues upon you according to your sins.
- 22 And I will send the beast of the field among you, which shall rob you of your children, and destroy your cattle, and make you few in number; and your ways shall become desolate.
- 23 And if by these things ye will not be reformed {1} unto me, but will walk contrary unto me; {1} Or by}
- 24 then will I also walk contrary unto you; and I will smite you, even I, seven times for your sins.
- 25 And I will bring a sword upon you, that shall execute the vengeance of the covenant; and ye shall be gathered together within your cities: and I will send the pestilence among you; and ye shall be delivered into the hand of the enemy.
- 26 When I break your staff of bread, ten women shall bake your bread in one oven, and they shall deliver your bread again by weight: and ye shall eat, and not be satisfied.
- 27 And if ye will not for all this hearken unto me, but walk contrary unto me;
- 28 then I will walk contrary unto you in wrath; and I also will chastise you seven times for your sins.
- 29 And ye shall eat the flesh of your sons, and the flesh of your daughters shall ye eat.
- 30 And I will destroy your high places, and cut down your sun-images, and cast your dead bodies upon the bodies of your idols; and my soul shall abhor you.
- 31 And I will make your cities a waste, and will bring your sanctuaries unto desolation, and I will not smell the savor of your sweet odors.
- 32 And I will bring the land into desolation; and your enemies that dwell therein shall be astonished at it.
- 33 And you will I scatter among the nations, and I will draw out the sword after you: and your land shall be a desolation, and your cities shall be a waste.
- 34 Then shall the land enjoy its sabbaths, as long as it lieth desolate, and ye are in your enemies' land; even then shall the land rest, and enjoy its sabbaths.
- 35 As long as it lieth desolate it shall have rest, even the rest which it had not in your sabbaths, when ye dwelt upon it.
- 36 And as for them that are left of you, I will send a faintness into their heart in the lands of their enemies: and the sound of a driven leaf shall chase them; and they shall flee, as one fleeth from the sword; and they shall fall when none pursueth.

- 37 And they shall stumble one upon another, as it were before the sword, when none pursueth: and ye shall have no power to stand before your enemies.
- 38 And ye shall perish among the nations, and the land of your enemies shall eat you up.
- 39 And they that are left of you shall pine away in their iniquity in your enemies' lands; and also in the iniquities of their fathers shall they pine away with them.
- 40 ¶ And they shall confess their iniquity, and the iniquity of their fathers, in their trespass which they trespassed against me, and also that, because they walked contrary unto me,
- 41 I also walked contrary unto them, and brought them into the land of their enemies: if then their uncircumcised heart be humbled, and they then accept of the punishment of their iniquity;
- 42 then will I remember my covenant with Jacob; and also my covenant with Isaac, and also my covenant with Abraham will I remember; and I will remember the land.
- 43 The land also shall be left by them, and shall enjoy its sabbaths, while it lieth desolate without them: and they shall accept of the punishment of their iniquity; because, even because they rejected mine ordinances, and their soul abhorred my statutes.
- 44 And yet for all that, when they are in the land of their enemies, I will not reject them, neither will I abhor them, to destroy them utterly, and to break my covenant with them; for I am Jehovah their God;
- 45 but I will for their sakes remember the covenant of their ancestors, whom I brought forth out of the land of Egypt in the sight of the nations, that I might be their God: I am Jehovah.
- 46 These are the statutes and ordinances and laws, which Jehovah made between him and the children of Israel in mount Sinai by Moses.

---

## 2- conditions of Blessing In The Land (26.)

### a- The Obligations to God Summarized vs. 1-2

- (1) Beware of idolatry.
- (2) Observe the Sabbaths.

Ignoring these warnings will drive the nation into captivity! (How many Sabbaths did they ignore?)

### b- The blessings of obedience vs. 3-13

#### These are Conditional!

- (1) Agricultural prosperity.
- (2) National peace and safety.
- (3) To enjoy the presence of God.

### c- The chastisement for disobedience vs. 14-39

#### 6 successive judgments!

- (1) Pestilence and military defeat vs. 16-17  
Note Noah and Judges
- (2) Agricultural failure vs. 18-20
- (3) wild beasts to destroy vs. 21-22
- (4) Sword of enemies and famine to destroy vs. 35-55  
Note: Ruth.
- (5) Cannibalism to result vs. 27-31
- (6) Scattering and eviction from the land vs. 32-39  
The land then will enjoy rest. Note: 1 Chron 36:21

### d- The blessings after confession vs. 40-46 (what/where is this concept taught in NT?)

- (1) Disobedience will not bring annihilation.
- (2) The covenant guaranteed blessing upon confession.

## Leviticus 27

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 2 Speak unto the children of Israel, and say unto them, When a man shall {1} accomplish a vow, {2} the persons shall be for Jehovah by thy estimation. {1} Or make a special vow 2) Or according to thy estimation of persons unto Jehovah, then they estimation etc}
- 3 And thy estimation shall be of the male from twenty years old even unto sixty years old, even thy estimation shall be fifty shekels of silver, after the shekel of the sanctuary.
- 4 And if it be a female, then thy estimation shall be thirty shekels.
- 5 And if it be from five years old even unto twenty years old, then thy estimation shall be of the male twenty shekels, and for the female ten shekels.
- 6 And if it be from a month old even unto five years old, then thy estimation shall be of the male five shekels of silver, and for the female thy estimation shall be three shekels of silver.
- 7 And if it be from sixty years old and upward; if it be a male, then thy estimation shall be fifteen shekels, and for the female ten shekels.
- 8 But if he be poorer than thy estimation, then he shall be set before the priest, and the priest shall value him; according to the ability of him that vowed shall the priest value him.
- 9 And if it be a beast, whereof men offer an oblation unto Jehovah, all that any man giveth of such unto Jehovah shall be holy.
- 10 He shall not alter it, nor change it, a good for a bad, or a bad for a good: and if he shall at all change beast for beast, then both it and that for which it is changed shall be holy.
- 11 And if it be any unclean beast, of which they do not offer an oblation unto Jehovah, then he shall set the beast before the priest;
- 12 and the priest shall value it, whether it be good or bad: as thou the priest valuest it, so shall it be.
- 13 But if he will indeed redeem it, then he shall add the fifth part thereof unto thy estimation.
- 14 ¶ And when a man shall sanctify his house to be holy unto Jehovah, then the priest shall estimate it, whether it be good or bad: as the priest shall estimate it, so shall it stand.
- 15 And if he that sanctified it will redeem his house, then he shall add the fifth part of the money of thy estimation unto it, and it shall be his.
- 16 And if a man shall sanctify unto Jehovah part of the field of his possession, then thy estimation shall be according to the sowing thereof: the sowing of a homer of barley *shall be valued* at fifty shekels of silver.
- 17 If he sanctify his field from the year of jubilee, according to thy estimation it shall stand.
- 18 But if he sanctify his field after the jubilee, then the priest shall reckon unto him the money according to the years that remain unto the year of jubilee; and an abatement shall be made from thy estimation.
- 19 And if he that sanctified the field will indeed redeem it, then he shall add the fifth part of the money of thy estimation unto it, and it shall be assured to him.
- 20 And if he will not redeem the field, or if he have sold the field to another man, it shall not be redeemed any more:
- 21 but the field, when it goeth out in the jubilee, shall be holy unto Jehovah, as a field devoted; the possession thereof shall be the priest's.
- 22 And if he sanctify unto Jehovah a field which he hath bought, which is not of the field of his possession;
- 23 then the priest shall reckon unto him the worth of thy estimation unto the year of jubilee: and he shall give thine estimation in that day, as a holy thing unto Jehovah.
- 24 In the year of jubilee the field shall return unto him of whom it was bought, even to him to whom the possession of the land belongeth.
- 25 And all thy estimations shall be according to the shekel of the sanctuary: twenty gerahs shall be the shekel.
- 26 ¶ Only the firstling among beasts, which is made a firstling to Jehovah, no man shall sanctify it; whether it be ox or sheep, it is Jehovah's.
- 27 And if it be of an unclean beast, then he shall ransom it according to thine estimation, and shall add unto it the fifth part thereof: or if it be not redeemed, then it shall be sold according to thy estimation.
- 28 Notwithstanding, no devoted thing, that a man shall devote unto Jehovah of all that he hath, whether of man or beast, or of the field of his possession, shall be sold or redeemed: every devoted thing is most holy unto Jehovah.
- 29 No one devoted, that shall be devoted from among men, shall be ransomed; he shall surely be put to death.
- 30 And all the tithe of the land, whether of the seed of the land, or of the fruit of the tree, is Jehovah's: it is holy unto Jehovah.
- 31 And if a man will redeem aught of his tithe, he shall add unto it the fifth part thereof.
- 32 And all the tithe of the herd or the flock, whatsoever passeth under the rod, the tenth shall be holy unto Jehovah.
- 33 He shall not search whether it be good or bad, neither shall he change it: and if he change it at all, then both it and that for which it is changed shall be holy; it shall not be redeemed.
- 34 These are the commandments, which Jehovah commanded Moses for the children of Israel in mount Sinai.

- 2- Consecration, vows, and Tithes (27.)
- a- The regulations for dedication of onself vs. 1-8
    - (1) values set by sex and ages of individuals.
  - b- The dedication of an animal vs. 9-13
    - (1) vows are not to be altered after being made.
    - (2) Clean animals to be brought to Tabernacle.
    - (3) Unclean animals to be sold and the price brought.
  - c- The dedication of a house or field vs. 14-26
    - Note Ananias and Sapphira in Acts 5:1ff.
    - (1) Evaluated by the priest.
    - (2) Apparently rented from the priest or redeemed it as its value plus  $\frac{1}{5}$ .
  - d- Things excluded from the dedication vs. 26-34
    - Tithes, firstborn, etc.: These already belonged to GOD.

## QUESTIONS ON LEVITICUS

- 1- At what time during the wilderness wanderings was the instruction of Leviticus given?
- 2- State the two-fold purpose of the book of Leviticus
  - 1)
  - 2)
- 3- What connection do you see between Exodus and Leviticus other than authorship?
  - 1)
  - 2)
- 4- How is this book distinct among the books of Moses?
  - 1)
  - 2)
- 5- Name five offerings under two different classifications.

<u>NAME OF OFFERING</u>	<u>KIND OF OFFERING</u>
1)	
2)	
3)	
4)	
5)	
- 6- For what reason are the worship offerings described before the sin-expiation offerings?
- 7- Describe the usual ritual by the offerer in three steps for the animal
  - 1)
  - 2)
  - 3)
- 8- In what way was the burnt offering different from all the others?
- 9- How did the priest dispose of the meal offering?
- 10- What was the historical purpose of the peace offering?
- 11- In which offering did the offerer partake?
- 12- Which offering symbolized the perfect life of Christ?
- 13- What sin offering was required for intentional disobedience to God's Laws?
- 14- Which offering required the sprinkling of blood before the inner veil?



15- Give two differences between the sin offering and the trespass offering?

1)

2)

How about the actual offering?

3) Sin offering -

4)- Trespass offering -

16- All the flesh of what offering belonged to the priest?

17- What Divine sign climaxed the conclusion of the consecration of the priests?

18- What was the basic sin of Nadab and Abihu?

19- What lesson is taught in the strict requirements of clean foods and clean bodies?

20- What was the predominant offering at the Day of Atonement?

21- What did the ritual of the Day of Atonement symbolize?

22- Name the 7 Feasts and give the dates of the year in which they occur?

NAME OF FEAST

DATE(S) OF FEAST

1)

2)

3)

4)

5)

6)

7)

23- what 2 general purposes do you see in the annual feasts?

1)

2)

24- Which feast was a time of special sorrow; which feast was a time of special joy?

1)

2)

25- Which were the two feasts that lasted a week each?

1)

2)

26- What was the final judgment promised for continued disobedience?  
(Chapter 26)

Copy these 2 pages, type your answers, and hand in or send by email to  
[swede@thecfbc.com](mailto:swede@thecfbc.com)

## **THE BOOK OF NUMBERS**

**INTRODUCTION**

**PRINCIPLES**

**TEXT**

**OUTLINE**

**QUESTIONS**

Adapted from the larger work (under contract - prior his home-going) of  
**Dr. Stanley Ellisen, Beloved Professor of English Bible  
And Interpretation  
At The Western Baptist Theological Seminary.**

This Monograph was prepared for Seminary,  
Bible College, Church and Home Bible studies.  
Also contained in each book is an Introduction and  
on opposing pages the associated Biblical text taken from  
the ASV Version of 1901; and a list of  
Class Questions.

## INTRODUCTION

### 1. Title.

- A- Hebrews called it "*And He said*" or, more often, "In the wilderness," from the first and fifth words respectively.
- B- The LXX named it "Numbers" (Arithmoi) because of the two numberings or censuses taken in the book (1-3; 26).

### II. Authorship.

Mosaic authorship is confirmed by its connection with the two previous books and the many internal indications that God spoke these words to Moses (1:1; 2:1; 3:5, 14, 40; etc.).

### III. Historical Setting.

#### A- Date of the writing.

Numbers was written (or finished) after the death of Aaron who died the first day of the fifth month of the 40th year after the exodus. He died just a few months before Moses. Thus Moses was about 120 years old at this time.

#### B- Setting of the book.

- 1- The book of Numbers begins with the numbering of the children of Israel at the first day of the second month of the second year after the exodus. This was 3 months after the exodus one month after the completion of the Tabernacle, and immediately after the giving of the Levitical code. The march began 20 days later.
- 2- The mood of the people was steadily worsening following the completion of the Tabernacle. A mixed multitude who came with them from Egypt "fell a lusting," causing the children of Israel also to murmur. Murmuring and rebellion became prevalent from top to bottom, resulting in God's judgment of 38 years' wandering till the old generation had died off.
- 3- After the death of Aaron at Mt. Hor, the children of Israel journeyed to the Plains of Moab, dwelling there opposite Jericho for nine months and ten days.
- 4- In summary, the events recorded include 20 days at Sinai before the Kadesh-Barnea episode, 37 years and 11 months' wilderness wanderings after Kadesh-Barnea, and nine months and ten days in the Plains of Moab. (E. of Jordan)

## The Purpose and Theme of Numbers.

The purpose of Moses in writing this book was to preserve a record of God's longsuffering with the people and to show that His mercy did not preclude Him punishing their sins. Though He had redeemed them in grace, He did not save them to a life of ease, undiscipline, and independence, but to a life of service and warfare. The key phrase (occurring 14 times in the first chapter) is "All that are able to go forth to war." Fighting was ahead and thus mustering and discipline were necessary. This life of service required faith to overcome the enemies and entire dependence upon the Lord. God's sovereignty and man's free will are seen as God sloughs off the disobedient and then fulfills His will with an obedient generation--

---

## OUTLINE OF NUMBERS

- |   |           |
|---|-----------|
| I. Organization of the First Generation. 20 days at Sinai           | 1. - 10.  |
| II. Disorganization of the First Generation. 38 years wanderings    | 11. - 20. |
| III. Reorganization in the Second Generation. On the plains of Moab | 21. - 36. |
- 

### Numbers 1

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses in the wilderness of Sinai, in the tent of meeting, on the first day of the second month, in the second year after they were come out of the land of Egypt, saying,
- 2 Take ye the sum of all the congregation of the children of Israel, by their families, by their fathers' houses, according to the number of the names, every male, by their polls;
- 3 from twenty years old and upward, all that are able to go forth to war in Israel, thou and Aaron shall number them by their hosts.
- 4 And with you there shall be a man of every tribe; every one head of his fathers' house.
- 5 And these are the names of the men that shall stand with you. Of Reuben: Elizur the son of Shedeur.
- 6 Of Simeon: Shelumiel the son of Zurishaddai.
- 7 Of Judah: Nahshon the son of Amminadab.
- 8 Of Issachar: Nethanel the son of Zuar.
- 9 Of Zebulun: Eliab the son of Helon.
- 10 Of the children of Joseph: Of Ephraim: Elishama the son of Ammihud. Of Manasseh: Gamaliel the son of Pedahzur.
- 11 Of Benjamin: Abidan the son of Gideoni.
- 12 Of Dan: Ahiezer the son of Ammishaddai.
- 13 Of Asher: Pagiel the son of Ochran.
- 14 Of Gad: Eliasaph the son of {1} Deuel. {1} In Nu 2:14 Reuel}
- 15 Of Naphtali: Ahira the son of Enan.
- 16 These are they that were called of the congregation, the princes of the tribes of their fathers; they were the heads of the {1} thousands of Israel. {1} Or families}
- 17 ¶ And Moses and Aaron took these men that are mentioned by name:
- 18 And they assembled all the congregation together on the first day of the second month; and they declared their pedigrees after their families, by their fathers' houses, according to the number of the names, from twenty years old and upward, by their polls.
- 19 As Jehovah commanded Moses, so he numbered them in the wilderness of Sinai.
- 20 And the children of Reuben, Israel's first-born, their generations, by their families, by their fathers' houses, according to the number of the names, by their polls, every male from twenty years old and upward, all that were able to go forth to war;
- 21 those that were numbered of them, of the tribe of Reuben, were forty and six thousand and five hundred.
- 22 Of the children of Simeon, their generations, by their families, by their fathers' houses, those that were numbered thereof, according to the number of the names, by their polls, every male from twenty years old and upward, all that were able to go forth to war;
- 23 those that were numbered of them, of the tribe of Simeon, were fifty and nine thousand and three hundred.
- 24 Of the children of Gad, their generations, by their families, by their fathers' houses, according to the number of the names, from twenty years old and upward, all that were able to go forth to war;

- 25 those that were numbered of them, of the tribe of Gad, were forty and five thousand six hundred and fifty.
- 26 Of the children of Judah, their generations, by their families, by their fathers' houses, according to the number of the names, from twenty years old and upward, all that were able to go forth to war;
- 27 those that were numbered of them, of the tribe of Judah, were threescore and fourteen thousand and six hundred.
- 28 Of the children of Issachar, their generations, by their families, by their fathers' houses, according to the number of the names, from twenty years old and upward, all that were able to go forth to war;
- 29 those that were numbered of them, of the tribe of Issachar, were fifty and four thousand and four hundred.
- 30 Of the children of Zebulun, their generations, by their families, by their fathers' houses, according to the number of the names, from twenty years old and upward, all that were able to go forth to war;
- 31 those that were numbered of them, of the tribe of Zebulun, were fifty and seven thousand and four hundred.
- 32 Of the children of Joseph, *namely*, of the children of Ephraim, their generations, by their families, by their fathers' houses, according to the number of the names, from twenty years old and upward, all that were able to go forth to war;
- 33 those that were numbered of them, of the tribe of Ephraim, were forty thousand and five hundred.
- 34 Of the children of Manasseh, their generations, by their families, by their fathers' houses, according to the number of the names, from twenty years old and upward, all that were able to go forth to war;
- 35 those that were numbered of them, of the tribe of Manasseh, were thirty and two thousand and two hundred.
- 36 Of the children of Benjamin, their generations, by their families, by their fathers' houses, according to the number of the names, from twenty years old and upward, all that were able to go forth to war;
- 37 those that were numbered of them, of the tribe of Benjamin, were thirty and five thousand and four hundred.
- 38 Of the children of Dan, their generations, by their families, by their fathers' houses, according to the number of the names, from twenty years old and upward, all that were able to go forth to war;
- 39 those that were numbered of them, of the tribe of Dan, were threescore and two thousand and seven hundred.
- 40 Of the children of Asher, their generations, by their families, by their fathers' houses, according to the number of the names, from twenty years old and upward, all that were able to go forth to war;
- 41 those that were numbered of them, of the tribe of Asher, were forty and one thousand and five hundred.
- 42 Of the children of Naphtali, their generations, by their families, by their fathers' houses, according to the number of the names, from twenty years old and upward, all that were able to go forth to war;
- 43 those that were numbered of them, of the tribe of Naphtali, were fifty and three thousand and four hundred.
- 44 ¶ These are they that were numbered, whom Moses and Aaron numbered, and the princes of Israel, being twelve men: they were each one for his fathers' house.
- 45 So all they that were numbered of the children of Israel by their fathers' houses, from twenty years old and upward, all that were able to go forth to war in Israel;
- 46 even all they that were numbered were six hundred thousand and three thousand and five hundred and fifty.
- 47 ¶ But the Levites after the tribe of their fathers were not numbered among them.
- 48 For Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 49 Only the tribe of Levi thou shalt not number, neither shalt thou take the sum of them among the children of Israel;
- 50 but appoint thou the Levites over the tabernacle of the testimony, and over all the furniture thereof, and over all that belongeth to it: they shall bear the tabernacle, and all the furniture thereof; and they shall minister unto it, and shall encamp round about the tabernacle.
- 51 And when the tabernacle setteth forward, the Levites shall take it down; and when the tabernacle is to be pitched, the Levites shall set it up: and the stranger that cometh nigh shall be put to death.
- 52 And the children of Israel shall pitch their tents, every man by his own camp, and every man by his own standard, according to their hosts.
- 53 But the Levites shall encamp round about the tabernacle of the testimony, that there be no wrath upon the congregation of the children of Israel: and the Levites shall keep the charge of the tabernacle of the testimony.
- 54 Thus did the children of Israel; according to all that Jehovah commanded Moses, so did they.

- I. Organization of the First Generation. 1.- 10.  
(Preparation at Sinai for an early invasion)
- A- The first numbering and camp assignments. (1.-4.)
- 1- The census (1.)
- a- Date; Exodus + 1 year + 1 month (c. May 1, 1444 B.C.).  
(just after Leviticus)
- All males numbered, 20 years upward. vs. 2-16  
(fighting men)
- b- Totals given: 603,550 (Exodus 38:26).  
Judah the largest, 75,00; Manasseh the smallest, 32,000.
- c- Levites not numbered with the men of war.

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses and unto Aaron, saying,
- 2 The children of Israel shall encamp every man by his own standard, with the ensigns of their fathers' houses: over against the tent of meeting shall they encamp round about.
- 3 ¶ And those that encamp on the east side toward the sunrising shall be they of the standard of the camp of Judah, according to their hosts: and the prince of the children of Judah shall be Nahshon the son of Amminadab.
- 4 And his host, and those that were numbered of them, were threescore and fourteen thousand and six hundred.
- 5 And those that encamp next unto him shall be the tribe of Issachar: and the prince of the children of Issachar shall be Nethanel the son of Zuar.
- 6 And his host, and those that were numbered thereof, were fifty and four thousand and four hundred.
- 7 And the tribe of Zebulun: and the prince of the children of Zebulun shall be Eliab the son of Helon.
- 8 And his host, and those that were numbered thereof, were fifty and seven thousand and four hundred.
- 9 All that were numbered of the camp of Judah were a hundred thousand and fourscore thousand and six thousand and four hundred, according to their hosts. They shall set forth first.
- 10 On the south side shall be the standard of the camp of Reuben according to their hosts: and the prince of the children of Reuben shall be Elizur the son of Shedeur.
- 11 And his host, and those that were numbered thereof, were forty and six thousand and five hundred.
- 12 And those that encamp next unto him shall be the tribe of Simeon: and the prince of the children of Simeon shall be Shelumiel the son of Zurishaddai.
- 13 And his host, and those that were numbered of them, were fifty and nine thousand and three hundred.
- 14 And the tribe of Gad: and the prince of the children of Gad shall be Eliasaph the son of {1} Reuel. {1} In Nu 1:14 Deuel}
- 15 And his host, and those that were numbered of them, were forty and five thousand and six hundred and fifty.
- 16 All that were numbered of the camp of Reuben were a hundred thousand and fifty and one thousand and four hundred and fifty, according to their hosts. And they shall set forth second.
- 17 Then the tent of meeting shall set forward, with the camp of the Levites in the midst of the camps: as they encamp, so shall they set forward, every man in his place, by their standards.
- 18 On the west side shall be the standard of the camp of Ephraim according to their hosts: and the prince of the children of Ephraim shall be Elishama the son of Ammihud.
- 19 And his host, and those that were numbered of them, were forty thousand and five hundred.
- 20 And next unto him shall be the tribe of Manasseh: and the prince of the children of Manasseh shall be Gamaliel the son of Pedahzur.
- 21 And his host, and those that were numbered of them, were thirty and two thousand and two hundred.
- 22 And the tribe of Benjamin: and the prince of the children of Benjamin shall be Abidan the son of Gideoni.
- 23 And his host, and those that were numbered of them, were thirty and five thousand and four hundred.
- 24 All that were numbered of the camp of Ephraim were a hundred thousand and eight thousand and a hundred, according to their hosts. And they shall set forth third.
- 25 On the north side shall be the standard of the camp of Dan according to their hosts: and the prince of the children of Dan shall be Ahiezer the son of Ammishaddai.
- 26 And his host, and those that were numbered of them, were threescore and two thousand and seven hundred.
- 27 And those that encamp next unto him shall be the tribe of Asher: and the prince of the children of Asher shall be Pagiel the son of Ochran.
- 28 And his host, and those that were numbered of them, were forty and one thousand and five hundred.
- 29 And the tribe of Naphtali: and the prince of the children of Naphtali shall be Ahira the son of Enan.
- 30 And his host, and those that were numbered of them, were fifty and three thousand and four hundred.
- 31 All that were numbered of the camp of Dan were a hundred thousand and fifty and seven thousand and six hundred. They shall set forth hindmost by their standards.
- 32 These are they that were numbered of the children of Israel by their fathers' houses: all that were numbered of the camps according to their hosts were six hundred thousand and three thousand and five hundred and fifty.
- 33 But the Levites were not numbered among the children of Israel; as Jehovah commanded Moses.
- 34 Thus did the children of Israel; according to all that Jehovah commanded Moses, so they encamped by their standards, and so they set forward, every one by their families, according to their fathers' houses.



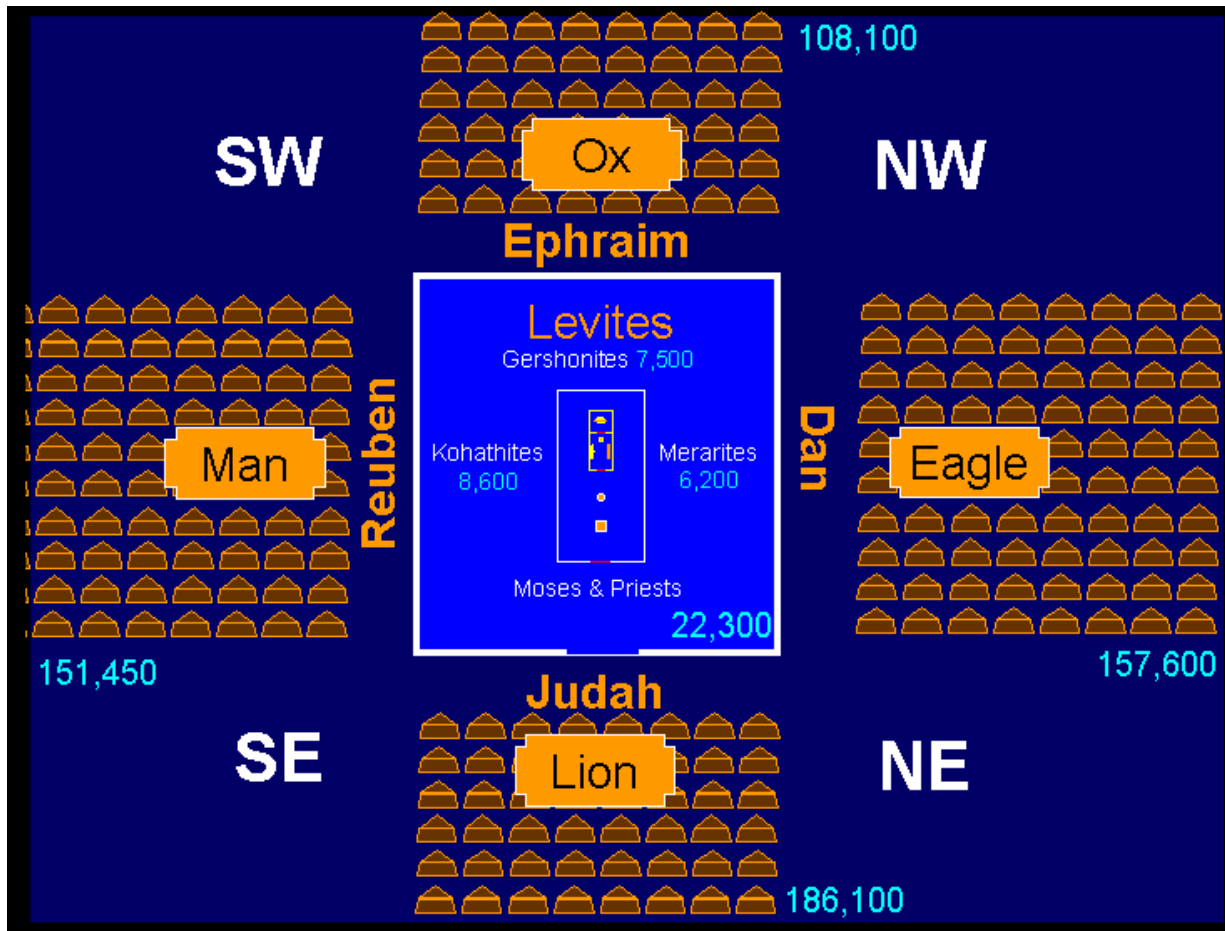
- 2- Arrangement of the tribes in camp. (2.)
- a- East side--Camp of Judah (J. Iss. Zeb.) To march in first rank. VS. 1-9
  - b- South side--Camp of Reuben (R. S. G.) To march in second rank. VS. 10-16
  - c- Middle rank--The Levites VS. 17
  - d- West side--Camp of Ephraim (E. M. B.) To march in third rank. VS. 18-24
  - e- North side--Camp of Dan (D. A. N.) To march in last rank. VS. 25-31

The following 3 figures are taken from the work of Chuck Missler and reproduced in my apologetics book "THE BIBLE CODES" (Apologetics 301)

The Camp of Israel			
Numbers 2			
<b>Judah</b>	74,600	<b>Ephraim</b>	40,500
Issachar	54,400	Manasseh	32,200
Zebullun	<u>57,400</u>	Benjamin	<u>35,400</u>
	<b>186,400</b>		<b>108,100</b>
<b>Reuben</b>	46,500	<b>Dan</b>	62,700
Simeon	59,300	Asher	41,500
Gad	<u>45,650</u>	Naphtali	<u>53,400</u>
	<b>151,450</b>		<b>157,600</b>

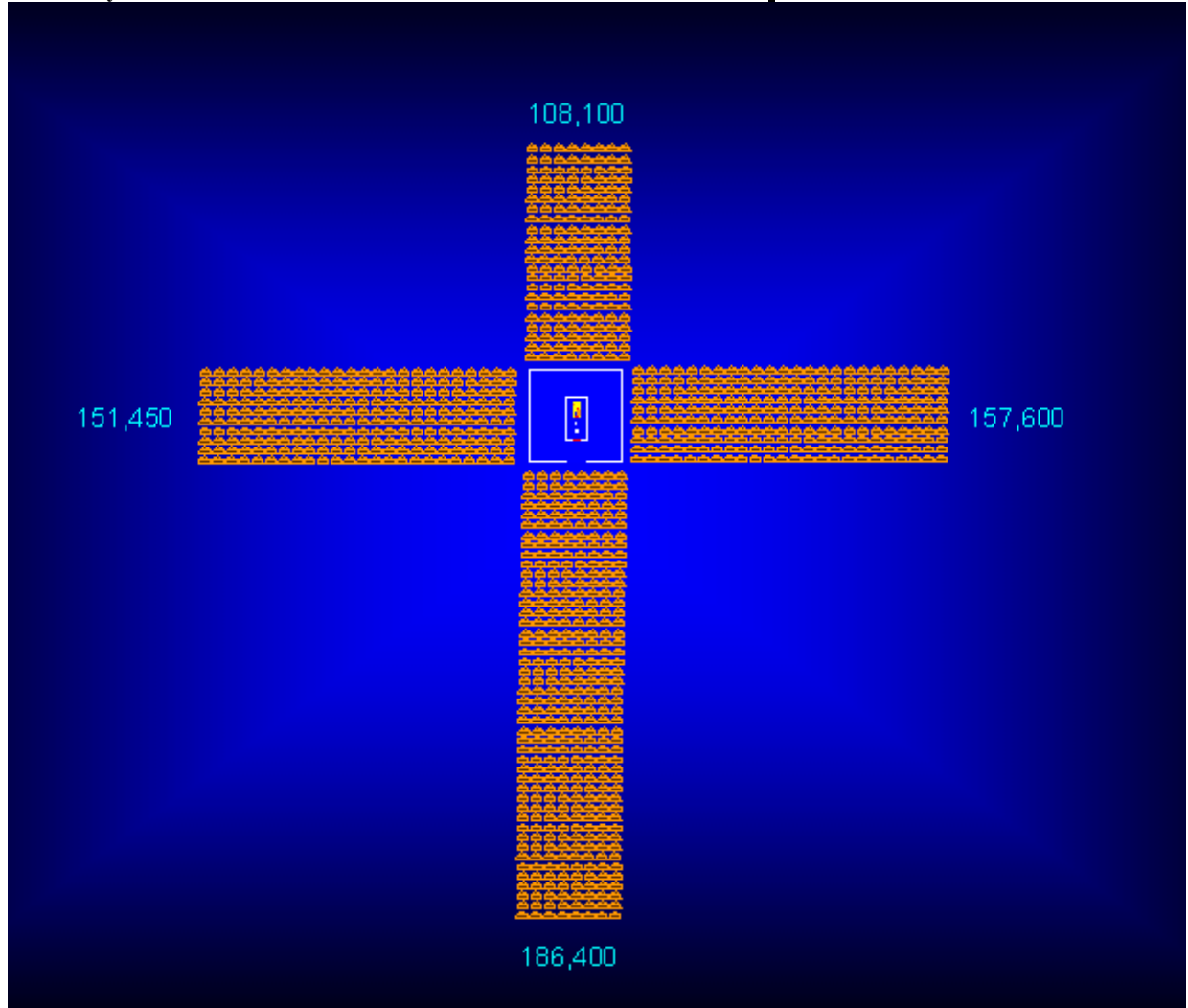
Figure 01. The Camp Of Israel According To The Grouping In Numbers 2.

So the tribes are required to be situated as follows



**Figure 02. How The Camp Was Required To Be Laid Out.**

Finally, we take a 'birds-eye' look at the encampment.



**Figure 03. A Sky-View Of The Camp Of Israel.**

Well Cross my tips & call me a novice (skier). This would be the view of the camp of Israel as seen from the air. 3400 years ago! Is this a Macro-Code?

It seems that we have here, another authentication of the truth of the Bible from an innocuous (Boring to most folks) source of Numbers 2. It's one of those, "well I read it but so what", passages!

- 1 ¶ Now these are the generations of Aaron and Moses in the day that Jehovah spake with Moses in mount Sinai.
- 2 And these are the names of the sons of Aaron: Nadab the first-born, and Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar.
- 3 These are the names of the sons of Aaron, the priests that were anointed, whom he consecrated to minister in the priest's office.
- 4 And Nadab and Abihu died before Jehovah, when they offered strange fire before Jehovah, in the wilderness of Sinai, and they had no children; and Eleazar and Ithamar ministered in the priest's office in the presence of Aaron their father.
- 5 And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 6 Bring the tribe of Levi near, and set them before Aaron the priest, that they may minister unto him.
- 7 And they shall keep his charge, and the charge of the whole congregation before the tent of meeting, to do the service of the tabernacle.
- 8 And they shall keep all the furniture of the tent of meeting, and the charge of the children of Israel, to do the service of the tabernacle.
- 9 And thou shalt give the Levites unto Aaron and to his sons: they are {1} wholly given unto him {2} on the behalf of the children of Israel. {1} Heb given, given 2) Or from}
- 10 And thou shalt {1} appoint Aaron and his sons, and they shall keep their priesthood: and the stranger that cometh nigh shall be put to death. {1} Or number}
- 11 And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 12 And I, behold, I have taken the Levites from among the children of Israel instead of all the first-born that openeth the womb among the children of Israel; and the Levites shall be mine:
- 13 for all the first-born are mine; on the day that I smote all the first-born in the land of Egypt I hallowed unto me all the first-born in Israel, both man and beast; mine they shall be: I am Jehovah.
- 14 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses in the wilderness of Sinai, saying,
- 15 Number the children of Levi by their fathers' houses, by their families: every male from a month old and upward shalt thou number them.
- 16 And Moses numbered them according to the word of Jehovah, as he was commanded.
- 17 And these were the sons of Levi by their names: Gershon, and Kohath, and Merari.
- 18 And these are the names of the sons of Gershon by their families: Libni and Shimei.
- 19 And the sons of Kohath by their families: Amram, and Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel.
- 20 And the sons of Merari by their families: Mahli and Mushi. These are the families of the Levites according to their fathers' houses.
- 21 Of Gershon was the family of the Libnites, and the family of the Shimeites: these are the families of the Gershonites.
- 22 Those that were numbered of them, according to the number of all the males, from a month old and upward, even those that were numbered of them were seven thousand and five hundred.
- 23 The families of the Gershonites shall encamp behind the tabernacle westward.
- 24 And the prince of the fathers' house of the Gershonites shall be Eliasaph the son of Lael.
- 25 And the charge of the sons of Gershon in the tent of meeting shall be the tabernacle, and the Tent, the covering thereof, and the screen for the door of the tent of meeting,
- 26 and the hangings of the court, and the screen for the door of the court, which is by the tabernacle, and by the altar round about, and the cords of it for all the service thereof.
- 27 And of Kohath was the family of the Amramites, and the family of the Izharites, and the family of the Hebronites, and the family of the Uzzielites: these are the families of the Kohathites.
- 28 According to the number of all the males, from a month old and upward, there were eight thousand and six hundred, keeping the charge of the sanctuary.
- 29 The families of the sons of Kohath shall encamp on the side of the tabernacle southward.
- 30 And the prince of the fathers' house of the families of the Kohathites shall be Elizaphan the son of Uzziel.
- 31 And their charge shall be the ark, and the table, and the candlestick, and the altars, and the vessels of the sanctuary wherewith they minister, and the screen, and all the service thereof.
- 32 And Eleazar the son of Aaron the priest shall be prince of the princes of the Levites, and have the oversight of them that keep the charge of the sanctuary.
- 33 Of Merari was the family of the Mahlites, and the family of the Mushites: these are the families of Merari.
- 34 And those that were numbered of them, according to the number of all the males, from a month old and upward, were six thousand and two hundred.
- 35 And the prince of the fathers' house of the families of Merari was Zuriel the son of Abihail: they shall encamp on the side of the tabernacle northward.
- 36 And {1} the appointed charge of the sons of Merari shall be the boards of the tabernacle, and the bars thereof, and the pillars thereof, and the sockets thereof, and all the instruments thereof, and all the service thereof, {1} Heb the office of the charge}
- 37 and the pillars of the court round about, and their sockets, and their pins, and their cords.
- 38 And those that encamp before the tabernacle eastward, before the tent of meeting toward the sunrising, shall be

- Moses, and Aaron and his sons, keeping the charge of the sanctuary *{1}* for the charge of the children of Israel; and the stranger that cometh nigh shall be put to death. *{1}* Or even
- 39 All that were numbered of the Levites, whom Moses and Aaron numbered at the commandment of Jehovah, by their families, all the males from a month old and upward, were twenty and two thousand.
- 40 ¶ And Jehovah said unto Moses, Number all the first-born males of the children of Israel from a month old and upward, and take the number of their names.
- 41 And thou shalt take the Levites for me (I am Jehovah) instead of all the first-born among the children of Israel; and the cattle of the Levites instead of all the firstlings among the cattle of the children of Israel:
- 42 and Moses numbered, as Jehovah commanded him, all the first-born among the children of Israel.
- 43 And all the first-born males according to the number of names, from a month old and upward, of those that were numbered of them, were twenty and two thousand two hundred and threescore and thirteen.
- 44 And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 45 Take the Levites instead of all the first-born among the children of Israel, and the cattle of the Levites instead of their cattle; and the Levites shall be mine: I am Jehovah.
- 46 And for *{1}* the redemption of the two hundred and threescore and thirteen of the first-born of the children of Israel, that are over and above *the number* of the Levites, *{1}* Or those that are to be redeemed, the etc
- 47 thou shalt take five shekels apiece by the poll; after the shekel of the sanctuary shalt thou take them (the shekel is twenty gerahs):
- 48 and thou shalt give the money, wherewith the odd number of them is redeemed, unto Aaron and to his sons.
- 49 And Moses took the redemption-money from them that were over and above them that were redeemed by the Levites;
- 50 from the first-born of the children of Israel took he the money, a thousand three hundred and threescore and five *shekels*, after the shekel of the sanctuary:
- 51 and Moses gave *{1}* the redemption-money unto Aaron and to his sons, according to the word of Jehovah, as Jehovah commanded Moses. *{1}* Or the money of them that were redeemed }

- 3- The Levites numbered and their duties assigned. (3.-4.)
- a- The numbering of Levites; 22,000 including baby males. VS. 3.)
- 1) presented to the Lord (1-20)
  - 2) Sons of Gershon; 7,500; Located on west of tabernacle. VS. 21-26
  - 3) Sons of Kohath; 8,600; Located on south of tabernacle. VS. 27-31
  - 4) Sons of Merari; 6,200; Located on north of tabernacle. VS. 32-37
  - 5) Moses, Aaron, and sons; Located on east of tabernacle (at entrance). VS. 38
  - 6) Redemption of firstborn for lack of Levites. Shortage 273. VS. 40-51  
Redemption price per person-5 shekels. Total redemption price --1365 shekels.

Because of length of text, Ch. 4 is backed up.

#### Numbers 4

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses and unto Aaron, saying,
- 2 Take the sum of the sons of Kohath from among the sons of Levi, by their families, by their fathers' houses,
- 3 from thirty years old and upward even until fifty years old, all that enter upon the *{1}* service, to do the work in the tent of meeting. *{1}* Heb warefare, or host (and so in verses 35, 39, 43)}
- 4 This is the *{1}* service of the sons of Kohath in the tent of meeting, *about* the most holy things: *{1}* Or work
- 5 when the camp setteth forward, Aaron shall go in, and his sons, and they shall take down the veil of the screen, and cover the ark of the testimony with it,
- 6 and shall put thereon a covering of sealskin, and shall spread over it a cloth all of blue, and shall put in the staves thereof.
- 7 And upon the table of showbread they shall spread a cloth of blue, and put thereon the dishes, and the spoons, and the bowls and the cups wherewith to pour out; and the continual bread shall be thereon:
- 8 and they shall spread upon them a cloth of scarlet, and cover the same with a covering of sealskin, and shall put

- in the staves thereof.
- 9 And they shall take a cloth of blue, and cover the candlestick of the light, and its lamps, and its snuffers, and its snuffdishes, and all the oil vessels thereof, wherewith they minister unto it:
- 10 and they shall put it and all the vessels thereof within a covering of sealskin, and shall put it upon *{1}* the frame. *{1} Or a bar*
- 11 And upon the golden altar they shall spread a cloth of blue, and cover it with a covering of sealskin, and shall put in the staves thereof:
- 12 and they shall take all the vessels of ministry, wherewith they minister in the sanctuary, and put them in a cloth of blue, and cover them with a covering of sealskin, and shall put them on the frame.
- 13 And they shall take away the ashes from the altar, and spread a purple cloth thereon:
- 14 and they shall put upon it all the vessels thereof, wherewith they minister about it, the firepans, the flesh-hooks, and the shovels, and the basins, all the vessels of the altar; and they shall spread upon it a covering of sealskin, and put in the staves thereof.
- 15 And when Aaron and his sons have made an end of covering the sanctuary, and all the furniture of the sanctuary, as the camp is set forward; after that, the sons of Kohath shall come to bear it: but they shall not touch the *{1}* sanctuary, lest they die. These things are the burden of the sons of Kohath in the tent of meeting. *{1} Or holy things*
- 16 And the charge of Eleazar the son of Aaron the priest shall be the oil for the light, and the sweet incense, and the continual meal-offering, and the anointing oil, the charge of all the tabernacle, and of all that therein is, the sanctuary, and the furniture thereof.
- 17 And Jehovah spake unto Moses and unto Aaron, saying,
- 18 Cut ye not off the tribe of the families of the Kohathites from among the Levites;
- 19 but thus do unto them, that they may live, and not die, when they approach unto the most holy things: Aaron and his sons shall go in, and appoint them every one to his service and to his burden;
- 20 but they shall not go in to see the sanctuary even for a moment, lest they die.
- 21 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 22 Take the sum of the sons of Gershon also, by their fathers' houses, by their families;
- 23 from thirty years old and upward until fifty years old shalt thou number them; all that enter in to *{1}* wait upon the service, to do the work in the tent of meeting. *{1} Heb war the warfare*
- 24 This is the service of the families of the Gershonites, in serving and in bearing burdens:
- 25 they shall bear the curtains of the tabernacle, and the tent of meeting, its covering, and the covering of sealskin that is above upon it, and the screen for the door of the tent of meeting,
- 26 and the hangings of the court, and the screen for the door of the gate of the court, which is by the tabernacle and by the altar round about, and their cords, and all the instruments of their service, and whatsoever shall be done with them: therein shall they serve.
- 27 At the commandment of Aaron and his sons shall be all the service of the sons of the Gershonites, in all their burden, and in all their service; and ye shall appoint unto them in charge all their burden.
- 28 This is the service of the families of the sons of the Gershonites in the tent of meeting: and their charge shall be under the hand of Ithamar the son of Aaron the priest.
- 29 As for the sons of Merari, thou shalt number them by their families, by their fathers' houses;
- 30 from thirty years old and upward even unto fifty years old shalt thou number them, every one that entereth upon the service, to do the work of the tent of meeting.
- 31 And this is the charge of their burden, according to all their service in the tent of meeting: the boards of the tabernacle, and the bars thereof, and the pillars thereof, and the sockets thereof,
- 32 and the pillars of the court round about, and their sockets, and their pins, and their cords, with all their instruments, and with all their service: and by name ye shall *{1}* appoint the instruments of the charge of their burden. *{1} Or number*
- 33 This is the service of the families of the sons of Merari, according to all their service, in the tent of meeting, under the hand of Ithamar the son of Aaron the priest.
- 34 ¶ And Moses and Aaron and the princes of the congregation numbered the sons of the Kohathites by their families, and by their fathers' houses,
- 35 from thirty years old and upward even unto fifty years old, every one that entered upon the service, for work in the tent of meeting:
- 36 and those that were numbered of them by their families were two thousand seven hundred and fifty.
- 37 These are they that were numbered of the families of the Kohathites, all that did serve in the tent of meeting, whom Moses and Aaron numbered according to the commandment of Jehovah by Moses.
- 38 And those that were numbered of the sons of Gershon, their families, and by their fathers' houses,
- 39 from thirty years old and upward even unto fifty years old, every one that entered upon the service, for work in the tent of meeting,
- 40 even those that were numbered of them, by their families, by their fathers' houses, were two thousand and six hundred and thirty.

- 41 These are they that were numbered of the families of the sons of Gershon, all that did serve in the tent of meeting, whom Moses and Aaron numbered according to the commandment of Jehovah.
- 42 And those that were numbered of the families of the sons of Merari, by their families, by their fathers' houses,
- 43 from thirty years old and upward even unto fifty years old, every one that entered upon the service, for work in the tent of meeting,
- 44 even those that were numbered of them by their families, were three thousand and two hundred.
- 45 These are they that were numbered of the families of the sons of Merari, whom Moses and Aaron numbered according to the commandment of Jehovah by Moses.
- 46 All those that were numbered of the Levites, whom Moses and Aaron and the princes of Israel numbered, by their families, and by their fathers' houses,
- 47 from thirty years old and upward even unto fifty years old, every one that entered in to do the work of service, and the work of bearing burdens in the tent of meeting,
- 48 even those that were numbered of them, were eight thousand and five hundred and fourscore.
- 49 According to the commandment of Jehovah they were numbered by Moses, every one according to his service, and {1} according to his burden: thus were they numbered of him, as Jehovah commanded Moses. {1} Or according to his burden and his duty, as etc}
- 

- b- The duties of the Levites (4.)
- 1) Sons of Kohath instructed vs. 1-20  
(Internal furnishings)
- a) Aaron and sons to dismantle and cover tabernacle.
- b) kohathites to carry internal furniture.
- 2) Sons of Gershon instructed vs. 21-28
- a) External covering and curtains.
- 3) Sons of Merari instructed vs. 29-33
- a) Structural parts,
- 4) Total service age Levites (30-50 years)--8580.

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 2 Command the children of Israel, that they put out of the camp every leper, and every one that hath an issue, and whosoever is unclean by the dead:
- 3 both male and female shall ye put out, without the camp shall ye put them; that they defile not their camp, in the midst whereof I dwell.
- 4 And the children of Israel did so, and put them out without the camp; as Jehovah spake unto Moses, so did the children of Israel.
- 5 And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 6 Speak unto the children of Israel, When a man or woman shall commit any sin that men commit, so as to trespass against Jehovah, and that soul shall be guilty;
- 7 then he shall confess his sin which he hath done: and he shall make restitution for his guilt in full, and add unto it the fifth part thereof, and give it unto him in respect of whom he hath been guilty.
- 8 But if the man have no kinsman to whom restitution may be made for the guilt, the restitution for guilt which is made unto Jehovah shall be the priest's; besides the ram of the atonement, whereby atonement shall be made for him.
- 9 And every heave-offering of all the holy things of the children of Israel, which they present unto the priest, shall be his.
- 10 And every man's hallowed things shall be his: whatsoever any man giveth the priest, it shall be his.
- 11 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 12 Speak unto the children of Israel, and say unto them, If any man's wife go aside, and commit a trespass against him,
- 13 and a man lie with her carnally, and it be hid from the eyes of her husband, and be kept close, and she be defiled, and there be no witness against her, and she be not taken in the act;
- 14 and the spirit of jealousy come upon him, and he be jealous of his wife, and she be defiled: or if the spirit of jealousy come upon him, and he be jealous of his wife, and she be not defiled:
- 15 then shall the man bring his wife unto the priest, and shall bring her oblation for her, the tenth part of an ephah of barley meal; he shall pour no oil upon it, nor put frankincense thereon; for it is a meal-offering of jealousy, a meal-offering of memorial, bringing iniquity to remembrance.
- 16 And the priest shall bring her near, and set her before Jehovah:
- 17 and the priest shall take holy water in an earthen vessel; and of the dust that is on the floor of the tabernacle the priest shall take, and put it into the water.
- 18 And the priest shall set the woman before Jehovah, and let the hair of the woman's head go loose, and put the meal-offering of memorial in her hands, which is the meal-offering of jealousy: and the priest shall have in his hand the water of bitterness that causeth the curse.
- 19 And the priest shall cause her to swear, and shall say unto the woman, If no man have lain with thee, and if thou have not gone aside to uncleanness, *{1} being under thy husband, be thou free from this water of bitterness that causeth the curse. {1} Or, with another instead of thy husband; See Eze 23:5; Ro 7:2*
- 20 But if thou have gone aside, *{1} being under thy husband, and if thou be defiled, and some man have lain with thee besides thy husband: {1} Or, with another instead of thy husband; See Eze 23:5; Ro 7:2*
- 21 then the priest shall cause the woman to swear with the oath of cursing, and the priest shall say unto the woman, Jehovah make thee a *{1} curse and an oath among thy people, when Jehovah doth make thy thigh to fall away, and thy body to swell; {1} Or adjuration*
- 22 and this water that causeth the curse shall go into thy bowels, and make thy body to swell, and thy thigh to fall away. And the woman shall say, Amen, Amen.
- 23 And the priest shall write these curses in a book, and he shall blot them out into the water of bitterness:
- 24 and he shall make the woman drink the water of bitterness that causeth the curse; and the water that causeth the curse shall enter into her *and become bitter*.
- 25 And the priest shall take the meal-offering of jealousy out of the woman's hand, and shall wave the meal-offering before Jehovah, and bring it unto the altar:
- 26 and the priest shall take a handful of the meal-offering, as the memorial thereof, and burn it upon the altar, and afterward shall make the woman drink the water.
- 27 And when he hath made her drink the water, then it shall come to pass, if she be defiled, and have committed a trespass against her husband, that the water that causeth the curse shall enter into her *and become bitter*, and her body shall swell, and her thigh shall fall away: and the woman shall be a curse among her people.
- 28 And if the woman be not defiled, but be clean; then she shall be free, and shall conceive seed.
- 29 This is the law of jealousy, when a wife, *{1} being under her husband, goeth aside, and is defiled; {1} Or goeth aside with another instead of her husband*
- 30 or when the spirit of jealousy cometh upon a man, and he is jealous of his wife; then shall he set the woman before Jehovah, and the priest shall execute upon her all this law.
- 31 And the man shall be free from iniquity, and that woman shall bear her iniquity.



**B- The laws of purity and separation. (5.-6.)**

1- Isolation of the defiled. VS. 5:1-4

a- Lepers and those defiled put outside camp.

b- Purpose; Don't defile the camp.

2- Restitution for a trespass. VS. 5-10

Offender is to confess, make restitution plus one-fifth, and offer a trespass offering.

3- The law of jealousy with regard to adultery VS. 11-31  
(protects husband and wife)

a- Lie detection for infidelity.

b- Purpose: To discourage sudden divorce upon suspicion.

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 2 Speak unto the children of Israel, and say unto them, When either man or woman shall make a special vow, the vow of {1} a Nazirite, to {2} separate himself unto Jehovah, {1} *That is one separated or consecrated* 2) Or *consecrate* }
- 3 he shall separate himself from wine and strong drink; he shall drink no vinegar of wine, or vinegar of strong drink, neither shall he drink any juice of grapes, nor eat fresh grapes or dried.
- 4 All the days of his {1} separation shall he eat nothing that is made of the grape-vine, from the kernels even to the husk. {1} *Or consecration; Or Naziriteship* }
- 5 All the days of his vow of separation there shall no razor come upon his head: until the days be fulfilled, in which he separateth himself unto Jehovah, he shall be holy; he shall let the locks of the hair of his head grow long.
- 6 All the days that he separateth himself unto Jehovah he shall not come near to a dead body.
- 7 He shall not make himself unclean for his father, or for his mother, for his brother, or for his sister, when they die; because his separation unto God is upon his head.
- 8 All the days of his separation he is holy unto Jehovah.
- 9 And if any man die very suddenly beside him, and he defile the head of his separation; then he shall shave his head in the day of his cleansing, on the seventh day shall he shave it.
- 10 And on the eighth day he shall bring two turtle-doves, or two young pigeons, to the priest, to the door of the tent of meeting:
- 11 and the priest shall offer one for a sin-offering, and the other for a burnt-offering, and make atonement for him, for that he sinned by reason of the dead, and shall hallow his head that same day.
- 12 And he shall separate unto Jehovah the days of his separation, and shall bring a he-lamb a year old for a trespass-offering; but the former days shall be void, because his separation was defiled.
- 13 And this is the law of the Nazirite, when the days of his separation are fulfilled: he shall be brought unto the door of the tent of meeting:
- 14 and he shall offer his oblation unto Jehovah, one he-lamb a year old without blemish for a burnt-offering, and one ewe-lamb a year old without blemish for a sin-offering, and one ram without blemish for peace-offerings,
- 15 and a basket of unleavened bread, cakes of fine flour mingled with oil, and unleavened wafers anointed with oil, and their meal-offering, and their drink-offerings.
- 16 And the priest shall present them before Jehovah, and shall offer his sin-offering, and his burnt-offering:
- 17 and he shall offer the ram for a sacrifice of peace-offerings unto Jehovah, with the basket of unleavened bread: the priest shall offer also the meal-offering thereof, and the drink-offering thereof.
- 18 And the Nazirite shall shave the head of his separation at the door of the tent of meeting, and shall take the hair of the head of his separation, and put it on the fire which is under the sacrifice of peace-offerings.
- 19 And the priest shall take the boiled shoulder of the ram, and one unleavened cake out of the basket, and one unleavened wafer, and shall put them upon the hands of the Nazirite, after he hath shaven *the head of* his separation;
- 20 and the priest shall wave them for a wave-offering before Jehovah; this is holy for the priest, together with the wave-breast and heave-{1} thigh: and after that the Nazirite may drink wine. {1} *Or shoulder* }
- 21 This is the law of the Nazirite who voweth, *and of* his oblation unto Jehovah for his separation, besides that which he is able to get: according to his vow which he voweth, so he must do after the law of his separation.
- 22 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 23 Speak unto Aaron and unto his sons, saying, On this wise ye shall bless the children of Israel: ye shall say unto them,
- 24 Jehovah bless thee, and keep thee:
- 25 Jehovah make his face to shine upon thee, and be gracious unto thee:
- 26 Jehovah lift up his countenance upon thee, and give thee peace.
- 27 So shall they put my name upon the children of Israel; and I will bless them.

- 4- The law of the Nazirite for separation (6)  
Provides a means for a 'layman' to engage in some spiritual service. e.g., Sampson from Dan; Samuel from Ephraim.
- a- Constituted a special separation unto the Lord.
  - b- To drink no fruit of the vine. (can't even eat raisins)
  - c- To use no razor.
  - d- To touch no dead body.
  - e- generally a temporary separation to participate in some priestly service. - Very costly - they had to pay to serve.

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass on the day that Moses had made an end of setting up the tabernacle, and had anointed it and sanctified it, and all the furniture thereof, and the altar and all the vessels thereof, and had anointed them and sanctified them;
- 2 that the princes of Israel, the heads of their fathers' houses, offered. These were the princes of the tribes, these are they that were over them that were numbered:
- 3 and they brought their oblation before Jehovah, six covered wagons, and twelve oxen; a wagon for every two of the princes, and for each one an ox: and they presented them before the tabernacle.
- 4 And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 5 Take it of them, that they may be *used* in doing the service of the tent of meeting; and thou shalt give them unto the Levites, to every man according to his service.
- 6 And Moses took the wagons and the oxen, and gave them unto the Levites.
- 7 Two wagons and four oxen he gave unto the sons of Gershon, according to their service:
- 8 and four wagons and eight oxen he gave unto the sons of Merari, according unto their service, under the hand of Ithamar the son of Aaron the priest.
- 9 But unto the sons of Kohath he gave none, because the service of the sanctuary belonged unto them; they bare it upon their shoulders.
- 10 ¶ And the princes offered *{1}* for the dedication of the altar in the day that it was anointed, even the princes offered their oblation before the altar. *{1} Or the dedication-gift*
- 11 And Jehovah said unto Moses, They shall offer their oblation, each prince on his day, for the dedication of the altar.
- 12 And he that offered his oblation the first day was Nahshon the son of Amminadab, of the tribe of Judah:
- 13 and his oblation was one silver platter, the weight whereof was a hundred and thirty *shekels*, one silver bowl of seventy shekels, after the shekel of the sanctuary; both of them full of fine flour mingled with oil for a meal-offering;
- 14 one golden spoon of ten *shekels*, full of incense;
- 15 one young bullock, one ram, one he-lamb a year old, for a burnt-offering;
- 16 one male of the goats for a sin-offering;
- 17 and for the sacrifice of peace-offerings, two oxen, five rams, five he-goats, five he-lambs a year old: this was the oblation of Nahshon the son of Amminadab.
- 18 On the second day Nethanel the son of Zuar, prince of Issachar, did offer:
- 19 he offered for his oblation one silver platter, the weight whereof was a hundred and thirty *shekels*, one silver bowl of seventy shekels, after the shekel of the sanctuary; both of them full of fine flour mingled with oil for a meal-offering;
- 20 one golden spoon of ten *shekels*, full of incense;
- 21 one young bullock, one ram, one he-lamb a year old, for a burnt-offering;
- 22 one male of the goats for a sin-offering;
- 23 and for the sacrifice of peace-offerings, two oxen, five rams, five he-goats, five he-lambs a year old: this was the oblation of Nethanel the son of Zuar.
- 24 On the third day Eliab the son of Helon, prince of the children of Zebulun:
- 25 his oblation was one silver platter, the weight whereof was a hundred and thirty *shekels*, one silver bowl of seventy shekels, after the shekel of the sanctuary; both of them full of fine flour mingled with oil for a meal-offering;
- 26 one golden spoon of ten *shekels*, full of incense;
- 27 one young bullock, one ram, one he-lamb a year old, for a burnt-offering;
- 28 one male of the goats for a sin-offering;
- 29 and for the sacrifice of peace-offerings, two oxen, five rams, five he-goats, five he-lambs a year old: this was the oblation of Eliab the son of Helon.
- 30 On the fourth day Elizur the son of Shedeur, prince of the children of Reuben:
- 31 his oblation was one silver platter, the weight whereof was a hundred and thirty *shekels*, one silver bowl of seventy shekels, after the shekel of the sanctuary; both of them full of fine flour mingled with oil for a meal-offering;
- 32 one golden spoon of ten *shekels*, full of incense;
- 33 one young bullock, one ram, one he-lamb a year old, for a burnt-offering;
- 34 one male of the goats for a sin-offering;
- 35 and for the sacrifice of peace-offerings, two oxen, five rams, five he-goats, five he-lambs a year old: this was the oblation of Elizur the son of Shedeur.
- 36 On the fifth day Shelumiel the son of Zurishaddai, prince of the children of Simeon:
- 37 his oblation was one silver platter, the weight whereof was a hundred and thirty *shekels*, one silver bowl of seventy shekels, after the shekel of the sanctuary; both of them full of fine flour mingled with oil for a meal-offering;

- 38 one golden spoon of ten *shekels*, full of incense;  
39 one young bullock, one ram, one he-lamb a year old, for a burnt-offering;  
40 one male of the goats for a sin-offering;  
41 and for the sacrifice of peace-offerings, two oxen, five rams, five he-goats, five he-lambs a year old: this was the oblation of Shelumiel the son of Zurishaddai.  
42 On the sixth day Eliasaph the son of Deuel, prince of the children of Gad:  
43 his oblation was one silver platter, the weight whereof was a hundred and thirty *shekels*, one silver bowl of seventy shekels, after the shekel of the sanctuary; both of them full of fine flour mingled with oil for a meal-offering;  
44 one golden spoon of ten *shekels*, full of incense;  
45 one young bullock, one ram, one he-lamb a year old, for a burnt-offering;  
46 one male of the goats for a sin-offering;  
47 and for the sacrifice of peace-offerings, two oxen, five rams, five he-goats, five he-lambs a year old: this was the oblation of Eliasaph the son of Deuel.  
48 On the seventh day Elishama the son of Ammihud, prince of the children of Ephraim:  
49 his oblation was one silver platter, the weight whereof was a hundred and thirty *shekels*, one silver bowl of seventy shekels, after the shekel of the sanctuary; both of them full of fine flour mingled with oil for a meal-offering;  
50 one golden spoon of ten *shekels*, full of incense;  
51 one young bullock, one ram, one he-lamb a year old, for a burnt-offering;  
52 one male of the goats for a sin-offering;  
53 and for the sacrifice of peace-offerings, two oxen, five rams, five he-goats, five he-lambs a year old: this was the oblation of Elishama the son of Ammihud.  
54 On the eighth day Gamaliel the son of Pedahzur, prince of the children of Manasseh:  
55 his oblation was one silver platter, the weight whereof was a hundred and thirty *shekels*, one silver bowl of seventy shekels, after the shekel of the sanctuary; both of them full of fine flour mingled with oil for a meal-offering;  
56 one golden spoon of ten *shekels*, full of incense;  
57 one young bullock, one ram, one he-lamb a year old, for a burnt-offering;  
58 one male of the goats for a sin-offering;  
59 and for the sacrifice of peace-offerings, two oxen, five rams, five he-goats, five he-lambs a year old: this was the oblation of Gamaliel the son of Pedahzur.  
60 On the ninth day Abidan the son of Gideoni, prince of the children of Benjamin:  
61 his oblation was one silver platter, the weight whereof was a hundred and thirty *shekels*, one silver bowl of seventy shekels, after the shekel of the sanctuary; both of them full of fine flour mingled with oil for a meal-offering;  
62 one golden spoon of ten *shekels*, full of incense;  
63 one young bullock, one ram, one he-lamb a year old, for a burnt-offering;  
64 one male of the goats for a sin-offering;  
65 and for the sacrifice of peace-offerings, two oxen, five rams, five he-goats, five he-lambs a year old: this was the oblation of Abidan the son of Gideoni.  
66 On the tenth day Ahiezer the son of Ammishaddai, prince of the children of Dan:  
67 his oblation was one silver platter, the weight whereof was a hundred and thirty *shekels*, one silver bowl of seventy shekels, after the shekel of the sanctuary; both of them full of fine flour mingled with oil for a meal-offering;  
68 one golden spoon of ten *shekels*, full of incense;  
69 one young bullock, one ram, one he-lamb a year old, for a burnt-offering;  
70 one male of the goats for a sin-offering;  
71 and for the sacrifice of peace-offerings, two oxen, five rams, five he-goats, five he-lambs a year old: this was the oblation of Ahiezer the son of Ammishaddai.  
72 On the eleventh day Pagiel the son of Ochran, prince of the children of Asher:  
73 his oblation was one silver platter, the weight whereof was a hundred and thirty *shekels*, one silver bowl of seventy shekels, after the shekel of the sanctuary; both of them full of fine flour mingled with oil for a meal-offering;  
74 one golden spoon of ten *shekels*, full of incense;  
75 one young bullock, one ram, one he-lamb a year old, for a burnt-offering;  
76 one male of the goats for a sin-offering;  
77 and for the sacrifice of peace-offerings, two oxen, five rams, five he-goats, five he-lambs a year old: this was the oblation of Pagiel the son of Ochran.  
78 On the twelfth day Ahira the son of Enan, prince of the children of Naphtali:  
79 his oblation was one silver platter, the weight whereof was a hundred and thirty *shekels*, one silver bowl of seventy

- shekels, after the shekel of the sanctuary; both of them full of fine flour mingled with oil for a meal-offering;
- 80 one golden spoon of ten *shekels*, full of incense;
- 81 one young bullock, one ram, one he-lamb a year old, for a burnt-offering;
- 82 one male of the goats for a sin-offering;
- 83 and for the sacrifice of peace-offerings, two oxen, five rams, five he-goats, five he-lambs a year old: this was the oblation of Ahira the son of Enan.
- 84 This was the {1} dedication of the altar, in the day when it was anointed, {2} by the princes of Israel: twelve silver platters, twelve silver bowls, twelve golden spoons; {1) Or the dedication-gift 2) Or at the hands of}
- 85 each silver platter *weighing* a hundred and thirty *shekels*, and each bowl seventy; all the silver of the vessels two thousand and four hundred *shekels*, after the shekel of the sanctuary;
- 86 the twelve golden spoons, full of incense, *weighing* ten *shekels* apiece, after the shekel of the sanctuary; all the gold of the spoons a hundred and twenty *shekels*;
- 87 all the oxen for the burnt-offering twelve bullocks, the rams twelve, the he-lambs a year old twelve, and their meal-offering; and the males of the goats for a sin-offering twelve;
- 88 and all the oxen for the sacrifice of peace-offerings twenty and four bullocks, the rams sixty, the he-goats sixty, the he-lambs a year old sixty. This was the {1} dedication of the altar, after that it was anointed. {1) Or the dedication-gift}
- 89 And when Moses went into the tent of meeting to speak with him, then he heard the Voice speaking unto him from above the mercy-seat that was upon the ark of the testimony, from between the two cherubim: and he spake unto him.

C- The princes of Israel make gifts to the sanctuary (7.)

- 1- Given at completion of tabernacle. vs. 12  
1<sup>st</sup> day, 1<sup>st</sup> month-Nishon.
- 2- Gershonites given two wagons and four oxen.  
(to carry external furniture)
- 3- Merarites given four wagons and eight oxen.  
(to carry structural parts)
- 4- None given to Kohathites.  
(Internal furniture to be carried by hand)

Because of length of text, Ch. 8 & 9 are backed up.

**Numbers 8**

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 2 Speak unto Aaron, and say unto him, When thou {1} lightest the lamps, the seven lamps shall give light in front of the candlestick. {1} Or *settest up*}
- 3 And Aaron did so; he {1} lighted the lamps thereof *so as to give light* in front of the candlestick, as Jehovah commanded Moses. {1} Or *set up*}
- 4 And this was the work of the candlestick, {1} beaten work of gold; unto the base thereof, *and* unto the flowers thereof, it was {1} beaten work: according unto the pattern which Jehovah had showed Moses, so he made the candlestick. {1} Or *turned*}
- 5 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 6 Take the Levites from among the children of Israel, and cleanse them.
- 7 And thus shalt thou do unto them, to cleanse them: sprinkle the water of expiation upon them, and let them cause a razor to pass over all their flesh, and let them wash their clothes, and cleanse themselves.
- 8 Then let them take a young bullock, and its meal-offering, fine flour mingled with oil; and another young bullock shalt thou take for a sin-offering.
- 9 And thou shalt present the Levites before the tent of meeting: and thou shalt assemble the whole congregation of the children of Israel:
- 10 and thou shalt present the Levites before Jehovah. And the children of Israel shall lay their hands upon the Levites:
- 11 and Aaron shall {1} offer the Levites before Jehovah for a wave-offering, {2} on the behalf of the children of Israel, that it may be theirs to do the service of Jehovah. {1} *Heb wave*, and in verses 13, 15, 21. 2) Or *from*}
- 12 And the Levites shall lay their hands upon the heads of the bullocks: and offer thou the one for a sin-offering, and the other for a burnt-offering, unto Jehovah, to make atonement for the Levites.
- 13 And thou shalt set the Levites before Aaron, and before his sons, and offer them for a wave-offering unto Jehovah.
- 14 Thus shalt thou separate the Levites from among the children of Israel; and the Levites shall be mine.
- 15 And after that shall the Levites go in to do the service of the tent of meeting: and thou shalt cleanse them, and offer them for a wave-offering.
- 16 For they are wholly given unto me from among the children of Israel; instead of all that openeth the womb, even the first-born of all the children of Israel, have I taken them unto me.
- 17 For all the first-born among the children of Israel are mine, both man and beast: on the day that I smote all the first-born in the land of Egypt I sanctified them for myself.
- 18 And I have taken the Levites instead of all the first-born among the children of Israel.
- 19 And I have given the Levites as {1} a gift to Aaron and to his sons from among the children of Israel, to do the service of the children of Israel in the tent of meeting, and to make atonement for the children of Israel; that there be no plague among the children of Israel, {2} when the children of Israel come nigh unto the sanctuary. {1} *Heb Nethunim*, given 2) Or *through the children of Israel coming nigh*}
- 20 Thus did Moses, and Aaron, and all the congregation of the children of Israel, unto the Levites: according unto all that Jehovah commanded Moses touching the Levites, so did the children of Israel unto them.
- 21 And the Levites purified themselves from sin, and they washed their clothes: and Aaron offered them for a wave-offering before Jehovah; and Aaron made atonement for them to cleanse them.
- 22 And after that went the Levites in to do their service in the tent of meeting before Aaron, and before his sons: as Jehovah had commanded Moses concerning the Levites, so did they unto them.
- 23 And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 24 This is that which belongeth unto the Levites: from twenty and five years old and upward they shall go in {1} to wait upon the service in the work of the tent of meeting: {1} *Heb to war the warfare in the work*}
- 25 and from the age of fifty years they shall {1} cease waiting upon the work, and shall serve no more, {1} *Heb return from the warfare of the work*}
- 26 but shall minister with their brethren in the tent of meeting, to keep the charge, and shall do no service. Thus shalt thou do unto the Levites touching their charges.

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses in the wilderness of Sinai, in the first month of the second year after they were come out of the land of Egypt, saying,
- 2 Moreover let the children of Israel keep the passover in its appointed season.
- 3 In the fourteenth day of this month, {1} at even, ye shall keep it in its appointed season: according to all the statutes of it, and according to all the ordinances thereof, shall ye keep it. {1} *Heb between the two evenings*}
- 4 And Moses spake unto the children of Israel, that they should keep the passover.
- 5 And they kept the passover in the first *month*, on the fourteenth day of the month, {1} at even, in the wilderness of Sinai: according to all that Jehovah commanded Moses, so did the children of Israel. {1} *Heb between the two evenings*}
- 6 And there were certain men, who were unclean by reason of the dead body of a man, so that they could not keep the passover on that day: and they came before Moses and before Aaron on that day:
- 7 and those men said unto him, We are unclean by reason of the dead body of a man: wherefore are we kept back, that we may not offer the oblation of Jehovah in its appointed season among the children of Israel?
- 8 And Moses said unto them, Stay ye, that I may hear what Jehovah will command concerning you.
- 9 And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 10 Speak unto the children of Israel, saying, If any man of you or of your generations shall be unclean by reason of a dead body, or be on a journey afar off, yet he shall keep the passover unto Jehovah.
- 11 In the second month on the fourteenth day {1} at even they shall keep it; they shall eat it with unleavened bread and bitter herbs: {1} *Heb between the two evenings*}
- 12 they shall leave none of it unto the morning, nor break a bone thereof: according to all the statute of the passover they shall keep it.
- 13 But the man that is clean, and is not on a journey, and forbeareth to keep the passover, that soul shall be cut off from his people; because he offered not the oblation of Jehovah in its appointed season, that man shall bear his sin.
- 14 And if a stranger shall sojourn among you, and will keep the passover unto Jehovah; according to the statute of the passover, and according to the ordinance thereof, so shall he do: ye shall have one statute, both for the sojourner, and for him that is born in the land.
- 15 ¶ And on the day that the tabernacle was reared up the cloud covered the tabernacle, even the tent of the testimony: and at even it was upon the tabernacle as it were the appearance of fire, until morning.
- 16 So it was alway: the cloud covered it, and the appearance of fire by night.
- 17 And whenever the cloud was taken up from over the Tent, then after that the children of Israel journeyed: and in the place where the cloud abode, there the children of Israel encamped.
- 18 At the commandment of Jehovah the children of Israel journeyed, and at the commandment of Jehovah they encamped: as long as the cloud abode upon the tabernacle they remained encamped.
- 19 And when the cloud tarried upon the tabernacle many days, then the children of Israel kept the charge of Jehovah, and journeyed not.
- 20 And sometimes the cloud was a few days upon the tabernacle; then according to the commandment of Jehovah they remained encamped, and according to the commandment of Jehovah they journeyed.
- 21 And sometimes the cloud was from evening until morning; and when the cloud was taken up in the morning, they journeyed: or *if it continued* by day and by night, when the cloud was taken up, they journeyed.
- 22 Whether it were two days, or a month, or a year, that the cloud tarried upon the tabernacle, abiding thereon, the children of Israel remained encamped, and journeyed not; but when it was taken up, they journeyed.
- 23 At the commandment of Jehovah they encamped, and at the commandment of Jehovah they journeyed: they kept the charge of Jehovah, at the commandment of Jehovah by Moses.



## D- The Levites cleansed and separated for service. (8.)

1- Cleansing: Sprinkled, shaved, and clothes washed.

2- Separation:

After the hands of the elders of Israel are put upon the Levites, Aaron offers them to the Lord.

3- Purpose.

a- They are to take the place of firstborn in service.

b- To perform the menial priestly service.

Age limit--25-50.

Age 25-30 may be apprentice period. (Ref Num 4:46)

E- The first Passover kept out of Egypt. (9.)

(This is seen in retrospect, prior to chapter 1.)

1- Note an alternate day is provided for emergency. vs. 6-12  
A problem of defilement or travel: take it the 14<sup>th</sup> day of next month in the evening.2- Note the penalty for not keeping Passover. vs. 13-14  
Complete ostracization from Israel.3- Pillar of Fire and Cloud established as Israel's guide  
vs. 15-23

---

Because of length of text, Ch. 10 is backed up.**Numbers 10**

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 2 Make thee two trumpets of silver; of *{1}* beaten work shalt thou make them: and thou shalt use them for the calling of the congregation, and for the journeying of the camps. *{1} Or turned*
- 3 And when they shall blow them, all the congregation shall gather themselves unto thee at the door of the tent of meeting.
- 4 And if they blow but one, then the princes, the heads of the thousands of Israel, shall gather themselves unto thee.
- 5 And when ye blow an alarm, the camps that lie on the east side shall take their journey.
- 6 And when ye blow an alarm the second time, the camps that lie on the south side shall take their journey: they shall blow an alarm for their journeys.
- 7 But when the assembly is to be gathered together, ye shall blow, but ye shall not sound an alarm.
- 8 And the sons of Aaron, the priests, shall blow the trumpets; and they shall be to you for a statute for ever throughout your generations.
- 9 And when ye go to war in your land against the adversary that oppresseth you, then ye shall sound an alarm with the trumpets; and ye shall be remembered before Jehovah your God, and ye shall be saved from your enemies.
- 10 Also in the day of your gladness, and in your set feasts, and in the beginnings of your months, ye shall blow the trumpets over your burnt-offerings, and over the sacrifices of your peace-offerings; and they shall be to you for a memorial before your God: I am Jehovah your God.
- 11 ¶ And it came to pass in the second year, in the second month, on the twentieth day of the month, that the cloud was taken up from over the tabernacle of the testimony.
- 12 And the children of Israel set forward according to their journeys out of the wilderness of Sinai; and the cloud abode in the wilderness of Paran.
- 13 And they first took their journey according to the commandment of Jehovah by Moses.
- 14 And in the first *place* the standard of the camp of the children of Judah set forward according to their hosts: and over his host was Nahshon the son of Amminadab.
- 15 And over the host of the tribe of the children of Issachar was Nethanel the son of Zuar.
- 16 And over the host of the tribe of the children of Zebulun was Eliab the son of Helon.
- 17 And the tabernacle was taken down; and the sons of Gershon and the sons of Merari, who bare the tabernacle, set forward.
- 18 And the standard of the camp of Reuben set forward according to their hosts: and over his host was Elizur the son of Shedeur.
- 19 And over the host of the tribe of the children of Simeon was Shelumiel the son of Zurishaddai.

- 20 And over the host of the tribe of the children of Gad was Eliasaph the son of Deuel.
- 21 And the Kohathites set forward, bearing the sanctuary: and *the others* did set up the tabernacle against their coming.
- 22 And the standard of the camp of the children of Ephraim set forward according to their hosts: and over his host was Elishama the son of Ammihud.
- 23 And over the host of the tribe of the children of Manasseh was Gamaliel the son of Pedahzur.
- 24 And over the host of the tribe of the children of Benjamin was Abidan the son of Gideon.
- 25 And the standard of the camp of the children of Dan, which was the rearward of all the camps, set forward according to their hosts: and over his host was Ahiezer the son of Ammishaddai.
- 26 And over the host of the tribe of the children of Asher was Pagiel the son of Ochran.
- 27 And over the host of the tribe of the children of Naphtali was Ahira the son of Enan.
- 28 Thus were the journeyings of the children of Israel according to their hosts; and they set forward.
- 29 ¶ And Moses said unto Hobab, the son of Reuel the Midianite, Moses' father-in-law, We are journeying unto the place of which Jehovah said, I will give it you: come thou with us, and we will do thee good; for Jehovah hath spoken good concerning Israel.
- 30 And he said unto him, I will not go; but I will depart to mine own land, and to my kindred.
- 31 And he said, Leave us not, I pray thee; forasmuch as thou knowest how we are to encamp in the wilderness, and thou shalt be to us instead of eyes.
- 32 And it shall be, if thou go with us, yea, it shall be, that what good soever Jehovah shall do unto us, the same will we do unto thee.
- 33 And they set forward from the mount of Jehovah three days' journey; and the ark of the covenant of Jehovah went before them three days' journey, to seek out a resting-place for them.
- 34 And the cloud of Jehovah was over them by day, when they set forward from the camp.
- 35 And it came to pass, when the ark set forward, that Moses said, Rise up, O Jehovah, and let thine enemies be scattered; and let them that hate thee flee before thee.
- 36 And when it rested, he said, Return, O Jehovah, unto the ten thousands of the thousands of Israel.

- F- The silver trumpets<sup>11</sup> instituted as signals for Israel (10:1-10.)  
     Two (Heb. **שְׁנַיִם**) silver trumpets. vs. 2
- 1- Trumpeters: The sons of Aaron. vs. 8
- 2- Purpose of trumpets - to call an assembly
- a- To call Israel into assembly. Single Blast two trumpets vs. 3
- b- To call the princes of Israel into assembly. Single Blast  
         one trumpet vs. 4
- c- To command certain sections to march. An alarm vs. 5
- d- To alert the nation for war. vs. 9
- e- To announce beginnings of months, years. vs 10
- G- The march from Sinai begins. (10:11-36.)
- 1- Date: 2nd year, 2nd month, 20th day.
- 2- The 'three days' journey to wilderness of Paran
- a- Led by the cloud they march in ranks.
- b- Moses recruits Hobab for human assistance in camping.  
         Note **Hobab was the first "camp counselor"**.

---

Because of length of text, Ch. 11 is backed up.

### Numbers 11

- 1 ¶ And the people were as murmurers, *{1} speaking* evil in the ears of Jehovah: and when Jehovah heard it, his anger was kindled; and the fire of Jehovah burnt among them, and devoured in the uttermost part of the camp.  
*{1} Or, which was evil}*
- 2 And the people cried unto Moses; and Moses prayed unto Jehovah, and the fire abated.
- 3 And the name of that place was called *{1}* Taberah, because the fire of Jehovah burnt among them. *{1} That is Burning}*
- 4 ¶ And the mixed multitude that was among them lusted exceedingly: and the children of Israel also wept again, and said, Who shall give us flesh to eat?
- 5 We remember the fish, which we did eat in Egypt for nought; the cucumbers, and the melons, and the leeks, and the onions, and the garlic:
- 6 but now our soul is dried away; there is nothing at all save this manna to look upon.

- 7 And the manna was like coriander seed, and the {1} appearance thereof as the appearance of bdellium. {1} *Heb eye*
- 8 The people went about, and gathered it, and ground it in mills, or beat it in mortars, and boiled it in pots, and made cakes of it: and the taste of it was as the taste of {1} fresh oil. {1} *Or cakes baked with oil*
- 9 And when the dew fell upon the camp in the night, the manna fell {1} upon it. {1} *Or with*
- 10 And Moses heard the people weeping throughout their families, every man at the door of his tent: and the anger of Jehovah was kindled greatly; and Moses was displeased.
- 11 And Moses said unto Jehovah, Wherefore hast thou dealt ill with thy servant? and wherefore have I not found favor in thy sight, that thou layest the burden of all this people upon me?
- 12 Have I conceived all this people? have I brought them forth, that thou shouldest say unto me, Carry them in thy bosom, as a nursing-father carrieth the sucking child, unto the land which thou swarest unto their fathers?
- 13 Whence should I have flesh to give unto all this people? for they weep unto me, saying, Give us flesh, that we may eat.
- 14 I am not able to bear all this people alone, because it is too heavy for me.
- 15 And if thou deal thus with me, kill me, I pray thee, out of hand, if I have found favor in thy sight; and let me not see my wretchedness.
- 16 ¶ And Jehovah said unto Moses, Gather unto me seventy men of the elders of Israel, whom thou knowest to be the elders of the people, and officers over them; and bring them unto the tent of meeting, that they may stand there with thee.
- 17 And I will come down and talk with thee there: and I will take of the Spirit which is upon thee, and will put it upon them; and they shall bear the burden of the people with thee, that thou bear it not thyself alone.
- 18 And say thou unto the people, Sanctify yourselves against to-morrow, and ye shall eat flesh; for ye have wept in the ears of Jehovah, saying, Who shall give us flesh to eat? for it was well with us in Egypt: therefore Jehovah will give you flesh, and ye shall eat.
- 19 Ye shall not eat one day, nor two days, nor five days, neither ten days, nor twenty days,
- 20 but a whole month, until it come out at your nostrils, and it be loathsome unto you; because that ye have rejected Jehovah who is among you, and have wept before him, saying, Why came we forth out of Egypt?
- 21 And Moses said, The people, among whom I am, are six hundred thousand footmen; and thou hast said, I will give them flesh, that they may eat a whole month.
- 22 Shall flocks and herds be slain for them, to suffice them? or shall all the fish of the sea be gathered together for them, to suffice them?
- 23 And Jehovah said unto Moses, Is Jehovah's hand waxed short? now shalt thou see whether my word shall come to pass unto thee or not.
- 24 ¶ And Moses went out, and told the people the words of Jehovah: and he gathered seventy men of the elders of the people, and set them round about the Tent.
- 25 And Jehovah came down in the cloud, and spake unto him, and took of the Spirit that was upon him, and put it upon the seventy elders: and it came to pass, that, when the Spirit rested upon them, they prophesied, but they did so no more.
- 26 But there remained two men in the camp, the name of the one was Eldad, and the name of the other Medad: and the Spirit rested upon them; and they were of them that were written, but had not gone out unto the Tent; and they prophesied in the camp.
- 27 And there ran a young man, and told Moses, and said, Eldad and Medad do prophesy in the camp.
- 28 And Joshua the son of Nun, the minister of Moses, {1} one of his chosen men, answered and said, My lord Moses, forbid them. {1} *Or from his youth*
- 29 And Moses said unto him, Art thou jealous for my sake? would that all Jehovah's people were prophets, that Jehovah would put his Spirit upon them!
- 30 And Moses gat him into the camp, he and the elders of Israel.
- 31 ¶ And there went forth a wind from Jehovah, and brought quails from the sea, and let them fall {1} by the camp, about a day's journey on this side, and a day's journey on the other side, round about the camp, and about two cubits above the face of the earth. {1} *Or over*
- 32 And the people rose up all that day, and all the night, and all the next day, and gathered the quails: he that gathered least gathered ten homers: and they spread them all abroad for themselves round about the camp.
- 33 While the flesh was yet between their teeth, ere it was chewed, the anger of Jehovah was kindled against the people, and Jehovah smote the people with a very great plague.
- 34 And the name of that place was called {1} Kibroth-hattaavah, because there they buried the people that lusted. {1} *That is The graves of lust*
- 35 From Kibroth-hattaavah the people journeyed unto Hazeroth; and they abode at Hazeroth.

## II. Disorganization of the First Generation. (11.-20.)

### A- Their defection and God's rejection. (11.-14.)

#### 1- Israel's dietary complaint. (11.)

Complained about the manna provided to them.

a- Aggravated by mixed multitude. vs. 4

b- Effected by mixed desires.

c- Moses' complaint and God's response. vs. 10

70 elders appointed and endued to assist.

(Moses is a type of a depressed preacher. vs. 15)

d- God's response to Israel's complaint for food vs. 18-24

1) Quail provided for a month.

"till it sticks out your nose"

2) God's judgment on their attitude vs. 31-35

---

Because of length of text, Ch. 12 & 13 are backed up.

#### Numbers 12

- 1 ¶ And Miriam and Aaron spake against Moses because of the Cushite woman whom he had married; for he had married a Cushite woman.
- 2 And they said, Hath Jehovah indeed spoken only {1} with Moses? hath he not spoken also {1} with us? And Jehovah heard it. {1} Or by}
- 3 Now the man Moses was very meek, above all the men that were upon the face of the earth.
- 4 ¶ And Jehovah spake suddenly unto Moses, and unto Aaron, and unto Miriam, Come out ye three unto the tent of meeting. And they three came out.
- 5 And Jehovah came down in a pillar of cloud, and stood at the door of the Tent, and called Aaron and Miriam; and they both came forth.
- 6 And he said, Hear now my words: if there be a prophet among you, I Jehovah will make myself known unto him in a vision, I will speak with him in a dream.
- 7 My servant Moses is not so; he is faithful in all my house:
- 8 with him will I speak mouth to mouth, even manifestly, and not in dark speeches; and the form of Jehovah shall he behold: wherefore then were ye not afraid to speak against my servant, against Moses?
- 9 And the anger of Jehovah was kindled against them; and he departed.
- 10 ¶ And the cloud removed from over the Tent; and, behold, Miriam was leprous, as *white as* snow: and Aaron looked upon Miriam, and, behold, she was leprous.
- 11 And Aaron said unto Moses, Oh, my lord, lay not, I pray thee, sin upon us, for that we have done foolishly, and for that we have sinned.
- 12 Let her not, I pray, be as one dead, of whom the flesh is half consumed when he cometh out of his mother's womb.
- 13 And Moses cried unto Jehovah, saying, Heal her, O God, I beseech thee.
- 14 And Jehovah said unto Moses, If her father had but spit in her face, should she not be ashamed seven days? let her be shut up without the camp seven days, and after that she shall be brought in again.
- 15 And Miriam was shut up without the camp seven days: and the people journeyed not till Miriam was brought in again.
- 16 And afterward the people journeyed from Hazeroth, and encamped in the wilderness of Paran.

#### Numbers 13

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 2 Send thou men, that they may spy out the land of Canaan, which I give unto the children of Israel: of every tribe of their fathers shall ye send a man, every one a prince among them.
- 3 And Moses sent them from the wilderness of Paran according to the commandment of Jehovah: all of them men who were heads of the children of Israel.
- 4 And these were their names: Of the tribe of Reuben, Shammua the son of Zaccur.
- 5 Of the tribe of Simeon, Shaphat the son of Hori.
- 6 Of the tribe of Judah, Caleb the son of Jephunneh.
- 7 Of the tribe of Issachar, Igal the son of Joseph.
- 8 Of the tribe of Ephraim, Hoshea the son of Nun.
- 9 Of the tribe of Benjamin, Palti the son of Raphu.
- 10 Of the tribe of Zebulun, Gaddiel the son of Sodi.

- 11 Of the tribe of Joseph, *namely*, of the tribe of Manasseh, Gaddi the son of Susi.  
12 Of the tribe of Dan, Ammiel the son of Gemalli.  
13 Of the tribe of Asher, Sethur the son of Michael.  
14 Of the tribe of Naphtali, Nahbi the son of Vophsi.  
15 Of the tribe of Gad, Geuel the son of Machi.  
16 These are the names of the men that Moses sent to spy out the land. And Moses called Hoshea the son of Nun Joshua.  
17 And Moses sent them to spy out the land of Canaan, and said unto them, Get you up this way {1} by the South, and go up into the hill-country: {1} Or into  
18 and see the land, what it is; and the people that dwell therein, whether they are strong or weak, whether they are few or many;  
19 and what the land is that they dwell in, whether it is good or bad; and what cities they are that they dwell in, whether in camps, or in strongholds;  
20 and what the land is, whether it is fat or lean, whether there is wood therein, or not. And be ye of good courage, and bring of the fruit of the land. Now the time was the time of the first-ripe grapes.  
21 ¶ So they went up, and spied out the land from the wilderness of Zin unto Rehob, to the entrance of Hamath.  
22 And they went up by the South, and came unto Hebron; and Ahiman, Sheshai, and Talmi, the children of Anak, were there. (Now Hebron was built seven years before Zoan in Egypt.)  
23 And they came unto the valley of Eshcol, and cut down from thence a branch with one cluster of grapes, and they bare it upon a staff between two; *they brought* also of the pomegranates, and of the figs.  
24 That place was called the valley of {1} Eshcol, because of the cluster which the children of Israel cut down from thence. {1} That is a cluster  
25 And they returned from spying out the land at the end of forty days.  
26 ¶ And they went and came to Moses, and to Aaron, and to all the congregation of the children of Israel, unto the wilderness of Paran, to Kadesh; and brought back word unto them, and unto all the congregation, and showed them the fruit of the land.  
27 And they told him, and said, We came unto the land whither thou sentest us; and surely it floweth with milk and honey; and this is the fruit of it.  
28 Howbeit the people that dwell in the land are strong, and the cities are fortified, *and* very great: and moreover we saw the children of Anak there.  
29 Amalek dwelleth in the land of the South: and the Hittite, and the Jebusite, and the Amorite, dwell in the hill-country; and the Canaanite dwelleth by the sea, and along by the side of the Jordan.  
30 And Caleb stilled the people before Moses, and said, Let us go up at once, and possess it; for we are well able to overcome it.  
31 But the men that went up with him said, We are not able to go up against the people; for they are stronger than we.  
32 And they brought up an evil report of the land which they had spied out unto the children of Israel, saying, The land, through which we have gone to spy it out, is a land that eateth up the inhabitants thereof; and all the people that we saw in it are men of great stature.  
33 And there we saw the {1} Nephilim, the sons of Anak, who come of the Nephilim: and we were in our own sight as grasshoppers, and so we were in their sight. {1} Or giants }

- 2- Miriam and Aaron's complaint against Moses. (12.)**
- a- The complaint concerning Moses' Ethiopian wife. vs. 1-3  
**So much for complaints about 'mixed marriage'.**
  - b- The Lord's judgment on Miriam. vs. 4-16  
She was healed immediately but was not ceremonially cleansed for 7 days.
  - c- The whole camp is stopped 7 days
- 3- The spies' report and Israel's rebellion. (13.-14.)**
- a- The spies' report. (13.)
    - 1) 12 leaders sent as fact-finding committee.  
(See Deu 1:22 for the people's suggestion)
    - 2) Majority report--Not able  
(saw giants, walled cities).
    - 3) Minority report- -Are able  
(saw giants and the Lord). vs. 30

Because of length of text, Ch. 14 is backed up.

#### Numbers 14

- 1 ¶ And all the congregation lifted up their voice, and cried; and the people wept that night.
- 2 And all the children of Israel murmured against Moses and against Aaron: and the whole congregation said unto them, Would that we had died in the land of Egypt! or would that we had died in this wilderness!
- 3 And wherefore doth Jehovah bring us unto this land, to fall by the sword? Our wives and our little ones will be a prey: were it not better for us to return into Egypt?
- 4 And they said one to another, Let us make a captain, and let us return into Egypt.
- 5 ¶ Then Moses and Aaron fell on their faces before all the assembly of the congregation of the children of Israel.
- 6 And Joshua the son of Nun and Caleb the son of Jephunneh, who were of them that spied out the land, rent their clothes:
- 7 and they spake unto all the congregation of the children of Israel, saying, The land, which we passed through to spy it out, is an exceeding good land.
- 8 If Jehovah delight in us, then he will bring us into this land, and give it unto us; a land which floweth with milk and honey.
- 9 Only rebel not against Jehovah, neither fear ye the people of the land; for they are bread for us: their <sup>{1}</sup> defence is removed from over them, and Jehovah is with us: fear them not. <sup>{1}</sup> Heb shadow
- 10 But all the congregation bade stone them with stones. And the glory of Jehovah appeared in the tent of meeting unto all the children of Israel.
- 11 ¶ And Jehovah said unto Moses, How long will this people despise me? and how long will they not believe in me, for all the signs which I have wrought among them?
- 12 I will smite them with the pestilence, and disinherit them, and will make of thee a nation greater and mightier

- than they.
- 13 And Moses said unto Jehovah, Then the Egyptians will hear it; for thou broughtest up this people in thy might from among them;
- 14 and they will tell it to the inhabitants of this land. They have heard that thou Jehovah art in the midst of this people; for thou Jehovah art seen *{1}* face to face, and thy cloud standeth over them, and thou goest before them, in a pillar of cloud by day, and in a pillar of fire by night. *{1}* *Heb eye to eye*
- 15 Now if thou shalt kill this people as one man, then the nations which have heard the fame of thee will speak, saying,
- 16 Because Jehovah was not able to bring this people into the land which he swore unto them, therefore he hath slain them in the wilderness.
- 17 And now, I pray thee, let the power of the Lord be great, according as thou hast spoken, saying,
- 18 Jehovah is slow to anger, and abundant in lovingkindness, forgiving iniquity and transgression; and that will by no means clear *the guilty*, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children, upon the third and upon the fourth generation.
- 19 Pardon, I pray thee, the iniquity of this people according unto the greatness of thy lovingkindness, and according as thou hast forgiven this people, from Egypt even until now.
- 20 ¶ And Jehovah said, I have pardoned according to thy word:
- 21 but in very deed, as I live, and as all the earth shall be filled with the glory of Jehovah;
- 22 because all those men that have seen my glory, and my signs, which I wrought in Egypt and in the wilderness, yet have tempted me these ten times, and have not hearkened to my voice;
- 23 surely they shall not see the land which I swore unto their fathers, neither shall any of them that despised me see it:
- 24 but my servant Caleb, because he had another spirit with him, and hath followed me fully, him will I bring into the land whereinto he went; and his seed shall possess it.
- 25 Now the Amalekite and the Canaanite dwell in the valley: to-morrow turn ye, and get you into the wilderness by the way to the Red Sea.
- 26 And Jehovah spake unto Moses and unto Aaron, saying,
- 27 How long *shall I bear* with this evil congregation, that murmur against me? I have heard the murmurings of the children of Israel, which they murmur against me.
- 28 Say unto them, As I live, saith Jehovah, surely as ye have spoken in mine ears, so will I do to you:
- 29 your dead bodies shall fall in this wilderness; and all that were numbered of you, according to your whole number, from twenty years old and upward, that have murmured against me,
- 30 surely ye shall not come into the land, concerning which I *{1}* swore that I would make you dwell therein, save Caleb the son of Jephunneh, and Joshua the son of Nun. *{1}* *Heb lifted up my hand*
- 31 But your little ones, that ye said should be a prey, them will I bring in, and they shall know the land which ye have rejected.
- 32 But as for you, your dead bodies shall fall in this wilderness.
- 33 And your children shall be *{1}* wanderers in the wilderness forty years, and shall bear your whoredoms, until your dead bodies be consumed in the wilderness. *{1}* *Heb shepherds*
- 34 After the number of the days in which ye spied out the land, even forty days, for every day a year, shall ye bear your iniquities, even forty years, and ye shall know *{1}* my alienation. *{1}* *Or the revoking of my promise*
- 35 I, Jehovah, have spoken, surely this will I do unto all this evil congregation, that are gathered together against me: in this wilderness they shall be consumed, and there they shall die.
- 36 ¶ And the men, whom Moses sent to spy out the land, who returned, and made all the congregation to murmur against him, by bringing up an evil report against the land,
- 37 even those men that did bring up an evil report of the land, died by the plague before Jehovah.
- 38 But Joshua the son of Nun, and Caleb the son of Jephunneh, remained alive of those men that went to spy out the land.
- 39 And Moses told these words unto all the children of Israel: and the people mourned greatly.
- 40 And they rose up early in the morning, and gat them up to the top of the mountain, saying, Lo, we are here, and will go up unto the place which Jehovah hath promised: for we have sinned.
- 41 And Moses said, Wherefore now do ye transgress the commandment of Jehovah, seeing it shall not prosper?
- 42 Go not up, for Jehovah is not among you; that ye be not smitten down before your enemies.
- 43 For there the Amalekite and the Canaanite are before you, and ye shall fall by the sword: because ye are turned back from following Jehovah, therefore Jehovah will not be with you.
- 44 But they presumed to go up to the top of the mountain: nevertheless the ark of the covenant of Jehovah, and Moses, departed not out of the camp.
- 45 Then the Amalekite came down, and the Canaanite who dwelt in that mountain, and smote them and beat them down, even unto Hormah.



- b- Israel's rebellion and God's judgment. (14.)
  - 1) The rebellion caused by fear, supposedly (1 -10).  
The congregation wept all night. vs. 3
  - 2) God's judgment vs. 11-39
    - a) His proposition to Moses is refused.  
The people said "we can't make it, we should have died in the wilderness" God's response was: 'Your little ones that you thought would be a prey, I will lead THEM into the land'.  
This suggests - **A Principle: an eternal truth not limited to a moment of time**  
**"You may get what you want, but you may not want what you get"!**
    - b) His pardon and judgment. vs. 19  
Note vs. 44, where they go against the lost blessing!
  - 3) Israel's presumption in belated obedience. vs. 36-38

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,  
2 Speak unto the children of Israel, and say unto them, When ye are come into the land of your habitations, which I give unto you,  
3 and will make an offering by fire unto Jehovah, a burnt-offering, or a sacrifice, *{1}* to accomplish a vow, or as a freewill-offering, or in your set feasts, to make a sweet savor unto Jehovah, of the herd, or of the flock; *{1}* *Or in making a special vow*  
4 then shall he that offereth his oblation offer unto Jehovah a meal-offering of a tenth part *of an ephah* of fine flour mingled with the fourth part of a hin of oil:  
5 and wine for the drink-offering, the fourth part of a hin, shalt thou prepare with the burnt-offering, or for the sacrifice, for each lamb.  
6 Or for a ram, thou shalt prepare for a meal-offering two tenth parts *of an ephah* of fine flour mingled with the third part of a hin of oil:  
7 and for the drink-offering thou shalt offer the third part of a hin of wine, of a sweet savor unto Jehovah.  
8 And when thou preparest a bullock for a burnt-offering, or for a sacrifice, *{1}* to accomplish a vow, or for peace-offerings unto Jehovah; *{1}* *Or in making a special vow* }  
9 then shall he offer with the bullock a meal-offering of three tenth parts *of an ephah* of fine flour mingled with half a hin of oil:  
10 and thou shalt offer for the drink-offering half a hin of wine, for an offering made by fire, of a sweet savor unto Jehovah.  
11 Thus shall it be done for each bullock, or for each ram, or for each of the he-lambs, or of the kids.  
12 According to the number that ye shall prepare, so shall ye do to every one according to their number.  
13 All that are home-born shall do these things after this manner, in offering an offering made by fire, of a sweet savor unto Jehovah.  
14 And if a stranger sojourn with you, or whosoever may be among you throughout your generations, and will offer an offering made by fire, of a sweet savor unto Jehovah; as ye do, so he shall do.  
15 For the assembly, there shall be one statute for you, and for the stranger that sojourneth *with you*, a statute for ever throughout your generations: as ye are, so shall the sojourner be before Jehovah.  
16 One law and one ordinance shall be for you, and for the stranger that sojourneth with you.  
17 And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,  
18 Speak unto the children of Israel, and say unto them, When ye come into the land whither I bring you,  
19 then it shall be, that, when ye eat of the bread of the land, ye shall offer up a heave-offering unto Jehovah.  
20 Of the first of your *{1}* dough ye shall offer up a cake for a heave-offering: as the heave-offering of the threshing-floor, so shall ye heave it. *{1}* *Or coarse meal*  
21 Of the first of your dough ye shall give unto Jehovah a heave-offering throughout your generations.  
22 ¶ And when ye shall err, and not observe all these commandments, which Jehovah hath spoken unto Moses,  
23 even all that Jehovah hath commanded you by Moses, from the day that Jehovah gave commandment, and onward throughout your generations;  
24 then it shall be, if it be done *{1}* unwittingly, without the knowledge of the congregation, that all the congregation shall offer one young bullock for a burnt-offering, for a sweet savor unto Jehovah, with the meal-offering thereof, and the drink-offering thereof, according to the ordinance, and one he-goat for a sin-offering. *{1}* *Or in error*  
25 And the priest shall make atonement for all the congregation of the children of Israel, and they shall be forgiven; for it was an error, and they have brought their oblation, an offering made by fire unto Jehovah, and their sin-offering before Jehovah, for their error:  
26 and all the congregation of the children of Israel shall be forgiven, and the stranger that sojourneth among them; for in respect of all the people it was done unwittingly.  
27 And if one person sin unwittingly, then he shall offer a she-goat a year old for a sin-offering.  
28 And the priest shall make atonement for the soul that erreth, when he sinneth unwittingly, before Jehovah, to make atonement for him; and he shall be forgiven.  
29 Ye shall have one law for him that doeth aught unwittingly, for him that is home-born among the children of Israel, and for the stranger that sojourneth among them.  
30 ¶ But the soul that doeth aught with a high hand, whether he be home-born or a sojourner, the same blasphemeth Jehovah; and that soul shall be cut off from among his people.  
31 Because he hath despised the word of Jehovah, and hath broken his commandment, that soul shall utterly be cut off; his iniquity shall be upon him.  
32 And while the children of Israel were in the wilderness, they found a man gathering sticks upon the sabbath day.  
33 And they that found him gathering sticks brought him unto Moses and Aaron, and unto all the congregation.  
34 And they put him in ward, because it had not been declared what should be done to him.  
35 And Jehovah said unto Moses, The man shall surely be put to death: all the congregation shall stone him with stones without the camp.  
36 And all the congregation brought him without the camp, and stoned him to death with stones; as Jehovah

commanded Moses.

37 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,

38 Speak unto the children of Israel, and bid them that they make them {1} fringes in the borders of their garments throughout their generations, and that they put upon the fringe of each border a cord of blue: {1} Or tassels in the corners}

39 and it shall be unto you for a fringe, that ye may look upon it, and remember all the commandments of Jehovah, and do them; and that ye {1} follow not after your own heart and your own eyes, after which ye use to play the harlot; {1} Heb spy not out}

40 that ye may remember and do all my commandments, and be holy unto your God.

41 I am Jehovah your God, who brought you out of the land of Egypt, to be your God: I am Jehovah your God.

---

#### B- Their wanderings for 38 years.

(15.-20.)

##### 1- A reminder concerning the offerings.

(15.)

a- Meal and drink offerings to accompany burnt offerings.

vs. 1-16

b- Offerings for sins of ignorance noted.

vs. 22-29

c- No offerings for sins of presumption.

vs. 30-36

d- Ordinance of blue ribbon to remind of law.

vs. 37-41

Must wear blue ribbon on their garments.

- 1 ¶ Now Korah, the son of Izhar, the son of Kohath, the son of Levi, with Dathan and Abiram, the sons of Eliab, and On, the son of Peleth, sons of Reuben, took *men*:
- 2 and they rose up before Moses, with certain of the children of Israel, two hundred and fifty princes of the congregation, called to the assembly, men of renown;
- 3 and they assembled themselves together against Moses and against Aaron, and said unto them, *{1}* Ye take too much upon you, seeing all the congregation are holy, every one of them, and Jehovah is among them: wherefore then lift ye up yourselves above the assembly of Jehovah? *{1}* *Heb It is enough for you*
- 4 And when Moses heard it, he fell upon his face:
- 5 and he spake unto Korah and unto all his company, saying, In the morning Jehovah will show who are his, and who is holy, and *{1}* will cause him to come near unto him: even him whom he shall choose will he cause to come near unto him. *{1}* *Or whom he will cause to come near*
- 6 This do: take you censers, Korah, and all his company;
- 7 and put fire in them, and put incense upon them before Jehovah to-morrow: and it shall be that the man whom Jehovah doth choose, he *shall be* holy: ye take too much upon you, ye sons of Levi.
- 8 And Moses said unto Korah, Hear now, ye sons of Levi:
- 9 *seemeth it but* a small thing unto you, that the God of Israel hath separated you from the congregation of Israel, to bring you near to himself, to do the service of the tabernacle of Jehovah, and to stand before the congregation to minister unto them;
- 10 and that he hath brought thee near, and all thy brethren the sons of Levi with thee? and seek ye the priesthood also?
- 11 Therefore thou and all thy company are gathered together against Jehovah: and Aaron, what is he that ye murmur against him?
- 12 ¶ And Moses sent to call Dathan and Abiram, the sons of Eliab; and they said, We will not come up:
- 13 is it a small thing that thou hast brought us up out of a land flowing with milk and honey, to kill us in the wilderness, but thou must needs make thyself also a prince over us?
- 14 Moreover thou hast not brought us into a land flowing with milk and honey, nor given us inheritance of fields and vineyards: wilt thou *{1}* put out the eyes of these men? we will not come up. *{1}* *Heb bore out*
- 15 And Moses was very wroth, and said unto Jehovah, Respect not thou their offering: I have not taken one ass from them, neither have I hurt one of them.
- 16 And Moses said unto Korah, Be thou and all thy company before Jehovah, thou, and they, and Aaron, to-morrow:
- 17 and take ye every man his censor, and put incense upon them, and bring ye before Jehovah every man his censor, two hundred and fifty censers; thou also, and Aaron, each his censor.
- 18 And they took every man his censor, and put fire in them, and laid incense thereon, and stood at the door of the tent of meeting with Moses and Aaron.
- 19 And Korah assembled all the congregation against them unto the door of the tent of meeting: and the glory of Jehovah appeared unto all the congregation.
- 20 And Jehovah spake unto Moses and unto Aaron, saying,
- 21 Separate yourselves from among this congregation, that I may consume them in a moment.
- 22 And they fell upon their faces, and said, O God, the God of the spirits of all flesh, shall one man sin, and wilt thou be wroth with all the congregation?
- 23 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 24 Speak unto the congregation, saying, Get you up from about the tabernacle of Korah, Dathan, and Abiram.
- 25 And Moses rose up and went unto Dathan and Abiram; and the elders of Israel followed him.
- 26 And he spake unto the congregation, saying, Depart, I pray you, from the tents of these wicked men, and touch nothing of theirs, lest ye be consumed in all their sins.
- 27 So they gat them up from the tabernacle of Korah, Dathan, and Abiram, on every side: and Dathan and Abiram came out, and stood at the door of their tents, and their wives, and their sons, and their little ones.
- 28 And Moses said, Hereby ye shall know that Jehovah hath sent me to do all these works; for *I have not done them* of mine own mind.
- 29 If these men die the common death of all men, or if they be visited after the visitation of all men; then Jehovah hath not sent me.
- 30 But if Jehovah *{1}* make a new thing, and the ground open its mouth, and swallow them up, with all that appertain unto them, and they go down alive into Sheol; then ye shall understand that these men have despised Jehovah. *{1}* *Heb create a creation*
- 31 And it came to pass, as he made an end of speaking all these words, that the ground clave asunder that was under them;
- 32 and the earth opened its mouth, and swallowed them up, and their households, and all the men that appertained unto Korah, and all their goods.
- 33 So they, and all that appertained to them, went down alive into Sheol: and the earth closed upon them, and they

- perished from among the assembly.
- 34 And all Israel that were round about them fled at the cry of them; for they said, Lest the earth swallow us up.
- 35 ¶ And fire came forth from Jehovah, and devoured the two hundred and fifty men that offered the incense.
- 36 And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 37 Speak unto Eleazar the son of Aaron the priest, that he take up the censers out of the burning, and scatter thou the fire yonder; for they are holy,
- 38 even the censers of {1} these sinners against their own {2} lives; and let them be made beaten plates for a covering of the altar: for they offered them before Jehovah; therefore they are holy; and they shall be a sign unto the children of Israel. {1} Or these men who have sinned at the cost of their lives 2) Or souls}
- 39 And Eleazar the priest took the brazen censers, which they that were burnt had offered; and they beat them out for a covering of the altar,
- 40 to be a memorial unto the children of Israel, to the end that no stranger, that is not of the seed of Aaron, come near to burn incense before Jehovah; that he be not as Korah, and as his company: as Jehovah spake unto him by Moses.
- 41 ¶ But on the morrow all the congregation of the children of Israel murmured against Moses and against Aaron, saying, Ye have killed the people of Jehovah.
- 42 And it came to pass, when the congregation was assembled against Moses and against Aaron, that they looked toward the tent of meeting: and, behold, the cloud covered it, and the glory of Jehovah appeared.
- 43 And Moses and Aaron came to the front of the tent of meeting.
- 44 And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 45 Get you up from among this congregation, that I may consume them in a moment. And they fell upon their faces.
- 46 And Moses said unto Aaron, Take thy censer, and put fire therein from off the altar, and lay incense thereon, and carry it quickly unto the congregation, and make atonement for them: for there is wrath gone out from Jehovah; the plague is begun.
- 47 And Aaron took as Moses spake, and ran into the midst of the assembly; and, behold, the plague was begun among the people: and he put on the incense, and made atonement for the people.
- 48 And he stood between the dead and the living; and the plague was stayed.
- 49 Now they that died by the plague were fourteen thousand and seven hundred, besides them that died about the matter of Korah.
- 50 And Aaron returned unto Moses unto the door of the tent of meeting: and the plague was stayed.

---

2-	Rebellion of Korah and the princes	(16.)
a-	Moses' authority is challenged.	vs. 1-14
b-	The Lord's test and Moses' response	vs. 15-22
c-	The Lord's two judgments.	
	1) On the rebels	vs. 26-35
	2) On the complaining congregation	vs. 41-50

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 2 Speak unto the children of Israel, and take of them rods, one for each fathers' house, of all their princes according to their fathers' houses, twelve rods: write thou every man's name upon his rod.
- 3 And thou shalt write Aaron's name upon the rod of Levi; for there shall be one rod for each head of their fathers' houses.
- 4 And thou shalt lay them up in the tent of meeting before the testimony, where I meet with you.
- 5 And it shall come to pass, that the rod of the man whom I shall choose shall bud: and I will make to cease from me the murmurings of the children of Israel, which they murmur against you.
- 6 And Moses spake unto the children of Israel; and all their princes gave him rods, for each prince one, according to their fathers' houses, even twelve rods: and the rod of Aaron was among their rods.
- 7 And Moses laid up the rods before Jehovah in the tent of the testimony.
- 8 ¶ And it came to pass on the morrow, that Moses went into the tent of the testimony; and, behold, the rod of Aaron for the house of Levi was budded, and put forth buds, and produced blossoms, and bare ripe almonds.
- 9 And Moses brought out all the rods from before Jehovah unto all the children of Israel: and they looked, and took every man his rod.
- 10 And Jehovah said unto Moses, Put back the rod of Aaron before the testimony, to be kept for a token against the children of rebellion; that thou mayest make an end of their murmurings against me, that they die not.
- 11 Thus did Moses: as Jehovah commanded him, so did he.
- 12 And the children of Israel spake unto Moses, saying, Behold, we perish, we are undone, we are all undone.
- 13 Every one that cometh near, that cometh near unto the tabernacle of Jehovah, *{1}* dieth: shall we perish all of us? *{1}* Or shall die?

#### Numbers 18

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah said unto Aaron, Thou and thy sons and thy fathers' house with thee shall bear the iniquity of the sanctuary; and thou and thy sons with thee shall bear the iniquity of your priesthood.
- 2 And thy brethren also, the tribe of Levi, the tribe of thy father, bring thou near with thee, that they may be joined unto thee, and minister unto thee: but thou and thy sons with thee shall be before the tent of the testimony.
- 3 And they shall keep thy charge, and the charge of all the Tent: only they shall not come nigh unto the vessels of the sanctuary and unto the altar, that they die not, neither they, nor ye.
- 4 And they shall be joined unto thee, and keep the charge of the tent of meeting, for all the service of the Tent: and a stranger shall not come nigh unto you.
- 5 And ye shall keep the charge of the sanctuary, and the charge of the altar; that there be wrath no more upon the children of Israel.
- 6 And I, behold, I have taken your brethren the Levites from among the children of Israel: to you they are a gift, given unto Jehovah, to do the service of the tent of meeting.
- 7 And thou and thy sons with thee shall keep your priesthood for everything of the altar, and for that within the veil; and ye shall serve: I give you the priesthood as a service of gift: and the stranger that cometh nigh shall be put to death.
- 8 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Aaron, And I, behold, I have given thee the charge of my heave-offerings, even all the hallowed things of the children of Israel; unto thee have I given them *{1}* by reason of the anointing, and to thy sons, as a portion for ever. *{1}* Or for a portion?
- 9 This shall be thine of the most holy things, *reserved* from the fire: every oblation of theirs, even every meal-offering of theirs, and every sin-offering of theirs, and every trespass-offering of theirs, which they shall render unto me, shall be most holy for thee and for thy sons.
- 10 As the most holy things shalt thou eat thereof; every male shall eat thereof: it shall be holy unto thee.
- 11 And this is thine: the heave-offering of their gift, even all the wave-offerings of the children of Israel; I have given them unto thee, and to thy sons and to thy daughters with thee, as a portion for ever; every one that is clean in thy house shall eat thereof.
- 12 All the *{1}* best of the oil, and all the *{1}* best of the vintage, and of the grain, the first-fruits of them which they give unto Jehovah, to thee have I given them. *{1}* Heb fat?
- 13 The first-ripe fruits of all that is in their land, which they bring unto Jehovah, shall be thine; every one that is clean in thy house shall eat thereof.
- 14 Everything devoted in Israel shall be thine.
- 15 Everything that openeth the womb, of all flesh which they offer unto Jehovah, both of man and beast shall be thine: nevertheless the first-born of man shalt thou surely redeem, and the firstling of unclean beasts shalt thou redeem.
- 16 *{1}* And those that are to be redeemed of them from a month old shalt thou redeem, according to thine estimation, for the money of five shekels, after the shekel of the sanctuary (the same is twenty gerahs). *{1}* Or And as to their redemption money, from a month old shalt thou redeem them?
- 17 But the firstling of a cow, or the firstling of a sheep, or the firstling of a goat, thou shalt not redeem; they are holy: thou shalt sprinkle their blood upon the altar, and shalt burn their fat for an offering made by fire, for a

- sweet savor unto Jehovah.
- 18 And the flesh of them shall be thine, as the wave-breast and as the right thigh, it shall be thine.
- 19 All the heave-offerings of the holy things, which the children of Israel offer unto Jehovah, have I given thee, and thy sons and thy daughters with thee, as a portion for ever: it is a covenant of salt for ever before Jehovah unto thee and to thy seed with thee.
- 20 ¶ And Jehovah said unto Aaron, Thou shalt have no inheritance in their land, neither shalt thou have any portion among them: I am thy portion and thine inheritance among the children of Israel.
- 21 And unto the children of Levi, behold, I have given all the tithe in Israel for an inheritance, in return for their service which they serve, even the service of the tent of meeting.
- 22 And henceforth the children of Israel shall not come nigh the tent of meeting, lest they bear sin, and die.
- 23 But the Levites shall do the service of the tent of meeting, and they shall bear their iniquity: it shall be a statute for ever throughout your generations; and among the children of Israel they shall have no inheritance.
- 24 For the tithe of the children of Israel, which they offer as a heave-offering unto Jehovah, I have given to the Levites for an inheritance: therefore I have said unto them, Among the children of Israel they shall have no inheritance.
- 25 And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 26 Moreover thou shalt speak unto the Levites, and say unto them, When ye take of the children of Israel the tithe which I have given you from them for your inheritance, then ye shall offer up a heave-offering of it for Jehovah, a tithe of the tithe.
- 27 And your heave-offering shall be reckoned unto you, as though it were the grain of the threshing-floor, and as the fulness of the winepress.
- 28 Thus ye also shall offer a heave-offering unto Jehovah of all your tithes, which ye receive of the children of Israel; and thereof ye shall give Jehovah's heave-offering to Aaron the priest.
- 29 Out of all your gifts ye shall offer every heave-offering of Jehovah, of all the {1} best thereof, even the hallowed part thereof out of it. {1} *Heb fat*
- 30 Therefore thou shalt say unto them, When ye heave the {1} best thereof from it, then it shall be reckoned unto the Levites as the increase of the threshing-floor, and as the increase of the wine-press. {1} *Heb fat*
- 31 And ye shall eat it in every place, ye and your households: for it is your reward in return for your service in the tent of meeting.
- 32 And ye shall bear no sin by reason of it, when ye have heaved from it the {1} best thereof: and ye shall not profane the holy things of the children of Israel, {2} that ye die not. {1} *Heb fat* 2) Or *neither shall ye die*

### 3- The Aaronic priesthood confirmed and strengthened. (17.-18.)

#### a- The budding of Aaron's rod; Heb 9:4. (17.)

Confirmed God's selection of the house of Levi.  
Accept this authority or perish.

#### b- Tithes and offerings to support the Levites (18.)

The Levites also to tithe.  
Levites to have no land inheritance.

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses and unto Aaron, saying,
- 2 This is the statute of the law which Jehovah hath commanded, saying, Speak unto the children of Israel, that they bring thee a red heifer *{1}* without spot, wherein is no blemish, *and* upon which never came yoke. *{1} Or perfect*
- 3 And ye shall give her unto Eleazar the priest, and he shall bring her forth without the camp, and one shall slay her before his face:
- 4 and Eleazar the priest shall take of her blood with his finger, and sprinkle her blood toward the front of the tent of meeting seven times.
- 5 And one shall burn the heifer in his sight; her skin, and her flesh, and her blood, with her dung, shall he burn:
- 6 and the priest shall take cedar-wood, and hyssop, and scarlet, and cast it into the midst of the burning of the heifer.
- 7 Then the priest shall wash his clothes, and he shall bathe his flesh in water, and afterward he shall come into the camp, and the priest shall be unclean until the even.
- 8 And he that burneth her shall wash his clothes in water, and bathe his flesh in water, and shall be unclean until the even.
- 9 And a man that is clean shall gather up the ashes of the heifer, and lay them up without the camp in a clean place; and it shall be kept for the congregation of the children of Israel for a water for impurity: it is a sin-offering.
- 10 And he that gathereth the ashes of the heifer shall wash his clothes, and be unclean until the even: and it shall be unto the children of Israel, and unto the stranger that sojourneth among them, for a statute for ever.
- 11 ¶ He that toucheth the dead body of any man shall be unclean seven days:
- 12 the same shall purify himself therewith on the third day, *{1}* and on the seventh day he shall be clean: but if he purify not himself the third day, *{2}* then the seventh day he shall not be clean. *{1} Or and on the seventh day, so shall he be clean 2) Or and*
- 13 Whosoever toucheth a dead person, the body of a man that hath died, and purifieth not himself, defileth the tabernacle of Jehovah; and that soul shall be cut off from Israel: because the water for impurity was not sprinkled upon him, he shall be unclean; his uncleanness is yet upon him.
- 14 This is the law when a man dieth in a tent: every one that cometh into the tent, and every one that is in the tent, shall be unclean seven days.
- 15 And every open vessel, which hath no covering bound upon it, is unclean.
- 16 And whosoever in the open field toucheth one that is slain with a sword, or a dead body, or a bone of a man, or a grave, shall be unclean seven days.
- 17 And for the unclean they shall take of the ashes of the burning of the sin-offering; and *{1}* running water shall be put thereto in a vessel: *{1} Heb living*
- 18 and a clean person shall take hyssop, and dip it in the water, and sprinkle it upon the tent, and upon all the vessels, and upon the persons that were there, and upon him that touched the bone, or the slain, or the dead, or the grave:
- 19 and the clean person shall sprinkle upon the unclean on the third day, and on the seventh day: and on the seventh day he shall purify him; and he shall wash his clothes, and bathe himself in water, and shall be clean at even.
- 20 But the man that shall be unclean, and shall not purify himself, that soul shall be cut off from the midst of the assembly, because he hath defiled the sanctuary of Jehovah: the water for impurity hath not been sprinkled upon him; he is unclean.
- 21 And it shall be a perpetual statute unto them: and he that sprinkleth the water for impurity shall wash his clothes, and he that toucheth the water for impurity shall be unclean until even.
- 22 And whatsoever the unclean person toucheth shall be unclean; and the soul that toucheth it shall be unclean until even.



#### 4- Ordinance of the Red Heifer instituted. (19.)

- a- Preparation--Young Red Heifer slain, burned, and ashes preserved outside camp. - In a jar, in a clean place.
- b- Application--
  - 1) To be used for those defiled by dead bodies.  
Or even touching a grave.
  - 2) Ashes to be mixed with spring water and sprinkled on them.
- c- Point emphasized: Contact with unclean makes one unclean.  
(God's 'tabernacle' not to be defiled.) vs 13, 20

---

Because of length of text, Ch. 20 is backed up.

#### Numbers 20

- 1 ¶ And the children of Israel, even the whole congregation, came into the wilderness of Zin in the first month: and the people abode in Kadesh; and Miriam died there, and was buried there.
- 2 And there was no water for the congregation: and they assembled themselves together against Moses and against Aaron.
- 3 And the people strove with Moses, and spake, saying, Would that we had died when our brethren died before Jehovah!
- 4 And why have ye brought the assembly of Jehovah into this wilderness, that we should die there, we and our beasts?
- 5 And wherefore have ye made us to come up out of Egypt, to bring us in unto this evil place? it is no place of seed, or of figs, or of vines, or of pomegranates; neither is there any water to drink.
- 6 And Moses and Aaron went from the presence of the assembly unto the door of the tent of meeting, and fell upon their faces: and the glory of Jehovah appeared unto them.
- 7 And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 8 Take the rod, and assemble the congregation, thou, and Aaron thy brother, and speak ye unto the rock before their eyes, that it give forth its water; and thou shalt bring forth to them water out of the rock; so thou shalt give the congregation and their cattle drink.
- 9 And Moses took the rod from before Jehovah, as he commanded him.
- 10 And Moses and Aaron gathered the assembly together before the rock, and he said unto them, Hear now, ye rebels; shall we bring you forth water out of this rock?
- 11 And Moses lifted up his hand, and smote the rock with his rod twice: and water came forth abundantly, and the congregation drank, and their cattle.
- 12 And Jehovah said unto Moses and Aaron, Because ye believed not in me, to sanctify me in the eyes of the

children of Israel, therefore ye shall not bring this assembly into the land which I have given them.

13 These are the waters of {1} Meribah; because the children of Israel strove with Jehovah, and he {2} was sanctified in them. {1} *That is Strife* 2) *Or showed himself holy*

14 ¶ And Moses sent messengers from Kadesh unto the king of Edom, Thus saith thy brother Israel, Thou knowest all the travail that hath befallen us:

15 how our fathers went down into Egypt, and we dwelt in Egypt a long time; and the Egyptians dealt ill with us, and our fathers:

16 and when we cried unto Jehovah, he heard our voice, and sent an angel, and brought us forth out of Egypt: and, behold, we are in Kadesh, a city in the uttermost of thy border.

17 Let us pass, I pray thee, through thy land: we will not pass through field or through vineyard, neither will we drink of the water of the wells: we will go along the king's highway; we will not turn aside to the right hand nor to the left, until we have passed thy border.

18 And Edom said unto him, Thou shalt not pass through me, lest I come out with the sword against thee.

19 And the children of Israel said unto him, We will go up by the highway; and if we drink of thy water, I and my cattle, then will I give the price thereof: let me only, without *doing* anything *else*, pass through on my feet.

20 And he said, Thou shalt not pass through. And Edom came out against him with much people, and with a strong hand.

21 Thus Edom refused to give Israel passage through his border: wherefore Israel turned away from him.

22 ¶ And they journeyed from Kadesh: and the children of Israel, even the whole congregation, came unto mount Hor.

23 And Jehovah spake unto Moses and Aaron in mount Hor, by the border of the land of Edom, saying,

24 Aaron shall be gathered unto his people; for he shall not enter into the land which I have given unto the children of Israel, because ye rebelled against my word at the waters of Meribah.

25 Take Aaron and Eleazar his son, and bring them up unto mount Hor;

26 and strip Aaron of his garments, and put them upon Eleazar his son: and Aaron shall be gathered *unto his people*, and shall die there.

27 And Moses did as Jehovah commanded: and they went up into mount Hor in the sight of all the congregation.

28 And Moses stripped Aaron of his garments, and put them upon Eleazar his son; and Aaron died there on the top of the mount: and Moses and Eleazar came down from the mount.

29 And when all the congregation saw that Aaron was dead, they wept for Aaron thirty days, even all the house of Israel.

- 5- Moses' sin and Aaron's death (20.)
- a- The death of Miriam noted vs. 1
  - b- Moses' rebellion in smiting the rock vs. 2-13  
The new generation murmurs because of thirst.  
God's fresh demonstration of provision.
  - c- The belligerence of Edom vs. 14-22  
Moses' request for passage refused.
  - d- The death of Aaron. age of 123 vs. 23-29
    - 1) He is denied entrance to Canaan for same sin as Moses.
    - 2) Eleazar is made high priest. vs. 26

---

Because of length of text, Ch. 21 is backed up.

### Numbers 21

- 1 ¶ And the Canaanite, the king of Arad, who dwelt in the South, heard tell that Israel came by the way {1} of Atharim; and he fought against Israel, and took some of them captive. {1} Or of the spies
- 2 And Israel vowed a vow unto Jehovah, and said, If thou wilt indeed deliver this people into my hand, then I will {1} utterly destroy their cities. {1} Heb devote
- 3 And Jehovah hearkened to the voice of Israel, and delivered up the Canaanites; and they {1} utterly destroyed them and their cities: and the name of the place was called {2} Hormah. {1} Heb devoted 2) From the same root as herem, a devoted thing
- 4 ¶ And they journeyed from mount Hor by the way to the Red Sea, to compass the land of Edom: and the soul of the people {1} was much discouraged {2} because of the way. {1} Or was impatient; Heb was shortened 2) Or in
- 5 And the people spake against God, and against Moses, Wherefore have ye brought us up out of Egypt to die in the wilderness? for there is no bread, and there is no water; and our soul loatheth this {1} light bread. {1} Or vile
- 6 And Jehovah sent fiery serpents among the people, and they bit the people; and much people of Israel died.
- 7 And the people came to Moses, and said, We have sinned, because we have spoken against Jehovah, and against thee; pray unto Jehovah, that he take away the serpents from us. And Moses prayed for the people.
- 8 And Jehovah said unto Moses, Make thee a fiery serpent, and set it upon a standard: and it shall come to pass, that every one that is bitten, when he seeth it, shall live.
- 9 And Moses made a serpent of brass, and set it upon the standard: and it came to pass, that if a serpent had bitten any man, when he looked unto the serpent of brass, he lived.
- 10 ¶ And the children of Israel journeyed, and encamped in Oboth.
- 11 And they journeyed from Oboth, and encamped at Iyeabarim, in the wilderness which is before Moab, toward the sunrising.
- 12 From thence they journeyed, and encamped in the valley of Zered.
- 13 From thence they journeyed, and encamped on the other side of the Arnon, which is in the wilderness, that cometh out of the border of the Amorites: for the Arnon is the border of Moab, between Moab and the Amorites.
- 14 Wherefore it is said in the book of the Wars of Jehovah, Vaheb {1} in Suphah, And the valleys of the Arnon, {1} Or in storm
- 15 And the slope of the valleys That inclineth toward the dwelling of Ar, And leaneth upon the border of Moab.
- 16 And from thence they journeyed to {1} Beer: that is the well whereof Jehovah said unto Moses, Gather the people

- together, and I will give them water. {1} *That is A well*
- 17 Then sang Israel this song: Spring up, O well; sing ye unto it:
- 18 The well, which the princes digged, Which the nobles of the people delved, {1} With the sceptre, *and* with their staves. And from the wilderness *they journeyed* to Mattanah; {1} *Or By order of the law-giver*
- 19 and from Mattanah to Nahaliel; and from Nahaliel to Bamoth;
- 20 and from Bamoth to the valley that is in the field of Moab, to the top of Pisgah, which looketh down upon {1} the desert. {1} *Or Jeshimon*
- 21 ¶ And Israel sent messengers unto Sihon king of the Amorites, saying,
- 22 Let me pass through thy land: we will not turn aside into field, or into vineyard; we will not drink of the water of the wells: we will go by the king's highway, until we have passed thy border.
- 23 And Sihon would not suffer Israel to pass through his border: but Sihon gathered all his people together, and went out against Israel into the wilderness, and came to Jahaz; and he fought against Israel.
- 24 And Israel smote him with the edge of the sword, and possessed his land from the Arnon unto the Jabbok, even unto the children of Ammon; for the border of the children of Ammon was strong.
- 25 And Israel took all these cities: and Israel dwelt in all the cities of the Amorites, in Heshbon, and in all the {1} towns thereof. {1} *Heb daughters*
- 26 For Heshbon was the city of Sihon the king of the Amorites, who had fought against the former king of Moab, and taken all his land out of his hand, even unto the Arnon.
- 27 Wherefore they that speak in proverbs say, Come ye to Heshbon; Let the city of Sihon be built and established:
- 28 For a fire is gone out of Heshbon, A flame from the city of Sihon: It hath devoured Ar of Moab, The lords of {1} the high places of the Arnon. {1} *Or Bamoth*
- 29 Woe to thee, Moab! Thou art undone, O people of Chemosh: He hath given his sons as fugitives, And his daughters into captivity, Unto Sihon king of the Amorites.
- 30 We have shot at them; Heshbon is perished even unto Dibon, And we have laid waste even unto Nophah, Which *reacheth* unto Medeba.
- 31 Thus Israel dwelt in the land of the Amorites.
- 32 And Moses sent to spy out Jazer; and they took the towns thereof, and drove out the Amorites that were there.
- 33 And they turned and went up by the way of Bashan: and Og the king of Bashan went out against them, he and all his people, to battle at Edrei.
- 34 And Jehovah said unto Moses, Fear him not: for I have delivered him into thy hand, and all his people, and his land; and thou shalt do to him as thou didst unto Sihon king of the Amorites, who dwelt at Heshbon.
- 35 So they smote him, and his sons and all his people, until there was none left him remaining: and they possessed his land.

### III. Reorganization in the Second Generation. (21.-36.)

Note: New high priest.

#### A- The journey to the plains of Moab. (21.-24.)

##### 1- victories enroute 21.)

a- Victory over the Canaanites vs. 1-3

b- Judgment and the fiery serpent vs. 4-9

1) Murmuring (manna) again brings plague.

2) The brazen serpent is raised for healing.

c- Various stops vs. 10-20

Crossed the Arnon into Moab.

d- Victory over the Amorites vs. 21-32

1) Passage on King's highway denied by Ammorites.

2) Israel's conquest from Arnon to Jabbok vs. 23-32

e- Victory over Og, king of Bashan vs. 33-35

Note: Deu 3:11 For only Og king of Bashan remained of the remnant of giants; (The Rephaim came evidently from the gene pool left by the Nephelim) Ref. Gen 6:1-5 Nephelim. Vast territory to the north and east of Galilee conquered.

- 1 ¶ And the children of Israel journeyed, and encamped in the plains of Moab beyond the Jordan at Jericho.
- 2 And Balak the son of Zippor saw all that Israel had done to the Amorites.
- 3 And Moab was sore afraid of the people, because they were many: and Moab was distressed because of the children of Israel.
- 4 And Moab said unto the elders of Midian, Now will *{1}* this multitude lick up all that is round about us, as the ox licketh up the grass of the field. And Balak the son of Zippor was king of Moab at that time. *{1}* *Heb the assembly*
- 5 And he sent messengers unto Balaam the son of Beor, to Pethor, which is by the River, to the land of the children of his people, to call him, saying, Behold, there is a people come out from Egypt: behold, they cover the *{1}* face of the earth, and they abide over against me. *{1}* *Heb eye*
- 6 Come now therefore, I pray thee, curse me this people; for they are too mighty for me: peradventure I shall prevail, that we may smite them, and that I may drive them out of the land; for I know that he whom thou blessest is blessed, and he whom thou cursest is cursed.
- 7 And the elders of Moab and the elders of Midian departed with the rewards of divination in their hand; and they came unto Balaam, and spake unto him the words of Balak.
- 8 And he said unto them, Lodge here this night, and I will bring you word again, as Jehovah shall speak unto me: and the princes of Moab abode with Balaam.
- 9 And God came unto Balaam, and said, What men are these with thee?
- 10 And Balaam said unto God, Balak the son of Zippor, king of Moab, hath sent unto me, *saying*,
- 11 Behold, the people that is come out of Egypt, it covereth the *{1}* face of the earth: now, come curse me them; peradventure I shall be able to fight against them, and shall drive them out. *{1}* *Heb eye*
- 12 And God said unto Balaam, Thou shalt not go with them; thou shalt not curse the people; for they are blessed.
- 13 And Balaam rose up in the morning, and said unto the princes of Balak, Get you into your land; for Jehovah refuseth to give me leave to go with you.
- 14 And the princes of Moab rose up, and they went unto Balak, and said, Balaam refuseth to come with us.
- 15 ¶ And Balak sent yet again princes, more, and more honorable than they.
- 16 And they came to Balaam, and said to him, Thus saith Balak the son of Zippor, Let nothing, I pray thee, hinder thee from coming unto me:
- 17 for I will promote thee unto very great honor, and whatsoever thou sayest unto me I will do: come therefore, I pray thee, curse me this people.
- 18 And Balaam answered and said unto the servants of Balak, If Balak would give me his house full of silver and gold, I cannot go beyond the word of Jehovah my God, to do less or more.
- 19 Now therefore, I pray you, tarry ye also here this night, that I may know what Jehovah will speak unto me more.
- 20 And God came unto Balaam at night, and said unto him, If the men are come to call thee, rise up, go with them; but only the word which I speak unto thee, that shalt thou do.
- 21 And Balaam rose up in the morning, and saddled his ass, and went with the princes of Moab.
- 22 ¶ And God's anger was kindled because he went; and the angel of Jehovah placed himself in the way for an adversary against him. Now he was riding upon his ass, and his two servants were with him.
- 23 And the ass saw the angel of Jehovah standing in the way, with his sword drawn in his hand; and the ass turned aside out of the way, and went into the field: and Balaam smote the ass, to turn her into the way.
- 24 Then the angel of Jehovah stood in a narrow path between the vineyards, a wall being on this side, and a wall on that side.
- 25 And the ass saw the angel of Jehovah, and she thrust herself unto the wall, and crushed Balaam's foot against the wall: and he smote her again.
- 26 And the angel of Jehovah went further, and stood in a narrow place, where was no way to turn either to the right hand or to the left.
- 27 And the ass saw the angel of Jehovah, and she lay down under Balaam: and Balaam's anger was kindled, and he smote the ass with his staff.
- 28 And Jehovah opened the mouth of the ass, and she said unto Balaam, What have I done unto thee, that thou hast smitten me these three times?
- 29 And Balaam said unto the ass, Because thou hast mocked me, I would there were a sword in my hand, for now I had killed thee.
- 30 And the ass said unto Balaam, Am not I thine ass, upon which thou hast ridden all thy life long unto this day? was I ever wont to do so unto thee? and he said, Nay.
- 31 Then Jehovah opened the eyes of Balaam, and he saw the angel of Jehovah standing in the way, with his sword drawn in his hand; and he bowed his head, and fell on his face.
- 32 And the angel of Jehovah said unto him, Wherefore hast thou smitten thine ass these three times? behold, I am come forth for an adversary, because thy way is *{1}* perverse before me: *{1}* *Heb headlong*
- 33 and the ass saw me, and turned aside before me these three times: unless she had turned aside from me, surely now I had even slain thee, and saved her alive.
- 34 And Balaam said unto the angel of Jehovah, I have sinned; for I knew not that thou stoodest in the way against

- me: now therefore, if it displease thee, I will get me back again.
- 35 And the angel of Jehovah said unto Balaam, Go with the men; but only the word that I shall speak unto thee, that thou shalt speak. So Balaam went with the princes of Balak.
- 36 ¶ And when Balak heard that Balaam was come, he went out to meet him unto the City of Moab, which is on the border of the Arnon, which is in the utmost part of the border.
- 37 And Balak said unto Balaam, Did I not earnestly send unto thee to call thee? wherefore camest thou not unto me? am I not able indeed to promote thee to honor?
- 38 And Balaam said unto Balak, Lo, I am come unto thee: have I now any power at all to speak anything? the word that God putteth in my mouth, that shall I speak.
- 39 And Balaam went with Balak, and they came unto Kiriath-huzoth.
- 40 And Balak sacrificed oxen and sheep, and sent to Balaam, and to the princes that were with him.
- 41 And it came to pass in the morning, that Balak took Balaam, and brought him up into *{1}* the high places of Baal; and he saw from thence the utmost part of the people. *{1} Or Bamoth-baal*
- 

## 2- Conflict with Moab on Plains of Moab (22.-24.)

- a- Israel settled east of Jordan on Plains of Moab. vs 1
- b- Moab hires Balaam to curse Israel.
  - 1) Balaam's perversity is stressed. vs. 1-34

- 1 ¶ And Balaam said unto Balak, Build me here seven altars, and prepare me here seven bullocks and seven rams.  
2 And Balak did as Balaam had spoken; and Balak and Balaam offered on every altar a bullock and a ram.  
3 And Balaam said unto Balak, Stand by thy burnt-offering, and I will go: peradventure Jehovah will come to meet me; and whatsoever he sheweth me I will tell thee. And he went to a bare height.  
4 And God met Balaam: and he said unto him, I have prepared the seven altars, and I have offered up a bullock and a ram on every altar.  
5 And Jehovah put a word in Balaam's mouth, and said, Return unto Balak, and thus thou shalt speak.  
6 And he returned unto him, and, lo, he was standing by his burnt-offering, he, and all the princes of Moab.  
7 And he took up his parable, and said, From Aram hath Balak brought me, The king of Moab from the mountains of the East: Come, curse me Jacob, And come, {1} defy Israel. {1} *Heb be wroth against*  
8 How shall I curse, whom God hath not cursed? And how shall I defy, whom Jehovah hath not defied?  
9 For from the top of the rocks I see him, And from the hills I behold him: lo, it is a people that dwelleth alone, And shall not be reckoned among the nations.  
10 Who can count the dust of Jacob, {1} Or number the fourth part of Israel? Let {2} me die the death of the righteous, And let my last end be like his! {1} *Heb Or, by number, the etc* 2) *Heb my soul*  
11 And Balak said unto Balaam, What hast thou done unto me? I took thee to curse mine enemies, and, behold, thou hast blessed them altogether.  
12 And he answered and said, Must I not take heed to speak that which Jehovah putteth in my mouth?  
13 ¶ And Balak said unto him, Come, I pray thee, with me unto another place, from whence thou mayest see them; thou shalt see but the utmost part of them, and shalt not see them all: and curse me them from thence.  
14 And he took him into the field of Zophim, to the top of Pisgah, and built seven altars, and offered up a bullock and a ram on every altar.  
15 And he said unto Balak, Stand here by thy burnt-offering, while I meet *Jehovah* yonder.  
16 And Jehovah met Balaam, and put a word in his mouth, and said, Return unto Balak, and thus shalt thou speak.  
17 And he came to him, and, lo, he was standing by his burnt-offering, and the princes of Moab with him. And Balak said unto him, What hath Jehovah spoken?  
18 And he took up his parable, and said, Rise up, Balak, and hear; Harken unto me, thou son of Zippor:  
19 God is not a man, that he should lie, Neither the son of man, that he should repent: Hath he said, and will he not do it? Or hath he spoken, and will he not make it good?  
20 Behold, I have received *commandment* to bless: And he hath blessed, and I cannot reverse it.  
21 He hath not beheld iniquity in Jacob; Neither hath he seen {1} perverseness in Israel: Jehovah his God is with him, And the shout of a king is among them. {1} *Or trouble* }  
22 God bringeth them forth out of Egypt; He hath as it were the {1} strength of the {2} wild-ox. {1} *Or horns* 2) *Or ox-antelope* ; *Heb reem* }  
23 Surely there is no enchantment {1} with Jacob; Neither is there any divination {1} with Israel: {2} Now shalt it be {3} said of Jacob and of Israel, What hath God wrought! {1} *Or against* 2) *Or At the due season* 3) *Or told to...what God hath wrought* }  
24 Behold, the people riseth up as a lioness, And as a lion doth he lift himself up: He shall not lie down until he eat of the prey, And drink the blood of the slain.  
25 And Balak said unto Balaam, Neither curse them at all, nor bless them at all.  
26 But Balaam answered and said unto Balak, Told not I thee, saying, All that Jehovah speaketh, that I must do?  
27 And Balak said unto Balaam, Come now, I will take thee unto another place; peradventure it will please God that thou mayest curse me them from thence.  
28 And Balak took Balaam unto the top of Peor, that looketh down upon {1} the desert. {1} *Or Jeshimon* }  
29 And Balaam said unto Balak, Build me here seven altars, and prepare me here seven bullocks and seven rams.  
30 And Balak did as Balaam had said, and offered up a bullock and a ram on every altar.

#### Numbers 24

- 1 ¶ And when Balaam saw that it pleased Jehovah to bless Israel, he went not, as at the other times, to meet with enchantments, but he set his face toward the wilderness.  
2 And Balaam lifted up his eyes, and he saw Israel dwelling according to their tribes; and the Spirit of God came upon him.  
3 And he took up his parable, and said, Balaam the son of Beor saith, And the man whose eye {1} was closed saith; {1} *Or is opened* }  
4 He saith, who heareth the words of God, Who seeth the vision of the Almighty, Falling down, and having his eyes open:  
5 How goodly are thy tents, O Jacob, Thy tabernacles, O Israel!  
6 As valleys are they spread forth, As gardens by the river-side, As lign-aloes which Jehovah hath planted, As cedar-trees beside the waters.  
7 Water shall flow from his buckets, And his seed shall be in many waters, And his king shall be higher than Agag, And his kingdom shall be exalted.



- 8 **God bringeth him forth out of Egypt;** He hath as it were the strength of the wild-ox: **He shall eat up the nations his adversaries, And shall break their bones in pieces, And smite *them* through with his arrows.**
- 9 **He couched, he lay down as a lion, And as a lioness; who shall rouse him up? Blessed be every one that blesseth thee, And cursed be every one that curseth thee.**
- 10 ¶ And Balak's anger was kindled against Balaam, and he smote his hands together; and Balak said unto Balaam, I called thee to curse mine enemies, and, behold, thou hast altogether blessed them these three times.
- 11 Therefore now flee thou to thy place: I thought to promote thee unto great honor; but, lo, Jehovah hath kept thee back from honor.
- 12 And Balaam said unto Balak, Spake I not also to thy messengers that thou sentest unto me, saying,
- 13 If Balak would give me his house full of silver and gold, I cannot go beyond the word of Jehovah, to do either good or bad of mine own mind; what Jehovah speaketh, that will I speak?
- 14 **And now, behold, I go unto my people: come, *and* I will advertise thee what this people shall do to thy people in the latter days.**
- 15 ¶ And he took up his parable, and said, Balaam the son of Beor saith, And the man whose eye {1} was closed saith; {1} *Or is opened*}
- 16 He saith, who heareth the words of God, And knoweth the knowledge of the Most High, Who seeth the vision of the Almighty, Falling down, and having his eyes open:
- 17 I see him, but not now; I behold him, but not nigh: **There shall come forth a star out of Jacob,** And a sceptre shall rise out of Israel, And shall smite through the corners of Moab, And break down all the sons {1} of tumult. {1} *Or of Sheth*}
- 18 And Edom shall be a possession, Seir also shall be a possession, *who were* his enemies; While Israel doeth valiantly.
- 19 And out of Jacob shall one have dominion, And shall destroy the remnant from the city.
- 20 And he looked on Amalek, and took up his parable, and said, Amalek was the first of the nations; But his latter end shall come to destruction.
- 21 And he looked on the Kenite, and took up his parable, and said, Strong is thy dwelling-place, And thy nest is set in the rock.
- 22 Nevertheless {1} Kain shall be wasted, {2} Until Asshur shall carry thee away captive. {1} *Or the Kenites* 2) *Or How long? Asshur etc*}
- 23 And he took up his parable, and said, Alas, who shall live when God {1} doeth this? {1} *Or established him*}
- 24 But ships *shall come* from the coast of Kittim, And they shall afflict Asshur, and shall afflict Eber; And he also shall come to destruction.
- 25 And Balaam rose up, and went and returned to his place; and Balak also went his way.

---

2)	Balaam's first prophecy Israel is blessed.	vs. 23:1-12
3)	Balaam's second prophecy The Lord sees Israel as His own.	vs. 13-26
4)	Balaam's third prophecy He still seeks to curse and receive reward.	vs. 23:27 - 24:13
5)	Balaam's fourth prophecy Star of Jacob to rise and rule.	vs. 14-25 vs. 17

#### c- Purpose of this account.

Teaches God's care and jealousy for His people.

Not only to the heathen but also to Christians later.

**It gives a prophecy of the Star Of Jacob.**

The Son of Jacob (Jehovah)<sup>a</sup> was known by the heathen through Balaam.

(Where did the Magi get their knowledge??)

---

<sup>a</sup> The Star Of Jacob was well known by the Arabs AND the Ethiopians, where the Queen of Seba originated..

- 1 ¶ And Israel abode in Shittim; and the people began to play the harlot with the daughters of Moab:  
2 for they called the people unto the sacrifices of their gods; and the people did eat, and bowed down to their gods.  
3 And Israel {1} joined himself unto {2} Baal-peor: and the anger of Jehovah was kindled against Israel. {1} Or yoked 2)  
Or the Baal of Peor; See Nu 23:28}  
4 And Jehovah said unto Moses, Take all the chiefs of the people, and hang them up unto Jehovah before the sun,  
that the fierce anger of Jehovah may turn away from Israel.  
5 And Moses said unto the judges of Israel, Slay ye every one his men that have joined themselves unto Baal-peor.  
6 ¶ And, behold, one of the children of Israel came and brought unto his brethren a Midianitish woman in the sight  
of Moses, and in the sight of all the congregation of the children of Israel, while they were weeping at the door  
of the tent of meeting.  
7 And when Phinehas, the son of Eleazar, the son of Aaron the priest, saw it, he rose up from the midst of the  
congregation, and took a spear in his hand;  
8 and he went after the man of Israel into the {1} pavilion, and thrust both of them through, the man of Israel, and  
the woman through her body. So the plague was stayed from the children of Israel. {1} Or alcove}  
9 And those that died by the plague were twenty and four thousand.  
10 And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,  
11 Phinehas, the son of Eleazar, the son of Aaron the priest, hath turned my wrath away from the children of Israel,  
in that he was jealous with my jealousy among them, so that I consumed not the children of Israel in my  
jealousy.  
12 Wherefore say, Behold, I give unto him my covenant of peace:  
13 and it shall be unto him, and to his seed after him, the covenant of an everlasting priesthood; because he was  
jealous for his God, and made atonement for the children of Israel.  
14 Now the name of the man of Israel that was slain, who was slain with the Midianitish woman, was Zimri, the son  
of Salu, a prince of a fathers' house among the Simeonites.  
15 And the name of the Midianitish woman that was slain was Cozbi, the daughter of Zur; he was head of the  
people of a fathers' house in Midian.  
16 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,  
17 Vex the Midianites, and smite them;  
18 for they vex you with their wiles, wherewith they have beguiled you in the matter of Peor, and in the matter of  
Cozbi, the daughter of the prince of Midian, their sister, who was slain on the day of the plague in the matter of  
Peor.

## B- Conflict with Midian and the reorganization. (25.-31.)

### 1- Israel is seduced to idolatry. (25.)

- a- Balaam subtly seduced Israel through integration. He causes the Midianites to seduce Israel.
- b- The plague is stayed by valiance of Phinehas, son of Eleazar.

---

Because of length of text, Ch. 26 is backed up.

#### Numbers 26

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass after the plague, that Jehovah spake unto Moses and unto Eleazar the son of Aaron the priest, saying,
- 2 Take the sum of all the congregation of the children of Israel, from twenty years old and upward, by their fathers' houses, all that are able to go forth to war in Israel.
- 3 And Moses and Eleazar the priest spake with them in the plains of Moab by the Jordan at Jericho, saying,
- 4 *Take the sum of the people*, from twenty years old and upward; as Jehovah commanded Moses and the children of Israel, that came forth out of the land of Egypt.
- 5 ¶ Reuben, the first-born of Israel; the sons of Reuben: *of* Hanoch, the family of the Hanochites; of Pallu, the family of the Palluites;
- 6 of Hezron, the family of the Hezronites; of Carmi, the family of the Carmites.
- 7 These are the families of the Reubenites; and they that were numbered of them were forty and three thousand and seven hundred and thirty.
- 8 And the sons of Pallu: Eliab.
- 9 And the sons of Eliab: Nemuel, and Dathan, and Abiram. These are that Dathan and Abiram, who were called of the congregation, who strove against Moses and against Aaron in the company of Korah, when they strove against Jehovah,
- 10 and the earth opened its mouth, and swallowed them up together with Korah, when that company died; what time the fire devoured two hundred and fifty men, and they became a sign.
- 11 Notwithstanding, the sons of Korah died not.
- 12 The sons of Simeon after their families: of {1} Nemuel, the family of the Nemuelites; of Jamin, the family of the Jaminites; of {2} Jachin, the family of the Jachinites; {1} *In Ge 46:10; Ex 6:15 Jemuel* 2) In 1 Ch 4:24 *Jarib*
- 13 of {1} Zerah, the family of the Zerahites; of Shaul, the family of the Shaulites. {1} *In Ge 46:10 Zohar*
- 14 These are the families of the Simeonites, twenty and two thousand and two hundred.
- 15 The sons of Gad after their families: of {1} Zephon, the family of the Zephonites; of Haggi, the family of the Haggites; of Shuni, the family of the Shunites; {1} *In Ge 46:16 Ziphion*
- 16 of {1} Ozni, the family of the Oznites; of Eri, the family of the Erites; {1} *In Ge 46:16 Ezbon*
- 17 of {1} Arod, the family of the Arodites; of Areli, the family of the Arelites. {1} *In Ge 46:16 Arodi*
- 18 These are the families of the sons of Gad according to those that were numbered of them, forty thousand and five hundred.
- 19 The sons of Judah: Er and Onan; and Er and Onan died in the land of Canaan.
- 20 And the sons of Judah after their families were: of Shelah, the family of the Shelanites; of Perez, the family of the Perezites; of Zerah, the family of the Zerahites.
- 21 And the sons of Perez were: of Hezron, the family of the Hezronites; of Hamul, the family of the Hamulites.
- 22 These are the families of Judah according to those that were numbered of them, threescore and sixteen thousand and five hundred.
- 23 The sons of Issachar after their families: *of* Tola, the family of the Tolaites; of Puvah, the family of the Punites;
- 24 of {1} Jashub, the family of the Jashubites; of Shimron, the family of the Shimronites. {1} *In Ge 46:13 Job*
- 25 These are the families of Issachar according to those that were numbered of them, threescore and four thousand and three hundred.
- 26 The sons of Zebulun after their families: of Sered, the family of the Seredites; of Elon, the family of the Elonites; of Jahleel, the family of the Jahleelites.
- 27 These are the families of the Zebulunites according to those that were numbered of them, threescore thousand and five hundred.
- 28 The sons of Joseph after their families: Manasseh and Ephraim.
- 29 The sons of Manasseh: of Machir, the family of the Machirites; and Machir begat Gilead; of Gilead, the family of the Gileadites.
- 30 These are the sons of Gilead: *of* {1} Iezer, the family of the Iezerites; of Helek, the family of the Helekites; {1}

*In Jos 17:2 Abiezer; See Jud 6:11, 24, 34}*

- 31 and of Asriel, the family of the Asrielites; and of Shechem, the family of the Shechemites;
- 32 and of Shemida, the family of the Shemidaites; and of Hephher, the family of the Hephherites.
- 33 And Zelophehad the son of Hephher had no sons, but daughters: and the names of the daughters of Zelophehad were Mahlah, and Noah, Hoglah, Milcah, and Tirzah.
- 34 These are the families of Manasseh; and they that were numbered of them were fifty and two thousand and seven hundred.
- 35 These are the sons of Ephraim after their families: of Shuthelah, the family of the Shuthelahites; of {1} Becher, the family of the Becherites; of Tahan, the family of the Tahanites. {1} In 1 Ch 7:20 Bered}
- 36 And these are the sons of Shuthelah: of Eran, the family of the Eranites.
- 37 These are the families of the sons of Ephraim according to those that were numbered of them, thirty and two thousand and five hundred. These are the sons of Joseph after their families.
- 38 The sons of Benjamin after their families: of Bela, the family of the Belaites; of Ashbel, the family of the Ashbelites; of {1} Ahiham, the family of the Ahihamites; {1} In Ge 46:21 Ehi; in 1 Ch 8:1 Aharah}
- 39 of {1} Shephupham, the family of the Shuphamites; of Hupham, the family of the Huphamites. {1} In Ge 46:21 Muppim, and Huppim}
- 40 And the sons of Bela were {1} Ard and Naaman: of Ard, the family of the Ardites; of Naaman, the family of the Naamites. {1} In 1 Ch 8:3 Addar}
- 41 These are the sons of Benjamin after their families; and they that were numbered of them were forty and five thousand and six hundred.
- 42 These are the sons of Dan after their families: of {1} Shuham, the family of the Shuhamites. These are the families of Dan after their families. {1} In Ge 46:23 Hushim }
- 43 All the families of the Shuhamites, according to those that were numbered of them, were threescore and four thousand and four hundred.
- 44 The sons of Asher after their families: of Imnah, the family of the Imnites; of Ishvi, the family of the Ishvites; of Beriah, the family of the Berites.
- 45 Of the sons of Beriah: of Heber, the family of the Heberites; of Malchiel, the family of the Malchielites.
- 46 And the name of the daughter of Asher was Serah.
- 47 These are the families of the sons of Asher according to those that were numbered of them, fifty and three thousand and four hundred.
- 48 The sons of Naphtali after their families: of Jahzeel, the family of the Jahzeelites; of Guni, the family of the Gunites;
- 49 of Jezer, the family of the Jezerites; of Shillem, the family of the Shillemites.
- 50 These are the families of Naphtali according to their families; and they that were numbered of them were forty and five thousand and four hundred.
- 51 These are they that were numbered of the children of Israel, six hundred thousand and a thousand seven hundred and thirty.
- 52 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 53 Unto these the land shall be divided for an inheritance according to the number of names.
- 54 To the more thou shalt give the more inheritance, and to the fewer thou shalt give the less inheritance: to every one according to those that were numbered of him shall his inheritance be given.
- 55 Notwithstanding, the land shall be divided by lot: according to the names of the tribes of their fathers they shall inherit.
- 56 According to the lot shall their inheritance be divided between the more and the fewer.
- 57 ¶ And these are they that were numbered of the Levites after their families: of Gershon, the family of the Gershonites; of Kohath, the family of the Kohathites; of Merari, the family of the Merarites.
- 58 These are the families of Levi: the family of the Libnites, the family of the Hebronites, the family of the Mahlites, the family of the Mushites, the family of the Korahites. And Kohath begat Amram.
- 59 And the name of Amram's wife was Jochebed, the daughter of Levi, who was born to Levi in Egypt: and she bare unto Amram Aaron and Moses, and Miriam their sister.
- 60 And unto Aaron were born Nadab and Abihu, Eleazar and Ithamar.
- 61 And Nadab and Abihu died, when they offered strange fire before Jehovah.
- 62 And they that were numbered of them were twenty and three thousand, every male from a month old and upward: for they were not numbered among the children of Israel, because there was no inheritance given them among the children of Israel.
- 63 ¶ These are they that were numbered by Moses and Eleazar the priest, who numbered the children of Israel in the plains of Moab by the Jordan at Jericho.
- 64 But among these there was not a man of them that were numbered by Moses and Aaron the priest, who numbered the children of Israel in the wilderness of Sinai.
- 65 For Jehovah had said of them, They shall surely die in the wilderness. And there was not left a man of them, save Caleb the son of Jephunneh, and Joshua the son of Nun.

- |   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 2- Parenthesis on numbering and offerings   | (26.-30.)   |
| a- The new generation numbered- 601,730     | vs. 26:1-51 |
| b- The command concerning dividing the land | vs. 52-65   |

- 1 ¶ Then drew near the daughters of Zelophehad, the son of Hephher, the son of Gilead, the son of Machir, the son of Manasseh, of the families of Manasseh the son of Joseph; and these are the names of his daughters: Mahlah, Noah, and Hoglah, and Milcah, and Tirzah.
- 2 And they stood before Moses, and before Eleazar the priest, and before the princes and all the congregation, at the door of the tent of meeting, saying,
- 3 Our father died in the wilderness, and he was not among the company of them that gathered themselves together against Jehovah in the company of Korah: but he died in his own sin; and he had no sons.
- 4 Why should the name of our father be taken away from among his family, because he had no son? Give unto us a possession among the brethren of our father.
- 5 And Moses brought their cause before Jehovah.
- 6 And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 7 The daughters of Zelophehad speak right: thou shalt surely give them a possession of an inheritance among their father's brethren; and thou shalt cause the inheritance of their father to pass unto them.
- 8 And thou shalt speak unto the children of Israel, saying, If a man die, and have no son, then ye shall cause his inheritance to pass unto his daughter.
- 9 And if he have no daughter, then ye shall give his inheritance unto his brethren.
- 10 And if he have no brethren, then ye shall give his inheritance unto his father's brethren.
- 11 And if his father have no brethren, then ye shall give his inheritance unto his kinsman that is next to him of his family, and he shall possess it: and it shall be unto the children of Israel a *{1}* statute *and* ordinance, as Jehovah commanded Moses. *{1} Heb statute of judgment*
- 12 ¶ And Jehovah said unto Moses, Get thee up into this mountain of Abarim, and behold the land which I have given unto the children of Israel.
- 13 And when thou hast seen it, thou also shalt be gathered unto thy people, as Aaron thy brother was gathered;
- 14 because ye rebelled against my word in the wilderness of Zin, in the strife of the congregation, to sanctify me at the waters before their eyes. (These are the waters of Meribah of Kadesh in the wilderness of Zin.)
- 15 ¶ And Moses spake unto Jehovah, saying,
- 16 Let Jehovah, the God of the spirits of all flesh, appoint a man over the congregation,
- 17 who may go out before them, and who may come in before them, and who may lead them out, and who may bring them in; that the congregation of Jehovah be not as sheep which have no shepherd.
- 18 And Jehovah said unto Moses, Take thee Joshua the son of Nun, a man in whom is the Spirit, and lay thy hand upon him;
- 19 and set him before Eleazar the priest, and before all the congregation; and give him a charge in their sight.
- 20 And thou shalt put of thine honor upon him, that all the congregation of the children of Israel may obey.
- 21 And he shall stand before Eleazar the priest, who shall inquire for him by the judgment of the Urim before Jehovah: at his word shall they go out, and at his word they shall come in, both he, and all the children of Israel with him, even all the congregation.
- 22 And Moses did as Jehovah commanded him; and he took Joshua, and set him before Eleazar the priest, and before all the congregation:
- 23 and he laid his hands upon him, and gave him a charge, as Jehovah spake by Moses.

- c- The law of inheritance vs. 27:1-11  
 Daughters without brothers could get inheritance so land would stay with tribe.
- d- Moses is to be replaced because of his sin in the desert of Zin. vs. 12-14  
 Note his last mountain top experience Mt. 'Abarim (Heb. עֲבָרִים), where he is to be taken up, as was Aaron.
- e- The LORD appoints Joshua with Moses and Eleazar as His instruments vs. 15-23

### Numbers 28

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 2 Command the children of Israel, and say unto them, My oblation, my *{1}* food for my offerings made by fire, of a sweet savor unto me, shall ye observe to offer unto me in their due season. *{1}* Heb bread
- 3 And thou shalt say unto them, This is the offering made by fire which ye shall offer unto Jehovah: he-lambs a year old without blemish, two day by day, for a continual burnt-offering.
- 4 The one lamb shalt thou offer in the morning, and the other lamb shalt thou offer *{1}* at even; *{1}* Heb between the two evenings
- 5 and the tenth part of an ephah of fine flour for a meal-offering, mingled with the fourth part of a hin of beaten oil.
- 6 It is a continual burnt-offering, which was ordained in mount Sinai for a sweet savor, an offering made by fire unto Jehovah.
- 7 And the drink-offering thereof shall be the fourth part of a hin for the one lamb: in the holy place shalt thou pour out a drink-offering of strong drink unto Jehovah.
- 8 And the other lamb shalt thou offer at even: as the meal-offering of the morning, and as the drink-offering thereof, thou shalt offer it, an offering made by fire, of a sweet savor unto Jehovah.
- 9 ¶ And on the sabbath day two he-lambs a year old without blemish, and two tenth parts of an ephah of fine flour for a meal-offering, mingled with oil, and the drink-offering thereof:
- 10 this is the burnt-offering of every sabbath, besides the continual burnt-offering, and the drink-offering thereof.
- 11 And in the beginnings of your months ye shall offer a burnt-offering unto Jehovah: two young bullocks, and one ram, seven he-lambs a year old without blemish;
- 12 and three tenth parts of an ephah of fine flour for a meal-offering, mingled with oil, for each bullock; and two tenth parts of fine flour for a meal-offering, mingled with oil, for the one ram;
- 13 and a tenth part of fine flour mingled with oil for a meal-offering unto every lamb; for a burnt-offering of a sweet savor, an offering made by fire unto Jehovah.
- 14 And their drink-offerings shall be half a hin of wine for a bullock, and the third part of a hin for the ram, and the fourth part of a hin for a lamb: this is the burnt-offering of every month throughout the months of the year.
- 15 And one he-goat for a sin-offering unto Jehovah; it shall be offered besides the continual burnt-offering, and the drink-offering thereof.
- 16 ¶ And in the first month, on the fourteenth day of the month, is Jehovah's passover.
- 17 And on the fifteenth day of this month shall be a feast: seven days shall unleavened bread be eaten.
- 18 In the first day shall be a holy convocation: ye shall do no servile work;
- 19 but ye shall offer an offering made by fire, a burnt-offering unto Jehovah: two young bullocks, and one ram, and seven he-lambs a year old; they shall be unto you without blemish;
- 20 and their meal-offering, fine flour mingled with oil: three tenth parts shall ye offer for a bullock, and two tenth parts for the ram;
- 21 a tenth part shalt thou offer for every lamb of the seven lambs;
- 22 and one he-goat for a sin-offering, to make atonement for you.
- 23 Ye shall offer these besides the burnt-offering of the morning, which is for a continual burnt-offering.
- 24 After this manner ye shall offer daily, for seven days, the *{1}* food of the offering made by fire, of a sweet savor unto Jehovah: it shall be offered besides the continual burnt-offering, and the drink-offering thereof. *{1}* Heb bread
- 25 And on the seventh day ye shall have a holy convocation: ye shall do no servile work.
- 26 Also in the day of the first-fruits, when ye offer a new meal-offering unto Jehovah in your *feast of weeks*, ye shall have a holy convocation; ye shall do no servile work;
- 27 but ye shall offer a burnt-offering for a sweet savor unto Jehovah: two young bullocks, one ram, seven he-lambs a year old;
- 28 and their meal-offering, fine flour mingled with oil, three tenth parts for each bullock, two tenth parts for the one ram,
- 29 a tenth part for every lamb of the seven lambs;
- 30 one he-goat, to make atonement for you.
- 31 Besides the continual burnt-offering, and the meal-offering thereof, ye shall offer them (they shall be unto you without blemish), and their drink-offerings.

### Numbers 29

- 1 ¶ And in the seventh month, on the first day of the month, ye shall have a holy convocation; ye shall do no servile work: it is a day of blowing of trumpets unto you.
- 2 And ye shall offer a burnt-offering for a sweet savor unto Jehovah: one young bullock, one ram, seven he-lambs a year old without blemish;
- 3 and their meal-offering, fine flour mingled with oil, three tenth parts for the bullock, two tenth parts for the ram,
- 4 and one tenth part for every lamb of the seven lambs;
- 5 and one he-goat for a sin-offering, to make atonement for you;
- 6 besides the burnt-offering of the new moon, and the meal-offering thereof, and the continual burnt-offering and the meal-offering thereof, and their drink-offerings, according unto their ordinance, for a sweet savor, an offering made by fire unto Jehovah.
- 7 And on the tenth day of this seventh month ye shall have a holy convocation; and ye shall afflict your souls: ye shall do no manner of work;
- 8 but ye shall offer a burnt-offering unto Jehovah for a sweet savor: one young bullock, one ram, seven he-lambs a year old; they shall be unto you without blemish;
- 9 and their meal-offering, fine flour mingled with oil, three tenth parts for the bullock, two tenth parts for the one ram,
- 10 a tenth part for every lamb of the seven lambs:
- 11 one he-goat for a sin-offering; besides the sin-offering of atonement, and the continual burnt-offering, and the meal-offering thereof, and their drink-offerings.
- 12 ¶ And on the fifteenth day of the seventh month ye shall have a holy convocation; ye shall do no servile work, and ye shall keep a feast unto Jehovah seven days:
- 13 and ye shall offer a burnt-offering, an offering made by fire, of a sweet savor unto Jehovah; thirteen young bullocks, two rams, fourteen he-lambs a year old; they shall be without blemish;
- 14 and their meal-offering, fine flour mingled with oil, three tenth parts for every bullock of the thirteen bullocks, two tenth parts for each ram of the two rams,
- 15 and a tenth part for every lamb of the fourteen lambs;
- 16 and one he-goat for a sin-offering, besides the continual burnt-offering, the meal-offering thereof, and the drink-offering thereof.
- 17 And on the second day *ye shall offer* twelve young bullocks, two rams, fourteen he-lambs a year old without blemish;
- 18 and their meal-offering and their drink-offerings for the bullocks, for the rams, and for the lambs, according to their number, after the ordinance;
- 19 and one he-goat for a sin-offering; besides the continual burnt-offering, and the meal-offering thereof, and their drink-offerings.
- 20 And on the third day eleven bullocks, two rams, fourteen he-lambs a year old without blemish;
- 21 and their meal-offering and their drink-offerings for the bullocks, for the rams, and for the lambs, according to their number, after the ordinance;
- 22 and one he-goat for a sin-offering; besides the continual burnt-offering, and the meal-offering thereof, and the drink-offering thereof.
- 23 And on the fourth day ten bullocks, two rams, fourteen he-lambs a year old without blemish;
- 24 their meal-offering and their drink-offerings for the bullocks, for the rams, and for the lambs, according to their number, after the ordinance;
- 25 and one he-goat for a sin-offering; besides the continual burnt-offering, the meal-offering thereof, and the drink-offering thereof.
- 26 And on the fifth day nine bullocks, two rams, fourteen he-lambs a year old without blemish;
- 27 and their meal-offering and their drink-offerings for the bullocks, for the rams, and for the lambs, according to their number, after the ordinance;
- 28 and one he-goat for a sin-offering, besides the continual burnt-offering, and the meal-offering thereof, and the drink-offering thereof.
- 29 And on the sixth day eight bullocks, two rams, fourteen he-lambs a year old without blemish;
- 30 and their meal-offering and their drink-offerings for the bullocks, for the rams, and for the lambs, according to their number, after the ordinance;
- 31 and one he-goat for a sin-offering; besides the continual burnt-offering, the meal-offering thereof, and the drink-offerings thereof.
- 32 And on the seventh day seven bullocks, two rams, fourteen he-lambs a year old without blemish;
- 33 and their meal-offering and their drink-offerings for the bullocks, for the rams, and for the lambs, according to their number, after the ordinance;
- 34 and one he-goat for a sin-offering; besides the continual burnt-offering, the meal-offering thereof, and the drink-offering thereof.
- 35 On the eighth day ye shall have a solemn assembly: ye shall do no servile work;
- 36 but ye shall offer a burnt-offering, an offering made by fire, of a sweet savor unto Jehovah: one bullock, one ram, seven he-lambs a year old without blemish;
- 37 their meal-offering and their drink-offerings for the bullock, for the ram, and for the lambs, shall be according to their number, after the ordinance:
- 38 and one he-goat for a sin-offering, besides the continual burnt-offering, and the meal-offering thereof, and the drink-offering thereof.
- 39 These ye shall offer unto Jehovah in your set feasts, besides your vows, and your freewill-offerings, for your burnt-offerings, and for your meal-offerings, and for your drink-offerings, and for your peace-offerings.
- 40 And Moses told the children of Israel according to all that Jehovah commanded Moses.



- 1 ¶ And Moses spake unto the heads of the tribes of the children of Israel, saying, This is the thing which Jehovah hath commanded.
- 2 When a man voweth a vow unto Jehovah, or sweareth an oath to bind his soul with a bond, he shall not *{1}* break his word; he shall do according to all that proceedeth out of his mouth. *{1}* *Heb profane*
- 3 ¶ Also when a woman voweth a vow unto Jehovah, and bindeth herself by a bond, being in her father's house, in her youth,
- 4 and her father heareth her vow, and her bond wherewith she hath bound her soul, and her father holdeth his peace at her; then all her vows shall stand, and every bond wherewith she hath bound her soul shall stand.
- 5 But if her father disallow her in the day that he heareth, none of her vows, or of her bonds wherewith she hath bound her soul, shall stand: and Jehovah will forgive her, because her father disallowed her.
- 6 And if she be *married* to a husband, while her vows are upon her, or the rash utterance of her lips, wherewith she hath bound her soul,
- 7 and her husband hear it, and hold his peace at her in the day that he heareth it; then her vows shall stand, and her bonds wherewith she hath bound her soul shall stand.
- 8 But if her husband disallow her in the day that he heareth it, then he shall make void her vow which is upon her, and the rash utterance of her lips, wherewith she hath bound her soul: and Jehovah will forgive her.
- 9 But the vow of a widow, or of her that is divorced, *even* everything wherewith she hath bound her soul, shall stand against her.
- 10 And if she vowed in her husband's house, or bound her soul by a bond with an oath,
- 11 and her husband heard it, and held his peace at her, and disallowed her not; then all her vows shall stand, and every bond wherewith she bound her soul shall stand.
- 12 But if her husband made them null and void in the day that he heard them, then whatsoever proceeded out of her lips concerning her vows, or concerning the bond of her soul, shall not stand: her husband hath made them void; and Jehovah will forgive her.
- 13 Every vow, and every binding oath to afflict the soul, her husband may establish it, or her husband may make it void.
- 14 But if her husband altogether hold his peace at her from day to day, then he establisheth all her vows, or all her bonds, which are upon her: he hath established them, because he held his peace at her in the day that he heard them.
- 15 But if he shall make them null and void after that he hath heard them, then he shall bear her iniquity.
- 16 These are the statutes, which Jehovah commanded Moses, between a man and his wife, between a father and his daughter, being in her youth, in her father's house.
- 

f- The law of offerings for appointed times	(chapters 28.-30.)
1) Daily, weekly, monthly, and Passover offerings	28:1-15
2) Feasts of 7th month restated	(28:16.-29.)
3) The law of vows for women	(30.)

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 2 Avenge the children of Israel of the Midianites: afterward shalt thou be gathered unto thy people.
- 3 And Moses spake unto the people, saying, Arm ye men from among you for the war, that they may go against Midian, to execute Jehovah's vengeance on Midian.
- 4 Of every tribe a thousand, throughout all the tribes of Israel, shall ye send to the war.
- 5 So there were delivered, out of the thousands of Israel, a thousand of every tribe, twelve thousand armed for war.
- 6 And Moses sent them, a thousand of every tribe, to the war, them and Phinehas the son of Eleazar the priest, to the war, with the vessels of the sanctuary and the trumpets for the alarm in his hand.
- 7 ¶ And they warred against Midian, as Jehovah commanded Moses; and they slew every male.
- 8 And they slew the kings of Midian with the rest of their slain: Evi, and Rekem, and Zur, and Hur, and Reba, the five kings of Midian: Balaam also the son of Beor they slew with the sword.
- 9 And the children of Israel took captive the women of Midian and their little ones; and all their cattle, and all their flocks, and all their goods, they took for a prey.
- 10 And all their cities in the places wherein they dwelt, and all their encampments, they burnt with fire.
- 11 And they took all the spoil, and all the prey, both of man and of beast.
- 12 And they brought the captives, and the prey, and the spoil, unto Moses, and unto Eleazar the priest, and unto the congregation of the children of Israel, unto the camp at the plains of Moab, which are by the Jordan at Jericho.
- 13 ¶ And Moses, and Eleazar the priest, and all the princes of the congregation, went forth to meet them without the camp.
- 14 And Moses was wroth with the officers of the host, the captains of thousands and the captains of hundreds, who came from the service of the war.
- 15 And Moses said unto them, Have ye saved all the women alive?
- 16 Behold, these caused the children of Israel, through the counsel of Balaam, to commit trespass against Jehovah in the matter of Peor, and so the plague was among the congregation of Jehovah.
- 17 Now therefore kill every male among the little ones, and kill every woman that hath known man by lying with him.
- 18 But all the women-children, that have not known man by lying with him, keep alive for yourselves.
- 19 And encamp ye without the camp seven days: whosoever hath killed any person, and whosoever hath touched any slain, purify yourselves on the third day and on the seventh day, ye and your captives.
- 20 And as to every garment, and all that is made of skin, and all work of goats' *hair*, and all things made of wood, ye shall purify yourselves.
- 21 And Eleazar the priest said unto the men of war that went to the battle, This is the statute of the law which Jehovah hath commanded Moses:
- 22 howbeit the gold, and the silver, the brass, the iron, the tin, and the lead,
- 23 everything that may abide the fire, ye shall make to go through the fire, and it shall be clean; nevertheless it shall be purified with the water for impurity: and all that abideth not the fire ye shall make to go through the water.
- 24 And ye shall wash your clothes on the seventh day, and ye shall be clean; and afterward ye shall come into the camp.
- 25 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 26 Take the sum of the prey that was taken, both of man and of beast, thou, and Eleazar the priest, and the heads of the fathers' *houses* of the congregation;
- 27 and divide the prey into two parts: between the men skilled in war, that went out to battle, and all the congregation.
- 28 And levy a tribute unto Jehovah of the men of war that went out to battle: one soul of five hundred, *both* of the persons, and of the oxen, and of the asses, and of the flocks:
- 29 take it of their half, and give it unto Eleazar the priest, for Jehovah's heave-offering.
- 30 And of the children of Israel's half, thou shalt take one drawn out of every fifty, of the persons, of the oxen, of the asses, and of the flocks, *even* of all the cattle, and give them unto the Levites, that keep the charge of the tabernacle of Jehovah.
- 31 And Moses and Eleazar the priest did as Jehovah commanded Moses.
- 32 Now the prey, over and above the booty which the men of war took, was six hundred thousand and seventy thousand and five thousand sheep,
- 33 and threescore and twelve thousand oxen,
- 34 and threescore and one thousand asses,
- 35 and thirty and two thousand persons in all, of the women that had not known man by lying with him.
- 36 And the half, which was the portion of them that went out to war, was in number three hundred thousand and thirty thousand and seven thousand and five hundred sheep:
- 37 and Jehovah's tribute of the sheep was six hundred and threescore and fifteen.
- 38 And the oxen were thirty and six thousand; of which Jehovah's tribute was threescore and twelve.
- 39 And the asses were thirty thousand and five hundred; of which Jehovah's tribute was threescore and one.

- 40 And the persons were sixteen thousand; of whom Jehovah's tribute was thirty and two persons.
- 41 And Moses gave the tribute, which was Jehovah's heave-offering, unto Eleazar the priest, as Jehovah commanded Moses.
- 42 And of the children of Israel's half, which Moses divided off from the men that warred
- 43 (now the congregation's half was three hundred thousand and thirty thousand, seven thousand and five hundred sheep,
- 44 and thirty and six thousand oxen,
- 45 and thirty thousand and five hundred asses,
- 46 and sixteen thousand persons),
- 47 even of the children of Israel's half, Moses took one drawn out of every fifty, both of man and of beast, and gave them unto the Levites, that kept the charge of the tabernacle of Jehovah; as Jehovah commanded Moses.
- 48 ¶ And the officers that were over the thousands of the host, the captains of thousands, and the captains of hundreds, came near unto Moses;
- 49 and they said unto Moses, Thy servants have taken the sum of the men of war that are under our charge, and there lacketh not one man of us.
- 50 And we have brought Jehovah's oblation, what every man hath gotten, of jewels of gold, ankle-chains, and bracelets, signet-rings, ear-rings, and *{1}* armlets, to make atonement for our souls before Jehovah. *{1} Or necklaces}*
- 51 And Moses and Eleazar the priest took the gold of them, even all wrought jewels.
- 52 And all the gold of the heave-offering that they offered up to Jehovah, of the captains of thousands, and of the captains of hundreds, was sixteen thousand seven hundred and fifty shekels.
- 53 *(For the men of war had taken booty, every man for himself.)*
- 54 And Moses and Eleazar the priest took the gold of the captains of thousands and of hundreds, and brought it into the tent of meeting, for a memorial for the children of Israel before Jehovah.

---

### 3- The Midianites destroyed

(31.)

a- Moses' final battle demonstrates God's power.

vs.49

b- vast spoil taken and population decimated.

See Figure 03. Of Genesis (A Proposed Route Of The Exodus); and Figure 04. A Map Showing The Extent Of Midian, in this document.

- 1 ¶ Now the children of Reuben and the children of Gad had a very great multitude of cattle: and when they saw the land of Jazer, and the land of Gilead, that, behold, the place was a place for cattle;
- 2 the children of Gad and the children of Reuben came and spake unto Moses, and to Eleazar the priest, and unto the princes of the congregation, saying,
- 3 Ataroth, and Dibon, and Jazer, and {1} Nimrah, and Heshbon, and Elealeh, and {2} Sebam, and Nebo, and {3} Beon, {1} In verse 36 *Beth-nimrah* 2) In verse 38 *Sibmah* 3) In verse 38 *Baal-meon*}
- 4 the land which Jehovah smote before the congregation of Israel, is a land for cattle; and thy servants have cattle.
- 5 And they said, If we have found favor in thy sight, let this land be given unto thy servants for a possession; bring us not over the Jordan.
- 6 And Moses said unto the children of Gad, and to the children of Reuben, Shall your brethren go to the war, and shall ye sit here?
- 7 And wherefore discourage ye the heart of the children of Israel from going over into the land which Jehovah hath given them?
- 8 Thus did your fathers, when I sent them from Kadesh-barnea to see the land.
- 9 For when they went up unto the valley of Eshcol, and saw the land, they discouraged the heart of the children of Israel, that they should not go into the land which Jehovah had given them.
- 10 And Jehovah's anger was kindled in that day, and he sware, saying,
- 11 Surely none of the men that came up out of Egypt, from twenty years old and upward, shall see the land which I sware unto Abraham, unto Isaac, and unto Jacob; because they have not wholly followed me:
- 12 save Caleb the son of Jephunneh the Kenizzite, and Joshua the son of Nun; because they have wholly followed Jehovah.
- 13 And Jehovah's anger was kindled against Israel, and he made them wander to and fro in the wilderness forty years, until all the generation, that had done evil in the sight of Jehovah, was consumed.
- 14 And, behold, ye are risen up in your fathers' stead, an increase of sinful men, to augment yet the fierce anger of Jehovah toward Israel.
- 15 For if ye turn away from after him, he will yet again leave them in the wilderness; and ye will destroy all this people.
- 16 ¶ And they came near unto him, and said, We will build sheepfolds here for our cattle, and cities for our little ones:
- 17 but we ourselves will be ready armed to go before the children of Israel, until we have brought them unto their place: and our little ones shall dwell in the fortified cities because of the inhabitants of the land.
- 18 We will not return unto our houses, until the children of Israel have inherited every man his inheritance.
- 19 For we will not inherit with them on the other side of the Jordan, and forward; because our inheritance is fallen to us on this side of the Jordan eastward.
- 20 And Moses said unto them, If ye will do this thing, if ye will arm yourselves to go before Jehovah to the war,
- 21 and every armed man of you will pass over the Jordan before Jehovah, until he hath driven out his enemies from before him,
- 22 and the land is subdued before Jehovah; then afterward ye shall return, and be guiltless towards Jehovah, and towards Israel; and this land shall be unto you for a possession before Jehovah.
- 23 But if ye will not do so, behold, ye have sinned against Jehovah; and be sure your sin will find you out.
- 24 Build you cities for your little ones, and folds for your sheep; and do that which hath proceeded out of your mouth.
- 25 And the children of Gad and the children of Reuben spake unto Moses, saying, Thy servants will do as my lord commandeth.
- 26 Our little ones, our wives, our flocks, and all our cattle, shall be there in the cities of Gilead;
- 27 but thy servants will pass over, every man that is armed for war, before Jehovah to battle, as my lord saith.
- 28 ¶ So Moses gave charge concerning them to Eleazar the priest, and to Joshua the son of Nun, and to the heads of the fathers' *houses* of the tribes of the children of Israel.
- 29 And Moses said unto them, If the children of Gad and the children of Reuben will pass with you over the Jordan, every man that is armed to battle, before Jehovah, and the land shall be subdued before you; then ye shall give them the land of Gilead for a possession:
- 30 but if they will not pass over with you armed, they shall have possessions among you in the land of Canaan.
- 31 And the children of Gad and the children of Reuben answered, saying, As Jehovah hath said unto thy servants, so will we do.
- 32 We will pass over armed before Jehovah into the land of Canaan, and the possession of our inheritance *shall remain* with us beyond the Jordan.
- 33 And Moses gave unto them, even to the children of Gad, and to the children of Reuben, and unto the half-tribe of Manasseh the son of Joseph, the kingdom of Sihon king of the Amorites, and the kingdom of Og king of Bashan, the land, according to the cities thereof with *their* borders, even the cities of the land round about.
- 34 And the children of Gad built Dibon, and Ataroth, and Aroer,

- 35 and Atrothshophan, and Jazer, and Jogbehah,  
 36 and Beth-nimrah, and Beth-haran: fortified cities, and folds for sheep.  
 37 And the children of Reuben built Heshbon, and Elealeh, and Kiriathaim,  
 38 and Nebo, and Baal-meon, (their names being changed,) and Sibmah: and they gave other names unto the cities which they builded.  
 39 And the children of Machir the son of Manasseh went to Gilead, and took it, and dispossessed the Amorites that were therein.  
 40 And Moses gave Gilead unto Machir the son of Manasseh; and he dwelt therein.  
 41 And Jair the son of Manasseh went and took the towns thereof, and called them *{1}* Havvoth-jair. *{1}* That is The towns of Jair}  
 42 And Nobah went and took Kenath, and the *{1}* villages thereof, and called it Nobah, after his own name. *{1}* Heb daughters}

## C- Israel prepares to enter Canaan.

(32.-36.)

### 1- The settlement east of Jordan.

- a- Reuben, Gad, and one-half of Manasseh request settlement

vs. 32:5

Considerations of cattle- (were they the first cowboys?)

Note the anger of Moses.

vs. 6-9

followed by God's anger.

vs. 10-13

There goes the first generation except whom?

- b- They agree to join in conquest of Canaan.

vs. 17

- 1 ¶ These are the {1} journeys of the children of Israel, {2} when they went forth out of the land of Egypt by their hosts under the hand of Moses and Aaron. {1} Or stages 2) Or by which}
- 2 And Moses wrote their goings out according to their journeys by the commandment of Jehovah: and these are their journeys according to their goings out.
- 3 And they journeyed from Rameses in the first month, on the fifteenth day of the first month; on the morrow after the passover the children of Israel went out with a high hand in the sight of all the Egyptians,
- 4 while the Egyptians were burying all their first-born, whom Jehovah had smitten among them: upon their gods also Jehovah executed judgments.
- 5 And the children of Israel journeyed from Rameses, and encamped in Succoth.
- 6 And they journeyed from Succoth, and encamped in Etham, which is in the edge of the wilderness.
- 7 And they journeyed from Etham, and turned back unto Pi-hahiroth, which is before Baal-zephon: and they encamped before Migdol.
- 8 And they journeyed from before Hahiroth, and passed through the midst of the sea into the wilderness: and they went three days' journey in the wilderness of Etham, and encamped in Marah.
- 9 And they journeyed from Marah, and came unto Elim: and in Elim were twelve springs of water, and threescore and ten palm-trees; and they encamped there.
- 10 And they journeyed from Elim, and encamped by the Red Sea.
- 11 And they journeyed from the Red Sea, and encamped in the wilderness of Sin.
- 12 And they journeyed from the wilderness of Sin, and encamped in Dophkah.
- 13 And they journeyed from Dophkah, and encamped in Alush.
- 14 And they journeyed from Alush, and encamped in Rephidim, where was no water for the people to drink.
- 15 And they journeyed from Rephidim, and encamped in the wilderness of Sinai.
- 16 And they journeyed from the wilderness of Sinai, and encamped in Kibroth-hattaavah.
- 17 And they journeyed from Kibroth-hattaavah, and encamped in Hazeroth.
- 18 And they journeyed from Hazeroth, and encamped in Rithmah.
- 19 And they journeyed from Rithmah, and encamped in Rimmon-perez.
- 20 And they journeyed from Rimmon-perez, and encamped in Libnah.
- 21 And they journeyed from Libnah, and encamped in Rissah.
- 22 And they journeyed from Rissah, and encamped in Kehelathah.
- 23 And they journeyed from Kehelathah, and encamped in mount Shepher.
- 24 And they journeyed from mount Shepher, and encamped in Haradah.
- 25 And they journeyed from Haradah, and encamped in Makheloth.
- 26 And they journeyed from Makheloth, and encamped in Tahath.
- 27 And they journeyed from Tahath, and encamped in Terah.
- 28 And they journeyed from Terah, and encamped in Mithkah.
- 29 And they journeyed from Mithkah, and encamped in Hashmonah.
- 30 And they journeyed from Hashmonah, and encamped in Moseroth.
- 31 And they journeyed from Moseroth, and encamped in Bene-jaakan.
- 32 And they journeyed from Bene-jaakan, and encamped in Hor-haggidgad.
- 33 And they journeyed from Hor-haggidgad, and encamped in Jotbathah.
- 34 And they journeyed from Jotbathah, and encamped in Abronah.
- 35 And they journeyed from Abronah, and encamped in Ezion-geber.
- 36 And they journeyed from Ezion-geber, and encamped in the wilderness of Zin (the same is Kadesh).
- 37 And they journeyed from Kadesh, and encamped in mount Hor, in the edge of the land of Edom.
- 38 And Aaron the priest went up into mount Hor at the commandment of Jehovah, and died there, in the fortieth year after the children of Israel were come out of the land of Egypt, in the fifth month, on the first day of the month.
- 39 And Aaron was a hundred and twenty and three years old when he died in mount Hor.
- 40 And the Canaanite, the king of Arad, who dwelt in the South in the land of Canaan, heard of the coming of the children of Israel.
- 41 And they journeyed from mount Hor, and encamped in Zalmonah.
- 42 And they journeyed from Zalmonah, and encamped in Punon.
- 43 And they journeyed from Punon, and encamped in Oboth.
- 44 And they journeyed from Oboth, and encamped in Iye-abarim, in the border of Moab.
- 45 And they journeyed from Iyim, and encamped in Dibon-gad.
- 46 And they journeyed from Dibon-gad, and encamped in Almon-diblathaim.
- 47 And they journeyed from Almon-diblathaim, and encamped in the mountains of Abarim, before Nebo.
- 48 And they journeyed from the mountains of Abarim, and encamped in the plains of Moab by the Jordan at Jericho.
- 49 And they encamped by the Jordan, from Beth-jeshimoth even unto Abel-shittim in the plains of Moab.

- 50 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses in the plains of Moab by the Jordan at Jericho, saying,  
 51 Speak unto the children of Israel, and say unto them, When ye pass over the Jordan into the land of Canaan,  
 52 then ye shall drive out all the inhabitants of the land from before you, and destroy all their figured *stones*, and  
 destroy all their molten images, and demolish all their high places:  
 53 and ye shall take possession of the land, and dwell therein; for unto you have I given the land to possess it.  
 54 And ye shall inherit the land by lot according to your families; to the more ye shall give the more inheritance,  
 and to the fewer thou shalt give the less inheritance: wheresoever the lot falleth to any man, that shall be his;  
 according to the tribes of your fathers shall ye inherit.  
 55 But if ye will not drive out the inhabitants of the land from before you, then shall those that ye let remain of them  
 be as pricks in your eyes, and as thorns in your sides, and they shall vex you in the land wherein ye dwell.  
 56 And it shall come to pass, that, as I thought to do unto them, so will I do unto you.

## 2- Review of the journey from Egypt.

(33.)

A quick summary of the trip.

a- 40 stops noted

b- A warning to drive out the Canaanites.

vs. 52-55

Because of length of text, Ch. 34 &amp; 35 are backed up.

### Numbers 34

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,  
 2 Command the children of Israel, and say unto them, When ye come into the land of Canaan (this is the land that shall  
 fall unto you for an inheritance, even the land of Canaan according to the borders thereof),  
 3 then your south quarter shall be from the wilderness of Zin along by the side of Edom, and your south border shall be  
 from the end of the Salt Sea eastward;  
 4 and your border shall turn about southward of the ascent of Akrabbim, and pass along to Zin; and the goings out  
 thereof shall be southward of Kadesh-barnea; and it shall go forth to Hazar-addar, and pass along to Azmon;  
 5 and the border shall turn about from Azmon unto the brook of Egypt, and the goings out thereof shall be at the sea.  
 6 And for the western border, ye shall have the great sea {1} and the border *thereof*: this shall be your west border. {1} *Or*  
*for a border*  
 7 And this shall be your north border: from the great sea ye shall mark out for you mount Hor;  
 8 from mount Hor ye shall mark out unto the entrance of Hamath; and the goings out of the border shall be at Zedad;  
 9 and the border shall go forth to Ziphron, and the goings out thereof shall be at Hazar-enan: this shall be your north  
 border.  
 10 And ye shall mark out your east border from Hazar-enan to Shepham;  
 11 and the border shall go down from Shepham to Riblah, on the east side of Ain; and the border shall go down, and shall  
 reach unto the {1} side of the sea of Chinnereth eastward; {1} *Heb shoulder*  
 12 and the border shall go down to the Jordan, and the goings out thereof shall be at the Salt Sea. This shall be your land  
 according to the borders thereof round about.  
 13 And Moses commanded the children of Israel, saying, This is the land which ye shall inherit by lot, which Jehovah  
 hath commanded to give unto the nine tribes, and to the half-tribe;  
 14 for the tribe of the children of Reuben according to their fathers' houses, and the tribe of the children of Gad  
 according to their fathers' houses, have received, and the half-tribe of Manasseh have received, their inheritance:  
 15 the two tribes and the half-tribe have received their inheritance beyond the Jordan at Jericho eastward, toward the  
 sunrising.  
 16 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,  
 17 These are the names of the men that shall divide the land unto you for inheritance: Eleazar the priest, and Joshua the  
 son of Nun.  
 18 And ye shall take one prince of every tribe, to divide the land for inheritance.  
 19 And these are the names of the men: Of the tribe of Judah, Caleb the son of Jephunneh.  
 20 And of the tribe of the children of Simeon, Shemuel the son of Ammihud.  
 21 Of the tribe of Benjamin, Elidad the son of Chislon.  
 22 And of the tribe of the children of Dan a prince, Bukki the son of Jogli.  
 23 Of the children of Joseph: of the tribe of the children of Manasseh a prince, Hanniel the son of Ephod.  
 24 And of the tribe of the children of Ephraim a prince, Kemuel the son of Shiphtan.  
 25 And of the tribe of the children of Zebulun a prince, Elizaphan the son of Parnach.  
 26 And of the tribe of the children of Issachar a prince, Paltiel the son of Azzan.  
 27 And of the tribe of the children of Asher a prince, Ahihud the son of Shelomi.  
 28 And of the tribe of the children of Naphtali a prince, Pedahel the son of Ammihud.  
 29 These are they whom Jehovah commanded to divide the inheritance unto the children of Israel in the land of Canaan.

### Numbers 35

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses in the plains of Moab by the Jordan at Jericho, saying,

- 2 Command the children of Israel, that they give unto the Levites of the inheritance of their possession cities to dwell in; and *{1}* suburbs for the cities round about them shall ye give unto the Levites. *{1} Or pasture lands*
- 3 And the cities shall they have to dwell in; and their suburbs shall be for their cattle, and for their substance, and for all their beasts.
- 4 And the suburbs of the cities, which ye shall give unto the Levites, shall be from the wall of the city and outward a thousand cubits round about.
- 5 And ye shall measure without the city for the east side two thousand cubits, and for the south side two thousand cubits, and for the west side two thousand cubits, and for the north side two thousand cubits, the city being in the midst. This shall be to them the suburbs of the cities.
- 6 And the cities which ye shall give unto the Levites, they shall be the six cities of refuge, which ye shall give for the manslayer to flee unto: and besides them ye shall give forty and two cities.
- 7 All the cities which ye shall give to the Levites shall be forty and eight cities; them *shall ye give* with their suburbs.
- 8 And concerning the cities which ye shall give of the possession of the children of Israel, from the many ye shall take many; and from the few ye shall take few: every one according to his inheritance which he inheriteth shall give of his cities unto the Levites.
- 9 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying,
- 10 Speak unto the children of Israel, and say unto them, When ye pass over the Jordan into the land of Canaan,
- 11 then ye shall appoint you cities to be cities of refuge for you, that the manslayer that killeth any person *{1}* unwittingly may flee thither. *{1} Or through error*
- 12 And the cities shall be unto you for refuge from the avenger, that the manslayer die not, until he stand before the congregation for judgment.
- 13 And the cities which ye shall give shall be for you six cities of refuge.
- 14 Ye shall give three cities beyond the Jordan, and three cities shall ye give in the land of Canaan; they shall be cities of refuge.
- 15 For the children of Israel, and for the stranger and for the sojourner among them, shall these six cities be for refuge; that every one that killeth any person *{1}* unwittingly may flee thither. *{1} Or through error*
- 16 But if he smote him with an instrument of iron, so that he died, he is a murderer: the murderer shall surely be put to death.
- 17 And if he smote him with a stone in the hand, whereby a man may die, and he died, he is a murderer: the murderer shall surely be put to death.
- 18 Or if he smote him with a weapon of wood in the hand, whereby a man may die, and he died, he is a murderer: the murderer shall surely be put to death.
- 19 The avenger of blood shall himself put the murderer to death: when he meeteth him, he shall put him to death.
- 20 And if he thrust him of hatred, or hurled at him, lying in wait, so that he died,
- 21 or in enmity smote him with his hand, so that he died; he that smote him shall surely be put to death; he is a murderer: the avenger of blood shall put the murderer to death, when he meeteth him.
- 22 But if he thrust him suddenly without enmity, or hurled upon him anything without lying in wait,
- 23 or with any stone, whereby a man may die, seeing him not, and cast it upon him, so that he died, and he was not his enemy, neither sought his harm;
- 24 then the congregation shall judge between the smiter and the avenger of blood according to these ordinances;
- 25 and the congregation shall deliver the manslayer out of the hand of the avenger of blood, and the congregation shall restore him to his city of refuge, whither he was fled: and he shall dwell therein until the death of the high priest, who was anointed with the holy oil.
- 26 But if the manslayer shall at any time go beyond the border of his city of refuge, whither he fleeth,
- 27 and the avenger of blood find him without the border of his city of refuge, and the avenger of blood slay the manslayer; *{1}* he shall not be guilty of blood, *{1} Or there shall be no blood-guiltiness for him*
- 28 because he should have remained in his city of refuge until the death of the high priest: but after the death of the high priest the manslayer shall return into the land of his possession.
- 29 And these things shall be for a *{1}* statute and ordinance unto you throughout your generations in all your dwellings. *{1} Heb statute of judgment }*
- 30 Whoso killeth any person, the murderer shall be slain at the mouth of witnesses: but one witness shall not testify against any person that he die.
- 31 Moreover ye shall take no ransom for the life of a murderer, that is guilty of death; but he shall surely be put to death.
- 32 And ye shall take no ransom for him that is fled to his city of refuge, that he may come again to dwell in the land, until the death of the priest.
- 33 So ye shall not pollute the land wherein ye are: for blood, it polluteth the land; and no expiation can be made for the land for the blood that is shed therein, but by the blood of him that shed it.
- 34 And thou shalt not defile the land which ye inhabit, in the midst of which I dwell: for I, Jehovah, dwell in the midst of the children of Israel.



- 3- Instructions for dividing the land (34.)
  - Borders delineated.
- 4- Cities for the Levites to be provided (35.)
  - a- They are given 48 cities, but no territory.
  - b- **6 of these are to be cities of refuge.**
    - 3 on each side of Jordan for inadvertent slayers.

These cities were places where a person could go to be protected if they had killed someone accidentally.

The cities were these: **Kedesh** in Galilee in Naphtali; **Shechem** in Mount Ephraim; **Hebron** in Judah; **Bezer** in the desert plateau, for the Reubenites; **Ramoth** in Gilead, for the Gadites; and **Golan** in Bashan, for the Manassites. In Hebrew the word *miqlat* means *asylum or restricted place*. See Numbers 35:6-32, Joshua 20:2-13, I Chronicles 6:57-67

- 1 ¶ And the heads of the fathers' *houses* of the family of the children of Gilead, the son of Machir, the son of Manasseh, of the families of the sons of Joseph, came near, and spake before Moses, and before the princes, the heads of the fathers' *houses* of the children of Israel:
- 2 and they said, Jehovah commanded my lord to give the land for inheritance by lot to the children of Israel: and my lord was commanded by Jehovah to give the inheritance of Zelophehad our brother unto his daughters.
- 3 And if they be married to any of the sons of the *other* tribes of the children of Israel, then will their inheritance be taken away from the inheritance of our fathers, and will be added to the inheritance of the tribe whereunto they shall belong: so will it be taken away from the lot of our inheritance.
- 4 **And when the jubilee of the children of Israel shall be**, then will their inheritance be added unto the inheritance of the tribe whereunto they shall belong: so will their inheritance be taken away from the inheritance of the tribe of our fathers.
- 5 ¶ And Moses commanded the children of Israel according to the word of Jehovah, saying, The tribe of the sons of Joseph speaketh right.
- 6 **This is the thing which Jehovah doth command concerning the daughters of Zelophehad, saying, Let them be married to whom they think best; only into the family of the tribe of their father shall they be married.**
- 7 **So shall no inheritance of the children of Israel remove from tribe to tribe; for the children of Israel shall cleave every one to the inheritance of the tribe of his fathers.**
- 8 And every daughter, that possesseth an inheritance in any tribe of the children of Israel, shall be wife unto one of the family of the tribe of her father, that the children of Israel may possess every man the inheritance of his fathers.
- 9 So shall no inheritance remove from one tribe to another tribe; for the tribes of the children of Israel shall cleave every one to his own inheritance.
- 10 Even as Jehovah commanded Moses, so did the daughters of Zelophehad:
- 11 for Mahlah, Tirzah, and Hoglah, and Milcah, and Noah, the daughters of Zelophehad, were married unto their father's brothers' sons.
- 12 They were married into the families of the sons of Manasseh the son of Joseph; and their inheritance remained in the tribe of the family of their father.
- 13 These are the commandments and the ordinances which Jehovah commanded by Moses unto the children of Israel in the plains of Moab by the Jordan at Jericho.

5 Law of marriage within tribes

(36.)

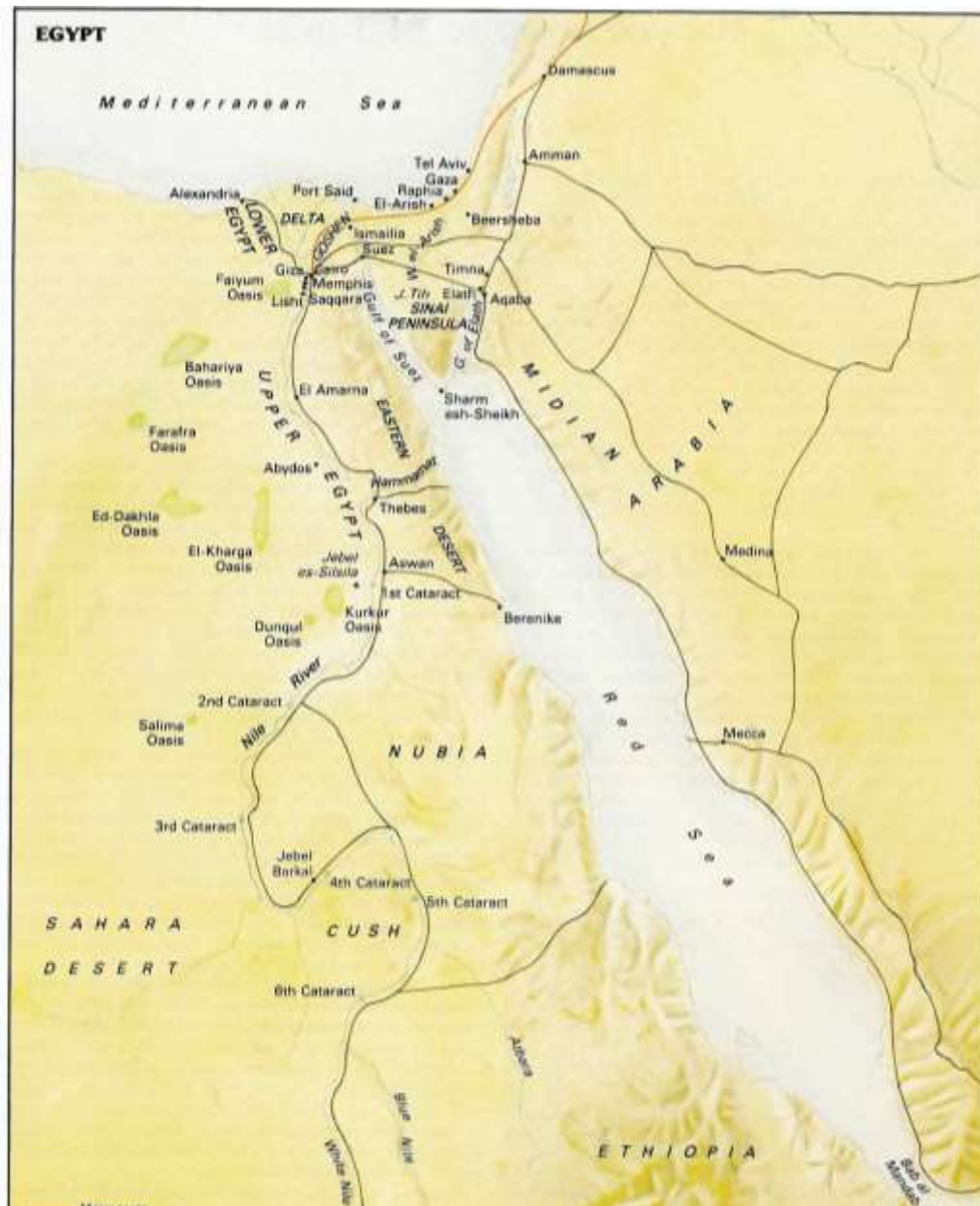


Figure 04. A Map Showing The Extent Of Midian.



Figure 05. A Map Showing The Levitical cities And The 6 Cities Of Refuge.

See description/names of cities of refuge in Num 35, above.

The cities were these: **Kedesh** in Galilee in Naphtali; **Shechem** in Mount Ephraim; **Hebron** in Judah; **Bezer** in the desert plateau, for the Reubenites; **Ramoth** in Gilead, for the Gadites; and **Golan** in Bashan, for the Manassites.

[And on to Deuteronomy after you complete the questions, below.]

## QUESTIONS ON NUMBERS

1. What time period do the events of the book of Numbers cover?
2. Give threefold division of the book and show the change of location represented by these three divisions.
3. From what events in the book does the book of Numbers get its name?
4. What was the intent of the organization of Israel in the first part of the book?
5. How are God's sovereignty and man's responsibility seen as both operative in this book?
6. Which tribe numbered was the largest and which was the smallest?
7. Locate the tribes in camp around the tabernacle.
8. Name the three sons of Levi and the responsibility of each of these families with regard to transporting the tabernacle.
9. What three requirements were to be observed by one taking the Nazirite vow?
10. What was the purpose of the Nazirite vow?
11. Whose places were the Levites taking in service for the Lord in regards to the tabernacle?
12. For what were the silver trumpets to be used to signal?
13. Suggest several complaints on the way to Kadesh-barnea.
14. What excuse did the people give for not wanting to invade Canaan?
15. Did the Lord pardon the people for their rebellion as Moses requested (chapter 14)?
16. What example of a presumptuous sin is given in chapter 15?

17. What was the sin of Korah and company?
18. How did the Lord confirm the priesthood of Aaron before Israel?
19. What was the purpose of the ordinance of the Red Heifer?
20. For what reason was Moses forbidden to lead Israel into Canaan?
21. How great were the victories of Israel east of Jordan?
22. By what method did Moab seek to defeat Israel (22-24)?
23. For what personal reason did Balaam seek to curse Israel?
24. How did Phinehas, the grandson of Aaron, commend himself to the Lord and fall heir to the everlasting priesthood in chapter 25?
25. How did Balaam attempt revenge on Israel (31:16)?
26. Which tribes settled east of Jordan and why (32)?
27. What was the historic purpose of the cities of refuge to which unintentional killers could flee (35)?

Copy these two pages (with your answers) and submit to:  
[swede@thecfbc.com](mailto:swede@thecfbc.com)





# **THE BOOK OF DEUTERONOMY**

## **INTRODUCTION**

## **PRINCIPLES**

## **TEXT**

## **OUTLINE**

## **QUESTIONS**

Adapted from the larger work (under contract - prior his home-going) of  
**Dr. Stanley Ellisen, Beloved Professor of English Bible**  
**And Interpretation**  
**At The Western Baptist Theological Seminary.**

This Monograph was prepared for Seminary,  
Bible College, Church and Home Bible studies.  
Also contained in each book is an Introduction and  
on opposing pages the associated Biblical text taken from  
the ASV Version of 1901; and a list of  
Class Questions.

## INTRODUCTION

### I. Title.

**A-** The Hebrews called it "Devarim"--"These are the words."

**B-** The LXX called it "Deuteronomy," meaning "Second Law," or copy of the law.

### II. Authorship.

**A-** Mosaic authorship is confirmed by the explicit statement that he wrote this law (Deuteronomy 31:9, 24-26). Also Moses is mentioned about 40 times in the book, and the first person predominates in the narration.

**B-** Obviously, chapter 34 was written by another, perhaps Joshua, Eleazar, or Samuel.

**C-** The apparent differences between the code of laws in Exodus and Deuteronomy confirms Mosaic authorship rather than denies it, for another author would not have deviated from the original, whereas Moses would not have merely repeated himself. The changes are accounted for by the change of circumstances which necessitated an adaptation of the code for Palestine and its environs.

### III. Historical Setting.

#### **A-** Setting of the writing.

The setting of the writing of Deuteronomy is the Plains of Moab in the spring of the fortieth year after the exodus, just prior to Moses' death and the crossing of Jordan.

#### **B-** Setting of the book.

1- The children of Israel had been in the wilderness for 40 years feeding on God's daily provision of manna and were still on that diet.

2- They were now poised on the banks of the Jordan ready to enter Canaan and divest the land from a people of giants and warring instincts. Change of leadership marks the transition from the wilderness experience to the conquest experience. Eleazar had replaced Aaron in the high priesthood and Joshua was about to replace Moses.

- 3- Israel, coming out of idol worship in Egypt (Ezekiel 20:1-9), had learned to worship Jehovah alone in the last 40 years. Now that they were to enter Canaan they would be subjected again to the temptation of worshipping idols as did the heathen Canaanites and Amorites. Thus Moses sternly exhorts the people, repeating the law and adapting it to the new circumstances of living in cities and in the fertile productive country of Canaan.
- 4- The date of the book is the fortieth year, eleventh month, and the first day after the exodus (Deuteronomy 1:3). This was perhaps 30 days before Moses' death (Deuteronomy 34:8) and 70 days before the crossing of the Jordan.

#### IV. Purpose and Theme of Deuteronomy.

The purpose of Deuteronomy is threefold: historic, legislative, and prophetic. These are all, however, hortatory. A short history is given of their national life; a restatement of the law in the new circumstance is elucidated; and the conditional aspects of the Abrahamic and Mosaic Covenants are stated with the results of obedience and disobedience. The key words are **"remember,"** pointing backward, and **"obey,"** pointing forward. It also serves as a restatement and further explanation of the Law for the new generation

#### V. Some Peculiarities of the Book of Deuteronomy.

- A-** Deuteronomy is one of the most widely quoted books in the Old Testament by the New Testament writers. It is quoted 356 times in later Old Testament books also. It is quoted over 80 times in the New Testament; 17 of the 27 New Testament books quote it. Christ used Deuteronomy to confirm His Messiahship, to summarize the law, and to refute the devil. Mat 4.
- B-** If the unity of the Pentateuch be granted, Deuteronomy gives one of the strongest arguments for the Mosaic authorship of the five books.
- C-** In contrast to Exodus, the note of the love of God [ervades this second putting forth of the law (7:8).
- D-** Deuteronomy ascribes a further duty to the priests, that of teaching the people the law (Deuteronomy 31:9-13).

## OUTLINE OF DEUTERONOMY

- |  |               |
|--|---------------|
| I. Moses' first discourse--Historical.     | 1 - 4:43.     |
| II. Moses' second discourse--Legislative.  | 4:44 - 26:19. |
| III. Moses' third discourse Prophetic.     | 27 - 30.      |
| IV. Moses finishes his course--Historical. | 31 - 34.      |

### I- Dates of the Patriarchs

**Table 01. Chronology Of The Patriarchs And Egyptian Sojourn.**

Dates of the Patriarchs	Early Date	Late Date
Birth of Abraham	2165 B.C.	1950
Call of Abraham	2090	1875
Birth of Isaac	2065	1850
Birth of Jacob	2005	1790
Death of Abraham	1990	1775
Birth of Joseph	1915	1700
Death of Isaac	1885	1670
Descent of Jacob	1875	1660
Death of Jacob	1858	1643
Death of Joseph	1805	1590
Beginning of affliction	1550	1550
Birth of Moses	1522	1522
The Exodus	1445 1 Kings 6:1 – Solomon began Temple construction in 4 <sup>th</sup> year of his reign, 480 years after the Exodus,	1445

### II- Length Of The Egyptian Sojourn

#### A- Pertinent Scriptures

Gen 15:13; Ex 12:40; Acts 7:6; Gal 3:17. (Also note Ex 6:16; Num 26:59)

#### B- The Early Date For Abraham

Call Of Abraham	2090 B.C.
Abraham In Canaan To Birth Of Isaac.	25 years.
Isaac To Birth Of Jacob.	60 years.
Jacob's Age At Time Of Descent	<u>130 years.</u>
	Total Years = 215 years
Time Of The Egyptian Sojourn (Gen 15:13; Ex 12:60; Acts 7)	430 years
Total Time From Call Of Abraham To Exodus	645 Years.
	Date Of The Exodus = 1445 B.C.

#### C- The Late Date For Abraham

Call Of Abraham	1875 B.C.
(Gal 3:17; Ex 12:40 LXX)	
Sojourn In Egypt And Canaan	430 years.
	Date Of The Exodus = 1445 B.C.

Note: Moses is the great grandson of Levi. Ex 6:16-19; Num 26:59.



- 1 ¶ These are the words which Moses spake unto all Israel beyond the Jordan in the wilderness, in the {1} Arabah over against Suph, between Paran, and Tophel, and Laban, and Hazeroth, and Di-zahab. {1} *That is, the deep valley running north and south of the Dead Sea.*
- 2 It is eleven days' journey from Horeb by the way of mount Seir unto Kadesh-barnea.
- 3 And it came to pass in the fortieth year, in the eleventh month, on the first day of the month, that Moses spake unto the children of Israel, according unto all that Jehovah had given him in commandment unto them;
- 4 after he had smitten Sihon the king of the Amorites, who dwelt in Heshbon, and Og the king of Bashan, who dwelt in Ashtaroth, at Edrei.
- 5 Beyond the Jordan, in the land of Moab, began Moses to declare this law, saying,
- 6 Jehovah our God spake unto us in Horeb, saying, Ye have dwelt long enough in this mountain:
- 7 turn you, and take your journey, and go to the hill-country of the Amorites, and unto all *the places* nigh thereunto, in the Arabah, in the hill-country, and in the lowland, and in the South, and by the sea-shore, the land of the Canaanites, and Lebanon, as far as the great river, the river Euphrates.
- 8 Behold, I have set the land before you: go in and possess the land which Jehovah sware unto your fathers, to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob, to give unto them and to their seed after them.
- 9 ¶ And I spake unto you at that time, saying, I am not able to bear you myself alone:
- 10 Jehovah your God hath multiplied you, and, behold, ye are this day as the stars of heaven for multitude.
- 11 Jehovah, the God of your fathers, make you a thousand times as many as ye are, and bless you, as he hath promised you!
- 12 How can I myself alone bear your cumbrance, and your burden, and your strife?
- 13 Take you wise men, and understanding, and known, according to your tribes, and I will make them heads over you.
- 14 And ye answered me, and said, The thing which thou hast spoken is good *for us* to do.
- 15 So I took the heads of your tribes, wise men, and known, and made them heads over you, captains of thousands, and captains of hundreds, and captains of fifties, and captains of tens, and officers, according to your tribes.
- 16 And I charged your judges at that time, saying, Hear *the causes* between your brethren, and judge righteously between a man and his brother, and the sojourner that is with him.
- 17 Ye shall not respect persons in judgment; ye shall hear the small and the great alike; ye shall not be afraid of the face of man; for the judgment is God's: and the cause that is too hard for you ye shall bring unto me, and I will hear it.
- 18 And I commanded you at that time all the things which ye should do.
- 19 ¶ And we journeyed from Horeb, and went through all that great and terrible wilderness which ye saw, by the way to the hill-country of the Amorites, as Jehovah our God commanded us; and we came to Kadesh-barnea.
- 20 And I said unto you, Ye are come unto the hill-country of the Amorites, which Jehovah our God giveth unto us.
- 21 Behold, Jehovah thy God hath set the land before thee: go up, take possession, as Jehovah, the God of thy fathers, hath spoken unto thee; fear not, neither be dismayed.
- 22 And ye came near unto me every one of you, and said, Let us send men before us, that they may search the land for us, and bring us word again of the way by which we must go up, and the cities unto which we shall come.
- 23 And the thing pleased me well; and I took twelve men of you, one man for every tribe:
- 24 and they turned and went up into the hill-country, and came unto the valley of Eshcol, and spied it out.
- 25 And they took of the fruit of the land in their hands, and brought it down unto us, and brought us word again, and said, It is a good land which Jehovah our God giveth unto us.
- 26 Yet ye would not go up, but rebelled against the commandment of Jehovah your God:
- 27 and ye murmured in your tents, and said, Because Jehovah hated us, he hath brought us forth out of the land of Egypt, to deliver us into the hand of the Amorites, to destroy us.
- 28 Whither are we going up? our brethren have made our heart to melt, saying, The people are greater and taller than we; the cities are great and fortified up to heaven; and moreover we have seen the sons of the Anakim there.
- 29 Then I said unto you, Dread not, neither be afraid of them.
- 30 Jehovah your God who goeth before you, he will fight for you, according to all that he did for you in Egypt before your eyes,
- 31 and in the wilderness, where thou hast seen how that Jehovah thy God bare thee, as a man doth bear his son, in all the way that ye went, until ye came unto this place.
- 32 Yet {1} in this thing ye did not believe Jehovah your God, {1} *Or for all this thing*
- 33 who went before you in the way, to seek you out a place to pitch your tents in, in fire by night, to show you by what way ye should go, and in the cloud by day.
- 34 And Jehovah heard the voice of your words, and was wroth, and sware, saying,
- 35 Surely there shall not one of these men of this evil generation see the good land, which I sware to give unto your fathers,
- 36 save Caleb the son of Jephunneh: he shall see it; and to him will I give the land that he hath trodden upon, and to his children, because he hath wholly followed Jehovah.

- 37 Also Jehovah was angry with me for your sakes, saying, Thou also shalt not go in thither:  
 38 Joshua the son of Nun, who standeth before thee, he shall go in thither: encourage thou him; for he shall cause Israel to inherit it.  
 39 Moreover your little ones, that ye said should be a prey, and your children, that this day have no knowledge of good or evil, they shall go in thither, and unto them will I give it, and they shall possess it.  
 40 But as for you, turn you, and take your journey into the wilderness by the way to the Red Sea.  
 41 Then ye answered and said unto me, We have sinned against Jehovah, we will go up and fight, according to all that Jehovah our God commanded us. And ye girded on every man his weapons of war, and *{1}* were forward to go up into the hill-country. *{1} Or deemed it a light thing}*  
 42 And Jehovah said unto me, Say unto them, Go not up, neither fight; for I am not among you; lest ye be smitten before your enemies.  
 43 So I spake unto you, and ye hearkened not; but ye rebelled against the commandment of Jehovah, and were presumptuous, and went up into the hill-country.  
 44 And the Amorites, that dwelt in that hill-country, came out against you, and chased you, as bees do, and beat you down in Seir, even unto Hormah.  
 45 And ye returned and wept before Jehovah; but Jehovah hearkened not to your voice, nor gave ear unto you.  
 46 So ye abode in Kadesh many days, according unto the days that ye abode *there*.

---

## I. Moses' First Discourse. (1:1.-4:43.)

### A- From Horeb to Kadesh-barnea. (1.)

- 1 - Preface vs. 1-5
  - a- Time: 1st day, 11th month, 40th year (c. February 1406 B.C.).  
70 days before the crossing of the Jordan - Jos 4:19.
  - b- Moses addresses Israel after East Jordan victories.
- 2- Rebellion of first generation reviewed vs. 6-46
  - a- The appointment of elders vs. 6-18  
To establish Just Judgement among the people.
  - b- The appointment of spies vs. 19-33  
In vs. 22 it's clear, the people wanted the spies logic over faith.
  - c- The Lord's judgment reviewed vs. 34-46

- 1 ¶ Then we turned, and took our journey into the wilderness by the way to the Red Sea, as Jehovah spake unto me; and we compassed mount Seir many days.
- 2 And Jehovah spake unto me, saying,
- 3 Ye have compassed this mountain long enough: turn you northward.
- 4 And command thou the people, saying, Ye are to pass through the border of your brethren the children of Esau, that dwell in Seir; and they will be afraid of you: take ye good heed unto yourselves therefore;
- 5 contend not with them; for I will not give you of their land, no, not so much as for the sole of the foot to tread on; because I have given mount Seir unto Esau for a possession.
- 6 Ye shall purchase food of them for money, that ye may eat; and ye shall also buy water of them for money, that ye may drink.
- 7 For Jehovah thy God hath blessed thee in all the work of thy hand; he hath known thy walking through this great wilderness: these forty years Jehovah thy God hath been with thee; thou hast lacked nothing.
- 8 ¶ So we passed by from our brethren the children of Esau, that dwell in Seir, from the way of the Arabah from Elath and from Ezion-geber. And we turned and passed by the way of the wilderness of Moab.
- 9 And Jehovah said unto me, Vex not Moab, neither contend with them in battle; for I will not give thee of his land for a possession; because I have given Ar unto the children of Lot for a possession.
- 10 (The Emim dwelt therein aforetime, a people great, and many, and tall, as the Anakim:
- 11 these also are accounted Rephaim, as the Anakim; but the Moabites call them Emim.
- 12 The Horites also dwelt in Seir aforetime, but the children of Esau succeeded them; and they destroyed them from before them, and dwelt in their stead; as Israel did unto the land of his possession, which Jehovah gave unto them.)
- 13 Now rise up, and get you over the brook Zered. And we went over the brook Zered.
- 14 And the days in which we came from Kadesh-barnea, until we were come over the brook Zered, were thirty and eight years; until all the generation of the men of war were consumed from the midst of the camp, as Jehovah sware unto them.
- 15 Moreover the hand of Jehovah was against them, to destroy them from the midst of the camp, until they were consumed.
- 16 So it came to pass, when all the men of war were consumed and dead from among the people,
- 17 that Jehovah spake unto me, saying,
- 18 Thou art this day to pass over Ar, the border of Moab:
- 19 and when thou comest nigh over against the children of Ammon, vex them not, nor contend with them; for I will not give thee of the land of the children of Ammon for a possession; because I have given it unto the children of Lot for a possession.
- 20 (That also is accounted a land of Rephaim: Rephaim dwelt therein aforetime; but the Ammonites call them Zamzummim,
- 21 a people great, and many, and tall, as the Anakim; but Jehovah destroyed them before them; and they succeeded them, and dwelt in their stead;
- 22 as he did for the children of Esau, that dwell in Seir, when he destroyed the Horites from before them; and they succeeded them, and dwelt in their stead even unto this day:
- 23 and the Avvim, that dwelt in villages as far as Gaza, the Caphtorim, that came forth out of Caphtor, destroyed them, and dwelt in their stead.)
- 24 ¶ Rise ye up, take your journey, and pass over the valley of the Arnon: behold, I have given into thy hand Sihon the Amorite, king of Heshbon, and his land; begin to possess it, and contend with him in battle.
- 25 This day will I begin to put the dread of thee and the fear of thee upon the peoples that are under the whole heaven, who shall hear the report of thee, and shall tremble, and be in anguish because of thee.
- 26 And I sent messengers out of the wilderness of Kedemoth unto Sihon king of Heshbon with words of peace, saying,
- 27 Let me pass through thy land: I will go {1} along by the highway, I will turn neither unto the right hand nor to the left. {1} *Heb by the way, by the way*
- 28 Thou shalt sell me food for money, that I may eat; and give me water for money, that I may drink: only let me pass through on my feet,
- 29 as the children of Esau that dwell in Seir, and the Moabites that dwell in Ar, did unto me; until I shall pass over the Jordan into the land which Jehovah our God giveth us.
- 30 But Sihon king of Heshbon would not let us pass by him; for Jehovah thy God hardened his spirit, and made his heart {1} obstinate, that he might deliver him into thy hand, as at this day. {1} *Heb strong*
- 31 And Jehovah said unto me, Behold, I have begun to deliver up Sihon and his land before thee: begin to possess, that thou mayest inherit his land.
- 32 Then Sihon came out against us, he and all his people, unto battle at Jahaz.
- 33 And Jehovah our God delivered him up before us; and we smote him, and his {1} sons, and all his people. {1} *Or son*
- 34 And we took all his cities at that time, and {1} utterly destroyed every {2} inhabited city, with the women and the



little ones; we left none remaining: {1) Heb devoted 2) Heb city of men}

35 only the cattle we took for a prey unto ourselves, with the spoil of the cities which we had taken.

36 From Aroer, which is on the edge of the valley of the Arnon, and *from* the city that is in the valley, even unto Gilead, there was not a city too high for us; Jehovah our God delivered up all before us:

37 only to the land of the children of Ammon thou camest not near; all the side of the river Jabbok, and the cities of the hill-country, and wheresoever Jehovah our God forbade us.

---

## B- The wilderness wanderings reviewed. (2.)

38 years in 2 verses; the land of Edom, south of the Dead Sea

1- From Kadesh to the River Arnon.

2- Not allowed to touch Edom, Moab, or Ammon.

## C. New generation victories. vs. 1-15

1- The Amorites defeated. vs. 16-37

a- Initiated by their belligerent spirit .

Israel didn't attack until Amorites first attacked; Israel utterly destroyed them. 34

b- From Arnon to northern, Gilead. vs.37

- 1 ¶ Then we turned, and went up the way to Bashan: and Og the king of Bashan came out against us, he and all his people, unto battle at Edrei.
- 2 And Jehovah said unto me, Fear him not; for I have delivered him, and all his people, and his land, into thy hand; and thou shalt do unto him as thou didst unto Sihon king of the Amorites, who dwelt at Heshbon.
- 3 So Jehovah our God delivered into our hand Og also, the king of Bashan, and all his people: and we smote him until none was left to him remaining.
- 4 And we took all his cities at that time; there was not a city which we took not from them; threescore cities, all the region of Argob, the kingdom of Og in Bashan.
- 5 All these were cities fortified with high walls, gates, and bars; besides the {1} unwalled towns a great many. {1} Or country town}
- 6 And we {1} utterly destroyed them, as we did unto Sihon king of Heshbon, utterly destroying every {2} inhabited city, with the women and the little ones. {1} Heb devoted 2) Heb city of men}
- 7 But all the cattle, and the spoil of the cities, we took for a prey unto ourselves.
- 8 And we took the land at that time out of the hand of the two kings of the Amorites that were beyond the Jordan, from the valley of the Arnon unto mount Hermon;
- 9 (which Hermon the Sidonians call Sirion, and the Amorites call it Senir;)
- 10 all the cities of the {1} plain, and all Gilead, and all Bashan, unto Salecah and Edrei, cities of the kingdom of Og in Bashan. {1} Or table-land}
- 11 (For only Og king of Bashan remained of the remnant of the Rephaim; behold, his bedstead was a bedstead of iron; is it not in Rabbah of the children of Ammon? nine cubits was the length thereof, and four cubits the breadth of it, after the cubit of a man.)
- 12 ¶ And this land we took in possession at that time: from Aroer, which is by the valley of the Arnon, and half the hill-country of Gilead, and the cities thereof, gave I unto the Reubenites and to the Gadites:
- 13 and the rest of Gilead, and all Bashan, the kingdom of Og, gave I unto the half-tribe of Manasseh; {1} all the region of Argob, {2} even all Bashan. (The same is called the land of Rephaim. {1} Or all the region of Argob. (All that Bashan is called etc 2) Or with}
- 14 Jair the son of Manasseh took all the region of Argob, unto the border of the Geshurites and the Maacathites, and called them, even Bashan, after his own name, Havvoth-jair, unto this day.)
- 15 And I gave Gilead unto Machir.
- 16 And unto the Reubenites and unto the Gadites I gave from Gilead even unto the valley of the Arnon, the middle of the valley, {1} and the border thereof, even unto the river Jabbok, which is the border of the children of Ammon; {1} Or for a border}
- 17 the Arabah also, and the Jordan {1} and the border thereof, from Chinnereth even unto the sea of the Arabah, the Salt Sea, under the {2} slopes of Pisgah eastward. {1} Or for a border 2) Or springs}
- 18 And I commanded you at that time, saying, Jehovah your God hath given you this land to possess it: ye shall pass over armed before your brethren the children of Israel, all the men of valor.
- 19 But your wives, and your little ones, and your cattle, (I know that ye have much cattle,) shall abide in your cities which I have given you,
- 20 until Jehovah give rest unto your brethren, as unto you, and they also possess the land which Jehovah your God giveth them beyond the Jordan: then shall ye return every man unto his possession, which I have given you.
- 21 ¶ And I commanded Joshua at that time, saying, Thine eyes have seen all that Jehovah your God hath done unto these two kings: so shall Jehovah do unto all the kingdoms whither thou goest over.
- 22 Ye shall not fear them; for Jehovah your God, he it is that fighteth for you.
- 23 And I besought Jehovah at that time, saying,
- 24 O Lord Jehovah, thou hast begun to show thy servant thy greatness, and thy strong hand: for what god is there in heaven or in earth, that can do according to thy works, and according to thy mighty acts?
- 25 Let me go over, I pray thee, and see the good land that is beyond the Jordan, that goodly {1} mountain, and Lebanon. {1} Or hill-country}
- 26 But Jehovah was wroth with me for your sakes, and hearkened not unto me; and Jehovah said unto me, Let it suffice thee; speak no more unto me of this matter.
- 27 Get thee up unto the top of Pisgah, and lift up thine eyes westward, and northward, and southward, and eastward, and behold with thine eyes: for thou shalt not go over this Jordan.
- 28 But charge Joshua, and encourage him, and strengthen him; for he shall go over before this people, and he shall cause them to inherit the land which thou shalt see.
- 29 So we abode in the valley over against Beth-peor.

- 2- Bashan and Og defeated vs. 3:1-12
- a- From Galilee to Mt. Hermon.
  - b- Utter destruction and a great spoil taken.
- 3- East Jordan assigned (12-22).
- a- Three tribes assigned.  
Ruben, Gad, and ½ Manasseh. Land E. & N. of Jordan (Bashan) for “cowboys”!!
  - b- Victory here is seen as a sample of what God would do. 3:21  
    (“So shall the LORD do.”)
4. Leadership given to Joshua (3:23-29).
- a- Moses' plea to enter is again refused. vs. 26
  - b- He is to charge and encourage Joshua. vs. 28

Because of length of text, Ch. 4 is backed up.

#### Deuteronomy 4

- 1 ¶ And now, O Israel, hearken unto the statutes and unto the ordinances, which I teach you, to do them; that ye may live, and go in and possess the land which Jehovah, the God of your fathers, giveth you.
- 2 Ye shall not add unto the word which I command you, neither shall ye diminish from it, that ye may keep the commandments of Jehovah your God which I command you.
- 3 Your eyes have seen what Jehovah did because of Baal-peor; for all the men that followed Baal-peor, Jehovah thy God hath destroyed them from the midst of thee.
- 4 But ye that did cleave unto Jehovah your God are alive every one of you this day.
- 5 Behold, I have taught you statutes and ordinances, even as Jehovah my God commanded me, that ye should do so in the midst of the land whither ye go in to possess it.
- 6 Keep therefore and do them; for this is your wisdom and your understanding in the sight of the peoples, that shall hear all these statutes, and say, Surely this great nation is a wise and understanding people.
- 7 For what great nation is there, that hath *{I}* a god so nigh unto them, as Jehovah our God is whensoever we call upon him? *{I} Or God*
- 8 And what great nation is there, that hath statutes and ordinances so righteous as all this law, which I set before you this day?
- 9 Only take heed to thyself, and keep thy soul diligently, lest thou forget the things which thine eyes saw, and lest they depart from thy heart all the days of thy life; but make them known unto thy children and thy children's children;
- 10 the day that thou stoodest before Jehovah thy God in Horeb, when Jehovah said unto me, Assemble me the people, and I will make them hear my words, that they may learn to fear me all the days that they live upon the earth, and that they may teach their children.
- 11 And ye came near and stood under the mountain; and the mountain burned with fire unto the heart of heaven, with darkness, cloud, and thick darkness.
- 12 And Jehovah spake unto you out of the midst of the fire: ye heard the voice of words, but ye saw no form; only ye *heard* a voice.
- 13 And he declared unto you his covenant, which he commanded you to perform, even the ten *{I}* commandments; and he wrote them upon two tables of stone. *{I} Heb words*
- 14 And Jehovah commanded me at that time to teach you statutes and ordinances, that ye might do them in the land whither ye go over to possess it.
- 15 Take ye therefore good heed unto yourselves; for ye saw no manner of form on the day that Jehovah spake unto you in Horeb out of the midst of the fire.
- 16 Lest ye corrupt yourselves, and make you a graven image in the form of any figure, the likeness of male or female,
- 17 the likeness of any beast that is on the earth, the likeness of any winged bird that flieth in the heavens,
- 18 the likeness of anything that creepeth on the ground, the likeness of any fish that is in the water under the earth;

- 19 and lest thou lift up thine eyes unto heaven, and when thou seest the sun and the moon and the stars, even all the host of heaven, thou be drawn away and worship them, and serve them, which Jehovah thy God hath allotted unto all the peoples under the whole heaven.
- 20 But Jehovah hath taken you, and brought you forth out of the iron furnace, out of Egypt, to be unto him a people of inheritance, as at this day.
- 21 Furthermore Jehovah was angry with me for your sakes, and swore that I should not go over the Jordan, and that I should not go in unto that good land, which Jehovah thy God giveth thee for an inheritance:
- 22 but I must die in this land, I must not go over the Jordan; but ye shall go over, and possess that good land.
- 23 Take heed unto yourselves, lest ye forget the covenant of Jehovah your God, which he made with you, and make you a graven image in the form of anything which Jehovah thy God hath forbidden thee.
- 24 For Jehovah thy God is a devouring fire, a jealous God.
- 25 When thou shalt beget children, and children's children, and ye shall have been long in the land, and shall corrupt yourselves, and make a graven image in the form of anything, and shall do that which is evil in the sight of Jehovah thy God, to provoke him to anger;
- 26 I call heaven and earth to witness against you this day, that ye shall soon utterly perish from off the land whereunto ye go over the Jordan to possess it; ye shall not prolong your days upon it, but shall utterly be destroyed.
- 27 And Jehovah will scatter you among the peoples, and ye shall be left few in number among the nations, whither Jehovah shall lead you away.
- 28 And there ye shall serve gods, the work of men's hands, wood and stone, which neither see, nor hear, nor eat, nor smell.
- 29 But from thence ye shall seek Jehovah thy God, and thou shalt find him, when thou searchest after him with all thy heart and with all thy soul.
- 30 When thou art in tribulation, and all these things are come upon thee, *{1}* in the latter days thou shalt return to Jehovah thy God, and hearken unto his voice: *{1} Or if in the latter days thou return}*
- 31 for Jehovah thy God is a merciful God; he will not fail thee, neither destroy thee, nor forget the covenant of thy fathers which he swore unto them.
- 32 For ask now of the days that are past, which were before thee, since the day that God created man upon the earth, and from the one end of heaven unto the other, whether there hath been *any such thing* as this great thing is, or hath been heard like it?
- 33 Did ever a people hear the voice of God speaking out of the midst of the fire, as thou hast heard, and live?
- 34 Or hath God assayed to go and take him a nation from the midst of *another* nation, by trials, by signs, and by wonders, and by war, and by a mighty hand, and by an outstretched arm, and by great terrors, according to all that Jehovah your God did for you in Egypt before your eyes?
- 35 Unto thee it was showed, that thou mightest know that Jehovah he is God; there is none else besides him.
- 36 Out of heaven he made thee to hear his voice, that he might instruct thee: and upon earth he made thee to see his great fire; and thou heardest his words out of the midst of the fire.
- 37 And because he loved thy fathers, therefore he chose their seed after them, and brought thee out with his presence, with his great power, out of Egypt;
- 38 to drive out nations from before thee greater and mightier than thou, to bring thee in, to give thee their land for an inheritance, as at this day.
- 39 Know therefore this day, and lay it to thy heart, that Jehovah he is God in heaven above and upon the earth beneath; there is none else.
- 40 And thou shalt keep his statutes, and his commandments, which I command thee this day, that it may go well with thee, and with thy children after thee, and that thou mayest prolong thy days in the land, which Jehovah thy God giveth thee, for ever.
- 41 ¶ Then Moses set apart three cities beyond the Jordan toward the sunrising;
- 42 that the manslayer might flee thither, that slayeth his neighbor unawares, and hated him not in time past; and that fleeing unto one of these cities he might live:
- 43 *namely*, Bezer in the wilderness, in the *{1}* plain country, for the Reubenites; and Ramoth in Gilead, for the Gadites; and Golan in Bashan, for the Manassites. *{1} Or table-land}*
- 44 And this is the law which Moses set before the children of Israel:
- 45 these are the testimonies, and the statutes, and the ordinances, which Moses spake unto the children of Israel, when they came forth out of Egypt,
- 46 beyond the Jordan, in the valley over against Beth-peor, in the land of Sihon king of the Amorites, who dwelt at Heshbon, whom Moses and the children of Israel smote, when they came forth out of Egypt.
- 47 And they took his land in possession, and the land of Og king of Bashan, the two kings of the Amorites, who were beyond the Jordan toward the sunrising;
- 48 from Aroer, which is on the edge of the valley of the Arnon, even unto mount Sion (the same is Hermon),
- 49 and all the Arabah beyond the Jordan eastward, even unto the sea of the Arabah, under the *{1}* slopes of Pisgah. *{1} Or springs}*

**II. Moses' Second Discourse - -Legislative.****(4:4.-26:19.)**

(God's Law reviewed)

**A- Preface.****vs. 4:4-49****1- The threefold law.****vs. 4:4-40**

Note: In the Torah, there are 613 of these.  
248 positive and 365 negative

- a- Testimonies (Laws)
- b- Statutes
- c- Ordinances (Judgments)

**2- The territory occupied. .****vs. 44-49**

- a- Sihon - The Ammorites.
- b- Og - Bashan

**3- Reminded of God's great mercy if repentant****vs. 29-40**

(When the tribulation is upon you in the latter days;

**vs. 30**

- a- Abrahamic Covenant assures mercy if repentant.
- b- Reminded of their great privileges as covenant people.

**vs. 31****vs 33****4- Cities of refuge east of Jordan noted****vs. 41-43**

One in each tribe. R, G, & ½ M; Bezer, Ramoth, Golan.  
Note: all cities within 'fleeing' distance of one day  
for every person in Israel.

- 1 ¶ And Moses called unto all Israel, and said unto them, Hear, O Israel, the statutes and the ordinances which I speak in your ears this day, that ye may learn them, and observe to do them.
- 2 Jehovah our God made a covenant with us in Horeb.
- 3 Jehovah made not this covenant with our fathers, but with us, even us, who are all of us here alive this day.
- 4 Jehovah spake with you face to face in the mount out of the midst of the fire,
- 5 (I stood between Jehovah and you at that time, to show you the word of Jehovah: for ye were afraid because of the fire, and went not up into the mount;) saying,
- 6 ¶ I am Jehovah thy God, who brought thee out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of *{1}* bondage. *{1}* *Heb bondmen*
- 7 Thou shalt have no other gods *{1}* before me. *{1}* *Or besides me*
- 8 Thou shalt not make unto thee a graven image, *nor* any likeness of *anything* that is in heaven above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in the water under the earth:
- 9 thou shalt not bow down thyself unto them, nor serve them; for I, Jehovah, thy God, am a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children, and upon the third and upon the fourth generation of them that hate me;
- 10 and showing lovingkindness unto *{1}* thousands of them that love me and keep my commandments. *{1}* *Or a thousand generations*
- 11 Thou shalt not take the name of Jehovah thy God *{1}* in vain: for Jehovah will not hold him guiltless that taketh his name in vain. *{1}* *Or for vanity (or falsehood)*
- 12 Observe the sabbath day, to keep it holy, as Jehovah thy God commanded thee.
- 13 Six days shalt thou labor, and do all thy work;
- 14 but the seventh day is a sabbath unto Jehovah thy God: *in it* thou shalt not do any work, thou, nor thy son, nor thy daughter, nor thy man-servant, nor thy maid-servant, nor thine ox, nor thine ass, nor any of thy cattle, nor thy stranger that is within thy gates; that thy man-servant and thy maid-servant may rest as well as thou.
- 15 And thou shalt remember that thou wast a servant in the land of Egypt, and Jehovah thy God brought thee out thence by a mighty hand and by an outstretched arm: therefore Jehovah thy God commanded thee to keep the sabbath day.
- 16 Honor thy father and thy mother, as Jehovah thy God commanded thee; that thy days may be long, and that it may go well with thee, in the land which Jehovah thy God giveth thee.
- 17 Thou shalt not kill.
- 18 Neither shalt thou commit adultery.
- 19 Neither shalt thou steal.
- 20 Neither shalt thou bear false witness against thy neighbor.
- 21 Neither shalt thou covet thy neighbor's wife; neither shalt thou desire thy neighbor's house, his field, or his man-servant, or his maid-servant, his ox, or his ass, or anything that is thy neighbor's.
- 22 These words Jehovah spake unto all your assembly in the mount out of the midst of the fire, of the cloud, and of the thick darkness, with a great voice: and he added no more. And he wrote them upon two tables of stone, and gave them unto me.
- 23 ¶ And it came to pass, when ye heard the voice out of the midst of the darkness, while the mountain was burning with fire, that ye came near unto me, even all the heads of your tribes, and your elders;
- 24 and ye said, Behold, Jehovah our God hath showed us his glory and his greatness, and we have heard his voice out of the midst of the fire: we have seen this day that God doth speak with man, and he liveth.
- 25 Now therefore why should we die? for this great fire will consume us: if we hear the voice of Jehovah our God any more, then we shall die.
- 26 For who is there of all flesh, that hath heard the voice of the living God speaking out of the midst of the fire, as we have, and lived?
- 27 Go thou near, and hear all that Jehovah our God shall say: and speak thou unto us all that Jehovah our God shall speak unto thee; and we will hear it, and do it.
- 28 And Jehovah heard the voice of your words, when ye spake unto me; and Jehovah said unto me, I have heard the voice of the words of this people, which they have spoken unto thee: they have well said all that they have spoken.
- 29 *{1}* Oh that there were such a heart in them, that they would fear me, and keep all my commandments always, that it might be well with them, and with their children for ever! *{1}* *Or Oh that they had such a heart as this alway, to fear me, and keep all my commandments, that etc*
- 30 Go say to them, Return ye to your tents.
- 31 But as for thee, stand thou here by me, and I will speak unto thee all the commandment, and the statutes, and the ordinances, which thou shalt teach them, that they may do them in the land which I give them to possess it.
- 32 Ye shall observe to do therefore as Jehovah your God hath commanded you: ye shall not turn aside to the right hand or to the left.
- 33 Ye shall walk in all the way which Jehovah your God hath commanded you, that ye may live, and that it may be well with you, and that ye may prolong your days in the land which ye shall possess.

**B- The decalogue expounded.****(5.-11.)****1- Restatement of the ten commandments (5.)**

- a- Warning of idolatry stressed.
- b- purpose of Sabbath observance noted.
- c- Blessing of obedience.

---

Because of length of text, Ch. 6 & 7 are backed up.

**Deuteronomy 6**

- 1 ¶ Now this is the commandment, the statutes, and the ordinances, which Jehovah your God commanded to teach you, that ye might do them in the land whither ye go over to possess it;
- 2 that thou mightest fear Jehovah thy God, to keep all his statutes and his commandments, which I command thee, thou, and thy son, and thy son's son, all the days of thy life; and that thy days may be prolonged.
- 3 Hear therefore, O Israel, and observe to do it; that it may be well with thee, and that ye may increase mightily, as Jehovah, the God of thy fathers, hath promised unto thee, in a land flowing with milk and honey.
- 4 ¶ Hear, O Israel: *{1} Jehovah our God is one Jehovah: {1} Or Jehovah our God, Jehovah is one; Or Jehovah is our God, Jehovah alone}*
- 5 and thou shalt love Jehovah thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy might.
- 6 And these words, which I command thee this day, shall be upon thy heart;
- 7 and thou shalt teach them diligently unto thy children, and shalt talk of them when thou sittest in thy house, and when thou walkest by the way, and when thou liest down, and when thou risest up.
- 8 And thou shalt bind them for a sign upon thy hand, and they shall be for frontlets between thine eyes.
- 9 And thou shalt write them upon the door-posts of thy house, and upon thy gates.
- 10 And it shall be, when Jehovah thy God shall bring thee into the land which he swore unto thy fathers, to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob, to give thee, great and goodly cities, which thou buildest not,
- 11 and houses full of all good things, which thou filledst not, and cisterns hewn out, which thou hewedst not, vineyards and olive-trees, which thou plantedst not, and thou shalt eat and be full;
- 12 then beware lest thou forget Jehovah, who brought thee forth out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage.
- 13 Thou shalt fear Jehovah thy God; and him shalt thou serve, and shalt swear by his name.
- 14 Ye shall not go after other gods, of the gods of the peoples that are round about you;
- 15 for Jehovah thy God in the midst of thee is a jealous God; lest the anger of Jehovah thy God be kindled against thee, and he destroy thee from off the face of the earth.
- 16 Ye shall not tempt Jehovah your God, as ye tempted him in Massah.
- 17 ¶ Ye shall diligently keep the commandments of Jehovah your God, and his testimonies, and his statutes, which he hath commanded thee.
- 18 And thou shalt do that which is right and good in the sight of Jehovah; that it may be well with thee, and that thou mayest go in and possess the good land which Jehovah swore unto thy fathers,
- 19 to thrust out all thine enemies from before thee, as Jehovah hath spoken.
- 20 When thy son asketh thee in time to come, saying, What mean the testimonies, and the statutes, and the ordinances, which Jehovah our God hath commanded you?
- 21 then thou shalt say unto thy son, We were Pharaoh's bondmen in Egypt: and Jehovah brought us out of Egypt with a mighty hand;
- 22 and Jehovah showed signs and wonders, great and sore, upon Egypt, upon Pharaoh, and upon all his house, before our eyes;
- 23 and he brought us out from thence, that he might bring us in, to give us the land which he swore unto our fathers.
- 24 And Jehovah commanded us to do all these statutes, to fear Jehovah our God, for our good always, that he might preserve us alive, as at this day.
- 25 And it shall be righteousness unto us, if we observe to do all this commandment before Jehovah our God, as he hath commanded us.

- 1 ¶ When Jehovah thy God shall bring thee into the land whither thou goest to possess it, and shall {1} cast out many nations before thee, the Hittite, and the Girgashite, and the Amorite, and the Canaanite, and the Perizzite, and the Hivite, and the Jebusite, seven nations greater and mightier than thou; {1} *Heb pluck off*
- 2 and when Jehovah thy God shall deliver them up before thee, and thou shalt smite them; then thou shalt {1} utterly destroy them: thou shalt make no covenant with them, nor show mercy unto them; {1} *Heb devote*
- 3 neither shalt thou make marriages with them; thy daughter thou shalt not give unto his son, nor his daughter shalt thou take unto thy son.
- 4 For he will turn away thy son from following me, that they may serve other gods: so will the anger of Jehovah be kindled against you, and he will destroy thee quickly.
- 5 But thus shall ye deal with them: ye shall break down their altars, and dash in pieces their {1} pillars, and hew down their Asherim, and burn their graven images with fire. {1} *Or obelisks*
- 6 For thou art a holy people unto Jehovah thy God: Jehovah thy God hath chosen thee to be a people for his own possession, {1} above all peoples that are upon the face of the earth. {1} *Or out of*
- 7 Jehovah did not set his love upon you, nor choose you, because ye were more in number than any people; for ye were the fewest of all peoples:
- 8 but because Jehovah loveth you, and because he would keep the oath which he sware unto your fathers, hath Jehovah brought you out with a mighty hand, and redeemed you out of the house of bondage, from the hand of Pharaoh king of Egypt.
- 9 Know therefore that Jehovah thy God, he is God, the faithful God, who keepeth covenant and lovingkindness with them that love him and keep his commandments to a thousand generations,
- 10 and repayeth them that hate him to their face, to destroy them: he will not be slack to him that hateth him, he will repay him to his face.
- 11 Thou shalt therefore keep the commandment, and the statutes, and the ordinances, which I command thee this day, to do them.
- 12 ¶ And it shall come to pass, because ye hearken to these ordinances, and keep and do them, that Jehovah thy God will keep with thee the covenant and the lovingkindness which he sware unto thy fathers:
- 13 and he will love thee, and bless thee, and multiply thee; he will also bless the fruit of thy body and the fruit of thy ground, thy grain and thy new wine and thine oil, the increase of thy cattle and the young of thy flock, in the land which he sware unto thy fathers to give thee.
- 14 Thou shalt be blessed above all peoples: there shall not be male or female barren among you, or among your cattle.
- 15 And Jehovah will take away from thee all sickness; and none of the evil diseases of Egypt, which thou knowest, will he put upon thee, but will lay them upon all them that hate thee.
- 16 And thou shalt consume all the peoples that Jehovah thy God shall deliver unto thee; thine eye shall not pity them: neither shalt thou serve their gods; for that will be a snare unto thee.
- 17 If thou shalt say in thy heart, These nations are more than I; how can I dispossess them?
- 18 thou shalt not be afraid of them: thou shalt well remember what Jehovah thy God did unto Pharaoh, and unto all Egypt;
- 19 the great trials which thine eyes saw, and the signs, and the wonders, and the mighty hand, and the outstretched arm, whereby Jehovah thy God brought thee out: so shall Jehovah thy God do unto all the peoples of whom thou art afraid.
- 20 Moreover Jehovah thy God will send the hornet among them, until they that are left, and {1} hide themselves, perish from before thee. {1} *Or hide themselves from thee, perish*
- 21 Thou shalt not be affrighted at them; for Jehovah thy God is in the midst of thee, a great God and a terrible.
- 22 And Jehovah thy God will cast out those nations before thee by little and little: thou mayest not consume them {1} at once, lest the beasts of the field increase upon thee. {1} *Or quickly*
- 23 But Jehovah thy God will deliver them up before thee, and will discomfit them with a great discomfiture, until they be destroyed.
- 24 And he will deliver their kings into thy hand, and thou shalt make their name to perish from under heaven: there shall no man be able to stand before thee, until thou have destroyed them.
- 25 The graven images of their gods shall ye burn with fire: thou shalt not covet the silver or the gold that is on them, nor take it unto thee, lest thou be snared therein; for it is an abomination to Jehovah thy God.
- 26 And thou shalt not bring an abomination into thy house, and become a devoted thing like unto it: thou shalt utterly detest it, and thou shalt utterly abhor it; for it is a devoted thing.



- 2- Purpose and continuance of the law (6.)
- a- To learn to fear the Lord and to prolong life. vs.2
  - b- The law summarized as "love." vs. 5  
Note the Shema. vs. 4
  - c- The danger of prosperity. vs. 11-12
- 3- The command to be separate (7.)
- a- Reasons for the holy war of destroying 7 nations.
  - b- Blessing and victory to depend on obedience.
  - c- Again warned of idolatry. 4- The curse of forgetting (3)

Because of length of text, Ch. 8 &9 are backed up.

### Deuteronomy 8

- 1 ¶ All the commandment which I command thee this day shall ye observe to do, that ye may live, and multiply, and go in and possess the land which Jehovah swore unto your fathers.
- 2 And thou shalt remember all the way which Jehovah thy God hath led thee these forty years in the wilderness, that he might humble thee, to prove thee, to know what was in thy heart, whether thou wouldest keep his commandments, or not.
- 3 And he humbled thee, and suffered thee to hunger, and fed thee with manna, which thou knewest not, neither did thy fathers know; that he might make thee know that man doth not live by bread only, but by everything that proceedeth out of the mouth of Jehovah doth man live.
- 4 Thy raiment waxed not old upon thee, neither did thy foot swell, these forty years.
- 5 And thou shalt consider in thy heart, that, as a man chasteneth his son, so Jehovah thy God chasteneth thee.
- 6 And thou shalt keep the commandments of Jehovah thy God, to walk in his ways, and to fear him.
- 7 For Jehovah thy God bringeth thee into a good land, a land of brooks of water, of fountains and springs, flowing forth in valleys and hills;
- 8 a land of wheat and barley, and vines and fig-trees and pomegranates; a land of olive-trees and honey;
- 9 a land wherein thou shalt eat bread without scarceness, thou shalt not lack anything in it; a land whose stones are iron, and out of whose hills thou mayest dig copper.
- 10 ¶ And thou shalt eat and be full, and thou shalt bless Jehovah thy God for the good land which he hath given thee.
- 11 Beware lest thou forget Jehovah thy God, in not keeping his commandments, and his ordinances, and his statutes, which I command thee this day:
- 12 lest, when thou hast eaten and art full, and hast built goodly houses, and dwelt therein;
- 13 and when thy herds and thy flocks multiply, and thy silver and thy gold is multiplied, and all that thou hast is multiplied;
- 14 then thy heart be lifted up, and thou forget Jehovah thy God, who brought thee forth out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage;
- 15 who led thee through the great and terrible wilderness, *wherein were* fiery serpents and scorpions, and thirsty ground where was no water; who brought thee forth water out of the rock of flint;
- 16 who fed thee in the wilderness with manna, which thy fathers knew not; that he might humble thee, and that he might prove thee, to do thee good at thy latter end:
- 17 and *lest* thou say in thy heart, My power and the might of my hand hath gotten me this wealth.
- 18 But thou shalt remember Jehovah thy God, for it is he that giveth thee power to get wealth; that he may establish his covenant which he swore unto thy fathers, as at this day.
- 19 And it shall be, if thou shalt forget Jehovah thy God, and walk after other gods, and serve them, and worship them, I testify against you this day that ye shall surely perish.
- 20 As the nations that Jehovah maketh to perish before you, so shall ye perish; because ye would not hearken unto the voice of Jehovah your God.

### Deuteronomy 9

- 1 ¶ Hear, O Israel: thou art to pass over the Jordan this day, to go in to dispossess nations greater and mightier than thyself, cities great and fortified up to heaven,
- 2 a people great and tall, the sons of the Anakim, whom thou knowest, and of whom thou hast heard say, Who can stand before the sons of Anak?
- 3 Know therefore this day, that Jehovah thy God is he who goeth over before thee as a devouring fire; he will destroy them, and he will bring them down before thee: so shalt thou drive them out, and make them to perish quickly, as Jehovah hath spoken unto thee.

- 4 Speak not thou in thy heart, after that Jehovah thy God hath thrust them out from before thee, saying, For my righteousness Jehovah hath brought me in to possess this land; whereas for the wickedness of these nations Jehovah doth drive them out from before thee.
- 5 Not for thy righteousness, or for the uprightness of thy heart, dost thou go in to possess their land; but for the wickedness of these nations Jehovah thy God doth drive them out from before thee, and that he may establish the word which Jehovah swore unto thy fathers, to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob.
- 6 Know therefore, that Jehovah thy God giveth thee not this good land to possess it for thy righteousness; for thou art a stiffnecked people.
- 7 ¶ Remember, forget thou not, how thou provokedst Jehovah thy God to wrath in the wilderness: from the day that thou wentest forth out of the land of Egypt, until ye came unto this place, ye have been rebellious against Jehovah.
- 8 Also in Horeb ye provoked Jehovah to wrath, and Jehovah was angry with you to destroy you.
- 9 When I was gone up into the mount to receive the tables of stone, even the tables of the covenant which Jehovah made with you, then I abode in the mount forty days and forty nights; I did neither eat bread nor drink water.
- 10 And Jehovah delivered unto me the two tables of stone written with the finger of God; and on them *was written* according to all the words, which Jehovah spake with you in the mount out of the midst of the fire in the day of the assembly.
- 11 And it came to pass at the end of forty days and forty nights, that Jehovah gave me the two tables of stone, even the tables of the covenant.
- 12 And Jehovah said unto me, Arise, get thee down quickly from hence; for thy people that thou hast brought forth out of Egypt have corrupted themselves; they are quickly turned aside out of the way which I commanded them; they have made them a molten image.
- 13 Furthermore Jehovah spake unto me, saying, I have seen this people, and, behold, it is a stiffnecked people: let me alone, that I may destroy them, and blot out their name from under heaven; and I will make of thee a nation mightier and greater than they.
- 15 So I turned and came down from the mount, and the mount was burning with fire: and the two tables of the covenant were in my two hands.
- 16 And I looked, and, behold, ye had sinned against Jehovah your God; ye had made you a molten calf: ye had turned aside quickly out of the way which Jehovah had commanded you.
- 17 And I took hold of the two tables, and cast them out of my two hands, and brake them before your eyes.
- 18 And I fell down before Jehovah, as at the first, forty days and forty nights; I did neither eat bread nor drink water; because of all your sin which ye sinned, in doing that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah, to provoke him to anger.
- 19 For I was afraid of the anger and hot displeasure, wherewith Jehovah was wroth against you to destroy you. But Jehovah hearkened unto me that time also.
- 20 And Jehovah was very angry with Aaron to destroy him: and I prayed for Aaron also at the same time.
- 21 And I took your sin, the calf which ye had made, and burnt it with fire, and stamped it, grinding it very small, until it was as fine as dust: and I cast the dust thereof into the brook that descended out of the mount.
- 22 And at Taberah, and at Massah, and at Kibroth-hattaavah, ye provoked Jehovah to wrath.
- 23 And when Jehovah sent you from Kadesh-barnea, saying, Go up and possess the land which I have given you; then ye rebelled against the commandment of Jehovah your God, and ye believed him not, nor hearkened to his voice.
- 24 Ye have been rebellious against Jehovah from the day that I knew you.
- 25 So I fell down before Jehovah the forty days and forty nights that I fell down, because Jehovah had said he would destroy you.
- 26 And I prayed unto Jehovah, and said, O Lord Jehovah, destroy not thy people and thine inheritance, that thou hast redeemed through thy greatness, that thou hast brought forth out of Egypt with a mighty hand.
- 27 Remember thy servants, Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob; look not unto the stubbornness of this people, nor to their wickedness, nor to their sin,
- 28 lest the land whence thou broughtest us out say, Because Jehovah was not able to bring them into the land which he promised unto them, and because he hated them, he hath brought them out to slay them in the wilderness.
- 29 Yet they are thy people and thine inheritance, which thou broughtest out by thy great power and by thine outstretched arm.

- 4- The curse of forgetting. (8.)
- a- God's care in the wilderness noted.
  - b- Danger of prosperity again noted.
- 5- The danger of becoming self-righteous. (9.)
- a- Remember the reason God is destroying the Canaanites. vs. 4-6
  - b- Remember your own rebellious history. { Wwwwhhhaattt, Not Me!!! NEC }

---

Because of length of text, Ch. 10 & 11 are backed up.

**Deuteronomy 10**

- 1 ¶ At that time Jehovah said unto me, Hew thee two tables of stone like unto the first, and come up unto me into the mount, and make thee an ark of wood.
- 2 And I will write on the tables the words that were on the first tables which thou brakest, and thou shalt put them in the ark.
- 3 So I made an ark of acacia wood, and hewed two tables of stone like unto the first, and went up into the mount, having the two tables in my hand.
- 4 And he wrote on the tables, according to the first writing, the ten {1} commandments, which Jehovah spake unto you in the mount out of the midst of the fire in the day of the assembly: and Jehovah gave them unto me. {1} Heb words}
- 5 And I turned and came down from the mount, and put the tables in the ark which I had made; and there they are as Jehovah commanded me.
- 6 (And the children of Israel journeyed from {1} Beeroth Bene-jaakan to Moserah. There Aaron died, and there he was buried; and Eleazar his son ministered in the priest's office in his stead. {1} Or the wells of the children of Jaakan)
- 7 From thence they journeyed unto Gudgodah; and from Gudgodah to Jotbathah, a land of brooks of water.
- 8 At that time Jehovah set apart the tribe of Levi, to bear the ark of the covenant of Jehovah, to stand before Jehovah to minister unto him, and to bless in his name, unto this day.
- 9 Wherefore Levi hath no portion nor inheritance with his brethren; Jehovah is his inheritance, according as Jehovah thy God spake unto him.)
- 10 And I stayed in the mount, as at the first time, forty days and forty nights: and Jehovah hearkened unto me that time also; Jehovah would not destroy thee.
- 11 And Jehovah said unto me, Arise, take thy journey before the people; and they shall go in and possess the land, which I swore unto their fathers to give unto them.
- 12 ¶ And now, Israel, what doth Jehovah thy God require of thee, but to fear Jehovah thy God, to walk in all his ways, and to love him, and to serve Jehovah thy God with all thy heart and with all thy soul,
- 13 to keep the commandments of Jehovah, and his statutes, which I command thee this day for thy good?
- 14 Behold, unto Jehovah thy God belongeth heaven and the heaven of heavens, the earth, with all that is therein.
- 15 Only Jehovah had a delight in thy fathers to love them, and he chose their seed after them, even you {1} above all peoples, as at this day. {1} Or out of}
- 16 Circumcise therefore the foreskin of your heart, and be no more stiffnecked.
- 17 For Jehovah your God, he is God of gods, and Lord of lords, the great God, the mighty, and the terrible, who regardeth not persons, nor taketh reward.
- 18 He doth execute justice for the fatherless and widow, and loveth the sojourner, in giving him food and raiment.
- 19 Love ye therefore the sojourner; for ye were sojourners in the land of Egypt.
- 20 Thou shalt fear Jehovah thy God; him shalt thou serve; and to him shalt thou cleave, and by his name shalt thou swear.
- 21 He is thy praise, and he is thy God, that hath done for thee these great and terrible things, which thine eyes have seen.
- 22 Thy fathers went down into Egypt with threescore and ten persons; and now Jehovah thy God hath made thee as the stars of heaven for multitude.

- 1 ¶ Therefore thou shalt love Jehovah thy God, and keep his charge, and his statutes, and his ordinances, and his commandments, alway.
- 2 And know ye this day: for *I speak* not with your children that have not known, and that have not seen the *{1}* chastisement of Jehovah your God, his greatness, his mighty hand, and his outstretched arm, *{1}* *Or instruction*
- 3 and his signs, and his works, which he did in the midst of Egypt unto Pharaoh the king of Egypt, and unto all his land;
- 4 and what he did unto the army of Egypt, unto their horses, and to their chariots; how he made the water of the Red Sea to overflow them as they pursued after you, and how Jehovah hath destroyed them unto this day;
- 5 and what he did unto you in the wilderness, until ye came unto this place;
- 6 and what he did unto Dathan and Abiram, the sons of Eliab, the son of Reuben; how the earth opened its mouth, and swallowed them up, and their households, and their tents, and every living thing that followed them, in the midst of all Israel:
- 7 but your eyes have seen all the great work of Jehovah which he did.
- 8 ¶ Therefore shall ye keep all the commandment which I command thee this day, that ye may be strong, and go in and possess the land, whither ye go over to possess it;
- 9 and that ye may prolong your days in the land, which Jehovah sware unto your fathers to give unto them and to their seed, a land flowing with milk and honey.
- 10 For the land, whither thou goest in to possess it, is not as the land of Egypt, from whence ye came out, where thou sowedst thy seed, and wateredst it with thy foot, as a garden of herbs;
- 11 but the land, whither ye go over to possess it, is a land of hills and valleys, *and* drinketh water of the rain of heaven,
- 12 a land which Jehovah thy God *{1}* careth for: the eyes of Jehovah thy God are always upon it, from the beginning of the year even unto the end of the year. *{1}* *Heb seeketh after*
- 13 And it shall come to pass, if ye shall hearken diligently unto my commandments which I command you this day, to love Jehovah your God, and to serve him with all your heart and with all your soul,
- 14 that I will give the rain of your land in its season, the former rain and the latter rain, that thou mayest gather in thy grain, and thy new wine, and thine oil.
- 15 And I will give grass in thy fields for thy cattle, and thou shalt eat and be full.
- 16 Take heed to yourselves, lest your heart be deceived, and ye turn aside, and serve other gods, and worship them;
- 17 and the anger of Jehovah be kindled against you, and he shut up the heavens, so that there shall be no rain, and the land shall not yield its fruit; and ye perish quickly from off the good land which Jehovah giveth you.
- 18 ¶ Therefore shall ye lay up these my words in your heart and in your soul; and ye shall bind them for a sign upon your hand, and they shall be for frontlets between your eyes.
- 19 And ye shall teach them your children, talking of them, when thou sittest in thy house, and when thou walkest by the way, and when thou liest down, and when thou risest up.
- 20 And thou shalt write them upon the door-posts of thy house, and upon thy gates;
- 21 that your days may be multiplied, and the days of your children, in the land which Jehovah sware unto your fathers to give them, as the days of the heavens above the earth.
- 22 For if ye shall diligently keep all this commandment which I command you, to do it, to love Jehovah your God, to walk in all his ways, and to cleave unto him;
- 23 then will Jehovah drive out all these nations from before you, and ye shall dispossess nations greater and mightier than yourselves.
- 24 Every place whereon the sole of your foot shall tread shall be yours: from the wilderness, and Lebanon, from the river, the river Euphrates, even unto the *{1}* hinder sea shall be your border. *{1}* *That is western*
- 25 There shall no man be able to stand before you: Jehovah your God shall lay the fear of you and the dread of you upon all the land that ye shall tread upon, as he hath spoken unto you.
- 26 ¶ Behold, I set before you this day a blessing and a curse:
- 27 the blessing, if ye shall hearken unto the commandments of Jehovah your God, which I command you this day;
- 28 and the curse, if ye shall not hearken unto the commandments of Jehovah your God, but turn aside out of the way which I command you this day, to go after other gods, which ye have not known.
- 29 And it shall come to pass, when Jehovah thy God shall bring thee into the land whither thou goest to possess it, that thou shalt set the blessing upon mount Gerizim, and the curse upon mount Ebal.
- 30 Are they not beyond the Jordan, behind the way of the going down of the sun, in the land of the Canaanites that dwell in the Arabah, over against Gilgal, beside the *{1}* oaks of Moreh? *{1}* *Or terebinths*
- 31 For ye are to pass over the Jordan to go in to possess the land which Jehovah your God giveth you, and ye shall possess it, and dwell therein.
- 32 And ye shall observe to do all the statutes and the ordinances which I set before you this day.

- 6- Exhortations to keep the law (10.-11.)
  - a- God's will is summarized.
  - b- Their great privilege involves great responsibility. vs. 11:1-2
  - c- Again, blessing and expansion depends on obedience vs. 13-32

- 1 ¶ These are the statutes and the ordinances which ye shall observe to do in the land which Jehovah, the God of thy fathers, hath given thee to possess it, all the days that ye live upon the earth.
- 2 Ye shall surely destroy all the places wherein the nations that ye shall dispossess served their gods, upon the high mountains, and upon the hills, and under every green tree:
- 3 and ye shall break down their altars, and dash in pieces their *{I}* pillars, and burn their Asherim with fire; and ye shall hew down the graven images of their gods; and ye shall destroy their name out of that place. *{I}* Or *obelisks*}
- 4 Ye shall not do so unto Jehovah your God.
- 5 ¶ But unto the place which Jehovah your God shall choose out of all your tribes, to put his name there, even unto his habitation shall ye seek, and thither thou shalt come;
- 6 and thither ye shall bring your burnt-offerings, and your sacrifices, and your tithes, and the heave-offering of your hand, and your vows, and your freewill-offerings, and the firstlings of your herd and of your flock:
- 7 and there ye shall eat before Jehovah your God, and ye shall rejoice in all that ye put your hand unto, ye and your households, wherein Jehovah thy God hath blessed thee.
- 8 Ye shall not do after all the things that we do here this day, every man whatsoever is right in his own eyes;
- 9 for ye are not as yet come to the rest and to the inheritance, which Jehovah thy God giveth thee.
- 10 But when ye go over the Jordan, and dwell in the land which Jehovah your God causeth you to inherit, and he giveth you rest from all your enemies round about, so that ye dwell in safety;
- 11 then it shall come to pass that to the place which Jehovah your God shall choose, to cause his name to dwell there, thither shall ye bring all that I command you: your burnt-offerings, and your sacrifices, your tithes, and the heave-offering of your hand, and all your choice vows which ye vow unto Jehovah.
- 12 And ye shall rejoice before Jehovah your God, ye, and your sons, and your daughters, and your men-servants, and your maid-servants, and the Levite that is within your gates, forasmuch as he hath no portion nor inheritance with you.
- 13 Take heed to thyself that thou offer not thy burnt-offerings in every place that thou seest;
- 14 but in the place which Jehovah shall choose in one of thy tribes, there thou shalt offer thy burnt-offerings, and there thou shalt do all that I command thee.
- 15 Notwithstanding, thou mayest kill and eat flesh within all thy gates, after all the desire of thy soul, according to the blessing of Jehovah thy God which he hath given thee: the unclean and the clean may eat thereof, as of the gazelle, and as of the hart.
- 16 Only ye shall not eat the blood; thou shalt pour it out upon the earth as water.
- 17 Thou mayest not eat within thy gates the tithe of thy grain, or of thy new wine, or of thine oil, or the firstlings of thy herd or of thy flock, nor any of thy vows which thou vowest, nor thy freewill-offerings, nor the heave-offering of thy hand;
- 18 but thou shalt eat them before Jehovah thy God in the place which Jehovah thy God shall choose, thou, and thy son, and thy daughter, and thy man-servant, and thy maid-servant, and the Levite that is within thy gates: and thou shalt rejoice before Jehovah thy God in all that thou puttest thy hand unto.
- 19 Take heed to thyself that thou forsake not the Levite as long as thou livest in thy land.
- 20 When Jehovah thy God shall enlarge thy border, as he hath promised thee, and thou shalt say, I will eat flesh, because thy soul desireth to eat flesh; thou mayest eat flesh, after all the desire of thy soul.
- 21 If the place which Jehovah thy God shall choose, to put his name there, be too far from thee, then thou shalt kill of thy herd and of thy flock, which Jehovah hath given thee, as I have commanded thee; and thou mayest eat within thy gates, after all the desire of thy soul.
- 22 Even as the gazelle and as the hart is eaten, so thou shalt eat thereof: the unclean and the clean may eat thereof alike.
- 23 Only be sure that thou eat not the blood: for the blood is the life; and thou shalt not eat the life with the flesh.
- 24 Thou shalt not eat it; thou shalt pour it out upon the earth as water.
- 25 Thou shalt not eat it; that it may go well with thee, and with thy children after thee, when thou shalt do that which is right in the eyes of Jehovah.
- 26 Only thy holy things which thou hast, and thy vows, thou shalt take, and go unto the place which Jehovah shall choose:
- 27 and thou shalt offer thy burnt-offerings, the flesh and the blood, upon the altar of Jehovah thy God; and the blood of thy sacrifices shall be poured out upon the altar of Jehovah thy God; and thou shalt eat the flesh.
- 28 Observe and hear all these words which I command thee, that it may go well with thee, and with thy children after thee for ever, when thou doest that which is good and right in the eyes of Jehovah thy God.

C- Special law for life in Canaan. (12.-26.)

1- Observe but one place of sacrifice vs. 12:1-28

a- Purpose--to eliminate idolatry.  
And unify Jehovah worship. vs. 10

b- Killing animals for food is proper anywhere.

**Deuteronomy 12. (Cont.)**

- 29 When Jehovah thy God shall cut off the nations from before thee, whither thou goest in to dispossess them, and thou dispossessest them, and dwellest in their land;
- 30 take heed to thyself that thou be not ensnared *{1}* to follow them, after that they are destroyed from before thee; and that thou inquire not after their gods, saying, How do these nations serve their gods? *{2}* even so will I do likewise. *{1}* *Heb after them* 2) *Or that I also may do likewise*
- 31 Thou shalt not do so unto Jehovah thy God: for every abomination to Jehovah, which he hateth, have they done unto their gods; for even their sons and their daughters do they burn in the fire to their gods.
- 32 What thing soever I command you, that shall ye observe to do: thou shalt not add thereto, nor diminish from it.

**Deuteronomy 13**

- 1 ¶ If there arise in the midst of thee a prophet, or a dreamer of dreams, and he give thee a sign or a wonder,
- 2 and the sign or the wonder come to pass, whereof he spake unto thee, saying, Let us go after other gods, which thou hast not known, and let us serve them;
- 3 thou shalt not hearken unto the words of that prophet, or unto that dreamer of dreams: for Jehovah your God proveth you, to know whether ye love Jehovah your God with all your heart and with all your soul.
- 4 Ye shall walk after Jehovah your God, and fear him, and keep his commandments, and obey his voice, and ye shall serve him, and cleave unto him.
- 5 And that prophet, or that dreamer of dreams, shall be put to death, because he hath spoken *{1}* rebellion against Jehovah your God, who brought you out of the land of Egypt, and redeemed thee out of the house of bondage, to draw thee aside out of the way which Jehovah thy God commanded thee to walk in. So shalt thou put away the evil from the midst of thee. *{1}* *Heb turning aside*
- 6 ¶ If thy brother, the son of thy mother, or thy son, or thy daughter, or the wife of thy bosom, or thy friend, that is as thine own soul, entice thee secretly, saying, Let us go and serve other gods, which thou hast not known, thou, nor thy fathers;
- 7 of the gods of the peoples that are round about you, nigh unto thee, or far off from thee, from the one end of the earth even unto the other end of the earth;
- 8 thou shalt not consent unto him, nor hearken unto him; neither shall thine eye pity him, neither shalt thou spare, neither shalt thou conceal him:
- 9 but thou shalt surely kill him; thy hand shall be first upon him to put him to death, and afterwards the hand of all the people.
- 10 And thou shalt stone him to death with stones, because he hath sought to draw thee away from Jehovah thy God, who brought thee out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage.
- 11 And all Israel shall hear, and fear, and shall do not more any such wickedness as this is in the midst of thee.
- 12 ¶ If thou shalt hear tell *{1}* concerning one of thy cities, which Jehovah thy God giveth thee to dwell there, saying, *{1}* *Or in*
- 13 Certain *{1}* base fellows are gone out from the midst of thee, and have drawn away the inhabitants of their city, saying, Let us go and serve other gods, which ye have not known; *{1}* *Heb sons of worthlessness*
- 14 then shalt thou inquire, and make search, and ask diligently; and, behold, if it be truth, and the thing certain, that such abomination is wrought in the midst of thee,
- 15 thou shalt surely smite the inhabitants of that city with the edge of the sword, *{1}* destroying it utterly, and all that is therein and the cattle thereof, with the edge of the sword. *{1}* *Heb devoting it*
- 16 And thou shalt gather all the spoil of it into the midst of the street thereof, and shalt burn with fire the city, and all the spoil thereof *{1}* every whit, unto Jehovah thy God: and it shall be a *{2}* heap for ever; it shall not be built again. *{1}* *Or as a whole burnt-offering* 2) *Or mound; Heb tel*
- 17 And there shall cleave nought of the devoted thing to thy hand; that Jehovah may turn from the fierceness of his anger, and show thee mercy, and have compassion upon thee, and multiply thee, as he hath sworn unto thy fathers;
- 18 when thou shalt hearken to the voice of Jehovah thy God, to keep all his commandments which I command thee this day, to do that which is right in the eyes of Jehovah thy God.



## 2- Warning of Idolatry (12:29 - 13:18)

- a- Beware of miracle-workers who violate the law. vs. 13:1-5  
{What, not even a \$65,000,000. jet because I'm afraid of commercial travel "Creflo Dollar"}
- b- Idolaters are to be stoned<sup>a</sup>. vs. 13:9-10

---

<sup>a</sup> Today, the idolaters who worship the god of narcissism are all stoned. We have a multitude of stoned idolaters stumbling and mumbling on our streets, today. NEC

- 1 ¶ Ye are the children of Jehovah your God: ye shall not cut yourselves, nor make any baldness between your eyes for the dead.
- 2 For thou art a holy people unto Jehovah thy God, and Jehovah hath chosen thee to be a people for his own possession, *{1}* above all peoples that are upon the face of the earth. *{1}* Or out of
- 3 Thou shalt not eat any abominable thing.
- 4 These are the beasts which ye may eat: the ox, the sheep, and the goat,
- 5 the hart, and the gazelle, and the roebuck, and the wild goat, and the pygarg, and the antelope, and the chamois.
- 6 And every beast that parteth the hoof, and hath the hoof cloven in two, *and {1}* cheweth the cud, among the beasts, that may ye eat. *{1}* Heb bringeth up }
- 7 Nevertheless these ye shall not eat of them that chew the cud, or of them that have the hoof cloven: the camel, and the hare, and the coney; because they chew the cud but part not the hoof, they are unclean unto you.
- 8 And the swine, because he parteth the hoof but cheweth not the cud, he is unclean unto you: of their flesh ye shall not eat, and their carcasses ye shall not touch.
- 9 These ye may eat of all that are in the waters: whatsoever hath fins and scales may ye eat;
- 10 and whatsoever hath not fins and scales ye shall not eat; it is unclean unto you.
- 11 Of all clean birds ye may eat.
- 12 But these are they of which ye shall not eat: the eagle, and the gier-eagle, and the ospray,
- 13 and the glade, and the falcon, and the kite after its kind,
- 14 and every raven after its kind,
- 15 and the ostrich, and the night-hawk, and the sea-mew, and the hawk after its kind,
- 16 the little owl, and the great owl, and the horned owl,
- 17 and the pelican, and the vulture, and the cormorant,
- 18 and the stork, and the heron after its kind, and the hoopoe, and the bat.
- 19 And all winged creeping things are unclean unto you: they shall not be eaten.
- 20 Of all clean birds ye may eat.
- 21 Ye shall not eat of anything that dieth of itself: thou mayest give it unto the sojourner that is within thy gates, that he may eat it; or thou mayest sell it unto a foreigner: for thou art a holy people unto Jehovah thy God. Thou shalt not boil a kid in its mother's milk.
- 22 ¶ Thou shalt surely tithe all the increase of thy seed, that which cometh forth from the field year by year.
- 23 And thou shalt eat before Jehovah thy God, in the place which he shall choose, to cause his name to dwell there, the tithe of thy grain, of thy new wine, and of thine oil, and the firstlings of thy herd and of thy flock; that thou mayest learn to fear Jehovah thy God always.
- 24 And if the way be too long for thee, so that thou art not able to carry it, because the place is too far from thee, which Jehovah thy God shall choose, to set his name there, when Jehovah thy God shall bless thee;
- 25 then shalt thou turn it into money, and bind up the money in thy hand, and shalt go unto the place which Jehovah thy God shall choose:
- 26 and thou shalt bestow the money for whatsoever thy soul desireth, for oxen, or for sheep, or for wine, or for strong drink, or for whatsoever thy soul asketh of thee; and thou shalt eat there before Jehovah thy God, and thou shalt rejoice, thou and thy household.
- 27 And the Levite that is within thy gates, thou shalt not forsake him; for he hath no portion nor inheritance with thee.
- 28 At the end of every three years thou shalt bring forth all the tithe of thine increase in the same year, and shalt lay it up within thy gates:
- 29 and the Levite, because he hath no portion nor inheritance with thee, and the sojourner, and the fatherless, and the widow, that are within thy gates, shall come, and shall eat and be satisfied; that Jehovah thy God may bless thee in all the work of thy hand which thou doest.

#### Deuteronomy 15

- 1 ¶ At the end of every seven years thou shalt make a release.
- 2 And this is the manner of the release: every creditor shall release that which he hath lent unto his neighbor; he shall not exact it of his neighbor and his brother; because Jehovah's release hath been proclaimed.
- 3 Of a foreigner thou mayest exact it: but whatsoever of thine is with thy brother thy hand shall *{1}* release. *{1}* Or release: save when there etc}
- 4 Howbeit there shall be no poor with thee; (for Jehovah will surely bless thee in the land which Jehovah thy God giveth thee for an inheritance to possess it;)
- 5 if only thou diligently hearken unto the voice of Jehovah thy God, to observe to do all this commandment which I command thee this day.
- 6 For Jehovah thy God will bless thee, as he promised thee: and thou shalt lend unto many nations, but thou shalt not borrow; and thou shalt rule over many nations, but they shall not rule over thee.
- 7 If there be with thee a poor man, one of thy brethren, within any of thy gates in thy land which Jehovah thy God giveth thee, thou shalt not harden thy heart, nor shut thy hand from thy poor brother;

- 8 but thou shalt surely open thy hand unto him, and shalt surely lend him sufficient for his need *in that* which he wanteth.
- 9 Beware that there be not a base thought in thy heart, saying, The seventh year, the year of release, is at hand; and thine eye be evil against thy poor brother, and thou give him nought; and he cry unto Jehovah against thee, and it be sin unto thee.
- 10 Thou shalt surely give him, and thy heart shall not be grieved when thou givest unto him; because that for this thing Jehovah thy God will bless thee in all thy work, and in all that thou puttest thy hand unto.
- 11 For the poor will never cease out of the land: therefore I command thee, saying, Thou shalt surely open thy hand unto thy brother, to thy needy, and to thy poor, in thy land.
- 12 ¶ If thy brother, a Hebrew man, or a Hebrew woman, be sold unto thee, and serve thee six years; then in the seventh year thou shalt let him go free from thee.
- 13 And when thou lettest him go free from thee, thou shalt not let him go empty:
- 14 thou shalt furnish him liberally out of thy flock, and out of thy threshing-floor, and out of thy winepress; as Jehovah thy God hath blessed thee thou shalt give unto him.
- 15 And thou shalt remember that thou wast a bondman in the land of Egypt, and Jehovah thy God redeemed thee: therefore I command thee this thing to-day.
- 16 And it shall be, if he say unto thee, I will not go out from thee; because he loveth thee and thy house, because he is well with thee;
- 17 then thou shalt take an awl, and thrust it through his ear unto the door, and he shall be thy {1} servant for ever. And also unto thy {2} maid-servant thou shalt do likewise. {1} Or *bond-man* 2) Or *bond-woman*}
- 18 It shall not seem hard unto thee, when thou lettest him go free from thee; for to the double of the hire of a hireling hath he served thee six years: and Jehovah thy God will bless thee in all that thou doest.
- 19 ¶ All the firstling males that are born of thy herd and of thy flock thou shalt sanctify unto Jehovah thy God: thou shalt do no work with the firstling of thy herd, nor shear the firstling of thy flock.
- 20 Thou shalt eat it before Jehovah thy God year by year in the place which Jehovah shall choose, thou and thy household.
- 21 And if it have any blemish, *as if it be* lame or blind, any ill blemish whatsoever, thou shalt not sacrifice it unto Jehovah thy God.
- 22 Thou shalt eat it within thy gates: the unclean and the clean *shall eat it* alike, as the gazelle, and as the hart.
- 23 Only thou shalt not eat the blood thereof; thou shalt pour it out upon the ground as water.

---

### 3- Special dietary laws. (14.)

- a- Proper animal meat--those that part hoof and chew cud.
- b- Proper fish--those with scales and fins.
- c- Proper fowl--no birds of prey.
- d- Insects--no flying insects.
- e- Special exhortation to tithe to the Levites and strangers and poor. vs. 22-29  
Every 3 years - vs. 28

### 4- The sabbatic year of liberation (15.)

- a- Liberality to the poor stressed.
- b- Servants to be released with liberality. vs. 12-15

**Deuteronomy 16**

- 1 ¶ Observe the month of Abib, and keep the passover unto Jehovah thy God; for in the month of Abib Jehovah thy God brought thee forth out of Egypt by night.
- 2 And thou shalt sacrifice the passover unto Jehovah thy God, of the flock and the herd, in the place which Jehovah shall choose, to cause his name to dwell there.
- 3 Thou shalt eat no leavened bread with it; seven days shalt thou eat unleavened bread therewith, even the bread of affliction; for thou camest forth out of the land of Egypt in haste: that thou mayest remember the day when thou camest forth out of the land of Egypt all the days of thy life.
- 4 And there shall be no leaven seen with thee in all thy borders seven days; neither shall any of the flesh, which thou sacrificest the first day at even, remain all night until the morning.
- 5 Thou mayest not sacrifice the passover within any of thy gates, which Jehovah thy God giveth thee;
- 6 but at the place which Jehovah thy God shall choose, to cause his name to dwell in, there thou shalt sacrifice the passover at even, at the going down of the sun, at the season that thou camest forth out of Egypt.
- 7 And thou shalt *{1}* roast and eat it in the place which Jehovah thy God shall choose: and thou shalt turn in the morning, and go unto thy tents. *{1} Or boil*
- 8 Six days thou shalt eat unleavened bread; and on the seventh day shall be a solemn assembly to Jehovah thy God; thou shalt do no work *therein*.
- 9 Seven weeks shalt thou number unto thee: from the time thou beginnest to put the sickle to the standing grain shalt thou begin to number seven weeks.
- 10 And thou shalt keep the feast of weeks unto Jehovah thy God *{1}* with a tribute of a freewill-offering of thy hand, which thou shalt give, according as Jehovah thy God blesseth thee: *{1} Or after the measure of the etc*
- 11 and thou shalt rejoice before Jehovah thy God, thou, and thy son, and thy daughter, and thy man-servant, and thy maid-servant, and the Levite that is within thy gates, and the sojourner, and the fatherless, and the widow, that are in the midst of thee, in the place which Jehovah thy God shall choose, to cause his name to dwell there.
- 12 And thou shalt remember that thou wast a bondman in Egypt: and thou shalt observe and do these statutes.
- 13 Thou shalt keep the feast of *{1}* tabernacles seven days, after that thou hast gathered in from thy threshing-floor and from thy winepress: *{1} Heb booths*
- 14 and thou shalt rejoice in thy feast, thou, and thy son, and thy daughter, and thy man-servant, and thy maid-servant, and the Levite, and the sojourner, and the fatherless, and the widow, that are within thy gates.
- 15 Seven days shalt thou keep a feast unto Jehovah thy God in the place which Jehovah shall choose; because Jehovah thy God will bless thee in all thine increase, and in all the work of thy hands, and thou shalt be altogether joyful.
- 16 Three times in a year shall all thy males appear before Jehovah thy God in the place which he shall choose: in the feast of unleavened bread, and in the feast of weeks, and in the feast of tabernacles; and they shall not appear before Jehovah empty:
- 17 every man *{1}* shall give as he is able, according to the blessing of Jehovah thy God which he hath given thee. *{1} Heb according to the gift of his hand*
- 18 ¶ Judges and officers shalt thou make thee in all thy gates, which Jehovah thy God giveth thee, according to thy tribes; and they shall judge the people with righteous judgment.
- 19 Thou shalt not wrest justice: thou shalt not respect persons; neither shalt thou take a bribe; for a bribe doth blind the eyes of the wise, and pervert the *{1}* words of the righteous. *{1} Or cause*
- 20 *{1}* That which is altogether just shalt thou follow, that thou mayest live, and inherit the land which Jehovah thy God giveth thee. *{1} Heb Justice, justice*
- 21 Thou shalt not plant thee an Asherah of any kind of tree beside the altar of Jehovah thy God, which thou shalt make thee.
- 22 Neither shalt thou set thee up a *{1}* pillar; which Jehovah thy God hateth. *{1} Or obelisk*

**Deuteronomy 17**

- 1 ¶ Thou shalt not sacrifice unto Jehovah thy God an ox, or a sheep, wherein is a blemish, *or* anything evil; for that is an abomination unto Jehovah thy God.
- 2 If there be found in the midst of thee, within any of thy gates which Jehovah thy God giveth thee, man or woman, that doeth that which is evil in the sight of Jehovah thy God, in transgressing his covenant,
- 3 and hath gone and served other gods, and worshipped them, or the sun, or the moon, or any of the host of heaven, which I have not commanded;
- 4 and it be told thee, and thou hast heard of it, then shalt thou inquire diligently; and, behold, if it be true, and the thing certain, that such abomination is wrought in Israel,
- 5 then shalt thou bring forth that man or that woman, who hath done this evil thing, unto thy gates, even the man or the woman; and thou shalt stone them to death with stones.
- 6 At the mouth of two witnesses, or three witnesses, shall he that is to die be put to death; at the mouth of one witness he shall not be put to death.
- 7 The hand of the witnesses shall be first upon him to put him to death, and afterward the hand of all the people. So thou shalt put away the evil from the midst of thee.

- 8 ¶ If there arise a matter too hard for thee in judgment, between blood and blood, between plea and plea, and between stroke and stroke, being matters of controversy within thy gates; then shalt thou arise, and get thee up unto the place which Jehovah thy God shall choose;
- 9 and thou shalt come unto the priests the Levites, and unto the judge that shall be in those days: and thou shalt inquire; and they shall show thee the sentence of judgment.
- 10 And thou shalt do according to the tenor of the sentence which they shall show thee from that place which Jehovah shall choose; and thou shalt observe to do according to all that they shall teach thee:
- 11 according to the tenor of the law which they shall teach thee, and according to the judgment which they shall tell thee, thou shalt do; thou shalt not turn aside from the sentence which they shall show thee, to the right hand, nor to the left.
- 12 And the man that doeth presumptuously, in not hearkening unto the priest that standeth to minister there before Jehovah thy God, or unto the judge, even that man shall die: and thou shalt put away the evil from Israel.
- 13 And all the people shall hear, and fear, and do no more presumptuously.
- 14 ¶ When thou art come unto the land which Jehovah thy God giveth thee, and shalt possess it, and shalt dwell therein, and shalt say, I will set a king over me, like all the nations that are round about me;
- 15 thou shalt surely set him king over thee, whom Jehovah thy God shall choose: one from among thy brethren shalt thou set king over thee; thou mayest not put a foreigner over thee, who is not thy brother.
- 16 Only he shall not multiply horses to himself, nor cause the people to return to Egypt, to the end that he may multiply horses; forasmuch as Jehovah hath said unto you, Ye shall henceforth return no more that way.
- 17 Neither shall he multiply wives to himself, that his heart turn not away: neither shall he greatly multiply to himself silver and gold.
- 18 And it shall be, when he sitteth upon the throne of his kingdom, that he shall write him a copy of this law in a book, out of *that which is* before the priests the Levites:
- 19 and it shall be with him, and he shall read therein all the days of his life; that he may learn to fear Jehovah his God, to keep all the words of this law and these statutes, to do them;
- 20 that his heart be not lifted up above his brethren, and that he turn not aside from the commandment, to the right hand, or to the left: to the end that he may prolong his days in his kingdom, he and his children, in the midst of Israel.

---

5- The three great feasts. (16.)

- a- Spring, summer, and fall feasts noted.
- b- All males to appear before the Lord with offerings

6- The three classes of leaders. (16:18.-17:20.)

- a- Judges--to mete out justice (16:18.-17:7.)
  - b- Priests--to judge difficult matters vs. 8-13
  - c- Kings--to be one whom the LORD chooses vs. 14-20
- 1) Not to multiply horses.  
It inclines the king away from depending on the Lord's strength.
  - 2) Not to multiply wives.  
It inclines the king to other gods (when heather wives are brought in).
  - 3) Not to [greatly] multiply silver and gold.  
Turns ones heart away from God (to mammon - the money god).

**Deuteronomy 18**

- 1 ¶ The priests the Levites, {1} even all the tribe of Levi, shall have no portion nor inheritance with Israel: they shall eat the offerings of Jehovah made by fire, and his inheritance. {1} Or, and}
- 2 And they shall have no inheritance among their brethren: Jehovah is their inheritance, as he hath spoken unto them.
- 3 And this shall be the priests' due from the people, from them that offer a sacrifice, whether it be ox or sheep, that they shall give unto the priest the shoulder, and the two cheeks, and the maw.
- 4 The first-fruits of thy grain, of thy new wine, and of thine oil, and the first of the fleece of thy sheep, shalt thou give him.
- 5 For Jehovah thy God hath chosen him out of all thy tribes, to stand to minister in the name of Jehovah, him and his sons for ever.
- 6 And if a Levite come from any of thy gates out of all Israel, where he sojourneth, and come with all the desire of his soul unto the place which Jehovah shall choose;
- 7 then he shall minister in the name of Jehovah his God, as all his brethren the Levites do, who stand there before Jehovah.
- 8 They shall have like portions to eat, besides that which cometh of the sale of his patrimony.
- 9 ¶ When thou art come into the land which Jehovah thy God giveth thee, thou shalt not learn to do after the abominations of those nations.
- 10 There shall not be found with thee any one that maketh his son or his daughter to pass through the fire, one that useth divination, one that practiseth augury, or an enchanter, or a sorcerer,
- 11 or a charmer, or a consulter with a familiar spirit, or a wizard, or a necromancer.
- 12 For whosoever doeth these things is an abomination unto Jehovah: and because of these abominations Jehovah thy God doth drive them out from before thee.
- 13 Thou shalt be perfect with Jehovah thy God.
- 14 For these nations, that thou shalt dispossess, hearken unto them that practise augury, and unto diviners; but as for thee, Jehovah thy God hath not suffered thee so to do.
- 15 ¶ Jehovah thy God will raise up unto thee a prophet from the midst of thee, of thy brethren, like unto me; unto him ye shall hearken;
- 16 according to all that thou desiredst of Jehovah thy God in Horeb in the day of the assembly, saying, Let me not hear again the voice of Jehovah my God, neither let me see this great fire any more, that I die not.
- 17 And Jehovah said unto me, They have well said that which they have spoken.
- 18 I will raise them up a prophet from among their brethren, like unto thee; and I will put my words in his mouth, and he shall speak unto them all that I shall command him.
- 19 And it shall come to pass, that whosoever will not hearken unto my words which he shall speak in my name, I will require it of him.
- 20 But the prophet, that shall speak a word presumptuously in my name, which I have not commanded him to speak, or that shall speak in the name of other gods, that same prophet shall die.
- 21 And if thou say in thy heart, How shall we know the word which Jehovah hath not spoken?
- 22 when a prophet speaketh in the name of Jehovah, if the thing follow not, nor come to pass, that is the thing which Jehovah hath not spoken: the prophet hath spoken it presumptuously, thou shalt not be afraid of him.

**Deuteronomy 19**

- 1 ¶ When Jehovah thy God shall cut off the nations, whose land Jehovah thy God giveth thee, and thou succeedest them, and dwellest in their cities, and in their houses;
- 2 thou shalt set apart three cities for thee in the midst of thy land, which Jehovah thy God giveth thee to possess it.
- 3 Thou shalt prepare thee the way, and divide the borders of thy land, which Jehovah thy God causeth thee to inherit, into three parts, that every manslayer may flee thither.
- 4 And this is the case of the manslayer, that shall flee thither and live: whoso killeth his neighbor unawares, and hated him not in time past;
- 5 as when a man goeth into the forest with his neighbor to hew wood, and his hand fetcheth a stroke with the axe to cut down the tree, and the {1} head slippeth from {2} the helve, and lighteth upon his neighbor, so that he dieth; he shall flee unto one of these cities and live: {1} Heb iron 2) Or the tree}
- 6 lest the avenger of blood pursue the manslayer, while his heart is hot, and overtake him, because the way is long, and smite him mortally; whereas he was not worthy of death, inasmuch as he hated him not in time past.
- 7 Wherefore I command thee, saying, Thou shalt set apart three cities for thee.
- 8 And if Jehovah thy God enlarge thy border, as he hath sworn unto thy fathers, and give thee all the land which he promised to give unto thy fathers;
- 9 if thou shalt keep all this commandment to do it, which I command thee this day, to love Jehovah thy God, and to walk ever in his ways; then shalt thou add three cities more for thee, besides these three:
- 10 that {1} innocent blood be not shed in the midst of thy land, which Jehovah thy God giveth thee for an inheritance, and so blood be upon thee. {1} Or the blood of an innocent man}
- 11 But if any man hate his neighbor, and lie in wait for him, and rise up against him, and smite him mortally so that

- he dieth, and he flee into one of these cities;  
 12 then the elders of his city shall send and fetch him thence, and deliver him into the hand of the avenger of blood, that he may die.  
 13 Thine eye shall not pity him, but thou shalt put away *{1}* the innocent blood from Israel, that it may go well with thee. *{1}* *Or the blood of the innocent*  
 14 ¶ Thou shalt not remove thy neighbor's landmark, which they of old time have set, in thine inheritance which thou shalt inherit, in the land that Jehovah thy God giveth thee to possess it.  
 15 One witness shall not rise up against a man for any iniquity, or for any sin, in any sin that he sinneth: at the mouth of two witnesses, or at the mouth of three witnesses, shall a matter be established.  
 16 If an unrighteous witness rise up against any man to testify against him of *{1}* wrong-doing, *{1}* *Or rebellion*; See De 13:5  
 17 then both the men, between whom the controversy is, shall stand before Jehovah, before the priests and the judges that shall be in those days;  
 18 and the judges shall make diligent inquisition: and, behold, if the witness be a false witness, and have testified falsely against his brother;  
 19 then shall ye do unto him, as he had thought to do unto his brother: so shalt thou put away the evil from the midst of thee.  
 20 And those that remain shall hear, and fear, and shall henceforth commit no more any such evil in the midst of thee.  
 21 And thine eyes shall not pity; life *shall go* for life, eye for eye, tooth for tooth, hand for hand, foot for foot.

## 7- The place of leaders. (18.)

Levites shall have no inheritance but the LORD.

- a- Priests are to be respected and supported.  
Given the firstfruits.
- b- Prophets are to be heeded.
- c- Prophecy of Messiah coming as a Prophet. 18:15,18.

## 8- The law of murder. (19.)

- a- Cities of refuge to be set up for accidental slayers.
- b- False witnesses to be slain.
- c- Principle of justice stated.

vs. 21 and (Ex 21).

Because of length of text, Ch. 20 & 21 are backed up.

### Deuteronomy 20

- 1 ¶ When thou goest forth to battle against thine enemies, and seest horses, and chariots, *and* a people more than thou, thou shalt not be afraid of them; for Jehovah thy God is with thee, who brought thee up out of the land of Egypt.  
 2 And it shall be, when ye draw nigh unto the battle, that the priest shall approach and speak unto the people,  
 3 and shall say unto them, Hear, O Israel, ye draw nigh this day unto battle against your enemies: let not your heart faint; fear not, nor tremble, neither be ye affrighted at them;  
 4 for Jehovah your God is he that goeth with you, to fight for you against your enemies, to save you.  
 5 And the officers shall speak unto the people, saying, What man is there that hath built a new house, and hath not dedicated it? let him go and return to his house, lest he die in the battle, and another man dedicate it.  
 6 And what man is there that hath planted a vineyard, and hath not used the fruit thereof? let him go and return unto his house, lest he die in the battle, and another man use the fruit thereof.  
 7 And what man is there that hath betrothed a wife, and hath not taken her? let him go and return unto his house, lest he die in the battle, and another man take her.  
 8 And the officers shall speak further unto the people, and they shall say, What man is there that is fearful and faint-hearted? let him go and return unto his house, lest his brethren's heart melt as his heart.  
 9 And it shall be, when the officers have made an end of speaking unto the people, that they shall appoint captains of hosts at the head of the people.  
 10 ¶ When thou drawest nigh unto a city to fight against it, then proclaim peace unto it.  
 11 And it shall be, if it make thee answer of peace, and open unto thee, then it shall be, that all the people that are found therein shall become *{1}* tributary unto thee, and shall serve thee. *{1}* *Or subject to taskwork*  
 12 And if it will make no peace with thee, but will make war against thee, then thou shalt besiege it:  
 13 and when Jehovah thy God delivereth it into thy hand, thou shalt smite every male thereof with the edge of the sword:  
 14 but the women, and the little ones, and the cattle, and all that is in the city, even all the spoil thereof, shalt thou take for a prey unto thyself; and thou shalt eat the spoil of thine enemies, which Jehovah thy God hath given

thee.

- 15 Thus shalt thou do unto all the cities which are very far off from thee, which are not of the cities of these nations.
- 16 But of the cities of these peoples, that Jehovah thy God giveth thee for an inheritance, thou shalt save alive nothing that breatheth;
- 17 but thou shalt *{1}* utterly destroy them: the Hittite, and the Amorite, the Canaanite, and the Perizzite, the Hivite, and the Jebusite; as Jehovah thy God hath commanded thee; *{1}* *Heb devote*
- 18 that they teach you not to do after all their abominations, which they have done unto their gods; so would ye sin against Jehovah your God.
- 19 When thou shalt besiege a city a long time, in making war against it to take it, thou shalt not destroy the trees thereof by wielding an axe against them; for thou mayest eat of them, and thou shalt not cut them down; for is the tree of the field man, that it should be besieged of thee?
- 20 Only the trees of which thou knowest that they are not trees for food, thou shalt destroy and cut them down; and thou shalt build bulwarks against the city that maketh war with thee, until it fall.

### Deuteronomy 21

- 1 ¶ If one be found slain in the land which Jehovah thy God giveth thee to possess it, lying in the field, and it be not known who hath smitten him;
- 2 then thy elders and thy judges shall come forth, and they shall measure unto the cities which are round about him that is slain:
- 3 and it shall be, that the city which is nearest unto the slain man, even the elders of that city shall take a heifer of the herd, which hath not been wrought with, and which hath not drawn in the yoke;
- 4 and the elders of that city shall bring down the heifer unto a valley with running water, which is neither plowed nor sown, and shall break the heifer's neck there in the valley.
- 5 And the priests the sons of Levi shall come near; for them Jehovah thy God hath chosen to minister unto him, and to bless in the name of Jehovah; and according to their word shall every controversy and every stroke be.
- 6 And all the elders of that city, who are nearest unto the slain man, shall wash their hands over the heifer whose neck was broken in the valley;
- 7 and they shall answer and say, Our hands have not shed this blood, neither have our eyes seen it.
- 8 Forgive, O Jehovah, thy people Israel, whom thou hast redeemed, and suffer not innocent blood *to remain* in the midst of thy people Israel. And the blood shall be forgiven them.
- 9 So shalt thou put away the innocent blood from the midst of thee, when thou shalt do that which is right in the eyes of Jehovah.
- 10 ¶ When thou goest forth to battle against thine enemies, and Jehovah thy God delivereth them into thy hands, and thou carriest them away captive,
- 11 and seest among the captives a beautiful woman, and thou hast a desire unto her, and wouldest take her to thee to wife;
- 12 then thou shalt bring her home to thy house; and she shall shave her head, and pare her nails;
- 13 and she shall put the raiment of her captivity from off her, and shall remain in thy house, and bewail her father and her mother a full month: and after that thou shalt go in unto her, and be her husband, and she shall be thy wife.
- 14 And it shall be, if thou have no delight in her, then thou shalt let her go whither she will; but thou shalt not sell her at all for money, thou shalt not deal with her *{1}* as a slave, because thou hast humbled her. *{1}* *Or as a chattel*
- 15 ¶ If a man have two wives, the one beloved, and the other hated, and they have borne him children, both the beloved and the hated; and if the first-born son be hers that was hated;
- 16 then it shall be, in the day that he causeth his sons to inherit that which he hath, that he may not make the son of the beloved the first-born *{1}* before the son of the hated, who is the first-born: *{1}* *Or during the lifetime of*
- 17 but he shall acknowledge the first-born, the son of the hated, by giving him a double portion of all that he hath; for he is the beginning of his strength; the right of the first-born is his.
- 18 ¶ If a man have a stubborn and rebellious son, that will not obey the voice of his father, or the voice of his mother, and, though they chasten him, will not hearken unto them;
- 19 then shall his father and his mother lay hold on him, and bring him out unto the elders of his city, and unto the gate of his place;
- 20 and they shall say unto the elders of his city, This our son is stubborn and rebellious, he will not obey our voice; he is a glutton, and a drunkard.
- 21 And all the men of his city shall stone him to death with stones: so shalt thou put away the evil from the midst of thee; and all Israel shall hear, and fear.
- 22 And if a man have committed a sin worthy of death, and he be put to death, and thou hang him on a tree;
- 23 his body shall not remain all night upon the tree, but thou shalt surely bury him the same day; for he that is hanged is *{1}* accursed of God; that thou defile not thy land which Jehovah thy God giveth thee for an inheritance. *{1}* *Heb the curse of God*



- 9- Commands concerning warfare. (20.)
- a- Several exemptions noted vs. 1-9
    - 1) Any man that built a new house and hath not dedicated it. vs. 5
    - 2) Any man that hath planted a vineyard, and hath not yet eaten of it. vs. 6
    - 3) Any man that hath betrothed a wife, and hath not taken her. vs. 7
    - 4) Any man that is fearful and fainthearted. vs. 8
  - b- Their role as God's executioner in the land. vs. 17
  - c- Provision against unnecessary slaying. vs. 11
- Fringe cities, vs. 11, people of spared cities to be slaves.
- 10- Laws concerning private and social life. (21.-26.)
- a- To respect life and innocent blood vs. 21:1-9
  - b- Respect ,for women captives vs. 10-14
  - c- Respect for the firstborn vs. 15-17
  - d- Stoning of a rebellious son vs. 18-23

Because of length of text, Ch. 22 is backed up.

### Deuteronomy 22

- 1 ¶ Thou shalt not see thy brother's ox or his sheep go astray, and hide thyself from them: thou shalt surely bring them again unto thy brother.
- 2 And if thy brother be not nigh unto thee, or if thou know him not, then thou shalt bring it home to thy house, and it shall be with thee until thy brother seek after it, and thou shalt restore it to him.
- 3 And so shalt thou do with his ass; and so shalt thou do with his garment; and so shalt thou do with every lost thing of thy brother's, which he hath lost, and thou hast found: thou mayest not hide thyself.
- 4 Thou shalt not see thy brother's ass or his ox fallen down by the way, and hide thyself from them: thou shalt surely help him to lift them up again.
- 5 ¶ A woman shall not wear that which pertaineth unto a man, neither shall a man put on a woman's garment; for whosoever doeth these things is an abomination unto Jehovah thy God.
- 6 If a bird's nest chance to be before thee in the way, in any tree or on the ground, with young ones or eggs, and the dam sitting upon the young, or upon the eggs, thou shalt not take the dam with the young:
- 7 thou shalt surely let the dam go, but the young thou mayest take unto thyself; that it may be well with thee, and that thou mayest prolong thy days.
- 8 When thou buildest a new house, then thou shalt make a battlement for thy roof, that thou bring not blood upon thy house, if any man fall from thence.
- 9 Thou shalt not sow thy vineyard with two kinds of seed, lest the {1} whole fruit be {2} forfeited, the seed which thou hast sown, and the increase of the vineyard. {1} *Heb fulness* 2) *Heb consecrated*;
- 10 Thou shalt not plow with an ox and an ass together.
- 11 Thou shalt not wear a mingled stuff, wool and linen together.
- 12 Thou shalt make thee {1} fringes upon the four borders of thy vesture, wherewith thou coverest thyself. {1} *Or twisted threads*;
- 13 ¶ If any man take a wife, and go in unto her, and hate her,
- 14 and lay shameful things to her charge, and bring up an evil name upon her, and say, I took this woman, and when I came nigh to her, I found not in her the tokens of virginity;
- 15 then shall the father of the damsel, and her mother, take and bring forth the tokens of the damsel's virginity unto the elders of the city in the gate;
- 16 and the damsel's father shall say unto the elders, I gave my daughter unto this man to wife, and he hateth her;
- 17 and, lo, he hath laid shameful things *to her charge*, saying, I found not in thy daughter the tokens of virginity; and yet these are the tokens of my daughter's virginity. And they shall spread the garment before the elders of the city.
- 18 And the elders of that city shall take the man and chastise him;
- 19 and they shall fine him a hundred *shekels* of silver, and give them unto the father of the damsel, because he hath brought up an evil name upon a virgin of Israel: and she shall be his wife; he may not put her away all his days.
- 20 But if this thing be true, that the tokens of virginity were not found in the damsel;
- 21 then they shall bring out the damsel to the door of her father's house, and the men of her city shall stone her to death with stones, because she hath wrought folly in Israel, to play the harlot in her father's house: so shalt thou put away the evil from the midst of thee.
- 22 If a man be found lying with a woman married to a husband, then they shall both of them die, the man that lay with the woman, and the woman: so shalt thou put away the evil from Israel.
- 23 If there be a damsel that is a virgin betrothed unto a husband, and a man find her in the city, and lie with her;

- 24 then ye shall bring them both out unto the gate of that city, and ye shall stone them to death with stones; the damsel, because she cried not, being in the city; and the man, because he hath humbled his neighbor's wife: so thou shalt put away the evil from the midst of thee.
- 25 But if the man find the damsel that is betrothed in the field, and the man force her, and lie with her; then the man only that lay with her shall die:
- 26 but unto the damsel thou shalt do nothing; there is in the damsel no sin worthy of death: for as when a man riseth against his neighbor, and slayeth him, even so is this matter;
- 27 for he found her in the field, the betrothed damsel cried, and there was none to save her.
- 28 If a man find a damsel that is a virgin, that is not betrothed, and lay hold on her, and lie with her, and they be found;
- 29 then the man that lay with her shall give unto the damsel's father fifty *shekels* of silver, and she shall be his wife, because he hath humbled her; he may not put her away all his days.
- 30 A man shall not take his father's wife, and shall not uncover his father's skirt.

**Deuteronomy 23**

- 1 ¶ He that is wounded in the stones, or hath his privy member cut off, shall not enter into the assembly of Jehovah.
- 2 A bastard shall not enter into the assembly of Jehovah; even to the tenth generation shall none of his enter into the assembly of Jehovah.
- 3 An Ammonite or a Moabite shall not enter into the assembly of Jehovah; even to the tenth generation shall none belonging to them enter into the assembly of Jehovah for ever:
- 4 because they met you not with bread and with water in the way, when ye came forth out of Egypt, and because they hired against thee Balaam the son of Beor from Pethor of {1} Mesopotamia, to curse thee. {1} *Heb Aram-naharaim*}
- 5 Nevertheless Jehovah thy God would not hearken unto Balaam; but Jehovah thy God turned the curse into a blessing unto thee, because Jehovah thy God loved thee.
- 6 Thou shalt not seek their peace nor their prosperity all thy days for ever.
- 7 Thou shalt not abhor an Edomite; for he is thy brother: thou shalt not abhor an Egyptian, because thou wast a sojourner in his land.
- 8 The children of the third generation that are born unto them shall enter into the assembly of Jehovah.
- 9 ¶ When thou goest forth in camp against thine enemies, then thou shalt keep thee from every evil thing.
- 10 If there be among you any man, that is not clean by reason of that which chanceth him by night, then shall he go abroad out of the camp, he shall not come within the camp:
- 11 but it shall be, when evening cometh on, he shall bathe himself in water; and when the sun is down, he shall come within the camp.
- 12 Thou shalt have a place also without the camp, whither thou shalt go forth abroad:
- 13 and thou shalt have a {1} paddle among thy weapons; and it shall be, when thou sittest down abroad, thou shalt dig therewith, and shalt turn back and cover that which cometh from thee: {1} *Or shovel*}
- 14 for Jehovah thy God walketh in the midst of thy camp, to deliver thee, and to give up thine enemies before thee; therefore shall thy camp be holy, that he may not see {1} an unclean thing in thee, and turn away from thee. {1} *Heb nakedness of anything*}
- 15 ¶ Thou shalt not deliver unto his master a servant that is escaped from his master unto thee:
- 16 he shall dwell with thee, in the midst of thee, in the place which he shall choose within one of thy gates, where it pleaseth him best: thou shalt not oppress him.
- 17 There shall be no {1} prostitute of the daughters of Israel, neither shall there be a {2} sodomite of the sons of Israel. {1} *Heb kedeshah*; See Ge 38:21. 2) *Heb kadesh*}
- 18 Thou shalt not bring the hire of a harlot, or the wages of a dog, into the house of Jehovah thy God for any vow: for even both these are an abomination unto Jehovah thy God.
- 19 Thou shalt not lend upon interest to thy brother; interest of money, interest of victuals, interest of anything that is lent upon interest:
- 20 unto a foreigner thou mayest lend upon interest; but unto thy brother thou shalt not lend upon interest, that Jehovah thy God may bless thee in all that thou puttest thy hand unto, in the land whither thou goest in to possess it.
- 21 When thou shalt vow a vow unto Jehovah thy God, thou shalt not be slack to pay it: for Jehovah thy God will surely require it of thee; and it would be sin in thee.
- 22 But if thou shalt forbear to vow, it shall be no sin in thee.
- 23 That which is gone out of thy lips thou shalt observe and do; according as thou hast vowed unto Jehovah thy God, a freewill-offering, which thou hast promised with thy mouth.
- 24 When thou comest into thy neighbor's vineyard, then thou mayest eat of grapes thy fill at thine own pleasure; but thou shalt not put any in thy vessel.
- 25 When thou comest into thy neighbor's standing grain, then thou mayest pluck the ears with thy hand; but thou shalt not move a sickle unto thy neighbor's standing grain.

- e- Respect for property rights vs. 22:1-12
- f- Respect for marriage partners vs. 10-30
- g- Law of cleanliness (23:1-14)
- h- The Bill Of Rights. (23:15.-25:19.)
  - 1) Rights of fugitive slaves vs. 23:15-16
    - An escaped slave shall not be returned to his master;
    - The slave will dwell with the finder, freely
  - 2) Prostitution, homosexuality forbidden. vs. 17-18
    - Any money from prostitution is an abomination to the LORD.
  - 3) Interest on loans vs. 19-20
    - No interest charged to brother.
  - 4) Keeping vows to the Lord vs. 21-23
  - 5) Eating from 'neighbors' open fields vs. 24-25
    - Don't fill vessels. Don't cut grain stalks, pluck the grain sheaths.

- 1 ¶ When a man taketh a wife, and marrieth her, then it shall be, if she find no favor in his eyes, because he hath found some unseemly thing in her, that he shall write her a bill of divorcement, and give it in her hand, and send her out of his house.
- 2 And when she is departed out of his house, she may go and be another man's *wife*.
- 3 And if the latter husband hate her, and write her a bill of divorcement, and give it in her hand, and send her out of his house; or if the latter husband die, who took her to be his wife;
- 4 her former husband, who sent her away, may not take her again to be his wife, after that she is defiled; for that is abomination before Jehovah: and thou shalt not cause the land to sin, which Jehovah thy God giveth thee for an inheritance.
- 5 ¶ When a man taketh a new wife, he shall not go out in the host, neither shall he be charged with any business: he shall be free at home one year, and shall cheer his wife whom he hath taken.
- 6 No man shall take the mill or the upper millstone to pledge; for he taketh *a man's* life to pledge.
- 7 If a man be found stealing any of his brethren of the children of Israel, and he deal with him {1} as a slave, or sell him; then that thief shall die: so shalt thou put away the evil from the midst of thee. {1} *Or as a chattel*
- 8 Take heed in the plague of leprosy, that thou observe diligently, and do according to all that the priests the Levites shall teach you: as I commanded them, so ye shall observe to do.
- 9 Remember what Jehovah thy God did unto Miriam, by the way as ye came forth out of Egypt.
- 10 When thou dost lend thy neighbor any manner of loan, thou shalt not go into his house to fetch his pledge.
- 11 Thou shalt stand without, and the man to whom thou dost lend shall bring forth the pledge without unto thee.
- 12 And if he be a poor man, thou shalt not sleep with his pledge;
- 13 thou shalt surely restore to him the pledge when the sun goeth down, that he may sleep in his garment, and bless thee: and it shall be righteousness unto thee before Jehovah thy God.
- 14 ¶ Thou shalt not oppress a hired servant that is poor and needy, whether he be of thy brethren, or of thy sojourners that are in thy land within thy gates:
- 15 in his day thou shalt give him his hire, neither shall the sun go down upon it; for he is poor, and setteth his heart upon it: lest he cry against thee unto Jehovah, and it be sin unto thee.
- 16 The fathers shall not be put to death for the children, neither shall the children be put to death for the fathers: every man shall be put to death for his own sin.
- 17 Thou shalt not wrest the justice *due* to the sojourner, *or* to the fatherless, nor take the widow's raiment to pledge;
- 18 but thou shalt remember that thou wast a bondman in Egypt, and Jehovah thy God redeemed thee thence: therefore I command thee to do this thing.
- 19 When thou reapest thy harvest in thy field, and hast forgot a sheaf in the field, thou shalt not go again to fetch it: it shall be for the sojourner, for the fatherless, and for the widow; that Jehovah thy God may bless thee in all the work of thy hands.
- 20 When thou beatest thine olive-tree, thou shalt not go over the boughs again: it shall be for the sojourner, for the fatherless, and for the widow.
- 21 When thou gatherest *the grapes of* thy vineyard, thou shalt not glean it after thee: it shall be for the sojourner, for the fatherless, and for the widow.
- 22 And thou shalt remember that thou wast a bondman in the land of Egypt: therefore I command thee to do this thing.

- |     |   |            |
|-----|---|------------|
| 6)  | Divorce and remarriage rights<br>Limitations on divorce;<br>required a legal document;<br>required some uncleanness on the wife's part;<br>remarriage to a former wife is forbidden.  | vs. 24:1-4 |
| 7)  | Bridegroom privileges<br>Stay home from war for first year after marriage.  | vs. 5      |
| 8)  | Means of livelihood protected<br>equity in relation to loans, (not to be too strict)<br>in requiring pledges, prohibits the taking of<br>anything in pledge which is necessary to the<br>poor for the support of existence; | vs. 6      |
| 9)  | Penalty for kidnapping<br>DEATH!  | vs. 7      |
| 10) | Quarantining the diseased<br>Isolate the diseased outside the camp.   | vs. 8-9    |
| 11) | Lending to a brother<br>Consider the brother's need   | vs. 10-13  |
| 12) | Civil treatment of servants   | vs. 14-15  |
| 13) | Individual responsibility for sin before God<br>Each individual bears his own sin.  | vs. 16     |
| 14) | Treatment of strangers<br>Leave gleanings of crop for poor.   | vs. 17-22  |

- 1 ¶ If there be a controversy between men, and they come unto judgment, and *the judges* judge them; then they shall justify the righteous, and condemn the wicked;
- 2 and it shall be, if the wicked man be worthy to be beaten, that the judge shall cause him to lie down, and to be beaten before his face, according to his wickedness, by number.
- 3 Forty stripes he may give him, he shall not exceed; lest, if he should exceed, and beat him above these with many stripes, then thy brother should seem vile unto thee.
- 4 Thou shalt not muzzle the ox when he treadeth out *the grain*.
- 5 ¶ If brethren dwell together, and one of them die, and have no son, the wife of the dead shall not be married without unto a stranger: her husband's brother shall go in unto her, and take her to him to wife, and perform the duty of a husband's brother unto her.
- 6 And it shall be, that the first-born that she beareth shall succeed in the name of his brother that is dead, that his name be not blotted out of Israel.
- 7 And if the man like not to take his brother's wife, then his brother's wife shall go up to the gate unto the elders, and say, My husband's brother refuseth to raise up unto his brother a name in Israel; he will not perform the duty of a husband's brother unto me.
- 8 Then the elders of his city shall call him, and speak unto him: and if he stand, and say, I like not to take her;
- 9 then shall his brother's wife come unto him in the presence of the elders, and loose his shoe from off his foot, and spit in his face; and she shall answer and say, So shall it be done unto the man that doth not build up his brother's house.
- 10 And his name shall be called in Israel, The house of him that hath his shoe loosed.
- 11 When men strive together one with another, and the wife of the one draweth near to deliver her husband out of the hand of him that smiteth him, and putteth forth her hand, and taketh him by the secrets;
- 12 then thou shalt cut off her hand, thine eye shall have no pity.
- 13 ¶ Thou shalt not have in thy bag diverse weights, a great and a small.
- 14 Thou shalt not have in thy house diverse measures, a great and a small.
- 15 A perfect and just weight shalt thou have; a perfect and just measure shalt thou have: that thy days may be long in the land which Jehovah thy God giveth thee.
- 16 For all that do such things, *even* all that do unrighteously, are an abomination unto Jehovah thy God.
- 17 Remember what Amalek did unto thee by the way as ye came forth out of Egypt;
- 18 how he met thee by the way, and smote the hindmost of thee, all that were feeble behind thee, when thou wast faint and weary; and he feared not God.
- 19 Therefore it shall be, when Jehovah thy God hath given thee rest from all thine enemies round about, in the land which Jehovah thy God giveth thee for an inheritance to possess it, that thou shalt blot out the remembrance of Amalek from under heaven; thou shalt not forget.

- |   |            |
|---|------------|
| 15) Limitation on whipping<br>40 strips but no more.  | vs. 25:1-3 |
| 16) Principle in muzzling an ox<br>Do not muzzle the oxen when it treads<br>out the grain! Ref. 1Co 9:9.                                  | vs. 4      |
| 17) Levirate marriage responsibilities<br>Brother of dead husband to raise up a family for the<br>deceased brother by the brothers widow. | vs. 5-10   |
| 18) Indecency.  | vs. 11-12  |
| 19) Honesty in business.<br>No double standards!  | vs. 13-16  |
| 20) Remember the degraded character of the Amalekites   | vs. 17-19  |

- 1 ¶ And it shall be, when thou art come in unto the land which Jehovah thy God giveth thee for an inheritance, and possessest it, and dwellest therein,
- 2 that thou shalt take of the first of all the fruit of the ground, which thou shalt bring in from thy land that Jehovah thy God giveth thee; and thou shalt put it in a basket, and shalt go unto the place which Jehovah thy God shall choose, to cause his name to dwell there.
- 3 And thou shalt come unto the priest that shall be in those days, and say unto him, I profess this day unto Jehovah thy God, that I am come unto the land which Jehovah sware unto our fathers to give us.
- 4 And the priest shall take the basket out of thy hand, and set it down before the altar of Jehovah thy God.
- 5 And thou shalt answer and say before Jehovah thy God, A {1} Syrian {2} ready to perish was my father; and he went down into Egypt, and sojourned there, few in number; and he became there a nation, great, mighty, and populous. {1} Heb Aramean 2) Or wandering; Or lost}
- 6 And the Egyptians dealt ill with us, and afflicted us, and laid upon us hard bondage:
- 7 and we cried unto Jehovah, the God of our fathers, and Jehovah heard our voice, and saw our affliction, and our toil, and our oppression;
- 8 and Jehovah brought us forth out of Egypt with a mighty hand, and with an outstretched arm, and with great terribleness, and with signs, and with wonders;
- 9 and he hath brought us into this place, and hath given us this land, a land flowing with milk and honey.
- 10 And now, behold, I have brought the first of the fruit of the ground, which thou, O Jehovah, hast given me. And thou shalt set it down before Jehovah thy God, and worship before Jehovah thy God:
- 11 and thou shalt rejoice in all the good which Jehovah thy God hath given unto thee, and unto thy house, thou, and the Levite, and the sojourner that is in the midst of thee.
- 12 ¶ When thou hast made an end of tithing all the tithe of thine increase in the third year, which is the year of tithing, then thou shalt give it unto the Levite, to the sojourner, to the fatherless, and to the widow, that they may eat within thy gates, and be filled.
- 13 And thou shalt say before Jehovah thy God, I have put away the hallowed things out of my house, and also have given them unto the Levite, and unto the sojourner, to the fatherless, and to the widow, according to all thy commandment which thou hast commanded me: I have not transgressed any of thy commandments, neither have I forgotten them:
- 14 I have not eaten thereof in my mourning, neither have I put away thereof, being unclean, nor given thereof for the dead: I have hearkened to the voice of Jehovah my God; I have done according to all that thou hast commanded me.
- 15 Look down from thy holy habitation, from heaven, and bless thy people Israel, and the ground which thou hast given us, as thou swarest unto our fathers, a land flowing with milk and honey.
- 16 ¶ This day Jehovah thy God commandeth thee to do these statutes and ordinances: thou shalt therefore keep and do them with all thy heart, and with all thy soul.
- 17 Thou hast avouched Jehovah this day to be thy God, and that thou wouldest walk in his ways, and keep his statutes, and his commandments, and his ordinances, and hearken unto his voice:
- 18 and Jehovah hath avouched thee this day to be a people for his own possession, as he hath promised thee, and that thou shouldest keep all his commandments;
- 19 and to make thee high above all nations that he hath made, {1} in praise, and in name, and in honor; and that thou mayest be a holy people unto Jehovah thy God, as he hath spoken. {1} Or for a praise, and for a name, and for an honor}



- |    |  |           |
|----|--|-----------|
| i- | Consecration of all firstfruits to God                                     | (26.)     |
| 1) | Because of what God has done.<br>Brought them out of Egypt.                | vs. 1-11  |
| 2) | Because of what God will do.<br>Will make them a holy and exhalted nation. | vs. 12-19 |

- 1 ¶ And Moses and the elders of Israel commanded the people, saying, Keep all the commandment which I command you this day.
- 2 And it shall be on the day when ye shall pass over the Jordan unto the land which Jehovah thy God giveth thee, that thou shalt set thee up great stones, and plaster them with plaster:
- 3 and thou shalt write upon them all the words of this law, when thou art passed over; that thou mayest go in unto the land which Jehovah thy God giveth thee, a land flowing with milk and honey, as Jehovah, the God of thy fathers, hath promised thee.
- 4 And it shall be, when ye are passed over the Jordan, that ye shall set up these stones, which I command you this day, in mount Ebal, and thou shalt plaster them with plaster.
- 5 And there shalt thou build an altar unto Jehovah thy God, an altar of stones: thou shalt lift up no iron *tool* upon them.
- 6 Thou shalt build the altar of Jehovah thy God of *{1}* unhewn stones; and thou shalt offer burnt-offerings thereon unto Jehovah thy God: *{1}* *Heb whole*
- 7 and thou shalt sacrifice peace-offerings, and shalt eat there; and thou shalt rejoice before Jehovah thy God.
- 8 And thou shalt write upon the stones all the words of this law very plainly.
- 9 And Moses and the priests the Levites spake unto all Israel, saying, Keep silence, and hearken, O Israel: this day thou art become the people of Jehovah thy God.
- 10 Thou shalt therefore obey the voice of Jehovah thy God, and do his commandments and his statutes, which I command thee this day.
- 11 ¶ And Moses charged the people the same day, saying,
- 12 These shall stand upon mount Gerizim to bless the people, when ye are passed over the Jordan: Simeon, and Levi, and Judah, and Issachar, and Joseph, and Benjamin.
- 13 And these shall stand upon mount Ebal for the curse: Reuben, Gad, and Asher, and Zebulun, Dan, and Naphtali.
- 14 And the Levites shall answer, and say unto all the men of Israel with a loud voice,
- 15 Cursed be the man that maketh a graven or molten image, an abomination unto Jehovah, the work of the hands of the craftsman, and setteth it up in secret. And all the people shall answer and say, Amen.
- 16 Cursed be he that setteth light by his father or his mother. And all the people shall say, Amen.
- 17 Cursed be he that removeth his neighbor's landmark. And all the people shall say, Amen.
- 18 Cursed be he that maketh the blind to wander out of the way. And all the people shall say, Amen.
- 19 Cursed be he that wresteth the justice *due* to the sojourner, fatherless, and widow. And all the people shall say, Amen.
- 20 Cursed be he that lieth with his father's wife, because he hath uncovered his father's skirt. And all the people shall say, Amen.
- 21 Cursed be he that lieth with any manner of beast. And all the people shall say, Amen.
- 22 Cursed be he that lieth with his sister, the daughter of his father, or the daughter of his mother. And all the people shall say, Amen.
- 23 Cursed be he that lieth with his mother-in-law. And all the people shall say, Amen.
- 24 Cursed be he that smiteth his neighbor in secret. And all the people shall say, Amen.
- 25 Cursed be he that taketh a bribe to slay an innocent person. And all the people shall say, Amen.
- 26 Cursed be he that confirmeth not the words of this law to do them. And all the people shall say, Amen.

III. Moses' Third Discourse--Prophetic.

(27.-30.)

A- The curses of the law proclaimed. (27.)

1- A public exhibition of the law vs. 1-8.  
Write the whole law on 'plaster'  
prior to crossing into the land.

2- A public proclamation of the law vs. 9-26

a- Blessings shouted from Mt. Gerizim by 6 tribes.  
Simeon, Levi, Judah, Isachar, Joseph, Benjamin - vs. 12

b- Curses shouted from Mt. Ebal by 6 tribes.  
Reuben, Gad, Asher, Zebulun, Dan, Naphtali - vs. 13

---

Because of length of text, Ch. 28 is backed up.

**Deuteronomy 28**

- 1 ¶ And it shall come to pass, if thou shalt hearken diligently unto the voice of Jehovah thy God, to observe to do all his commandments which I command thee this day, that Jehovah thy God will set thee on high above all the nations of the earth:
- 2 and all these blessings shall come upon thee, and overtake thee, if thou shalt hearken unto the voice of Jehovah thy God.
- 3 Blessed shalt thou be in the city, and blessed shalt thou be in the field.
- 4 Blessed shall be the fruit of thy body, and the fruit of thy ground, and the fruit of thy beasts, the increase of thy cattle, and the young of thy flock.
- 5 Blessed shall be thy basket and thy kneading-trough.
- 6 Blessed shalt thou be when thou comest in, and blessed shalt thou be when thou goest out.
- 7 Jehovah will cause thine enemies that rise up against thee to be smitten before thee: they shall come out against thee one way, and shall flee before thee seven ways.
- 8 Jehovah will command the blessing upon thee in thy barns, and in all that thou puttest thy hand unto; and he will bless thee in the land which Jehovah thy God giveth thee.
- 9 Jehovah will establish thee for a holy people unto himself, as he hath sworn unto thee; if thou shalt keep the commandments of Jehovah thy God, and walk in his ways.
- 10 And all the peoples of the earth shall see that thou art called by the name of Jehovah; and they shall be afraid of thee.
- 11 And Jehovah will make thee plenteous for good, in the fruit of thy body, and in the fruit of thy cattle, and in the fruit of thy ground, in the land which Jehovah sware unto thy fathers to give thee.
- 12 Jehovah will open unto thee his good *{1}* treasure the heavens, to give the rain of thy land in its season, and to bless all the work of thy hand: and thou shalt lend unto many nations, and thou shalt not borrow. *{1}* Or *treasury*
- 13 And Jehovah will make thee the head, and not the tail; and thou shalt be above only, and thou shalt not be beneath; if thou shalt hearken unto the commandments of Jehovah thy God, which I command thee this day, to observe and to do *them*,
- 14 and shalt not turn aside from any of the words which I command you this day, to the right hand, or to the left, to go after other gods to serve them.
- 15 ¶ But it shall come to pass, if thou wilt not hearken unto the voice of Jehovah thy God, to observe to do all his commandments and his statutes which I command thee this day, that all these curses shall come upon thee, and overtake thee.
- 16 Cursed shalt thou be in the city, and cursed shalt thou be in the field.
- 17 Cursed shall be thy basket and thy kneading-trough.
- 18 Cursed shall be the fruit of thy body, and the fruit of thy ground, the increase of thy cattle, and the young of thy flock.
- 19 Cursed shalt thou be when thou comest in, and cursed shalt thou be when thou goest out.
- 20 Jehovah will send upon thee cursing, discomfiture, and rebuke, in all that thou puttest thy hand unto to do, until thou be destroyed, and until thou perish quickly; because of the evil of thy doings, whereby thou hast forsaken me.
- 21 Jehovah will make the pestilence cleave unto thee, until he have consumed thee from off the land, whither thou goest in to possess it.
- 22 Jehovah will smite thee with consumption, and with fever, and with inflammation, and with fiery heat, and with *{1}* the sword, and with blasting, and with mildew; and they shall pursue thee until thou perish. *{1}* Or *as otherwise read drought*
- 23 And thy heaven that is over thy head shall be brass, and the earth that is under thee shall be iron.
- 24 Jehovah will make the rain of thy land powder and dust: from heaven shall it come down upon thee, until thou be destroyed.
- 25 Jehovah will cause thee to be smitten before thine enemies; thou shalt go out one way against them, and shalt flee seven ways before them: and thou shalt be *{1}* tossed to and from among all the kingdoms of the earth. *{1}* Or *a terror unto all*
- 26 And thy dead body shall be food unto all birds of the heavens, and unto the beasts of the earth; and there shall be none to frighten them away.
- 27 Jehovah will smite thee with the boil of Egypt, and with the *{1}* emerods, and with the scurvy, and with the itch, whereof thou canst not be healed. *{1}* Or *tumors*; Or *plague boils*
- 28 Jehovah will smite thee with madness, and with blindness, and with astonishment of heart;

- 29 and thou shalt grope at noonday, as the blind gropeth in darkness, and thou shalt not prosper in thy ways: and thou shalt be only oppressed and robbed alway, and there shall be none to save thee.
- 30 Thou shalt betroth a wife, and another man shall lie with her: thou shalt build a house, and thou shalt not dwell therein: thou shalt plant a vineyard, and shalt not use the fruit thereof.
- 31 Thine ox shall be slain before thine eyes, and thou shalt not eat thereof: thine ass shall be violently taken away from before thy face, and shall not be restored to thee: thy sheep shall be given unto thine enemies, and thou shalt have none to save thee.
- 32 Thy sons and thy daughters shall be given unto another people; and thine eyes shall look, and fail with longing for them all the day: and there shall be nought in the power of thy hand.
- 33 The fruit of thy ground, and all thy labors, shall a nation which thou knowest not eat up; and thou shalt be only oppressed and crushed alway;
- 34 so that thou shalt be mad for the sight of thine eyes which thou shalt see.
- 35 Jehovah will smite thee in the knees, and in the legs, with a sore boil, whereof thou canst not be healed, from the sole of thy foot unto the crown of thy head.
- 36 Jehovah will bring thee, and thy king whom thou shalt set over thee, unto a nation that thou hast not known, thou nor thy fathers; and there shalt thou serve other gods, wood and stone.
- 37 And thou shalt become an astonishment, a proverb, and a byword, among all the peoples whither Jehovah shall lead thee away.
- 38 Thou shalt carry much seed out into the field, and shalt gather little in; for the locust shall consume it.
- 39 Thou shalt plant vineyards and dress them, but thou shalt neither drink of the wine, nor gather *the grapes*; for the worm shall eat them.
- 40 Thou shalt have olive-trees throughout all thy borders, but thou shalt not anoint thyself with the oil; for thine olive shall cast *its fruit*.
- 41 Thou shalt beget sons and daughters, but they shall not be thine; for they shall go into captivity.
- 42 All thy trees and the fruit of thy ground shall the locust possess.
- 43 The sojourner that is in the midst of thee shall mount up above thee higher and higher; and thou shalt come down lower and lower.
- 44 He shall lend to thee, and thou shalt not lend to him: he shall be the head, and thou shalt be the tail.
- 45 ¶ And all these curses shall come upon thee, and shall pursue thee, and overtake thee, till thou be destroyed; because thou hearkenedst not unto the voice of Jehovah thy God, to keep his commandments and his statutes which he commanded thee:
- 46 and they shall be upon thee for a sign and for a wonder, and upon thy seed for ever.
- 47 Because thou servedst not Jehovah thy God with joyfulness, and with gladness of heart, by reason of the abundance of all things;
- 48 therefore shalt thou serve thine enemies that Jehovah shall send against thee, in hunger, and in thirst, and in nakedness, and in want of all things: and he shall put a yoke of iron upon thy neck, until he have destroyed thee.
- 49 Jehovah will bring a nation against thee from far, from the end of the earth, as the eagle flieth; a nation whose tongue thou shalt not understand;
- 50 a nation of fierce countenance, that shall not regard the person of the old, nor show favor to the young,
- 51 and shall eat the fruit of thy cattle, and the fruit of thy ground, until thou be destroyed; that also shall not leave thee grain, new wine, or oil, the increase of thy cattle, or the young of thy flock, until they have caused thee to perish.
- 52 And they shall besiege thee in all thy gates, until thy high and fortified walls come down, wherein thou trustedst, throughout all thy land; and they shall besiege thee in all thy gates throughout all thy land, which Jehovah thy God hath given thee.
- 53 And thou shalt eat the fruit of thine own body, the flesh of thy sons and of thy daughters, whom Jehovah thy God hath given thee, in the siege and in the distress wherewith thine enemies shall distress thee.
- 54 The man that is tender among you, and very delicate, his eye shall be evil toward his brother, and toward the wife of his bosom, and toward the remnant of his children whom he hath remaining;
- 55 so that he will not give to any of them of the flesh of his children whom he shall eat, because he hath nothing left him, in the siege and in the distress wherewith thine enemy shall distress thee in all thy gates.
- 56 The tender and delicate woman among you, who would not adventure to set the sole of her foot upon the ground for delicateness and tenderness, her eye shall be evil toward the husband of her bosom, and toward her son, and toward her daughter,
- 57 and toward her *{1}* young one that cometh out from between her feet, and toward her children whom she shall bear; for she shall eat them for want of all things secretly, in the siege and in the distress wherewith thine enemy shall distress thee in thy gates. *{1} Or after-birth*
- 58 If thou wilt not observe to do all the words of this law that are written in this book, that thou mayest fear this glorious and fearful name, JEHOVAH THY GOD;
- 59 then Jehovah will make thy plagues wonderful, and the plagues of thy seed, even great plagues, and of long continuance, and sore sicknesses, and of long continuance.
- 60 And he will bring upon thee again all the diseases of Egypt, which thou wast afraid of; and they shall cleave unto thee.
- 61 Also every sickness, and every plague, which is not written in the book of this law, them will Jehovah bring upon thee, until thou be destroyed.
- 62 And ye shall be left few in number, whereas ye were as the stars of heaven for multitude; because thou didst not hearken unto the voice of Jehovah thy God.
- 63 And it shall come to pass, that, as Jehovah rejoiced over you to do you good, and to multiply you, so Jehovah will rejoice over you to cause you to perish, and to destroy you; and ye shall be plucked from off the land whither thou goest in to possess it.
- 64 And Jehovah will scatter thee among all peoples, from the one end of the earth even unto the other end of the earth; and there thou shalt serve other gods, which thou hast not known, thou nor thy fathers, even wood and stone.

- 65 And among these nations shalt thou find no ease, and there shall be no rest for the sole of thy foot: but Jehovah will give thee there a trembling heart, and failing of eyes, and pining of soul;
- 66 and thy life shall hang in doubt before thee; and thou shalt fear night and day, and shalt have no assurance of thy life.
- 67 In the morning thou shalt say, Would it were even! and at even thou shalt say, Would it were morning! for the fear of thy heart which thou shalt fear, and for the sight of thine eyes which thou shalt see.
- 68 And Jehovah will bring thee into Egypt again with ships, by the way whereof I said unto thee, Thou shalt see it no more again: and there ye shall sell yourselves unto your enemies for bondmen and for bondwomen, and no man shall buy you.

---

## B- The results of obedience and disobedience. (28.)

- |     |  |                        |
|-----|--|------------------------|
| 1-  | The blessings of obedience   | (1-14                  |
| a - | Prosperity. Above all nations.<br>Heavens give rain for obedience. | vs. 1<br>vs. 12.       |
| b - | Victory over enemies.  | vs. 7                  |
| 2-  | Curses for disobedience.<br>(Cf. Leviticus 26.) - obedience.       | vs. 15-68<br>vs. 12    |
| a-  | Poverty and sickness   | vs. 15-35              |
| b-  | Captivity and death<br>cannibalism)                                | vs. 36-62<br>vs. 51-57 |
| c-  | World-wide dispersion<br>Find no rest among the nations            | vs. 63-68<br>vs. 65    |

**Deuteronomy 29**

- 1 ¶ These are the words of the covenant which Jehovah commanded Moses to make with the children of Israel in the land of Moab, besides the covenant which he made with them in Horeb.
- 2 And Moses called unto all Israel, and said unto them, Ye have seen all that Jehovah did before your eyes in the land of Egypt unto Pharaoh, and unto all his servants, and unto all his land;
- 3 the great trials which thine eyes saw, the signs, and those great wonders:
- 4 but Jehovah hath not given you a heart to know, and eyes to see, and ears to hear, unto this day.
- 5 And I have led you forty years in the wilderness: your clothes are not waxed old upon you, and thy shoe is not waxed old upon thy foot.
- 6 Ye have not eaten bread, neither have ye drunk wine or strong drink; that ye may know that I am Jehovah your God.
- 7 And when ye came unto this place, Sihon the king of Heshbon, and Og the king of Bashan, came out against us unto battle, and we smote them:
- 8 and we took their land, and gave it for an inheritance unto the Reubenites, and to the Gadites, and to the half-tribe of the Manassites.
- 9 Keep therefore the words of this covenant, and do them, that ye may *{1}* prosper in all that ye do. *{1}* Or *deal wisely* }
- 10 ¶ Ye stand this day all of you before Jehovah your God; your heads, your tribes, your elders, and your officers, even all the men of Israel,
- 11 your little ones, your wives, and thy sojourner that is in the midst of thy camps, from the hewer of thy wood unto the drawer of thy water;
- 12 that thou mayest enter into the covenant of Jehovah thy God, and into his oath, which Jehovah thy God maketh with thee this day;
- 13 that he may establish thee this day unto himself for a people, and that he may be unto thee a God, as he spake unto thee, and as he sware unto thy fathers, to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob.
- 14 Neither with you only do I make this covenant and this oath,
- 15 but with him that standeth here with us this day before Jehovah our God, and also with him that is not here with us this day
- 16 (for ye know how we dwelt in the land of Egypt, and how we came through the midst of the nations through which ye passed;
- 17 and ye have seen their abominations, and their idols, wood and stone, silver and gold, which were among them);
- 18 lest there should be among you man, or woman, or family, or tribe, whose heart turneth away this day from Jehovah our God, to go to serve the gods of those nations; lest there should be among you a root that beareth *{1}* gall and wormwood; *{1}* Heb *rosh*, a poisonous herb }
- 19 and it come to pass, when he heareth the words of this *{1}* curse, that he bless himself in his heart, saying, I shall have peace, though I walk in the stubbornness of my heart, *{2}* to destroy the moist with the dry. *{1}* Or *oath* (and so verses 20, 21) 2) Or *to add drunkenness to thirst* }
- 20 Jehovah will not pardon him, but then the anger of Jehovah and his jealousy will smoke against that man, and all the curse that is written in this book shall lie upon him, and Jehovah will blot out his name from under heaven.
- 21 And Jehovah will set him apart unto evil out of all the tribes of Israel, according to all the curses of the covenant that is written in this book of the law.
- 22 And the generation to come, your children that shall rise up after you, and the foreigner that shall come from a far land, shall say, when they see the plagues of that land, and the sicknesses wherewith Jehovah hath made it sick;
- 23 *and that* the whole land thereof is brimstone, and salt, *and* a burning, *that* it is not sown, nor beareth, nor any grass groweth therein, like the overthrow of Sodom and Gomorrah, Admah and Zeboiim, which Jehovah overthrew in his anger, and in his wrath:
- 24 even all the nations shall say, Wherefore hath Jehovah done thus unto this land? what meaneth the heat of this great anger?
- 25 Then men shall say, Because they forsook the covenant of Jehovah, the God of their fathers, which he made with them when he brought them forth out of the land of Egypt,
- 26 and went and served other gods, and worshipped them, gods that they knew not, and that he had not *{1}* given unto them: *{1}* Heb *allotted* }
- 27 therefore the anger of Jehovah was kindled against this land, to bring upon it all the curse that is written in this book;
- 28 and Jehovah rooted them out of their land in anger, and in wrath, and in great indignation, and cast them into another land, as at this day.
- 29 The secret things belong unto Jehovah our God; but the things that are revealed belong unto us and to our children for ever, that we may do all the words of this law.

**Deuteronomy 30**

- 1 ¶ And it shall come to pass, when all these things are come upon thee, the blessing and the curse, which I have set before thee, and thou shalt call them to mind among all the nations, whither Jehovah thy God hath driven thee,
- 2 and shalt return unto Jehovah thy God, and shalt obey his voice according to all that I command thee this day, thou and thy children, with all thy heart, and with all thy soul;
- 3 that then Jehovah thy God will *{1}* turn thy captivity, and have compassion upon thee, and will return and gather thee from all the peoples, whither Jehovah thy God hath scattered thee. *{1}* Or *return to* }
- 4 If *any of* thine outcasts be in the uttermost parts of heaven, from thence will Jehovah thy God gather thee, and from thence will he fetch thee:
- 5 and Jehovah thy God will bring thee into the land which thy fathers possessed, and thou shalt possess it; and he will do thee good, and multiply thee above thy fathers.
- 6 And Jehovah thy God will circumcise thy heart, and the heart of thy seed, to love Jehovah thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, that thou mayest live.
- 7 And Jehovah thy God will put all these curses upon thine enemies, and on them that hate thee, that persecuted thee.
- 8 And thou shalt return and obey the voice of Jehovah, and do all his commandments which I command thee this day.

- 9 And Jehovah thy God will make thee plenteous in all the work of thy hand, in the fruit of thy body, and in the fruit of thy cattle, and in the fruit of thy ground, for good: for Jehovah will again rejoice over thee for good, as he rejoiced over thy fathers;
- 10 if thou shalt obey the voice of Jehovah thy God, to keep his commandments and his statutes which are written in this book of the law; if thou turn unto Jehovah thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul.
- 11 ¶ For this commandment which I command thee this day, it is not too *{I}* hard for thee, neither is it far off. *{I}* Or *wonderful* }
- 12 It is not in heaven, that thou shouldest say, Who shall go up for us to heaven, and bring it unto us, and make us to hear it, that we may do it?
- 13 Neither is it beyond the sea, that thou shouldest say, Who shall go over the sea for us, and bring it unto us, and make us to hear it, that we may do it?
- 14 But the word is very nigh unto thee, in thy mouth, and in thy heart, that thou mayest do it.
- 15 ¶ See, I have set before thee this day life and good, and death and evil;
- 16 in that I command thee this day to love Jehovah thy God, to walk in his ways, and to keep his commandments and his statutes and his ordinances, that thou mayest live and multiply, and that Jehovah thy God may bless thee in the land whither thou goest in to possess it.
- 17 But if thy heart turn away, and thou wilt not hear, but shalt be drawn away, and worship other gods, and serve them;
- 18 I denounce unto you this day, that ye shall surely perish; ye shall not prolong your days in the land, whither thou passest over the Jordan to go in to possess it.
- 19 I call heaven and earth to witness against you this day, that I have set before thee life and death, the blessing and the curse: therefore choose life, that thou mayest live, thou and thy seed;
- 20 to love Jehovah thy God, to obey his voice, and to cleave unto him; for *{I}* he is thy life, and the length of thy days; that thou mayest dwell in the land which Jehovah sware unto thy fathers, to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob, to give them. *{I}* Or *that* }

## C- The people charged. (29.–30.)

- 1- The Palestinian-covenant of blessing for obedience. (29.)
- a- God's mercy recalled vs. 1-13
  - b- God's warning of judgment for disobedience vs. 14-29
- 2- The promise of restoration. (30.)
- a- Repentance will bring mercy vs. 1-10  
(Note God's tenfold "I will.")
  - b- No excuse for ignorance impressed vs. 11-20
  - c- The choice of life or death presented vs. 19-20

- 1 ¶ And Moses went and spake these words unto all Israel.
- 2 And he said unto them, I am a hundred and twenty years old this day; I can no more go out and come in: and Jehovah hath said unto me, Thou shalt not go over this Jordan.
- 3 Jehovah thy God, he will go over before thee; he will destroy these nations from before thee, and thou shalt dispossess them: *and* Joshua, he shall go over before thee, as Jehovah hath spoken.
- 4 And Jehovah will do unto them as he did to Sihon and to Og, the kings of the Amorites, and unto their land; whom he destroyed.
- 5 And Jehovah will deliver them up before you, and ye shall do unto them according unto all the commandment which I have commanded you.
- 6 Be strong and of good courage, fear not, nor be affrighted at them: for Jehovah thy God, he it is that doth go with thee; he will not fail thee, nor forsake thee.
- 7 And Moses called unto Joshua, and said unto him in the sight of all Israel, Be strong and of good courage: for thou shalt go with this people into the land which Jehovah hath sworn unto their fathers to give them; and thou shalt cause them to inherit it.
- 8 And Jehovah, he it is that doth go before thee; he will be with thee, he will not fail thee, neither forsake thee: fear not, neither be dismayed.
- 9 ¶ And Moses wrote this law, and delivered it unto the priests the sons of Levi, that bare the ark of the covenant of Jehovah, and unto all the elders of Israel.
- 10 And Moses commanded them, saying, At the end of *every* seven years, in the set time of the year of release, in the feast of tabernacles,
- 11 when all Israel is come to appear before Jehovah thy God in the place which he shall choose, thou shalt read this law before all Israel in their hearing.
- 12 Assemble the people, the men and the women and the little ones, and thy sojourner that is within thy gates, that they may hear, and that they may learn, and fear Jehovah your God, and observe to do all the words of this law;
- 13 and that their children, who have not known, may hear, and learn to fear Jehovah your God, as long as ye live in the land whither ye go over the Jordan to possess it.
- 14 ¶ And Jehovah said unto Moses, Behold, thy days approach that thou must die: call Joshua, and present yourselves in the tent of meeting, that I may give him a charge. And Moses and Joshua went, and presented themselves in the tent of meeting.
- 15 And Jehovah appeared in the Tent in a pillar of cloud: and the pillar of cloud stood {1} over the door of the Tent.  
{1} Or by
- 16 And Jehovah said unto Moses, Behold, thou shalt sleep with thy fathers; and this people will rise up, and play the harlot after the strange gods of the land, whither they go to be among them, and will forsake me, and break my covenant which I have made with them.
- 17 Then my anger shall be kindled against them in that day, and I will forsake them, and I will hide my face from them, and they shall be devoured, and many evils and troubles shall come upon them; so that they will say in that day, Are not these evils come upon us because our God is not among us?
- 18 And I will surely hide my face in that day for all the evil which they shall have wrought, in that they are turned unto other gods.
- 19 Now therefore write ye this song for you, and teach thou it the children of Israel: put it in their mouths, that this song may be a witness for me against the children of Israel.
- 20 For when I shall have brought them into the land which I sware unto their fathers, flowing with milk and honey, and they shall have eaten and filled themselves, and waxed fat; then will they turn unto other gods, and serve them, and despise me, and break my covenant.
- 21 And it shall come to pass, when many evils and troubles are come upon them, that this song shall testify before them as a witness; for it shall not be forgotten out of the mouths of their seed: for I know their imagination which they frame this day, before I have brought them into the land which I sware.
- 22 ¶ So Moses wrote this song the same day, and taught it the children of Israel.
- 23 And he gave Joshua the son of Nun a charge, and said, Be strong and of good courage; for thou shalt bring the children of Israel into the land which I sware unto them: and I will be with thee.
- 24 And it came to pass, when Moses had made an end of writing the words of this law in a book, until they were finished,
- 25 that Moses commanded the Levites, that bare the ark of the covenant of Jehovah, saying,
- 26 Take this book of the law, and put it by the side of the ark of the covenant of Jehovah your God, that it may be there for a witness against thee.
- 27 For I know thy rebellion, and thy stiff neck: behold, while I am yet alive with you this day, ye have been rebellious against Jehovah; and how much more after my death?
- 28 Assemble unto me all the elders of your tribes, and your officers, that I may speak these words in their ears, and call heaven and earth to witness against them.
- 29 For I know that after my death ye will utterly corrupt yourselves, and turn aside from the way which I have commanded you; and evil will befall you in the latter days; because ye will do that which is evil in the sight of



Jehovah, to provoke him to anger through the work of your hands.

30 And Moses spake in the ears of all the assembly of Israel the words of this song, until they were finished.

---

#### IV. Moses' Final Actions--Finishing his course. (31. - 34.)

##### A- Four solemn charges. (31.)

- 1- Moses to Joshua and the people vs. 1-8  
A charge to be strong in the Lord. vs. 3, 6, 8
- 2- Moses to the priests vs. 9-13  
Law to be read to people at Feast of Tabernacles every 7 years.  
Probably Exodus and Deuteronomy
- 3- The Lord to Moses and Joshua vs. 14-23  
Predicts Israel's forsaking God in prosperity. vs. 16, 20
- 4- Moses to the Levites vs. 24-30
  - a- They are to keep the law in the ark.
  - b- He predicts Israel's rebellion and corruption. vs. 27, 29

1 ¶ Give ear, ye heavens, and I will speak; And let the earth hear the words of my mouth.  
2 My doctrine shall drop as the rain; My speech shall distil as the dew, As the small rain upon the tender grass, And as the showers upon the herb.  
3 For I will proclaim the name of Jehovah: Ascribe ye greatness unto our God.  
4 The Rock, his work is perfect; For all his ways are justice: A God of faithfulness and without iniquity, Just and right is he.  
5 They have {1} dealt corruptly with him, *they are* not his children, {2} *it is* their blemish; *They are* a perverse and crooked generation. {1} *Or corrupted themselves, they etc* 2) *Or, but a blot upon them*  
6 Do ye thus requite Jehovah, O foolish people and unwise? Is not he thy father that hath {1} bought thee? He hath made thee, and established thee. {1} *Or possessed; Or gotten*  
7 ¶ Remember the days of old, Consider the years of many generations: Ask thy father, and he will show thee; Thine elders, and they will tell thee.  
8 When the Most High gave to the nations their inheritance, When he separated the children of men, He set the bounds of the peoples According to the number of the children of Israel.  
9 For Jehovah's portion is his people; Jacob is the lot of his inheritance.  
10 He found him in a desert land, And in the waste howling wilderness; He compassed him about, he cared for him, He kept him as **the apple of his eye**.  
11 As an eagle that stirreth up her nest, That fluttereth over her young, {1} He spread abroad his wings, he took them, He bare them on his pinions. {1} *Or Spreadeth abroad her wings, taketh them, beareth them on her pinions.*  
12 Jehovah alone did lead him, And there was no foreign god with him.  
13 He made him ride on the high places of the earth, And he did eat the increase of the field; And he made him to suck honey out of the rock, And oil out of the flinty rock;  
14 Butter of the herd, and milk of the flock, With fat of lambs, And rams of the breed of Bashan, and goats, With the {1} finest of the wheat; And of the blood of the grape thou drankest wine. {1} *Heb fat of kidneys of wheat*  
15 ¶ But Jeshurun waxed fat, and kicked: Thou art waxed fat, thou art grown thick, thou art become sleek; Then he forsook God who made him, And lightly esteemed the Rock of his salvation.  
16 They moved him to jealousy with strange *gods*; With abominations provoked they him to anger.  
17 They sacrificed unto demons, *which were* no God, To gods that they knew not, To new *gods* that came up of late, Which your fathers dreaded not.  
18 Of the Rock that {1} begat thee thou art unmindful, And hast forgotten God that gave thee birth. {1} *Or bare*  
19 ¶ And Jehovah saw *it*, and abhorred *them*, Because of the provocation of his sons and his daughters.  
20 And he said, I will hide my face from them, I will see what their end shall be: For they are a very perverse generation, Children in whom is no faithfulness.  
21 They have moved me to jealousy with that which is not God; They have provoked me to anger with their vanities: And I will move them to jealousy with those that are not a people; I will provoke them to anger with a foolish nation.  
22 For a fire is kindled in mine anger, And burneth unto the lowest Sheol, And devoureth the earth with its increase, And setteth on fire the foundations of the mountains.  
23 I will heap evils upon them; I will spend mine arrows upon them:  
24 *They shall be* wasted with hunger, and devoured with {1} burning heat And bitter destruction; And the teeth of beasts will I send upon them, With the poison of crawling things of the dust. {1} *Heb burning coals; See Hab 3:5*  
25 Without shall the sword bereave, And in the chambers terror; *It shall destroy* both young man and virgin, The suckling with the man of gray hairs.  
26 ¶ I said, I would scatter them afar, I would make the remembrance of them to cease from among men;  
27 Were it not that I feared the provocation of the enemy, Lest their adversaries should judge amiss, Lest they should say, Our hand is exalted, And Jehovah hath not done all this.  
28 For they are a nation void of counsel, And there is no understanding in them.  
29 Oh that they were wise, that they understood this, That they would consider their latter end!  
30 How should one chase a thousand, And two put ten thousand to flight, Except their Rock had sold them, And Jehovah had delivered them up?  
31 For their rock is not as our Rock, Even our enemies themselves being judges.  
32 For their vine is of the vine of Sodom, And of the fields of Gomorrah: Their grapes are grapes of gall, Their clusters are bitter:  
33 Their wine is the poison of serpents, And the cruel venom of asps.  
34 Is not this laid up in store with me, Sealed up {1} among my treasures? {1} *Or in my treasures*  
35 Vengeance is mine, and recompense, At the time when their foot shall slide: For the day of their calamity is at hand, And the things that are to come upon them shall make haste.  
36 For Jehovah will judge his people, And repent himself for his servants; When he seeth that *their* power is gone, And there is none *remaining*, shut up or left at large.  
37 And he will say, Where are their gods, The rock in which they took refuge;

38 Which did eat the fat of their sacrifices, *And* drank the wine of their drink-offering? Let them rise up and help you, Let them be your protection.

39 ¶ See now that I, even I, am he, And there is no god with me: I kill, and I make alive; I wound, and I heal; And there is none that can deliver out of my hand.

40 For I lift up my hand to heaven, And say, As I live for ever,

41 If I whet {1} my glittering sword, And my hand take hold on judgment; I will render vengeance to mine adversaries, And will recompense them that hate me. {1} *Heb the lightning of my sword*

42 I will make mine arrows drunk with blood, And my sword shall devour flesh; With the blood of the slain and the captives, {1} From {2} the head of the leaders of the enemy. {1} *Or From the beginning of revenges upon the enemy* 2) *Or the hairy head of the enemy*

43 {1} Rejoice, O {2} ye nations, *with* his people: For he will avenge the blood of his servants, And will render vengeance to his adversaries, And will make expiation for his land, for his people. {1} *Or Praise his people, ye nations* 2) *Or ye nations, his people*

44 ¶ And Moses came and spake all the words of this song in the ears of the people, he, and Hoshea the son of Nun.

45 And Moses made an end of speaking all these words to all Israel;

46 And he said unto them, Set your heart unto all the words which I testify unto you this day, which ye shall command your children to observe to do, *even* all the words of this law.

47 For it is no vain thing for you; because it is your life, and through this thing ye shall prolong your days in the land, whither ye go over the Jordan to possess it.

## B- Moses' song. (32.)

- |    |  |           |
|----|--|-----------|
| 1- | The faithfulness and mercy of God recalled.                        | vs. 1-14  |
|    | He kept them as the <b>pupil of His Eye</b> (Heb. אִישׁוֹן עֵינָו) | vs. 10    |
|    | Ref. also, Psm 17:8, Pro 7:2, Zec 2:8 for this 'anthropomorphism'. |           |
| 2- | The rebellion and idolatry of Israel foreseen.                     | vs. 15-28 |
| 3- | The Rock as their refuge   | vs. 29-47 |

48 And Jehovah spake unto Moses that selfsame day, saying,  
49 Get thee up into this mountain of Abarim, unto mount Nebo, which is in the land of Moab, that is over against Jericho; and behold the land of Canaan, which I give unto the children of Israel for a possession;  
50 and die in the mount whither thou goest up, and be gathered unto thy people, as Aaron thy brother died in mount Hor, and was gathered unto his people:  
51 because ye trespassed against me in the midst of the children of Israel at the waters of Meribah of Kadesh, in the wilderness of Zin; because ye sanctified me not in the midst of the children of Israel.  
52 For thou shalt see the land before thee; but thou shalt not go thither into the land which I give the children of Israel.

### Deuteronomy 33

1 ¶ And this is the blessing, wherewith Moses the man of God blessed the children of Israel before his death.  
2 And he said, Jehovah came from Sinai, And rose from Seir unto them; He shined forth from mount Paran, And he came from the ten thousands of {1} holy ones: At his right hand {2} was a fiery law for them. {1} *Heb holiness* 2) *Or was fire, a law; Or as otherwise read were streams for them*  
3 Yea, he loveth the {1} people; All {2} his saints are in thy hand: And they sat down at thy feet; *Every one* {3} shall receive of thy words. {1} *Or tribes* 2) *Or their holy ones* 3) *Or received*  
4 Moses commanded us a law, An inheritance for the assembly of Jacob.  
5 And {1} he was king in Jeshurun, When the heads of the people were gathered, All the tribes of Israel together. {1} *Or there was a king*  
6 ¶ Let Reuben live, and not die; {1} Nor let his men be few. {1} *Or But*  
7 And this is *the blessing* of Judah: and he said, Hear, Jehovah, the voice of Judah, And bring him in unto his people. {1} With his hands he contended {2} for himself; And thou shalt be a help against his adversaries. {1} *Or, Let his hands be sufficient for them* 2) *Or for them*  
8 ¶ And of Levi he said, Thy Thummim and thy Urim are with {1} thy godly one, Whom thou didst prove at Massah, With whom thou didst strive at the waters of Meribah; {1} *Or him whom thou lovest*  
9 Who said of his father, and of his mother, I have not seen him; Neither did he acknowledge his brethren, Nor knew he his own children: For they have observed thy word, And keep thy covenant.  
10 They shall teach Jacob thine ordinances, And Israel thy law: They shall put incense {1} before thee, And whole burnt-offering upon thine altar. {1} *Heb in thy nostrils* }  
11 Bless, Jehovah, his substance, And accept the work of his hands: Smite through the loins of them that rise up against him, And of them that hate him, that they rise not again.  
12 ¶ Of Benjamin he said, The beloved of Jehovah shall dwell in safety by him; He covereth him all the day long, And he dwelleth between his shoulders.  
13 And of Joseph he said, Blessed of Jehovah be his land, For the precious things of heaven, for the dew, And for the deep that coucheth beneath,  
14 And for the precious things of the fruits of the sun, And for the precious things of the growth of the {1} moons, {1} *Or months*  
15 And for the chief things of the ancient mountains, And for the precious things of the everlasting hills,  
16 And for the precious things of the earth and the fulness thereof, And the good will of him that dwelt in the bush. Let *the blessing* come upon the head of Joseph, And upon the crown of the head of him {1} that was separate from his brethren. {1} *Or that is prince among*  
17 {1} The firstling of his herd, majesty is his; And his horns are the horns of the wild-ox: With them he shall {2} push the peoples all of them, *even* the ends of the earth: And they are the ten thousands of Ephraim, And they are the thousands of Manasseh. {1} *Or His firstling bullock* 2) *Or gore*  
18 ¶ And of Zebulun he said, Rejoice, Zebulun, in thy going out; And, Issachar, in thy tents.  
19 They shall call the peoples unto the mountain; There shall they offer sacrifices of righteousness: For they shall suck the abundance of the seas, And the hidden treasures of the sand.  
20 And of Gad he said, Blessed be he that enlargeth Gad: He dwelleth as a lioness, And teareth the arm, yea, the crown of the head.  
21 And he {1} provided the first part for himself, For there was {2} the lawgiver's portion reserved; And he came {3} with the heads of the people; He executed the righteousness of Jehovah, And his ordinances with Israel. {1} *Or chose; Heb saw* 2) *Or a ruler's portion* 3) *Or, to*  
22 ¶ And of Dan he said, Dan is a lion's whelp, That leapeth forth from Bashan.  
23 And of Naphtali he said, O Naphtali, satisfied with favor, And full with the blessing of Jehovah, Possess thou the {1} west and the south. {1} *Or sea*  
24 And of Asher he said, Blessed be Asher {1} with children; Let him be acceptable unto his brethren, And let him dip his foot in oil. {1} *Or above sons*  
25 Thy {1} bars shall be iron and brass; And as thy days, so shall thy {2} strength be. {1} *Or shoes* 2) *Or rest; Or security*  
26 ¶ There is none like unto God, O Jeshurun, Who rideth upon the heavens for thy help, And in his excellency on the skies.  
27 The eternal God is *thy* dwelling-place, And underneath are the everlasting arms. And he thrust out the enemy from before thee, And said, Destroy.

28 And Israel dwelleth in safety, The fountain of Jacob alone, In a land of grain and new wine; Yea, his heavens drop down dew.

29 Happy art thou, O Israel: Who is like unto thee, a people saved by Jehovah, The shield of thy help, And the sword of thy excellency! And thine enemies shall {1} submit themselves unto thee; And thou shalt tread upon their high places. {1} Or yield feigned obedience}

---

C- Moses' departure.

(32:48.-34:12.)

1 His view of the promised land

vs. 32:48-52

God again reminds him of his transgression at Meribah.

vs. 51

2- His blessing for the twelve tribes

(33.)

a- Order is the sons of Leah and Rachel first; then the sons of the concubines.

b- Emphasis is placed on Levi and Joseph.

c- Simeon is omitted. Is later absorbed into the tribe of Judah.

d- He impressed their happy estate with God as their refuge.

- 1 ¶ And Moses went up from the plains of Moab unto mount Nebo, to the top of Pisgah, that is over against Jericho.  
And Jehovah showed him all the land of Gilead, unto Dan,  
2 and all Naphtali, and the land of Ephraim and Manasseh, and all the land of Judah, unto the {1} hinder sea, {1} *That is western*  
3 and the South, and the Plain of the valley of Jericho the city of palm-trees, unto Zoar.  
4 And Jehovah said unto him, This is the land which I swear unto Abraham, unto Isaac, and unto Jacob, saying, I will give it unto thy seed: I have caused thee to see it with thine eyes, but thou shalt not go over thither.  
5 ¶ So Moses the servant of Jehovah died there in the land of Moab, according to the word of Jehovah.  
6 And {1} He buried him in the valley in the land of Moab over against Beth-peor: but no man knoweth of his sepulchre unto this day. {1} *Or he was buried*  
7 And Moses was a hundred and twenty years old when he died: his eye was not dim, nor his natural force abated.  
8 And the children of Israel wept for Moses in the plains of Moab thirty days: so the days of weeping in the mourning for Moses were ended.  
9 ¶ And Joshua the son of Nun was full of the spirit of wisdom; for Moses had laid his hands upon him: and the children of Israel hearkened unto him, and did as Jehovah commanded Moses.  
10 And there hath not arisen a prophet since in Israel like unto Moses, whom Jehovah knew face to face,  
11 in all the signs and the wonders, which Jehovah sent him to do in the land of Egypt, to Pharaoh, and to all his servants, and to all his land,  
12 and in all the mighty hand, and in all the great terror, which Moses wrought in the sight of all Israel.

3- His death and burial (34.)

- a- He and the Lord meet on Mt. Nebo.
- b- He views the land promised to Abraham.
- c- He is buried by the Lord in a valley. {Or was he taken as Enoch and Elijah. See the two witnesses of Rev 11. NEC }
- d- He is mourned by Israel for 30 days.
- e- The final chapter was obviously not written by Moses.
- f- Moses was the greatest of the Old Testament prophets. vs. 10

## QUESTIONS ON DEUTERONOMY

- 1- Do the apparent differences between the codes of laws in Exodus and Deuteronomy lend doubt or credence to Mosaic authorship?
- 2- Give one respect in which the restatement in Deuteronomy differs from that given in Exodus.
- 3- Where is Israel located during the events recorded in Deuteronomy?
- 4- Give two reasons for which this restatement of the law was necessary at this time.
- 5- State the essence of the threefold divisions by three descriptive words.
- 6- Why did the Lord not reveal Himself in any kind of a physical form to Israel (4:15-19)?
- 7- What significant addition is made to the law in Deuteronomy (7:5)?
- 8- What peril of prosperity does Moses envision in chapter 8?
- 9- What three restrictions does Moses lay down for Israel's future king?
- 10- For what is Deuteronomy 18 significant?
- 11- What contrast do you see between chapters 20 and 21 in regards to slaying?
- 12 - For what is Deuteronomy 24 famous and of what section is this a part?



13- What is significant about the section Deuteronomy 28 - 30?

14- What is the curse that Moses says will result from disobedience (28)?

15- What dark foreboding prediction does Moses make concerning Israel in chapter 31?

16 - How does the book of Deuteronomy end?

Copy these two pages (with your answers) and submit to:  
[swede@thecfbc.com](mailto:swede@thecfbc.com)

*Finis*

## ENDNOTE(S)

<sup>1</sup> **William Lane Craig**, "The Bible does not explicitly state the term "out of nothing" regarding creation. However, biblical scholars do believe that the totality of Scripture does in fact teach this. Looking at such passages as Genesis 1:1ff, Psalms 33:6, Psalms 148:5, John 1:3, Colossians 1:16, and Hebrews 11:3 gives a more complete picture of how God created the world. Viewing the entire biblical account has allowed theologians to conclude with this interpretation."

<sup>2</sup> N. Carlson, AN EXEGETICAL GRAMMAR OF THE HEBREW SCRIPTURES - A Road To The Top On A Less Traveled Road, 2015, ISBN-13: 978-1501001437 ISBN-10: 1501001434, Create Space/AMAZON, 608 pages.

<sup>3</sup> N. Carlson, AS IT WAS IN THE DAYS OF NOAH, 2014 Create Space/AMAZON Publisher, ISBN-13:978-1500212377, ISBN-10:1500212377, 421 pages. Pg. 23.

**(EWB) Companion Bible Appendix 23. "THE SONS OF GOD" IN GEN. 6:2, 4.**

**It is only by the Divine specific act of creation that any created being can be called "a son of God".**

For that which is "born of the flesh is flesh". God is spirit, and that which is "born of the Spirit is spirit" (John 3:6). Hence **Adam is called a "son of God"** in Luke 3:38. Those **"in Christ" having "the new nature" which is by the direct creation of God (2Cor. 5:17. Eph. 2:10) can be, and are called "sons of God"** (John 1:13. Rom. 8:14, 15. 1John 3:1). (\*1)

**This is why angels are called "sons of God" in every other place where the expression is used in the Old Testament. Job 1:6; 2:1; 38:7. Ps. 29:1; 89:6. Dan. 3:25 (no art.).** We have no authority or right to take the expression in Gen. 6:2, 4 in any other sense. **Moreover, in Gen. 6:2 the LXX renders it "angels". Angels are called "spirits" (Ps. 104:4. Heb. 1:7, 14), for spirits are created by God.**

That there was a fall of the angels is certain from Jude 6.

- The nature of their fall is clearly stated in the same verse. They left their own oiketerion. This word occurs only in 2Cor. 5:2 and Jude 6, where it is used of the spiritual (or resurrection) body.
- The nature of their sin is stated to be "in like manner" to that of the subsequent sins of Sodom and Gomorrha, Jude 7.
- The time of their fall is given as having taken place "in the days of Noah" (1Pet. 3:20. 2Pet. 2:7), [though there may have been a prior fall which caused the end of "the world that then was"] {*"The world that then was", was the antediluvian earth before the flood. NEC*} (Gen. 1:1, 2. 2Pet. 3:6).
- For this sin they are "reserved unto judgment", 2Pet. 2:4, and are "in prison", 1Pet. 3:19.
- Their progeny, called Nephilim (translated "giants"), were monsters of iniquity; and, being superhuman in size and character, had to be destroyed (see Ap. 25, below). This was the one and only object of the Flood.
- Only Noah and his family had preserved their pedigree pure from Adam (Gen. 6:9, see note). All the rest had become "corrupt" (shachath) destroyed [as Adamites]. the only remedy was to destroy it (de facto), as it had become destroyed (de jure). (It is the same word in v. 17 as in vv. 11, 12.) See further under Ap. 25 on the Nephilim.

{Note that E.W.B. doesn't mention Noah's Daughter's in Law. NEC}

<sup>4</sup> N. Carlson, MUSLIM EVANGELISM, Fantasies From The Arabian Knights, Or Strange Tales By A False Prophet, 2014, Create Space Publishers, ISBN: 13: 978-1495251351, ISBN-10: 1495251357, 228 pgs, Section 1.5.1.4 Mohammed is a False Prophet..pg.. 125.

<sup>5</sup> **Pangia to Peleg**

Ge 10:25 And unto Eber were born two sons: the name of one was **Peleg**; for in his days was the **earth divided**; and his brother's name was Joktan.

Ge 10:32 These are the families of the sons of Noah, after their generations, in their nations: and by these were the **nations divided in the earth after the flood.**

Ge 11:16 And Eber lived four and thirty years, and begat **Peleg**:

Ge 11:17 And Eber lived after he begat **Peleg** four hundred and thirty years, and begat sons and daughters.

Ge 11:18 And **Peleg** lived thirty years, and begat Reu:

Ge 11:19 And **Peleg** lived after he begat Reu two hundred and nine years, and begat sons and daughters.

1Ch 1:19 And unto Eber were born two sons: the name of the one was **Peleg**; because in his days the **earth was divided**: and his brother's name was Joktan.

1Ch 1:25 Eber, **Peleg**, Reu,

Lu 3:35 the son of Serug, the son of Reu, the son of **Peleg**, the son of Eber, the son of Shelah,

<sup>7</sup> e.g., "Through Gates Of Splendor". by Elisabeth Elliot.

This book tells the story of Operation Auca, an attempt of five American missionaries - Jim Elliot (the author's husband), Pete Fleming, Ed McCully, Nate Saint, and Roger Youderian, - to reach the The Huaorani, Waorani or

Waadani, tribe of eastern Ecuador in 1955. All five of the men were killed by the tribe. The title of this book is derived from the fourth stanza of the hymn "We Rest on Thee". This hymn was famously sung by the missionaries before the men left for Waodaoni territory in September 1955. The lines read: *We rest on Thee, our Shield and our Defender.*

*Thine is the battle, Thine shall be the praise;  
When passing through the gates of pearly splendor,  
Victors, we rest with Thee, through endless days.*

{While attending seminary at the Western Conservative Baptist Theological Seminary (WCBTS) in Portland, Or., We attended a P. Brethren assembly where we met Jim Elliot's family, including Elizabeth. She had come to town to celebrate her parents 50<sup>th</sup> wedding anniversary. A great family. The only gold they obtained were the souls who will be in heaven because of their respective ministries. NEC}

<sup>8</sup> Ref. The Hymn/Song; "I Have Come From The Darkness To The Light (Of The LORD)"

I have come from the darkness to the Light of the Lord,  
I have come from the night to the day.  
He has guided my footsteps in the truth of His Word,  
By His love He has shown me the way.

Chorus:

I have come from the darkness to the Light,  
To the light of redemption from sins.  
O my soul will rejoice in His might,  
For my Savior dwells within.

In the light of His presence all temptations depart,  
And the shadows of doubt are cast aside.  
With a radiance of sunshine He has entered my heart,  
Where His Spirit of Love abides.

<sup>9</sup> N. Carlson, Muslim Evangelism, *Fantasies From The Arabian Knights, Or Strange Tails By A False Prophet*. 2014, Create Space AMAZON Publishers, ISBN-13: 978-1495251351 ISBN-10: 14952511357, 243 Pages.

<sup>10</sup> In The Chronicles Of Narnia, C. S. Lewis; Remember Aslan's Stone Table: The **Stone Table** was a great slab of rock supported on four smaller rock pillars located in the central Narnian mainland. The table was created by Aslan's father at the beginning of the world, shortly after Aslan had returned Digory Kirke and Polly Plummer to Earth. Time after time during the Age of Conquest, Aslan would appear at the Stone Table whenever Narnia was threatened by an evil who where not affiliated with Jadis, as Jadis and her army were repelled by the Tree of Protection. The stone structure with numerous symbols and characters carved into it, was used by the White Witch during the Long Winter as an altar on which to sacrifice important victims. She claimed the characters on it described the rules of the Deep Magic from the Dawn of Time.

During the Winter Revolution, Aslan was bound to the Stone Table and executed by the White Witch using her Stone Knife. It seems that she also intended to sacrifice Edmund there.

Susan and Lucy Pevensie spent that night keeping a vigil at the Table over Aslan's body. At dawn when they witnessed Aslan's resurrection, the Table split in two right down the middle. This may have been because the Deep Magic, inscribed in the Stone Table, was reversed by Aslan's sacrifice, according to the rules of the Deeper Magic from Before the Dawn of Time.

In later centuries, the remains of the cracked Stone Table were protected by a mound of earth with tunnels in it, known as Aslan's How.

<sup>11</sup> Two trumpets of silver! Our Biblical Archaeologist friend and director believes these two silver (original trumpets are safely guarded in a hidden place in Axum, Ethiopia.